

Elementary and Middle School

Lower School (K-6): Explicit teaching of the fundamentals. The “grammar” of learning refers to the fundamentals of all skills and subjects, which are the sine qua non of all subsequent thought.

No higher-level thinking or critical thinking is able to occur when young people are not thoroughly immersed in the grammar of reading, writing, speaking, and each academic discipline. Memorization is the key at this stage of learning, as the memory is the most powerful intellectual capacity of the child, and children love to memorize.

Upper School (7-8): The upper school will continue to work on the programs begun in grammar school, while going into greater depth. The students will have an increased capacity for logic in their thinking, speaking, and writing. At the same time, the middle school presents much greater challenges in student behavior. To guide students through the storm of adolescence, self-government will be the leading virtue taught and expected.

Core Knowledge Sequence:

Classical education puts young minds to work — it leads young people to understand themselves and the world around them. Students do not learn in the abstract; they must acquire foundational skills and gain knowledge in certain disciplines to participate fully and effectively in the human community. To this end, CCA has adopted the Core Knowledge Sequence for its K-8 curriculum. The Core Knowledge Curriculum was developed by E.D. Hirsch, Jr. In *The Making of Americans*, Hirsch revealed an intellectual kinship between himself and classical education. He joined the academic trivium to its moral, civic purpose. According to Hirsch, people must not only use the same language to communicate effectively and to understand complex ideas, they must possess a reservoir of common facts, ideas, and references known to all in the culture. Hirsch stresses that “cultural literacy” is vital to comprehend the vast areas of human knowledge necessary for our political, economic, social and moral well-being.

Core Knowledge (CK) is based on the premise that a grade-by-grade core curriculum of common learning builds a strong and sound education. The CK Sequence is based on the theory that what children can learn is dependent upon what they already know. Identification of the content and skills provides a coherent approach to building knowledge across all grade levels. By following the sequence, every child will learn the fundamentals of science, the basic principles of government, the important events of world history and American history, the essential elements of mathematics, the masterpieces of art and music from around the world, and stories and poems passed down from generation to generation. Knowledge, language and skills build cumulatively from year to year through CK’s sequential, clear and specific grade-by-grade outline. Literacy is the goal, and students are provided a strong foundation in reading through the teaching of “explicit” phonics. Beginning in kindergarten, teachers read to their students from the best sources — classical literature. When students are able to read independently, their books are the classics. With this approach, teaching of the virtues is intentional and intertwined with discussions of the classics.

The literature base of our K-8 program comes directly from the readings and lessons of Core Knowledge. Language Arts instruction will also come with the Riggs explicit phonics program which functions also in the area of grammar, syntax, composition, spelling, and vocabulary. The aforementioned skills are critical components of the Illinois Learning Standards, and we believe this complement to Core Knowledge will offer a superior, literacy-based reading and writing program.

Core Knowledge History and Geography (CKHG) curriculum is aligned with the Common Core, and a thorough alignment comparison has been completed for all units currently available from the Core Knowledge Foundation (CKHG Grades 3-5); Curriculum for Grade 3 that includes alignment in the Teacher’s guide for every unit is included in the attachment. Grades 4 and 5 are available for free download at www.coreknowledge.org

We have mapped this alignment for Illinois Learning Standards for Social Science (ILSSS) for a sample unit in Grade 3

We are committed to ensuring that our students meet and exceed state standards and will continue to align the rest of the curriculum with ILSSS (as indicated in the start-up plan in section 3.1.2). Illinois’ current science standards became effective in February 2014 and are based on the Next Generation Science Standards (NGSS). The CK Science curriculum is aligned with the NGSS standards. This alignment is included for Grades K and 1 in Appendix 2.2.1.

Illinois' current science standards became effective in February 2014 and are based on the Next Generation Science Standards (NGSS). The CK Science curriculum (CKSci) is aligned with the NGSS standards. This alignment is included for Grades K and 1. CK Foundation is working to complete alignments for Grades 2-8. We are committed to ensuring that our students meet and exceed state standards. If the entirety of the CKSci sequence is not aligned by March Of 2018, the Principal in conjunction with the Design Team and select advisors will complete the alignment internally (as indicated in the start-up plan in section 3.1.2).

Riggs Reading Program:

Beginning in kindergarten, the K-8 Core Knowledge Sequence at CCA will be supplemented with the Riggs Reading Program (Riggs) – The Writing & Spelling Road to Reading & Thinking – a multi-sensory and brain-based approach to teaching explicit phonics, reading, language arts, and composition. The Riggs program is modified and supplemented by materials from Access Literacy, LLC for teaching “explicit” phonics, reading, and language arts. Modifications include Kindergarten scope and sequence, the older-student adaptation, and the expanded cursive writing instructional materials.

The Riggs method began with Dr. Samuel Orton, a neuroscientist who researched the functioning of the human brain in learning language skills. He collaborated with teachers to combine his multi-sensory techniques with classical and Socratic instructional approaches to teaching.

Riggs is an “explicit” phonics approach as defined and recommended in a Federal Compilation of Reading Research: *Becoming a Nation of Readers*, 1985. Riggs incorporates phonics-based spelling with a rules system dating from the Webster-Oxford standardization of English spelling, and also provides phonemic/graphemic correspondences from contemporary dictionaries, enabling students to learn correct spelling as well as regional dialects and pronunciations across the English-speaking world.

Riggs is far more than a phonics program. For reading, Riggs students also learn syllabication, oral vocabulary, and comprehension. For composition, students learn spelling, cursive writing, creative writing, spacing, margins, listening skills, orthography rules, vocabulary, grammar, syntax, punctuation, and capitalization. Riggs uses direct and Socratic instructional techniques to augment the instruction to integrate grammar and syntax, creative and organizational composition skills and vocabulary development. Riggs uses a complete and comprehensive method to teach language arts skills — roots, prefixes, suffixes, homophones and homographs, antonyms, synonyms and graphic organizers. They recommend vocabulary-rich literature, such as the classics, and are proponents of high expectations. (Source: The Riggs Institute)

In addition, we will supplement the CK sequence with *Well-Ordered Language* by Tammy Peters and Daniel Coupland. Well-Ordered Language (WOL) is a comprehensive and sequential approach to teaching English grammar using analytical tools in a delightful way. WOL’s innovative oral analysis, unique marking system, and classical diagramming teach students to identify not only the parts of a sentence but also the function of each part and its relationships within a sentence.

Well-Ordered Language presents grammar in a clear, orderly way, simultaneously cultivating a child’s wonder. In each level, a captivating narrative emerges in the lesson exercises. Instruction is presented with attractive illustrations and samples taken from classic children’s literature and poetry.

Additional grammar instruction in GR7-8 will be provided through *Get Smart and Stay Smart* by Elizabeth O’Brien, a year-long program that teaches complete sentence diagramming including all eight parts of speech. Get Smart consists of a student edition, instructor edition, and online videos.

Get Smart begins with simple subjects and verbs, but it quickly moves to complex sentence constructions. For example, week seven teaches about adverbs. In the process, students diagram sentences that include adverbs modifying adjectives rather than limiting instruction to only adverbs that modify verbs. Week 16 has students diagramming compound sentences. Final lessons teach gerund phrases, participial phrases, infinitives, and infinitive phrases.

The aforementioned skills covered by the Riggs Program and WOL are critical components of the Common Core and Illinois State Standards, and we believe this complement to Core Knowledge will offer a content-rich, literacy-based reading and writing program in addition to Core Knowledge.

Singapore Math:

For grades K-8, math will be taught using the Standards edition of Singapore Math. Singapore is the world leader in mathematics achievement, according to a study conducted by the American Institutes for Research and funded by the U.S. Department of Education (What the United States Can Learn from Singapore's World-Class Mathematics System).

The Singapore Primary Mathematics series is time-tested and has a documented history of success. The International Association for Evaluation of Educational Achievement has been conducting the Trends in International Mathematics and Science Study for 20 years in four-year cycles. Singapore (along with select East-Asian neighbors) outperforms all participating countries in mathematics at the fourth and eighth grades, maintaining a 20-year edge according to results released November 29, 2016 from TIMSS, the longest running, large scale international assessment of mathematics and science education in the world. Between the top performing countries and the next highest performers there was a pronounced gap, of 23 points at the fourth grade and 48 points at the eighth grade.

Professional development accompanies Singapore programs so teachers are better prepared to facilitate lessons. Singapore Math has a consistent emphasis on problem solving and model drawing, with a focus on in-depth understanding of the essential math skills recommended in the National Council of Teachers of Mathematics Curriculum Focal Points, the National Mathematics Advisory Panel, and the Common Core State Standards.

Singapore Math recognizes that all children learn differently. English Learners benefit from the program's clear and simple explanations of math concepts, which are often just a few words in a cartoon balloon.¹ Singapore Math presents fewer topics and provides more time to thoroughly learn those topics. The program's detailed instruction, questions, problem solving, and visual and hands-on aids — such as blocks, cards and bar charts — ensure that students master the material. Ideally, students do not move on until they have thoroughly learned a topic. Educators say that slowing down the learning process gives students a solid math foundation upon which to build increasingly complex skills.²

Not only do students learn math concepts thoroughly, they also master essential math skills more quickly using Singapore Math. It has been reported that by the end of sixth grade, students have mastered multiplication and division of fractions, and are comfortable doing difficult multi-step word problems, ensuring they are well prepared to complete Algebra I in middle school.

Algebra I will be offered to all students who are at or above grade level upon completing 7th grade.

Singapore Math is fully aligned with the Common Core Standards as of 2012 (see Appendix 2.2.1)

Curriculum Course Names and Descriptions

English Language Arts (CK Sequence, Riggs Reading Program, WOL Sequence)

Kindergarten: The Kindergarten English Language Arts course focuses on oral language development and listening skills in addition to foundational skills in reading and writing based on the Riggs Method. Read-alouds from a variety of literary genres and nonfiction texts will promote vocabulary knowledge and awareness of syntax. Explicit and systematic phonics instruction will develop mastery of the written English code.

1st grade: Grade 1 English Language Arts continues to emphasize listening and speaking and fundamental literacy skills such as phonemic awareness and phonics through The Writing and Spelling Road to Reading and Thinking developed by Riggs. Students will become increasingly more independent with reading and writing. They will write for a variety of purposes (e.g., narrative, informational, persuasive), and they will develop reading fluency through decodable texts.

2nd grade: Grade 2 English Language Arts will emphasize speaking and listening through classroom discussion and oral presentations. Reading instruction will include phonics, fluency, and comprehension skills in a variety of

¹ John Hoven and Barry Garelick, "Singapore Math: Simple or Complex?" Educational Leadership 65:3, November 2007

² Singapore Math Adopted in More US Schools- The New York Times Sept. 30, 2010

nonfiction texts and literary genres, including Greek mythology and American folk tales. Students will learn spelling, grammar and conventions through the Riggs Method. Students will use the writing process to plan, draft, and edit writing and will apply basic language conventions in their written work.

3rd grade: Grade 3 English Language Arts will include instruction in reading and writing skills including elements of fiction and nonfiction texts. Reading instruction will focus on comprehension and response, vocabulary development, and reading fluency with more complex texts. Students will produce a variety of types of writing, including stories, reports, letters, and poems. Additional grammar instruction will be provided through the Well-Ordered Language Sequence. Students will also be introduced to basic research skills.

4th grade: Grade 4 English Language Arts places a stronger emphasis on expository writing (e.g., summaries, book reports, research papers, descriptive essays) than in previous grades. Students are encouraged to apply the correct use of writing conventions and to do so more independently. Reading instruction will focus on comprehension and response, vocabulary development, and reading fluency with more complex texts. Additional grammar instruction will be provided through the Well-Ordered Language Sequence. Students will be expected to read a minimum of 20 minutes a day outside of class.

5th grade: Grade 5 English Language Arts continues to emphasize expository writing with additional instruction in research and presentations. Instruction also includes revision and editing skills within the writing process, requiring more competent, consistent use of correct grammar, usage, and spelling. Vocabulary enrichment covers prefixes and suffixes. Reading instruction includes analysis of literary craft and a writer's use of language. Additional grammar instruction will be provided through the Well-Ordered Language Sequence. Students will read outside of class at least 25 minutes daily.

6th grade: Grade 6 English Language Arts extends the focus on expository writing to include research essays, persuasive essays, and business letters. Students will apply revision and editing skills to produce written work that is thoughtful, well-organized, and reasonably correct in grammar, conventions, and spelling. For vocabulary enrichment, students will learn Latin and Greek root words. In reading, they will analyze classic works of literature such as Shakespeare's *Julius Caesar* and Twain's *The Prince and the Pauper*. Additional grammar instruction will be provided through the Well-Ordered Language Sequence.

7th grade: Core English 7. Students will be given opportunities to write fiction, poetry, or drama, but instruction will emphasize repeated expository writing across multiple disciplines. Instruction in essay writing will focus on development of unity, coherence, and emphasis. Grammar lessons will include parts of sentences, clauses, and spelling. For vocabulary, students will learn Greek and Latin root words and phrases. In literature, students will analyze poems, drama, nonfiction, and fiction for a writer's use of language and literary elements, with particular attention to diction and tone. Literary works include Poe's "The Tell-Tale Heart" and *The Call of the Wild* by Jack London. Additional grammar instruction will be provided through *Get Smart and Stay Smart* by Elizabeth O'Brien.

8th grade: Core English 8. Students will be given opportunities to write fiction, poetry, or drama, but instruction will emphasize repeated expository writing across multiple disciplines. Students will examine all writing—their own as well as others'—with attention to unity, coherence, emphasis, diction, and tone. Grammar lessons will focus on sentence variety, a review of punctuation appropriate to sentence structure, parallelism, and misplaced modifiers. Vocabulary enrichment will include memorization of Greek and Latin root words and phrases. Literary analysis will include essays and speeches in addition to short stories, novels, poems, and other literary works. Students will learn to read as writers, with attention to an author's craft. Additional grammar instruction will be provided through *Get Smart and Stay Smart* by Elizabeth O'Brien.

Mathematics (Singapore Math)

Kindergarten: In this activity-based class, kindergarten students will receive a strong foundation in mathematics in preparation for subsequent stages of mathematical thinking. Mathematical concepts are developed in a systematic, engaging, and fun way. Concepts include matching and sorting; numbers to 10; order, shapes, and patterns; length and size; weight; and capacity.

1st grade: Singapore Math 1: Students will develop the foundational mathematical concepts and skills for everyday life and continuous learning in mathematics. Content will include a thorough understanding of whole numbers,

addition and subtraction of whole numbers, identifying the value of coins and bills, telling time to the half hour, comparing the length and weight of objects, identifying and categorizing 2-dimensional shapes, describing and extending repeating patterns, solving simple word problems involving addition/subtraction, sorting objects and using picture graphs, and basic algebra skills involving numeric equations and operational symbols.

2nd grade: Singapore Math 2: Students in second grade will extend their understanding of whole numbers to include those within 1000 and will thoroughly understand the meanings of subtraction and addition. They will multiply and divide by 2s, 3s, 4s, 5s, and 10s. More complex work with fractions will be introduced, and skills related to money and time will be emphasized. Students will learn to measure, weigh, estimate, and compare objects and substances. In geometry, they will describe and classify 3-dimensional shapes and extend repeating patterns involving a combination of shapes. Word problem skills will include writing equations and solving one-step word problems requiring addition/subtraction and multiplication/division. Introductory data analysis will include finding range and mode. Algebraic will include solving problems involving numeric equations or inequalities and using symbols to stand for unknown numbers in equations. A number of mental math strategies will be emphasized throughout the year, including adding/subtracting numbers from 100 and 1000 and adding/subtracting money in dollars and cents.

3rd grade: Singapore Math 3: Students will develop their understanding of whole numbers to include place values and operations within 10,000, and they will multiply/divide by 6s, 7s, 8s, and 9s. Division of numbers within 10,000 will include situations where there is a remainder. Students will also learn more complex skills involving fractions, including finding equivalent fractions and the simplest forms of fractions, and comparing and ordering fractions with different denominators. Students will master the concept of time, finding the duration of time intervals and telling time to the minute on an analog clock. With regard to length, weight, mass, and capacity, students will measure, weigh, and estimate in grams, liters, and milliliters and will convert units within a metric system using multiplication. Students will be introduced to the concepts of perimeter and area, and they will identify 3-dimensional shapes and right angles. They will solve 2-step word problems and will become adept at creating and using bar graphs to solve problems and represent and compare data.

4th grade: Singapore Math 4: Students will develop their understanding of whole numbers to include place values and operations within 100,000. They will use estimation to verify calculated results in problems of multiplication/division. Skills related to fractions will include adding/subtracting fractions, understanding mixed numbers and improper fractions and converting them, and finding the fraction of a set for measurements. Students in grade 4 will be introduced to decimals, beginning with understanding tenths, hundredths, thousandths and comparing decimal numbers. They will learn to round decimal numbers up to 2 places and will add/subtract and multiply/divide decimal numbers. Students will also be introduced to the concept of volume and will be able to find the volume of rectangular prisms. In geometry, they will identify triangles and quadrilaterals, a variety of angles, and perpendicular and parallel lines. Two-step word problems will involve fractions and decimals and the use of bar diagrams to solve them. Data analysis lessons will become more complex as students collect, organize, and analyze data using tables and bar graphs.

5th grade: Singapore Math 5: In fifth grade, students will use place-value models to represent numbers to 1,000,000 and will multiply/divide within 10,000 by 2-digit numbers. They will learn to use the order of operations to solve mathematical expressions. Lessons related to fractions and decimals will become more complex as students multiply/divide fractions and decimals and convert fractions to decimals and vice versa. They will also convert units involving decimals and fractions within a measuring system. Instruction on the concept of volume will go into more depth as students solve problems involving a change in height of liquids and volume of liquids and finding the volume of solids by displacement. Geometry lessons will include finding unknown angles, using angle properties to solve problems, and creating tessellations. Fifth graders will be introduced to the concepts of percentage, ratio, average, and rate and will solve multi-step problems involving these concepts, using bar diagrams when needed. Data analysis skills will develop in complexity when students create line graphs, find the average of a set of data, and find a data value given the average and other values.

6th grade: Singapore Math 6 (Primary or Dimensions): Students in sixth grade will solve challenging word problems involving all four operations on whole numbers, fractions, decimals, percentages, the volume of liquids and solids, averages, rate, and speed. They will write, simplify, and evaluate simple algebraic expressions and use variables in expressions when describing geometric quantities. They will derive the formula for circumference or area of a circle

when given the radius or diameter and will find the perimeter and area of compound figures. In geometry, they will visualize, describe, and draw geometric solids and will identify nets of solids, or solids of nets. They will become more adept at solving problems using ratios and relating them to proportions and fractions of a quantity. Data analysis will involve collecting, organizing, and displaying data in pie charts.

7th grade: Singapore Math (Dimensions Math): In this course, emphasis is placed on the development of better understanding of mathematical concepts and their applications, as well as on proficiency in problem solving, mathematical reasoning, and higher order thinking. To facilitate this, instruction will include the following: investigative work, communication skills in mathematics, appropriate computation and estimation skills, mental calculation, problem-solving heuristics. Mathematical concepts will include: algebraic representations and formula and algebraic manipulation; percentages; solutions of linear equations and inequalities; graphs of linear functions and relations, mensuration and rate, ratio, proportion, and speed. Word problems will involve rational numbers, integers, percentages, ratios, rate, and speed.

8th grade: ALGEBRA I: Singapore Math (Dimensions) or Weeks and Adkins, First Course in Algebra. Topics: linear equations, slope, intercepts, roots, absolute value equations, piecewise equations, vertices, quadratic equations, quadratic formula, systems of equations, systems of inequalities, irrational numbers, imaginary numbers, complex numbers, direct and inverse variation, factoring, completing the square, rational equations, trigonometric ratios, Pythagorean theorem, fundamental counting principle, permutation, combinations, probability, compound events, Pascal's triangle, and binomial theorem.

Science (CK Sequence)

Kindergarten: Science K. Effective instruction in science requires hands-on experience and observation. In the words of the 1993 report from the American Association for the Advancement of Science, Benchmarks for Science Literacy, "From their very first day in school, students should be actively engaged in learning to view the world scientifically. That means encouraging them to ask questions about nature and to seek answers, collect things, count and measure things, make qualitative observations, organize collections and observations, discuss findings, etc."

While experience counts for much, book learning is also important, for it helps bring coherence and order to a child's scientific knowledge. Only when topics are presented systematically and clearly can children make steady and secure progress in their scientific learning. The child's development of scientific knowledge and understanding is in some ways a very disorderly and complex process, different for each child. But a systematic approach to the exploration of science, one that combines experience with book learning, can help provide essential building blocks for deeper understanding at a later time.

Topics covered: Plants and Plant Growth; Animals and Their Needs; The Human Body; Introduction to Magnetism; Seasons and Weather; Taking Care of the Earth; Science Biographies

At the very early levels, textbooks will not be used. Instead, age-appropriate, readable books with high quality photography and illustrations will be used by the teacher in the classroom to foster a curiosity about science and deliver content. Teachers will read aloud, and children will also be able to read many of these books on their own during class and take the first steps in developing scientific literacy.

ScienceSaurus

ScienceSaurus Student Handbooks are a multipurpose and adaptable resource for a variety of classroom uses including supporting core basal or science kit programs, as well as extending literacy time. With dynamic visuals and clear explanations, *ScienceSaurus* offers a great way to engage students while helping to build their literacy and vocabulary.

1st grade: Science 1.

Topics covered: I. Living Things and Their Environments II. Human Body (Body Systems), III. Matter IV. Properties of Matter: Measurement V. Introduction to Electricity VI. Astronomy VII., The Earth VIII. Science Biographies

2nd grade: Science 2. I. Cycles in Nature; II. Insects; III. Human Body; IV. Magnetism; V. Simple, Machines; VI. Science Biographies

Delta Science Content Readers

This series allows for "mixing and matching" throughout grades 3-4 and among the various areas of science (physical, earth, life, etc.) outlined in Core Knowledge. Each book is about 20 pages long and readily accessible by the student.

3rd grade: Science 3. I. Introduction to Classification of Animals II. Human Body (Muscular, Skeletal, and Nervous Systems; Vision and Hearing) III. Light and Optics IV. Sound V. Ecology VI. Astronomy VII. Science Biographies

4th grade: Science 4. I. Human Body (Circulatory and Respiratory Systems) II. Chemistry: Basic Terms and Concepts III. Electricity IV. Geology: The Earth and Its Changes V. Meteorology VI. Science Biographies

Science Explorer, Prentice Hall

This series is similar to the Delta Science Content Readers in letting the teacher mix and match books according to the Core Knowledge sequence, but the books are longer (about 5 chapters each) and go into more depth. Several labs/activities/demos are embedded throughout the book. The Section Assessment and Chapter Review questions can be used as good homework assignments, and the series also contains an Integrated Lab Manual. The labs are easily adaptable for different grade levels, have good questions for comprehension and analysis, and usually require minimal or easy to obtain materials. Prentice Hall also offers a book and/or CD of worksheets and assessments.

5th grade: Science 5. I. Classifying Living Things II. Cells: Structures and Processes III. Plant Structures and Processes IV. Life Cycles and Reproduction V. Human Body (Endocrine and Reproductive Systems) VI. Chemistry: Matter and Change VII. Science Biographies

6th grade: Science 6. I. Plate Tectonics II. Oceans III. Astronomy: Gravity, Stars, and Galaxies, IV. Energy, Heat, and Energy Transfer V. The Human Body: Lymphatic and Immune Systems VI., Science Biographies

7th grade: Science 7. I. Atomic Structure II. Chemical Bonds and Reactions III. Cell Division and Genetics IV. History of the Earth and Life Forms V. Evolution VI. Science Biographies

8th grade: Science 8. I. Physics II. Electricity and Magnetism III. Electromagnetic Radiation and Light IV. Sound Waves V. Chemistry of Food and Respiration VI. Science Biographies History

Conceptual Physics: A High School Physics Program (the easier version, with a roller coaster on the front, published July 15, 2009)

Supplements: Science Explorer (physics and life science topics)

This version of Conceptual Physics, which does not require extensive math, is appropriate for the 8th grade level. Concepts are clearly explained with good diagrams and illustrations. It will be supplemented with the physics and life science titles from Science Explorer.

History & Geography (CK Sequence)

Kindergarten: Core History & Geography K. In kindergarten, children often study aspects of the world around them: the family, the school, the community, etc. The following guidelines are meant to broaden and complement that focus. The goal of studying selected topics in World History in Kindergarten is to foster curiosity and the beginnings of understanding about the larger world outside the child's locality, and about varied civilizations and ways of life. This can be done through a variety of means: story, drama, art, music, discussion, and more.

The study of geography embraces many topics throughout the Core Knowledge Sequence, including topics in history and science. Geographic knowledge includes a spatial sense of the world, an awareness of the physical processes that shape life, a sense of the interactions between humans and their environment, an understanding of the relations between place and culture, and an awareness of the characteristics of specific regions and cultures.

The study of American history begins in grades K-2 with a brief overview of major events and figures, from the earliest days to recent times. A more in-depth, chronological study of American history begins again in grade 3 and continues onward. The term "American" here generally, but not always, refers to the lands that became the United States. Other topics regarding North, Central, and South America may be found in the World History and Geography sections of this Sequence.

Topics covered: World History & Geography: Spatial Sense; Overview of the Seven Continents; American History & Geography: Your community; North America, Continental United States, Alaska & Hawaii; Native American Peoples, Past and Present; Early Exploration and Settlement; Presidents, Past and Present; Symbols and Figures

1st grade: Core History & Geography 1. In first grade, children often study aspects of the world around them: the family, the school, the community, etc. The following guidelines are meant to broaden and complement that focus. The goal of studying selected topics in World History in first grade is to foster curiosity and the beginnings of understanding about the larger world outside the child's locality, and about varied civilizations and ways of life. This can be done through a variety of means: story, drama, art, music, discussion, and more.

The study of geography embraces many topics throughout the Core Knowledge Sequence, including topics in history and science. Geographic knowledge embraces a spatial sense of the world, an awareness of the physical processes that shape life, a sense of the interactions between humans and their environment, an understanding of the relations between place and culture, and an awareness of the characteristics of specific regions and cultures.

The study of American history begins in grades K-2 with a brief overview of major events and figures, from the earliest days to recent times. A more in-depth, chronological study of American history begins again in grade 3 and continues onward. The term "American" here generally, but not always, refers to the lands that became the United States. Other topics regarding North, Central, and South America may be found in the World History and Geography sections of this Sequence.

Topics covered: World History & Geography: Spatial sense; Geographical terms and features; Early World Civilizations (Mesopotamia, Ancient Egypt); History of World Religions; Modern Civilization and Culture: Mexico. American History & Geography: Early People and Civilizations; Early Exploration and Settlement; From Colonies to Independence: The American Revolution; Early Exploration of American West; Symbols and Figures.

2nd grade: Core History & Geography 2. In second grade, children often study aspects of the world around them: the family, the school, the community, etc. The following guidelines are meant to broaden and complement that focus. The goal of studying selected topics in World History in second grade is to foster curiosity and the beginnings of understanding about the larger world outside the child's locality, and about varied civilizations and ways of life. This can be done through a variety of means: story, drama, art, music, discussion, and more.

The study of geography embraces many topics throughout the Core Knowledge Sequence, including topics in history and science. Geographic knowledge includes a spatial sense of the world, an awareness of the physical processes that shape life, a sense of the interactions between humans and their environment, an understanding of the relations between place and culture, and an awareness of the characteristics of specific regions and cultures.

The study of American history begins in grades K-2 with a brief overview of major events and figures, from the earliest days to recent times. A more in-depth, chronological study of American history begins again in grade 3 and continues onward. The term "American" here generally, but not always, refers to the lands that became the United States. Other topics regarding North, Central, and South America may be found in the World History and Geography sections of this Sequence.

Topics covered: World History & Geography: Spatial Sense; Geographical Terms & Features; Early Asian Civilizations; Modern Japanese Civilization; The Ancient Greek Civilization. American History & Geography: Government: The Constitution; The War of 1812; Westward Expansion; The Civil War; Immigration and Citizenship; Fighting for a Cause; Geography of the Americas; Symbols and Figures

3rd grade: Core History & Geography 3. The study of geography embraces many topics throughout the Core Knowledge Sequence, including topics in history and science. Geographic knowledge includes a spatial sense of the world, an awareness of the physical processes that shape life, a sense of the interactions between humans and their environment, an understanding of the relations between place and culture, and an awareness of the characteristics of specific regions and cultures. In History, students will be introduced to Ancient Rome (Students will study Rome again in grade 6, with a focus on the legacy of ideas from ancient Greece and Rome), and the Vikings.

In third grade, students begin a more detailed and in-depth chronological investigation of topics, some of which have been introduced in grades K-2. Specific topics include: the early exploration of North America; ways of life of specific Native American peoples; life in colonial America before the Revolution. Use of timelines is encouraged.

Topics covered: World History & Geography: World Geography (Spatial Sense, Terms & Features, Canada, Important Rivers of the World); The Ancient Roman Civilization; The Vikings. American History & Geography: The Earliest Americans; Early Exploration of North America; The Thirteen Colonies: Life and Times Before the Revolution.

4th grade: Core History & Geography 4. The study of geography embraces many topics throughout the Core Knowledge Sequence, including topics in history and science. Geographic knowledge includes a spatial sense of the world, an awareness of the physical processes that shape life, a sense of the interactions between humans and their environment, an understanding of the relations between place and culture, and an awareness of the characteristics of specific regions and cultures. Many geographic topics are studied in connection with historical topics. In history, students will continue exploring cultures and civilizations from across the globe. American history and geography will continue building on what the students learned in grade 3.

Topics covered: World History & Geography: World Geography (Spatial Sense; Mountains); Europe in Middle Ages; The Spread of Islam and the “Holy Wars”; Early and Medieval African Kingdoms; China: Dynasties and Conquerors. American History & Geography: The American Revolution; Making a Constitutional Government; Early Presidents and Politics; Reformers; Symbols and Figures.

5th grade: Core History & Geography 5. The study of geography embraces many topics throughout the Core Knowledge Sequence, including topics in history and science. Geographic knowledge includes a spatial sense of the world, an awareness of the physical processes that shape life, a sense of the interactions between humans and their environment, an understanding of the relations between place and culture, and an awareness of the characteristics of specific regions and cultures. Many geographic topics are studied in connection with historical topics. In history, students will continue exploring cultures and civilizations from across the globe and learn about the history and the impact of colonization. American history and geography will study westward expansion and the Civil War.

Topics covered: World History & Geography: World Geography (Spatial Sense; Lakes); Early American Civilizations; European Exploration, Trade, and the Clash of Cultures; The Renaissance and the Reformation; England from the Golden Age to the Glorious Revolution; Russia: Early Growth and Expansion; Feudal Japan. American History & Geography: Westward Expansion; The Civil War: Causes, Conflicts, Consequences; Native Americans: Cultures and Conflicts; U.S. Geography.

6th grade: Core History & Geography 6. The World History guidelines for sixth grade begin with a study of ancient civilizations introduced in earlier grades in the Core Knowledge Sequence. Topics include Judaism, Christianity, and the civilizations of ancient Greece and Rome. The focus in sixth grade should be on the legacy of enduring ideas from these civilizations—ideas about democracy and government, for example, or about right and wrong. After this study of lasting ideas from ancient civilizations, the World History guidelines pick up the chronological thread from earlier grades with a study of the Enlightenment. Teachers will use timelines and engage students in a brief review of some major intervening events in order to help students make a smooth transition across the gap in centuries between the ancient civilizations and the Enlightenment.

In sixth grade, the World History guidelines catch up chronologically with the American History guidelines. The World History guidelines take students up to the consequences of industrialization in the mid-nineteenth century, and this is where the American History guidelines begin.

The sixth grade American History guidelines pick up chronologically with the World History guidelines on mid-nineteenth century industrialism and its consequences.

By sixth grade, children should have a good working knowledge of map-reading skills, as well as geographic terms and features introduced in earlier grades. The study of geography embraces many topics throughout the Core Knowledge Sequence, including topics in history and science. Geographic knowledge includes a spatial sense of the world, an awareness of the physical processes that shape life, a sense of the interactions between humans and their environment, an understanding of the relations between place and culture, and an awareness of the characteristics of specific regions and cultures. Many geographic topics are studied in connection with historical topics.

Topics covered: World History & Geography: World Geography (Spatial Sense; Deserts); Lasting Ideas from Ancient Civilizations; The Enlightenment; The French Revolution; Romanticism; Industrialism, Capitalism, and Socialism;

Latin American Independence Movements. American History & Geography: Immigration, Industrialization, and Urbanization; Reform.

7th grade: Core History & Geography 7. In earlier grades, the history guidelines in the Core Knowledge Sequence were organized into separate strands on World History and American History. Because the World and American History strands merged chronologically in sixth grade, here in seventh grade the Sequence presents a unified section on History and Geography. Central themes of the history guidelines in grades seven and eight are growth and change in American democracy, and interactions with world forces, particularly nationalism and totalitarianism. Fundamental principles and structure of American government will be reviewed in a civics unit in eighth grade.

The study of geography aims at understanding the spatial relationship between nature and human culture and processes that change environments. Following the main outline of the history curriculum, seventh grade students study the geography of Europe, the United States, and Japan, while eighth graders will study the Middle East, South Asia, China, Canada, Mexico, and post-Cold War changes. Students should learn locations as well as the relationships between physical and human systems.

Topics covered: America Becomes a World Power; World War I: “The Great War,” 1914–1918; Russian Revolution; America from the Twenties to the New Deal; World War II; Geography of United States

8th grade: Core History & Geography 8. In grades K–6, the history guidelines in the Core Knowledge Sequence were organized into separate strands on World History and American History. Because the World and American History strands merged chronologically in sixth grade, the Sequence presents a unified section on History and Geography in grades seven and eight. Central themes of the history guidelines in grades seven and eight are growth and change in American democracy, and interactions with world forces, particularly nationalism and totalitarianism. Fundamental principles and structure of American government are reviewed in a civics unit in this grade.

The study of geography aims at understanding the spatial relationship between nature and human culture and processes that change environments. Following the main outline of the history curriculum, eighth graders study the Middle East, South Asia, China, Canada, Mexico, and post-Cold War changes. Students should learn locations as well as the relationships between physical and human systems.

Topics covered: The Decline of European Colonialism; The Cold War; The Civil Rights Movement; The Vietnam War and the Rise of Social Activism; The Middle East and Oil Politics; The End of the Cold War: The Expansion of Democracy and Continuing Challenges; *Civics:* The Constitution—Principles and Structure of American Democracy; Geography of Canada and Mexico

Latin

The central position of language in the curriculum continues throughout the elementary and middle school grades. In grades 4 and 5, students will learn Latin and Greek roots of English words. In 6th grade, students begin learning formal Latin, and will continue with Latin through 8th grade. Latin is introduced and taught alongside English so that students learn the structural underpinnings of their own language, expand their vocabulary, and improve their reading comprehension.

All students in grades four and five will be informally introduced to Latin roots which have been demonstrated to improve reading comprehension and vocabulary and bolster performance in all subjects.

Grade 4: English from the Roots Up, Volume 1, Joegil K. Lundquist

Grade 5: English from the Roots Up, Volume 2, Joegil K. Lundquist and Jeanne L. Lundquist

Grades 6 through 8:

Grades 6 through 8 will use the series *Latin Alive!* by Karen Moore and Gaylan DuBose and *Wheelock’s Latin*. *Latin Alive!* uses an inductive approach (emphasis on vocabulary acquisition) and is appropriate for the junior high school level. Grammatical training is combined with engaging reading of original Latin texts, including illustrating the relevance of Latin in both ancient and modern history, culture, and languages. *Wheelock’s Latin* uses a deductive approach to the study of language, explicitly focused on the mastery of grammatical rules. This curriculum is appropriate for advanced students and as a supplement to the *Latin Alive!* series.

Grade 6: Latin A: *Latin Alive!* 1, Units 1 through 4 (Chapters 1 – 17).

Grade 7: Latin B: *Latin Alive! 1*, Units 5 and 6 (Chapters 18 – 29) and *Latin Alive! 2*, Units 1 and 2 (Chapters 1 – 10).

Grade 8: Latin C: *Latin Alive! 2*, Units 3 through 6 (Chapters 11 – 27).

The Latin A, B, and C series covers the equivalent of Latin I and Latin II.

The Arts

CCA will follow the CK Sequence for Music and Art.

The Core Knowledge Foundation sees the arts not as a peripheral part of the curriculum, but as an essential part of the knowledge all children should learn in the early grades. Early instruction in the arts should be noncompetitive, and provide many opportunities to sing, dance, listen to music, play act, read and write poetry, draw, paint, and make objects. Equally important, children should be exposed to fine paintings, great music, and other inspiring examples of art. As children progress in their knowledge and competencies, they can begin to learn more about the methods and terminology of the different arts, and become familiar with an ever wider range of great artists and acknowledged masterworks.

Through attaining a basic knowledge of the arts, children are not only better prepared to understand and appreciate works of art, but also to communicate their ideas, feelings, and judgments to others. A good understanding of the arts grows out of at least three modes of knowledge—creative (i.e., directly making artworks), historical, and analytical. Early study of the arts should embrace all three modes with special emphasis on creativity and active participation. The arts guidelines in the Core Knowledge Sequence are organized into two main sections: the Visual Arts and Music. While the Sequence does not present other arts such as dance or drama as separate disciplines, it incorporates them in other disciplines (for example, dance is in Music; drama, in Language Arts).

Art

K-5: Lessons on the visual arts will illustrate important elements of making and appreciating art, and emphasize important artists, works of art, and artistic concepts. When appropriate, topics in the visual arts will be linked to topics in other disciplines. Students will be introduced to a variety of artworks in different media and from various cultures.

Kindergarten: *Elements of art:* Color (Pieter Bruegel, *The Hunters in the Snow*; Helen Frankenthaler, *Blue Atmosphere*; Paul Gauguin, *Tahitian Landscape*; Pablo Picasso, *Le Gourmet*) & Line (Katsushika Hokusai, *Tuning the Samisen*; Henri Matisse, *Purple Robe and Anemones*; Joan Miró, *People and Dog in the Sun*). *Sculpture:* Northwest American Indian totem pole; Statue of Liberty; Alexander Calder's *Lobster Trap and Fish Tail*. *Looking at and talking about works of Art:* Pieter Bruegel, *Children's Games*; Mary Cassatt, *The Bath*; Winslow Homer, *Snap the Whip*; Diego Rivera, *Mother's Helper*; Henry O. Tanner, *The Banjo Lesson*

Grade 1: *Art from Long Ago:* Cave paintings, Art of Ancient Egypt: , Great Sphinx, Mummy cases: Tutankhamen's coffin, Bust of Queen Nefertiti. *Elements of Art:* Color - Claude Monet, *Tulips in Holland*, James A. McNeill Whistler, *Arrangement in Black and Gray* (also known as Whistler's Mother), Diego Rivera, *Piñata*; Line - Jacob Lawrence, *Parade*, Henri Matisse, *The Swan*, Georgia O' Keeffe, one of her Shell paintings; Shape: Jacob Lawrence, *Parade*, Grant Wood, *Stone City, Iowa*; Texture: Native American baskets (such as a pomo basket), Edgar Degas, *Little Fourteen-Year-Old Dancer* (also known as *Dressed, Ballet Dancer*), Albrecht Dürer, *Young Hare*. *Kinds of Pictures:* Portrait and Still Life: Recognize as a portrait or self-portrait: Leonardo da Vinci, *Mona Lisa*, Francisco Goya, Don Manuel Osorio Manrique de Zuñiga, Vincent van Gogh, *Self-Portrait [1889]*. Recognize as a still life: Vincent van Gogh, *Irises*, Paul Cézanne, studies with fruit, such as *Apples and Oranges*. Recognize as a mural (a painting on a wall): Diego Rivera, *The History of Medicine in Mexico*

Grade 2: *Elements of Art:* Recognize lines as horizontal, vertical, or diagonal; Observe the use of line in Pablo Picasso, *Mother and Child*, Katsushika Hokusai, *The Great Wave at Kanagawa Nami-Ura from Thirty-six, Views of Mt. Fuji*. *Sculpture:* Observe shape, mass, and line in sculptures, including *The Discus Thrower*, *Flying Horse* (from Wu-Wei, China), Auguste Rodin, *The Thinker*. *Kinds of Pictures:* Landscapes - Thomas Cole, *The Oxbow* (also known as *View from Mount Holyoke, Northampton, Massachusetts, after a Thunderstorm*), El Greco, *View of Toledo* (also known as *Toledo in a Storm*), Henri Rousseau, *Virgin Forest*, Vincent van Gogh, *The Starry Night*. *Abstract Art:* Compare lifelike and abstract animals, including paintings of birds by John James Audubon, Albrecht Dürer, *Young*

Hare, Paul Klee, Cat and Bird, Pablo Picasso, Bull's Head (made from bicycle seat and handlebars), Henri Matisse, The Snail (also known as Chromatic Composition); Observe and discuss examples of abstract painting and sculpture, including Marc Chagall, I and the Village, Constantin Brancusi, Bird in Space. *Architecture*: Understand architecture as the art of designing buildings; Understand symmetry and a line of symmetry, and observe symmetry in the design of some buildings (such as the Parthenon). Noting line, shape, and special features (such as columns and domes), look at The Parthenon, Great Stupa (Buddhist temple in Sanchi, India), Himeji Castle (also known as "White Heron Castle," Japan), The Guggenheim Museum (New York City)

Grade 3: *Elements of Art*: Light - Observe how artists use light and shadow (to focus our attention, affect our emotions, etc.) in James Chapin, Ruby Green Singing, Jan Vermeer, Milkmaid; Space in artworks - Understand the following terms: two-dimensional (height, width) and three-dimensional (height, width, depth), observe relationship between two-dimensional and three-dimensional shapes: square to cube, triangle to pyramid, circle to sphere and cylinder; Observe how artists can make two-dimensional look three-dimensional by creating an illusion of depth, and examine the foreground, middle ground, and background in paintings, including Jean Millet, The Gleaners, Pieter Bruegel, Peasant Wedding; Design : how the elements of art work together; Become familiar with how these terms are used in discussing works of art: Figure and ground, Pattern, Balance and symmetry; Rosa Bonheur, The Horse Fair, Mary Cassatt, The Bath, Early American quilts, Edward Hicks, The Peaceable Kingdom, Henri Matisse, cut-outs: Icarus, Edvard Munch, The Scream, Horace Pippin, Victorian Interior, Faith Ringgold, Tar Beach. *American Indian Art*: Works of art specified below are associated with the Southwest and Eastern Woodland Indians studied in third grade, thus other works of art, such as totem poles, are not listed here because they would be more appropriately examined when students are introduced to the Pacific Northwest Indians. Students should be made aware of the spiritual purposes and significance of many American Indian works of art. Become familiar with American Indian works, including Kachina dolls (Hopi, Zuni), Navajo (Dine) blankets and rugs, sand paintings, Jewelry. *Art of Ancient Rome and Byzantine Civilization* (introduced as part of the study of ancient Roman civilization). Become familiar with artworks of ancient Roman and Byzantine civilization, including Le Pont du Gard, The Pantheon, Byzantine mosaics, Hagia Sophia

Grade 4: In studying the works of art specified below, and in creating their own art, students will review, develop, and apply concepts introduced in previous grades, such as line, shape, form, space, texture, color, light, design, symmetry, etc. Art of the Middle Ages in Europe: Examples of medieval Madonnas (such as Madonna and Child on a Curved Throne—13th century Byzantine), Illuminated manuscripts (such as The Book of Kells), Tapestries (such as the Unicorn tapestries); Become familiar with features of Gothic architecture (spires, pointed arches, flying buttresses, rose windows, gargoyles and statues) and famous cathedrals, including Notre Dame (Paris). Islamic Art and Architecture: Become familiar with examples of Islamic art, including illuminated manuscript and illumination of the Qur'an (Koran); Note characteristic features of Islamic architecture, such as domes and minarets, in Dome of the Rock (Mosque of Omar), Jerusalem, Alhambra Palace, Spain, Taj Mahal, India. The Art of Africa: Note the spiritual purposes and significance of many African works of art, such as masks used in ceremonies for planting, harvesting, or hunting. Become familiar with examples of art from specific regions and peoples in Africa, such as Antelope headdresses of Mali, Sculptures by Yoruba artists in the city of Ife, Ivory carvings and bronze sculptures of Benin. The Art of China: Become familiar with examples of Chinese art, including Silk scrolls, Calligraphy (the art of brush writing and painting), Porcelain. The Art of a New Nation: The United States: Become familiar with famous portraits and paintings, including John Singleton Copley, Paul Revere, Gilbert Stuart, George Washington, Washington Crossing the Delaware; Become familiar with the architecture of Thomas Jefferson's Monticello.

Grade 5: *Art of the Renaissance*: The shift in world view from medieval to Renaissance art, a new emphasis on humanity and the natural world; The influence of Greek and Roman art on Renaissance artists (classical subject matter, idealization of human form, balance and proportion); The development of linear perspective during the Italian Renaissance; Observe and discuss works in different genres—such as portrait, fresco, Madonna—by Italian Renaissance artists, including Sandro Botticelli, The Birth of Venus Leonardo da Vinci: The Proportions of Man, Mona Lisa, The Last Supper Michelangelo, Ceiling of the Sistine Chapel, especially the detail known as The Creation of Adam, Raphael: The Marriage of the Virgin, examples of his Madonnas (such as Madonna and Child with the Infant St. John, The Alba Madonna, or The Small Cowper Madonna); Become familiar with Renaissance sculpture, including Donatello, Saint George, Michelangelo, David; Become familiar with Renaissance architecture, including

The Florence Cathedral, dome designed by Filippo Brunelleschi, St. Peter's in Rome; Observe and discuss paintings of the Northern Renaissance, including Pieter Bruegel, Peasant Wedding, Albrecht Dürer, Self-Portrait (such as from 1498 or 1500), Jan van Eyck, Giovanni Arnolfini and His Wife (also known as Arnolfini Wedding); *American Art*: Nineteenth-Century United States: Become familiar with the Hudson River School of landscape painting, including Thomas Cole, The Oxbow (The Connecticut River Near Northampton) (also known as View from Mount Holyoke, Northampton, Massachusetts, after a Thunderstorm), Albert Bierstadt, Rocky Mountains, Lander's Peak; Become familiar with genre paintings, including George Caleb Bingham, Fur Traders Descending the Missouri, William Sidney Mount, Eel Spearing at Setauket; Become familiar with art related to the Civil War, including Civil War photography of Mathew Brady and his colleagues, The Shaw Memorial sculpture of Augustus Saint-Gaudens; Become familiar with popular prints by Currier and Ives; *Art of Japan*: Become familiar with The Great Buddha (also known as the Kamakura Buddha), Landscape gardens

Grade 6: The focus here is intended to combine art history with analysis of specific illustrative works. Introduce the idea of classifying Western art by periods and schools, with major characteristics of each period and school. The following topics extend to the mid-nineteenth century. In later grades, students will examine late-nineteenth and twentieth-century art movements. Classical Art: The Art of Ancient Greece and Rome: Observe characteristics considered "classic"—emphasis on balance and proportion, idealization of human form—in The Parthenon and the Pantheon, The Discus Thrower and Apollo Belvedere; Gothic Art (ca. 12th - 15th centuries): Briefly review the religious inspiration and characteristic features of Gothic cathedrals. The Renaissance (ca. 1350-1600): Briefly review main features of Renaissance art (revival of classical subjects and techniques, emphasis on humanity, discovery of perspective) and examine representative works, including Raphael, The School of Athens, Michelangelo, David (review from grade 5); Baroque (ca. 17th century): Note the dramatic use of light and shade, turbulent compositions, and vivid emotional expression in El Greco, View of Toledo (also known as Toledo in a Storm), Rembrandt: a self-portrait, such as Self-Portrait, 1659; Rococo (ca. mid- to late-1700's): Note the decorative and "pretty" nature of Rococo art, the use of soft pastel colors, and the refined, sentimental, or playful subjects in Jean Honoré Fragonard, The Swing; Neoclassical (ca. late 18th - early 19th century): Note as characteristic of Neoclassical art the reaction against Baroque and Rococo, the revival of classical forms and subjects, belief in high moral purpose of art, and balanced, clearly articulated forms in Jacques Louis David, Oath of the Horatii; Romantic (ca. late 18th - 19th century): Note how Romantic art is in part a reaction against Neoclassicism, with a bold, expressive, emotional style, and a characteristic interest in the exotic or in powerful forces in nature, in Francisco Goya, The Bullfight, Eugene Delacroix, Liberty Leading the People, Caspar David Friedrich, The Chalk Cliffs on Rugen; Realism (ca. mid- to late-19th century): Note the Realist's characteristic belief that art should represent ordinary people and activities, that art does not have to be uplifting, edifying, or beautiful, in Jean Millet, The Gleaners, Gustave Courbet, The Stone Breakers; Become familiar with examples of American realism, including Winslow Homer, Northeaster, Thomas Eakins, The Gross Clinic, Henry O. Tanner, The Banjo Lesson

Grade 7: Continue the organizational scheme established in sixth grade, which combined art history with analysis of specific illustrative works. Impressionism: Examine characteristics of Impressionism in Claude Monet: Impression: Sunrise, Bridge Over a Pool of Lilies, Pierre Auguste Renoir, Luncheon of the Boating Party, Edgar Degas, a ballet painting such as Dancing Class, Mary Cassatt, The Boating Party; Post-Impressionism: Examine characteristics of Post-Impressionism in Paul Cezanne: a still life such as Apples and Oranges, a version of Mont Sainte- Victoire, The Card Players, Georges Seurat and pointillism: Sunday Afternoon on the Island of the Grande Jatte, Vincent van Gogh: The Starry Night, one of his Sunflowers, a self-portrait such as Self-Portrait [1889], Paul Gauguin: Vision After the Sermon, Hail Mary (la Orana Maria), Henri Toulouse-Lautrec, At the Moulin Rouge; Art Nouveau as a pervasive style of decoration; Expressionism and Abstraction: Examine representative artists and works, including Henri Matisse: Madame Matisse, The Red Room, cutouts such as Beasts of the Sea, Edvard Munch, The Scream, Marc Chagall, I and the Village, Pablo Picasso's early works, including Family of Saltimbanques; Cubism: Pablo Picasso, Les Femmes d'Alger (O.J. Version O), Marcel Duchamp, Nude Descending a Staircase, Picasso after Cubism: Girl Before a Mirror, Guernica, Other developers of abstraction: Vassily Kandinsky, Improvisation 31 (Sea Battle), Paul Klee, Senecio (also known as Head of a Man), Piet Mondrian, Broadway Boogie Woogie, Salvador Dali and surrealism: The Persistence of Memory; Modern American Painting: Examine representative artists and works, including Edward Hopper, Nighthawks, Andrew Wyeth, Christina's World, Georgia O'Keeffe, Red Poppies; Regionalists, social realists,

and genre painters: Grant Wood, American Gothic, Diego Rivera [Mexican], Detroit Industry, Norman Rockwell, Triple Self-Portrait

Grade 8: The curriculum here continues the organizational scheme established in sixth and seventh grades, which combined art history with analysis of specific illustrative works. **Painting Since World War II:** Examine representative artists and works, including Jackson Pollock and Abstract Expressionism: Painting, 1948, Willem de Kooning, Woman and Bicycle, Mark Rothko, Orange and Yellow, Helen Frankenthaler, Wales, Andy Warhol and Pop Art: Campbell's Soup Can, Marilyn Roy Lichtenstein, Whaam Romare Bearden, She-Ba, Jacob Lawrence, a work from his Builder series or Migration of Negroes series; **Photography:** Examine representative artists and works, including Edward Steichen, Rodin with His Sculptures "Victor Hugo" and "The Thinker", Alfred Steiglitz, The Steerage, Dorothea Lange, Migrant Mother, California, Margaret Bourke-White, Fort Peck Dam, Ansel Adams, Moonrise, Hernandez, New Mexico, Henri Cartier-Bresson, The Berlin Wall; **20th-Century Sculpture:** Examine representative artists and works, including Auguste Rodin: The Thinker, Monument to Balzac, Constantin Brancusi, Bird in Space, Pablo Picasso, Bull's Head, Henry Moore, Two Forms, Alexander Calder, Lobster Trap and Fish Tail, Louise Nevelson, Black Wall, Claes Oldenburg, Clothespin, Maya Lin, Vietnam Veterans Memorial; **Architecture Since the Industrial Revolution:** Demonstrations of metal structure: Crystal Palace, Eiffel Tower; First skyscrapers: "Form follows function" - Louis Sullivan: Wainwright Building, Famous skyscrapers: Chrysler Building, Empire State Building, Frank Lloyd Wright: Fallingwater, Guggenheim Museum, The International Style: Walter Gropius, Bauhaus Shop Block, Le Corbusier: Villa Savoye, Unite d'Habitation, Notre Dame du Haut, Ludwig Mies van der Rohe and Philip Johnson: Seagram Building

Music

K-5: Lessons on music will feature activities and works that illustrate important musical concepts and terms, and will introduce important composers and works. When appropriate, topics in music will be linked to topics in other disciplines. The curriculum focuses on content, not performance skills, though many concepts are best learned through active practice (singing, clapping rhythms, playing instruments, etc.).

Kindergarten: *Elements of Music:* Through participation, become familiar with some basic elements of music (rhythm, melody, harmony, form, timbre, etc.). *Listening and Understanding:* Recognize the following instruments by sight and sound: guitar, piano, trumpet, flute, violin, drum. Become familiar with the following works: Edvard Grieg, "Morning" and "In the Hall of the Mountain King" from Peer Gynt, Victor Herbert, "March of the Toys" from Babes in Toyland, Richard Rodgers, "March of the Siamese Children" from The King and I Camille Saint-Saëns, Carnival of the Animals Songs. *Songs:* The Bear Went Over the Mountain, Bingo, The Farmer in the Dell, Go In and Out the Window, Go Tell Aunt Rhody, Here We Go Round the Mulberry Bush, The Hokey Pokey, Hush Little Baby, If You're Happy and You Know It, Jingle Bells

Grade 1: *Elements of Music:* Through participation become familiar with basic elements of music (rhythm, melody, harmony, form, timbre, etc.). Understand that music is written down in a special way and become familiar with the basic notation. *Listening and Understanding:* Musical Terms and Concepts: Composers, know that a composer is someone who writes music. Become familiar with Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart as a composer who wrote what is known as classical music, and listen to the Allegro (first movement) from A Little Night Music (Eine kleine Nachtmusik); Orchestra: families of instruments in the orchestra: strings, brass, woodwinds, percussion. Know that the leader of the orchestra is called the conductor. Sergei Prokofiev, Peter and the Wolf. Music Can Tell a Story: Opera: opera combines music, singing, and acting; Humperdinck's Hansel and Gretel: "Brother, Come Dance with Me," "I Am the Little Sandman," "Children's Prayer."; Instrumental Music: Paul Dukas, The Sorcerer's Apprentice.; Ballet: Understand that ballet combines music and movement, often to tell a story; Tchaikovsky's Nutcracker Suite. American Musical Traditions: Understand that jazz is a kind of music that developed in America, with African and African American roots, and that jazz musicians improvise. Recognize Louis Armstrong as a great early jazz musician.

Grade 2: *Elements of Music:* Through participation, become familiar with basic elements of music (rhythm, melody, harmony, form, timbre, etc.); study musical notation. *Listening and Understanding:* The Orchestra - Review families of instruments: strings, brass, woodwinds, percussion; Become familiar with instruments in the string family—violin, viola, cello, double bass—and listen to Camille Saint-Saëns, from Carnival of the Animals: "The Swan" (cello) and

“Elephants” (double bass), Antonio Vivaldi, The Four Seasons (see below, Composers and Their Music); Become familiar with instruments in the percussion family—for example, drums (timpani, snare), xylophone, wood block, maracas, cymbals, triangle, tambourine—and listen to Carlos Chavez, Toccata for Percussion, third movement.

Keyboard Instruments: Recognize that the piano and organ are keyboard instruments, and listen to a variety of keyboard music, including: Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart, Rondo Alla turca from Piano Sonata K. 331 Ludwig van Beethoven, Für Elise, Felix Mendelssohn, from Songs without Words, “Spring Song”. *Composers and Their Music:* Biographical profiles of the following composers, and listen to representative works: Antonio Vivaldi, The Four Seasons, Johann Sebastian Bach, Minuet in G major (collected by Bach in the Anna Magdalena Notebook); Jesu, Joy of Man’s Desiring; Toccata and Fugue in D minor, Ludwig van Beethoven, Symphony No. 6 (“Pastoral”): first movement and from final movement, “Thunderstorm” to end of symphony

Grade 3: *Elements of Music:* Through participation, become familiar with basic elements of music (rhythm, melody, harmony, form, timbre, etc.) and music notation; *Listening and Understanding:* students will be exposed to a wide range of music, including children’s music, popular instrumental music, and music from various cultures. The Orchestra: Review families of instruments: strings, brass, woodwinds, percussion; Become familiar with brass instruments—trumpet, French horn, trombone, tuba—and listen to Gioacchino Rossini, William Tell Overture, finale (trumpet), Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart, selections from the Horn Concertos (French horn); Become familiar with woodwind instruments—flute and piccolo (no reeds); clarinet, oboe, bassoon (with reeds)—and listen to Claude Debussy, Prelude to the Afternoon of a Faun (flute), Opening of George Gershwin’s Rhapsody in Blue (clarinet); Composers and Their Music - Peter Ilich Tchaikovsky, Suite from Swan Lake, John Philip Sousa, Stars and Stripes Forever, Aaron Copland, Fanfare for the Common Man; “Hoedown” from Rodeo, “Simple Gifts” from Appalachian Spring; Musical Connections: Nikolai Rimsky-Korsakov, Scheherazade, part one: “The Sea and Sinbad’s Ship”

Grade 4: *Elements of Music:* Through participation, become familiar with basic elements of music (rhythm, melody, harmony, form, timbre, etc.) and music notation. *Listening and Understanding:* The Orchestra - Review the orchestra, including families of instruments and specific instruments, by listening to Benjamin Britten, The Young Person’s Guide to the Orchestra; Vocal Ranges - Recognize vocal ranges of female & male voices; Composers and Their Music: George Frederick Handel, “Hallelujah Chorus” from The Messiah, Franz Joseph Haydn, Symphony No. 94 (“Surprise”), Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart, The Magic Flute, selections, including: Overture; Introduction, “Zu Hilfe! Zu Hilfe!” (Tamino, Three Ladies); Aria, “Der Vogelfänger bin ich ja” (Papageno); Recitative and Aria, “O zittre nicht, mein lieber Sohn!” (Queen of the Night); Aria, “Ein Mädchen oder Weibchen” (Papageno); Duet, “Pa-pa-gena! Pa-pa-geno!” (Papageno and Papagena); Finale, Recitative and Chorus, “Die Strahlen der Sonne” (Sarastro and Chorus); Musical Connections: Gregorian chant

Grade 5: *Elements of Music:* Through participation, become familiar with basic elements of music (rhythm, melody, harmony, form, timbre, etc.) and music notation. *Listening and Understanding:* Composers and Their Music - Ludwig van Beethoven, Symphony No. 5, Modest Mussorgsky, Pictures at an Exhibition (as orchestrated by Ravel); Musical Connections: Music from the Renaissance (such as choral works of Josquin Desprez; lute songs by John Dowland), Felix Mendelssohn, Overture, Scherzo, and Wedding March from A Midsummer Night’s Dream; *American Musical Traditions:* Spirituals, Originated by African-Americans, many spirituals go back to the days of slavery. Familiar spirituals, such as: Down by the Riverside, Sometimes I Feel Like a Motherless Child, Wayfaring Stranger, We Shall Overcome

Grades 6-8: The Music curriculum for grades 6–8 shares a basic vocabulary of the elements of music that can inform the discussion, appreciation, and study of selected musical works. Core musical content in each grade is broadly organized as a history of music from early to modern times, with attention to specific periods, composers, and genres. Content focuses on musical vocabulary, appreciation, and history, but musical performance should be encouraged and emphasized.

Grade 6: Review as necessary from earlier grades: the orchestra and families of instruments (strings, wind, brass, percussion); keyboard instruments, Vocal ranges: soprano, mezzo-soprano, alto; tenor, baritone, bass; Recognize frequently used Italian terms; Recognize introduction, interlude, and coda in musical selections; Recognize theme and variations.; Identify chords [such as I (tonic), IV (subdominant), V (dominant); V7]; major and minor chords; chord changes; intervals (third, fourth, fifth); Understand what an octave is; musical notation. Classical Music: Baroque (ca. 1600-1750) - Counterpoint, fugue, oratorio, Johann Sebastian Bach: selections from Brandenburg Concertos,

selections from The Well- Tempered Clavier, selections from the Cantatas such as BWV 80, BWV 140, or BWV 147; George Frederick Handel: selections from Water Music, “Hallelujah Chorus” from The Messiah; Classical (ca. 1750-1825) - The classical symphony (typically in four movements) Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart, Symphony No. 40; The classical concerto: soloist, cadenza, Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart, Piano Concerto No. 21; Chamber music: string quartet, sonata, Franz Joseph Haydn, String Quartet Opus 76 No. 3, “Emperor”, Ludwig van Beethoven, Piano Sonata No. 14 (“Moonlight” Sonata); Romantic (ca. 1800-1900): Beethoven as a transitional figure: Symphony No. 9 (fourth movement), Romantic composers and works: Franz Schubert, lieder (art songs): Die Forelle (“The Trout”), Gretchen am Spinnrade (“Gretchen at the Spinning Wheel”), Frederic Chopin: “Funeral March” from Piano Sonata No. 2 in B flat minor, “Minute” Waltz, “Revolutionary” Etude in C minor Robert Schumann, Piano Concerto in A Minor

Grade 7: Classical Music: Romantics and Nationalists; Romantic Composers and Works: Composers and works: Johannes Brahms, Symphony No. 1 (fourth movement), Hector Berlioz, Symphonie Fantastique, Franz Liszt, Hungarian Rhapsody No. 2 for piano, Richard Wagner, Overture to Die Meistersinger von Nürnberg; Music and National Identity: Composers and works: Antonín Dvořák, Symphony No. 9 (“From the New World”), Edvard Grieg, Peer Gynt Suites Nos. 1 and 2, Peter Ilich Tchaikovsky, 1812 Overture; American Musical Traditions – Blues: Evolved from African-American work songs and spirituals, Twelve bar blues form; Jazz: African-American origins, Terms: improvisation, syncopation, solo and soloist; Ragtime: works of Scott Joplin (such as “The Entertainer” and “Maple Leaf Rag”) Louis Armstrong: early recordings such as “Potato Head Blues,” “West End Blues,” or “St. Louis Blues”, Duke Ellington: “Caravan,” “Take the ‘A’ Train” [by Billy Strayhorn], Miles Davis: “So What”; Influence of jazz on other music: George Gershwin’s Rhapsody in Blue

Grade 8: Non-Western Music: Become familiar with scales, instruments, and works from various lands, for example: 12-tone scale, sitar from India, Caribbean steel drums, Japanese koto. Classical Music: Nationalists and Moderns; Music and National Identity: Composers and works: Jean Sibelius, Finlandia, Bela Bartók, folk-influenced piano music such as Allegro barbaro, selections from Mikrokosmos or For Children Joaquin Rodrigo, Concierto de Aranjuez, Aaron Copland, Appalachian Spring (Suite); Modern Music - Composers and works: Claude Debussy, La Mer, first movement, “De l’aube à midi sur la mer”, Igor Stravinsky, The Rite of Spring, first performed in Paris, 1913; Vocal Music: Opera - Terms: overture, solo, duet, trio, quartet, chorus, aria, recitative; Composers and works: Gioacchino Rossini, from The Barber of Seville: Overture and “Largo al factotum”, Giuseppe Verdi, from Rigoletto: aria, “Questa o quella”; duet, “Figlia! Mio padre!”; aria, “La donna è mobile”; quartet, “Bella figlia dell’amore”; American Musical Theater: Composers and popular songs: Irving Berlin, “There’s No Business Like Show Business,” “Blue Skies”, George M. Cohan, “Give My Regards to Broadway,” “Yankee Doodle Dandy”, Cole Porter, “Don’t Fence Me In,” “You’re the Top”; Broadway musicals: selections including Jerome Kern, Showboat: “Ole Man River”, Rodgers and Hammerstein, Oklahoma!: “Oh What a Beautiful Mornin’,” “Oklahoma”, Leonard Bernstein and Stephen Sondheim, West Side Story: “Maria,” “I Feel Pretty”

Spanish

As resources permit, we will offer exposure to Spanish in the early grades, as these are the ages at which children most readily pick up languages.

Spanish will be taught in K-5; in 6-8 students will begin their Latin studies. Though ideally we would be able to continue with Spanish during these years, we believe that the additional course load will make this very difficult for most students. Since many students will continue studying Spanish in high school, we want to ensure that they retain the K-5 foundation. To this end, we will develop internal practice sessions including but not limited to, special lunch periods for oral practice, after school activities and classes, and programs led by students who speak Spanish at home.

The final curriculum will be decided upon by the Spanish teacher. Below is a sample of recommended curricula used by other classical schools for Spanish instruction:

Song School Spanish: for grades 1-3

A Spanish program that is suited to the energy, developmental level, and fun-loving nature of your early-elementary (1st-3rd grade) students! Song School Spanish is patterned after the best-selling Song School Latin curriculum and features weekly lessons peppered with songs/chants, enjoyable vocabulary, illustrations, handwriting practice,

stories, games, and activities. A small amount of grammar is introduced mildly throughout the book, with the focus on relevant, everyday vocabulary to engage young students.

Full program includes:

Song School Spanish (Student Edition). This book contains 30 weekly chapters, including review chapters, and a lively musical CD with 42 songs/chants featuring the vocabulary from each chapter – a delightful part of the program that reinforces the Spanish taught in the book. The chapters are in a captivating and creative workbook format with illustrations, handwriting practice, stories, games, and activities. Students will learn over 100 enjoyable, everyday vocabulary words and receive a very gentle introduction to Spanish grammar.

Song School Spanish Teacher's Edition. This edition contains the full content of the Song School Spanish student book, and also provides an answer key, additional teacher's notes, and fun ideas for interactive classroom activities. The latter portion of the book consists of extra activity pages and worksheets for each chapter, including the review chapters.

Song School Spanish DVD Set. The 24 episodes feature a lively, native Spanish maestra who teaches students with engaging vocabulary, skits, and grammar lessons. Students will also enjoy following Ellen in the Little Moments stories.

Spanish Amigo Match Flashcard Game. This reinforcing game features all the vocabulary from Song School Spanish. In groups or individually, students can play Memory or Go Fish by collecting Spanish and English matches. The cards can also be used as flash cards for extra practice. Each card lists the corresponding chapter number from Song School Spanish.

Spanish for Children, for grades 3-5

The Spanish for Children Primer Program teaches upper-elementary students this dynamic language using the pedagogy and structure of our popular Latin for Children series combined with immersion-style dialogues and vocabulary. The Spanish for Children series emphasizes grammar and the parts of speech as vital tools for the correct speaking and understanding of Spanish. The texts also use lively chants to aid memorization of both grammar and vocabulary.

Spanish for Children Primer A contains 37 weekly chapters, including 8 review chapters. Each chapter contains a memory page, a grammar page, a fun worksheet, and a quiz. Students will learn over 290 commonly used vocabulary words. The engaging and conversational text explains grammar concepts such as verb conjugation, tenses, and noun genders and helps teach students to construct Spanish sentences well. All teaching and explanation provided in the student edition is written at the student's reading level.

Spanish for Children Primer B contains 32 weekly chapters, including 6 review chapters and an end-of-book review. Students will learn commonly used Spanish vocabulary words in addition to weekly review of vocabulary from Spanish for Children Primer A. All teaching and explanations in the student edition are written at the student's reading level and emphasize a continued mastery of grammatical concepts. Dialogues, stories, and a puzzle about searching for a Mayan treasure keep the workbook format of this book lively and entertaining.

A special note from Spanish for Children author Julia Kraut:

Our goal with the Spanish for Children series is to teach students “why.” We focus on the rules that govern the language and spend a large amount of time comparing Spanish and English grammar. In many ways, this series doesn't teach just Spanish—it teaches how to go about learning a language in general. This is different from the “scenario-focused” approach of many other textbooks, where students learn vocabulary that relates to specific subjects and then learn to discuss those subjects. While students using SFC do memorize vocabulary each week, using groups of related words to talk about various subjects and scenarios is “the icing on the cake”—the “cake” being an understanding of the patterns of the Spanish language, and knowing which word belongs where and why.

Core Knowledge Sequence

Content and Skill Guidelines for Grades K–8



Core Knowledge[®]



PLEASE NOTE you are free:

- **to Share** — to copy, distribute and transmit the work
- **to Remix** — to adapt the work

Under the following conditions:

- **Attribution** — You must attribute the work in the following manner:
This work is based on an original work of the Core Knowledge® Foundation made available through licensing under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 3.0 Unported License. This does not in any way imply that the Core Knowledge Foundation endorses the work.
- **Noncommercial** — You may not use this work for commercial purposes.
- **Share Alike** — If you alter, transform, or build upon this work, you may distribute the resulting work only under the same or similar license to this one.

With the understanding that:

For any use or distribution, you must make clear to others the license terms of this work. The best way to do this is with a link to this web page:
<http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-sa/3.0/>

Copyright © 2013 Core Knowledge Foundation
www.coreknowledge.org

All Rights Reserved.



Core Knowledge[®]

© 2010 Core Knowledge Foundation

ISBN 978-1-890517-25-0

First printing of Core Knowledge Sequence for Preschool–Grade 8

Ninth printing of Core Knowledge Sequence for K–8

Prior editions © 1988, 1990, 1991, 1992, 1993, 1995, 1997, 1998, 1999 Core Knowledge Foundation

Third printing of Core Knowledge Preschool Sequence

Prior editions © 1997, 2000 Core Knowledge Foundation

The Core Knowledge Foundation hereby grants permission for individual reproduction of the *Core Knowledge Sequence* for noncommercial purposes. No part of this document may be reproduced or used in any other form or by other means—graphic, electronic, mechanical, including recording, taping and information storage and retrieval systems—without prior written permission and license from the Core Knowledge Foundation.

Requests for permission and license should be directed to:

Core Knowledge Foundation
801 East High Street
Charlottesville, VA 22902
telephone: (434) 977-7550
fax: (434) 977-0021
e-mail: coreknow@coreknowledge.org
home page: www.coreknowledge.org

“Core Knowledge” is a trademark of the Core Knowledge Foundation.



Contents

A Letter from the Founder	i
Preface	
What's New in the 2010 Edition?	ii
What Support is Available for Implementation of Core Knowledge	v
Introduction	
What is the <i>Core Knowledge Sequence</i> ?	vi
Teaching the <i>Core Knowledge Sequence</i>	vi
The <i>Sequence</i> as the Core of the Curriculum	vi
The Consensus Behind the <i>Core Knowledge Sequence</i>	vii
Equal Access to Knowledge Promotes Excellence and Fairness	viii
Multiculturalism in the <i>Sequence</i>	viii
The Arts in the Curriculum	viii
Core Knowledge Schools	ix
Resources for Teaching the <i>Core Knowledge Sequence</i>	ix
Preschool	
Please flip this publication over to view the <i>Preschool Sequence</i> .	
Kindergarten	
Overview of Topics	2
Language Arts	3
World History and Geography	12
American History and Geography	13
Visual Arts	15
Music	16
Mathematics	18
Science	20
Grade 1	
Overview of Topics	24
Language Arts	25
World History and Geography	35
American History and Geography	37
Visual Arts	39
Music	41
Mathematics	43
Science	45
Grade 2	
Overview of Topics	50
Language Arts	51
World History and Geography	61
American History and Geography	63
Visual Arts	66
Music	68
Mathematics	70
Science	73
Grade 3	
Overview of Topics	78
Language Arts	79
World History and Geography	83
American History and Geography	85
Visual Arts	88
Music	90
Mathematics	92
Science	95
Grade 4	
Overview of Topics	100
Language Arts	101

World History and Geography	105
American History and Geography	109
Visual Arts	112
Music	114
Mathematics	116
Science	119
Grade 5	
Overview of Topics	124
Language Arts	125
World History and Geography	129
American History and Geography	133
Visual Arts	136
Music	138
Mathematics	140
Science	143
Grade 6	
Overview of Topics	148
English	149
World History and Geography	153
American History and Geography	158
Visual Arts	160
Music	162
Mathematics	164
Science	168
Grade 7	
Overview of Topics	174
English	175
History and Geography	180
Visual Arts	186
Music	188
Mathematics	190
Science	193
Grade 8	
Overview of Topics	198
English	199
History and Geography	204
Visual Arts	210
Music	212
Mathematics	214
Science	216
Appendix A	
Why Listening and Learning are Critical to Reading Comprehension.....	223
Appendix B	
Using Trade Books to Achieve College and Career Readiness: The Principles of Democracy.....	227
Appendix C	
Domains and Core Content Objectives for the <i>Core Knowledge Language Arts</i> Program, K–2.....	240
Appendix D	
Core Knowledge Grade-by-Grade Resource Recommendations.....	266
Core Knowledge at a Glance.....	268



A Letter from
the Founder

A Letter from the Founder of the Core Knowledge Foundation, E. D. Hirsch, Jr.

March, 2010

Dear Friend of Core Knowledge,

The Board of Trustees of the Core Knowledge Foundation has long desired to make the *Core Knowledge Sequence* freely available for all non-commercial use. Frankly, what has held us back is simple economics. Even nonprofits need to pay bills, and the *Sequence*, our guide to the specific knowledge that forms the foundation of a sound, well-rounded education, has long been our biggest seller. Income from its sale allows us to break even so we can continue to advocate for a solid elementary curriculum and support a growing network of Core Knowledge schools.

While Core Knowledge is still worried about breaking even, times have changed. Today, more people recognize that a core curriculum is critical to significant educational improvement. Growing acceptance of our fundamental proposition is now being evidenced in the promising decision of several states to get behind a common core of K–12 standards in language arts and math. It would be contrary to our basic mission if we did not try to help this promising new effort prosper and succeed.

From its founding in 1986, Core Knowledge has worked to help teachers and parents understand that all of our most important goals in education—reading comprehension, language competence, and critical thinking—depend on broad knowledge, and cannot be successfully attained through language-arts instruction alone. To their credit, the authors of our emerging common core state standards understand this concept. However, standards alone are not sufficient to guarantee success. The effectiveness of the new language-arts standards will depend on the implementation of coherent, cumulative, and content-specific grade-by-grade curricula infused into language arts *and* the other subjects.

So the question has become not how can we give away our most valuable publication and foundational piece of intellectual property, but *how can we not?*

In the old sailing days you had to wait for the flood tide before setting forth, so you didn't miss the tide. That, according to Shakespeare, was true for more than sea voyages:

*There is a tide in the affairs of men,
Which, taken at the flood, leads on to fortune;
Omitted, all the voyage of their life
Is bound in shallows and in miseries.*

Or as Will Rogers put it: "Even though you are on the right track, you will get run over if you just sit there."

For those of you who are old hands on this voyage, thank you for your support throughout the years. If you are new to Core Knowledge, welcome aboard. I have never been more optimistic about the prospect for deep, meaningful, and lasting change in our schools.

Sincerely,



E. D. Hirsch, Jr.

Preface to the 2010 Edition of the *Core Knowledge Sequence*

With the prospect that many states will soon embrace a common core of K–12 standards in language arts and math, the future of the American public education system has never looked brighter than right now.

We at the Core Knowledge Foundation fervently believe that our experience over the past twenty years in championing the use of a coherent, cumulative, content-specific curriculum in schools throughout the United States can be of significant value to states and school districts nationwide looking to take the next step forward at this historic moment. The integration of common core standards in language arts and math with a coherent, cumulative, and content rich curriculum holds enormous promise. The Core Knowledge Foundation stands ready to assist states, school districts, and individual schools in taking this step and it is for that very reason that we have decided to disseminate the *Core Knowledge Sequence* as widely as possible at no cost.

We offer then this updated, 2010 online version of the *Core Knowledge Sequence*. Our original mission—Excellence and Equity for All Children—and the simple, yet powerful underlying premise of Core Knowledge, that knowledge builds on knowledge, remain unchanged. Nearly all of our most important goals for education—greater reading comprehension, the ability to think critically and solve problems, even higher test scores—are a function of the depth and breadth of our knowledge. Although current events and technology are constantly changing, there is a body of lasting knowledge and skills that form the core of a strong Preschool through Grade 8 curriculum. Explicit identification of what children should learn at each grade level ensures a coherent approach to building knowledge across all grade levels, making efficient and effective use of instructional time. Every child should learn the fundamentals of science, basic principles of government, important events in history, essential elements of mathematics, widely acknowledged masterpieces of art and music from around the world, and stories and poems passed down from generation to generation.

Over the past 20 years, we have been able to refine and fine tune the implementation of Core Knowledge, thanks to the effort and feedback of thousands of teachers and schools who have put the *Core Knowledge Sequence* into practice *in real classrooms with real students*. We have attempted to reflect our increased wisdom with regard to effective implementation in this 2010 edition of the *Sequence*.

What's New in the 2010 Edition?

We call your attention specifically to the following revisions.

- **Preschool and K–8 Guidelines in a Single Document**

The *Core Knowledge Sequence* for grades 1–5 was first released in 1988. The addition of kindergarten and the middle school grades soon followed, resulting in a single document known as the *Core Knowledge Sequence for K–8*, which is now in its ninth printing. In 1997, the Foundation published the *Core Knowledge Preschool Sequence* as a separate document that offered a coherent approach to teaching 3- to 5-year olds the specific content and skills that lay the foundation for future learning. The Core Knowledge Preschool program has flourished in its own right since that time.

By combining the *Preschool Sequence* with the K–8 guidelines, the Foundation is reasserting its firm commitment to a fully coherent approach to education that we believe is most effective when started at the earliest possible age.

The two-page spread “Core Knowledge at a Glance” in this document graphically displays an overview of this coherence across the grade levels.

- **Explicit Integration of Content and Skills**

In the early years, in order to distinguish ourselves from other education reform efforts and approaches that focused on process over subject-specific content, we identified the *Core Knowledge Sequence* as a “set of content guidelines.” Core Knowledge and the Core Knowledge Foundation became synonymous with content among knowledgeable educators. However, as sometimes happens, some began to portray Core Knowledge as an “either/or” proposition, i.e., if you were using Core Knowledge, you were focused only on content, not skills. Of course, nothing could be further from the truth. As successful Core Knowledge schools have always known, Core Knowledge is more accurately described as a “both/and” proposition: effective Core Knowledge teachers know that both content and skills are essential; they embed the teaching of critical skills within the content they share with their students. The skill objectives are most effectively targeted when they are anchored to the content in the context of a domain of knowledge. To that end, you will notice that we are now explicitly referring to the *Core Knowledge Sequence* as “Content and Skill Guidelines” for preschool–grade 8.

- **Increased Elaboration of the K–2 Language Arts Section of the *Sequence***

After many years of hoping that commercial textbook publishers would heed the cognitive science findings and insights about the link between reading comprehension and background knowledge and create new instructional materials for the teaching of reading, the Core Knowledge Foundation made the decision five years ago to raise the funds necessary to develop its own set of language arts materials. To date, we have created and field-tested comprehensive materials for grades K–2 that represent a revolutionary new approach to language arts instruction.

While these materials, the *Core Knowledge Language Arts (CKLA)* program, are not yet available for widespread sale, we have included the *CKLA* goals and objectives for kindergarten–grade 2 in this 2010 edition of the *Core Knowledge Sequence* (see Appendix C, “Domains and Core Content Objectives for the *Core Knowledge Language Arts* Program, K–2”). These goals and objectives represent our best insights into what effective language arts instruction should encompass—a broader view of “language” within the language arts block, the coherent integration of rich content, i.e., nonfiction, within the language arts block, and explicit, systematic instruction in phonics. Each of these points is further elaborated below and on the following page because we believe they are critical to realizing the full potential of the Core Knowledge program.

See the *Core Knowledge Language Arts* Program on our website for more complete information.

- **A Broader View of Language—Listening, Speaking, Reading, and Writing**

Shortly after a baby is born, an amazingly complex, interactive communication process begins between the infant and others in the child’s environment. Listening and speaking are the primary means of communication during the early years of a child’s development. It is important to understand that future reading and writing competencies are predicated on competencies in listening and speaking. Traditional language arts instruction has typically paid little attention to listening and speaking. This failure to focus on the development of oral language in language arts instruction is a serious oversight. The ability to read and write written language is highly correlated with students’ oral language proficiency and the ability to understand a text read aloud is a prerequisite for making sense of the same text in printed form. By listening to written text read aloud, children can experience the complexities of written language without expending cognitive energy on decoding. By then participating in rich, structured conversations with an adult following the read aloud, children are able to orally practice comparing, analyzing, and synthesizing ideas in written text in much the same way as they will be expected to do as independent readers in later grades. The decided advantage of this approach is that children are building these competencies in the

very early grades, instead of waiting for their own reading skills to evolve. This is especially true for those children who start school, for whatever reasons, with less experience with printed text. (See *Hart & Risley, The Early Catastrophe: The 30 Million Word Gap by Age 3* on our website.)

We are long past due the need to recognize that early language disadvantage persists and manifests itself as illiteracy when educational practices in elementary education fail to recognize the importance of oral language. It is essential that children build listening and speaking competency while also developing reading and writing skills.

See Appendix A, “Why Listening and Learning are Critical to Reading Comprehension,” for a further elaboration of why oral language is important and how the language arts block can be reconceptualized to develop listening and learning skills.

- **Coherent Integration of Content Within the Language Arts Block**

While various reading approaches are increasingly including nonfiction selections within the language arts block and textbook publishers are paying greater attention to reading in the content areas, they have typically failed to grasp the importance of developing a coherent approach to building knowledge within grades and across grade levels. Children hear and/or read about dinosaurs one day, the five senses the next time a nonfiction selection is presented, and Native Americans in the next unit. The selected texts have nothing in common except that they are nonfiction. This random approach to content area reading fails to recognize how domain knowledge builds either within a grade or cumulatively across grade levels. Incorporating nonfiction into language arts in this way is a missed opportunity and a waste of precious instructional time.

Nonfiction selections that are integrated into the language arts block must be presented in a coherent, nonfragmented way. In developing the *CKLA* materials, we have used the grade specific topics in history, science, music, and the arts from the *Core Knowledge Sequence* as the basis of our selections, thereby maintaining the content coherence that has been an integral part of Core Knowledge for the past 20 years. It has also been our experience in field testing *CKLA*, that nonfiction selections should focus on a single topic or domain over a sustained period of time—about two weeks—rather than intermingle selections on unrelated topics.

See Appendix A, “Why Listening and Learning are Critical to Reading Comprehension,” Appendix B, “Using Trade Books to Achieve College and Career Readiness: The Principles of Democracy,” and Appendix C, “Domains and Core Content Objectives for the *Core Knowledge Language Arts* Program, K–2,” for a detailed explanation of how to effectively and coherently incorporate content in the language arts block.

- **Explicit and Systematic Phonics Instruction**

The Core Knowledge Foundation has long advocated the importance of explicitly and systematically teaching young children the phonemic awareness and phonics skills necessary to decipher the written code. It is important that as teachers work to more intentionally include content within the language arts block, they not lose sight of the importance of teaching specific decoding skills, especially in the early grades. The *CKLA* materials use a synthetic phonics approach that has proven to be very effective in early field testing. The 2010 edition of the *Sequence* includes the grade specific decoding skills that are the focus of the *CKLA* materials for K–2. We plan to start development of *CKLA* materials for grades 3–5 in the near future and will post revised language arts goals for these grades as part of the online *Sequence* as soon as they are available.

The specific sequence of consonant and vowel sounds and spellings included in the *Sequence* at each grade level, K–2, represents what is taught in *CKLA* and is unique to

the *CKLA* materials. Until such time as these materials are available for sale, it may be difficult for schools to reproduce the teaching of this exact sequence of phonics skills at the designated grade levels. In the interim, we urge schools to use other materials that explicitly and systematically teach the same consonant and vowel sounds and spellings over the course of K–2, although when certain sounds and spellings are introduced may differ. See “Reading Program Recommendations” on our website for our suggestions as to which existing, commercially available materials do use a systematic and explicit approach to teaching phonics; despite the claims to include phonics, many, many basal reading programs do not do so in a systematic way.

What Support is Available for Implementation of Core Knowledge?

The Core Knowledge Foundation is ready and able to assist states, districts, and individual schools who want to join the ranks of those who are successfully implementing Core Knowledge. The newly revised Core Knowledge website (www.coreknowledge.org) offers a wealth of information on how to get started, support materials and professional development (also, see Appendix D, “Core Knowledge Grade-by-Grade Resource Recommendations” in this document) as well as many free online resources. Be sure to check out the new [online search engine](#) that will allow you to search for lesson plans on Core Knowledge topics!

Please do not hesitate to also contact us directly by phone (434-977-7550) or by e-mail: (coreknow@coreknowledge.org).

Introduction

WHAT IS THE *CORE KNOWLEDGE SEQUENCE*?

The *Core Knowledge Sequence* is a detailed outline of specific content and skills to be taught in language arts, history, geography, mathematics, science, and the fine arts. As the core of a school's curriculum, it is intended to provide a coherent, content specific foundation of learning, while allowing flexibility to meet local needs.

The *Sequence* represents an effort to describe and state the *specific* core of shared knowledge that all children should learn in U.S. schools, and that speakers and writers assume their audience knows. It should be emphasized that the *Core Knowledge Sequence* is not a list of facts to be memorized. Rather, it is a guide to *coherent content* from grade to grade, designed to encourage *cumulative* academic progress as children build their *knowledge and skills* from one year to the next.

The *Core Knowledge Sequence* is distinguished by its specificity. While other standards provide general guidelines concerning what students should be able to do, they typically offer little help to teachers in detailing specific content or skills. The *Sequence* provides a solid foundation on which to build instruction. Moreover, because the *Sequence* offers a coherent plan that builds year by year, it helps prevent the many repetitions and gaps in instruction that often result from vague curricular guidelines.

TEACHING THE *CORE KNOWLEDGE SEQUENCE*

“Students will comprehend, evaluate, and respond to works of literature and other kinds of writing which reflect their own cultures and developing viewpoints as well as those of others, using prior knowledge to extend reading ability and comprehension.”

This language arts standard is fairly typical of many performance standards. It is broad enough that disagreement is difficult—students *should* be able to comprehend, evaluate and respond to works of literature—but offers little help to teachers in planning units and lessons.

Standards typically describe what students should be able to do, but not what students should know. The content-rich, thoughtfully designed *Core Knowledge Sequence* complements state standards by offering a concrete curriculum to guide teaching and learning. Instead of spending hours researching and planning what to teach, teachers are freed to think more creatively about how to teach. They know what children have learned in previous grades and what they will need in succeeding grades. They can avoid useless repetition. They are less likely to be confronted by big gaps in what students have learned.

THE *SEQUENCE* AS THE CORE OF THE CURRICULUM

The *Core Knowledge Sequence* is not meant to outline the whole of a school's curriculum, but rather to provide a coherently organized plan for content and skills instruction, while remaining flexible enough to not exclude locally determined or other required content and skills.

Effective Core Knowledge teachers recognize that topics from the *Sequence* must not be eliminated or changed from one grade level to another. The topics in the *Sequence* have been carefully chosen to ensure educational equity. We want all students, advantaged and disadvantaged alike, to share in the common knowledge that can lead to success. “Picking and choosing” elements of the *Sequence*

or taking out topics can lead to the very inequities we wish to avoid. Core Knowledge is an integrated and sequenced curriculum that builds over time. Leaving out some of the building blocks will inevitably weaken the foundation for future learning. The Core Knowledge *Day-by-Day Planner* was designed to assist teachers in pacing and planning all topics on a given grade level, while providing a format in which you can add locally determined or other required content and skills. See Appendix D, “Core Knowledge Grade-by-Grade Resource Recommendations.”

THE CONSENSUS BEHIND THE *CORE KNOWLEDGE SEQUENCE*

The *Core Knowledge Sequence* is the result of a lengthy and rigorous process of research and consensus-building undertaken by the Core Knowledge Foundation, an independent, nonpartisan, nonprofit organization dedicated to excellence and fairness in early education.

To achieve a consensus on the topics to be included in the *Core Knowledge Sequence*, in 1986, the Foundation first analyzed the many reports issued by state departments of education and by professional organizations, such as the National Council of Teachers of Mathematics and the American Association for the Advancement of Science, which recommend general outcomes for elementary and secondary education. We also examined the knowledge and skills specified in the successful educational systems of several other countries, including France, Japan, Sweden, and Germany.

In addition, we formed an advisory board on multiculturalism that proposed the inclusion of diverse cultural traditions that American children should all share as part of their school-based common culture. We sent the resulting materials to three independent groups of teachers, scholars, and scientists around the country, asking them to create a master list of the core knowledge children should have learned by the end of the grade 6. About 150 teachers, including college professors, scientists, and administrators, were involved in this initial step.

These items were combined into a draft *Sequence*, and additional groups of teachers and specialists were asked to agree on a grade-by-grade sequence of the items. That draft sequence was then sent to some 100 educators and specialists who participated in a national conference that was called to hammer out a working agreement on core knowledge for the first six grades; kindergarten, grades 7 and 8, and preschool were subsequently added to the *Sequence*.

This important meeting took place in March 1990. The conferees were elementary school teachers, curriculum specialists, scientists, science writers, officers of national organizations, representatives of ethnic groups, district superintendents, and school principals from across the country. A total of 24 working groups decided on revisions to the draft sequence. The resulting provisional *Core Knowledge Sequence* was fine-tuned during a year of implementation at a pioneering school, Three Oaks Elementary in Lee County, Florida. Also, the Visual Arts and Music sections of the *Sequence* were further developed based on the research of the Core Knowledge Foundation, with the assistance of advisors and teachers.

Because the *Sequence* is intended to be a living document that provides a foundation of knowledge that speakers and writers assume their audiences know, it has been—and will continue to be periodically updated and revised. In general, however, there is more stability than change in the *Sequence*. (See E. D. Hirsch Jr.’s *Cultural Literacy* for a discussion of the inherent stability of the content of literate culture.)

EQUAL ACCESS TO KNOWLEDGE PROMOTES EXCELLENCE AND FAIRNESS

Only by specifying the knowledge that all children should share can we guarantee equal access to that knowledge. In our current system, disadvantaged children especially suffer from low expectations that translate into watered-down curricula. In schools teaching the *Core Knowledge Sequence*, however, disadvantaged children, like all children, are exposed to a coherent core of challenging, interesting knowledge. This provides a foundation for later learning, but also makes up the common ground for communication in our diverse society.

All the most successful educational systems in the world teach a core of knowledge in the early grades. As both research and common sense demonstrate, we learn new knowledge by building on what we already know. It is important to begin building foundations of knowledge in the early grades because that is when children are most receptive, and because academic deficiencies in the first eight grades can permanently impair the quality of later schooling.

MULTICULTURALISM IN THE SEQUENCE

Respect for the diversity in our population is fostered by the subjects specified in the *Core Knowledge Sequence*, which has been reviewed by distinguished scholars in the field of multicultural studies. Some people have urged the Foundation to make a separate listing of multicultural entries in this *Sequence*, but to do so would contradict our embrace of an inclusive, rather than divisive, multiculturalism. As Professor James Comer of Yale University has written in a review of E. D. Hirsch's *Cultural Literacy*,

... respect for cultural diversity is important but is best achieved when young people have adequate background knowledge of mainstream culture. In order for a truly democratic and economically sound society to be maintained, young people must have access to the best knowledge available so that they can understand the issues, express their viewpoints, and act accordingly.

The *Core Knowledge Sequence* is designed to provide “access to the best knowledge available,” including significant knowledge of diverse peoples and cultures. For a more detailed discussion of these issues, see E. D. Hirsch's essay, “Toward a Centrist Curriculum: Two Kinds of Multiculturalism in Elementary School” on our website.

THE ARTS IN THE CURRICULUM

The Core Knowledge Foundation sees the arts not as a peripheral part of the curriculum, but as an essential part of the knowledge all children should learn in the early grades.

Early instruction in the arts should be noncompetitive, and provide many opportunities to sing, dance, listen to music, play act, read and write poetry, draw, paint, and make objects. Equally important, children should be exposed to fine paintings, great music, and other inspiring examples of art. As children progress in their knowledge and competencies, they can begin to learn more about the methods and terminology of the different arts, and become familiar with an ever wider range of great artists and acknowledged masterworks.

Through attaining a basic knowledge of the arts, children are not only better prepared to understand and appreciate works of art, but also to communicate their ideas, feelings, and judgments to others. A good understanding of the arts grows out of at least three modes of knowledge—creative (i.e., directly making artworks), historical, and analytical. Early study of the arts should embrace all three modes with special emphasis on creativity and active participation.

The arts guidelines in the *Core Knowledge Sequence* are organized into two main sections: the Visual Arts and Music. While the *Sequence* does not present other arts such as dance or drama as separate disciplines, we acknowledge their importance and have incorporated them in other disciplines (for example, dance is in Music; drama, in Language Arts).

CORE KNOWLEDGE SCHOOLS

The Core Knowledge Foundation serves as the hub of a nationwide network of hundreds of Core Knowledge schools. Presentations and workshops are available to introduce Core Knowledge and to assist schools in the implementation of the *Core Knowledge Sequence*. Core Knowledge schools are dedicated to teaching solid academic content and skills to all children. To implement Core Knowledge, many people involved with the school's operations, including both staff and parents, need to engage in a great deal of thoughtful discussion and cooperative planning. Teachers make a commitment to teach all the topics in the *Sequence* at the assigned grade levels. This commitment ensures consistency, and helps avoid serious gaps in knowledge, and repetitions in instruction, as students progress through the grades.

The *Sequence* serves as the planning document in each classroom. Its high level of specificity proves useful not only when planning but also when communicating among staff members and with parents. Core Knowledge schools develop a school-wide plan to teach all of the topics in the *Sequence*. Typically this plan is developed over a period of two to three years, either by phasing in topics and subjects, or by adding additional grade levels each year. The Foundation holds national conferences to provide opportunities for networking with other Core Knowledge schools and obtaining new ideas for teaching the topics in the *Sequence*.

For more information on adopting or implementing the *Core Knowledge Sequence*, including recommended professional development, contact the Core Knowledge Foundation at 434-977-7550 or at coreknow@coreknowledge.org.

RESOURCES FOR TEACHING THE CORE KNOWLEDGE SEQUENCE

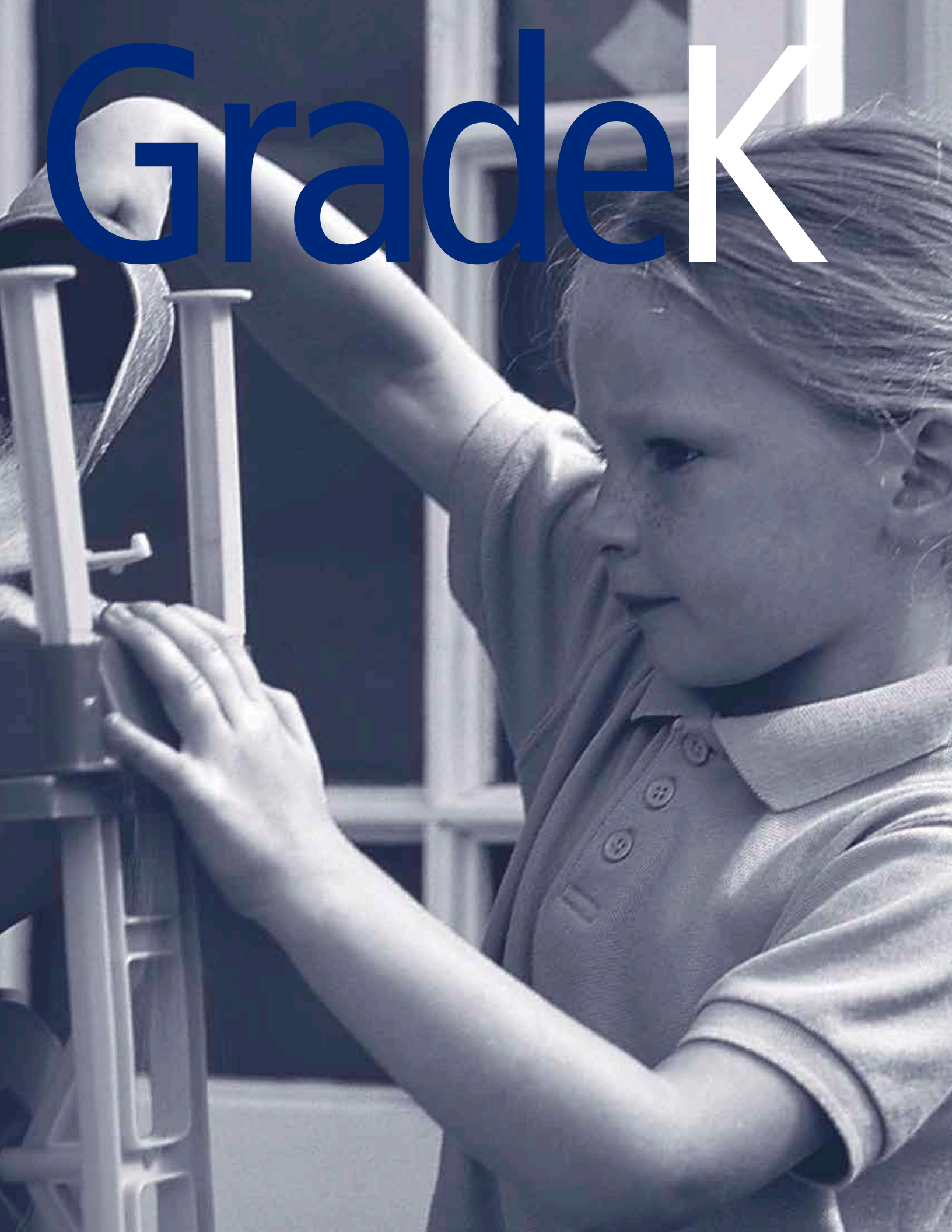
As an initial introduction to Core Knowledge, teachers and parents may wish to consult the books in the Core Knowledge series, titled *What Your Preschooler–Sixth Grader Needs to Know*, edited by E. D. Hirsch, Jr. The books are available at bookstores nationwide, or they may be ordered from the Core Knowledge Foundation by calling 1-800-238-3233.

Once a decision has been made to implement Core Knowledge, we strongly recommend the purchase of the grade specific *Core Knowledge Teacher Handbook* and the *Day-by-Day Planner*. A grade-by-grade listing of recommended resources for both teachers and students is included in Appendix D.

For a list of current resources and prices, visit the Core Knowledge website at www.coreknowledge.org or contact us directly at:

Core Knowledge Foundation
801 East High Street
Charlottesville, VA 22902
telephone: (434) 977-7550
fax: (434) 977-0021

e-mail: coreknow@coreknowledge.org
home page: www.coreknowledge.org



Grade K

Overview of Topics

Kindergarten

Language Arts

- I. Listening and Speaking
 - A. Classroom Discussion
 - B. Presentation of Ideas and Information
 - C. Comprehension and Discussion of Read-Alouds—All Texts
 - D. Comprehension and Discussion of Read-Alouds—Fiction, Drama, and Poetry
 - E. Comprehension and Discussion of Read-Alouds—Nonfiction and Informational Text
- II. Reading
 - A. Print Awareness
 - B. Phonological and Phonemic Awareness
 - C. Phonics: Decoding and Encoding
 - D. Oral Reading and Fluency
 - E. Reading Comprehension—All Texts
- III. Writing
- IV. Language Conventions
 - A. Handwriting and Spelling
 - B. Parts of Speech and Sentence Structure
 - C. Capitalization and Punctuation
- V. Poetry
 - A. Mother Goose and Other Traditional Poems
 - B. Other Poems, Old and New
- VI. Fiction
 - A. Stories
 - B. Aesop's Fables
 - C. American Folk Heroes and Tall Tales
 - D. Literary Terms
- VII. Sayings and Phrases

History and Geography

World:

- I. Geography: Spatial Sense
- II. An Overview of the Seven Continents

American:

- I. Geography
- II. Native American Peoples, Past and Present

- III. Early Exploration and Settlement
 - A. The Voyage of Columbus in 1492
 - B. The Pilgrims
 - C. July 4, "Independence Day"
- IV. Presidents, Past and Present
- V. Symbols and Figures

Visual Arts

- I. Elements of Art
 - A. Color
 - B. Line
- II. Sculpture
- III. Looking at and Talking about Works of Art

Music

- I. Elements of Music
- II. Listening and Understanding
- III. Songs

Mathematics

- I. Patterns and Classification
- II. Numbers and Number Sense
- III. Money
- IV. Computation
- V. Measurement
- VI. Geometry

Science

- I. Plants and Plant Growth
- II. Animals and Their Needs
- III. The Human Body
- IV. Introduction to Magnetism
- V. Seasons and Weather
- VI. Taking Care of the Earth
- VII. Science Biographies

Language Arts: Kindergarten

The *Common Core State Standards for English Language Arts* emphasize the critical importance of building nonfiction background knowledge in a coherent and sequenced way within and across grades. This can be accomplished most effectively, at each grade level, by integrating the topics from history, geography, science, and the arts in the *Core Knowledge Sequence* into the language arts block. Note that in the *Sequence*, there are many cross-curricular connections to history and science topics within Language Arts (e.g., poems, stories, and sayings), as well as to visual arts and music, which can and should be integrated into the applicable domain of study.

For Kindergarten, domains include: An Overview of the Seven Continents; Native American Peoples, Past and Present; Early Exploration and Settlement; Presidents, Past and Present; Plants and Plant Growth; Animals and Their Needs; The Human Body; Introduction to Magnetism; Seasons and Weather; Taking Care of the Earth.

NOTE: The objectives listed in sections I–IV of Language Arts below are consistent with the *Core Knowledge Language Arts* program and embed all of the skills and concepts within the *Common Core State Standards for English Language Arts*.

I. Listening and Speaking

Teachers: Shortly after a baby is born, an amazingly complex, interactive communication process begins between the infant and others in his/her environment. While it may seem like an obvious statement, it is nonetheless worth making the point that listening and speaking are the primary means of communication throughout the early years of a young child's development. It should be equally obvious that reading and writing competencies are predicated on competencies in listening and speaking. When a child enters kindergarten, however, traditional language arts instruction has typically accorded little, if any, attention to the ongoing development of children's listening and speaking ability. We have acted as if listening and speaking competencies are fully and firmly established and can be left behind, as reading and writing instruction begins. Nothing could be further from the truth. This omission in language arts instruction has been a serious oversight. We must remedy this oversight, deliberately elaborating and extending listening and speaking skills, while we simultaneously begin to introduce reading, and then writing. Children who are fortunate enough to participate in language arts instruction that recognizes the importance of continuing to build listening and speaking competency while also beginning reading and writing instruction will, in the end, be far more literate adults.

A. CLASSROOM DISCUSSION

- Participate in age appropriate activities involving listening and speaking.
- Speak clearly with volume appropriate to the setting.
- Use agreed-upon rules for group discussions, i.e., look at and listen to the speaker, raise hand to speak, take turns, say "excuse me" or "please," etc.
- Ask questions to clarify conversations, directions, exercises, and/or classroom routines.
- Carry on and participate in a conversation over four to five turns, staying on topic, initiating comments or responding to a partner's comments, with either an adult or another child of the same age.
- Identify and express physical sensations, mental states, and emotions of self and others.
- Understand and use language to express spatial and temporal relationships (*up, down, first, last, before, after, etc.*).
- Understand and use narrative language to describe people, places, things, locations, events, actions.
- Understand and use common sayings and phrases such as "Better safe than sorry" and "Look before you leap" (see page 11).

B. PRESENTATION OF IDEAS AND INFORMATION

- Follow multi-step, oral directions.
- Give simple directions.
- Provide simple explanations.
- Recite a nursery rhyme, poem or song independently.

C. COMPREHENSION AND DISCUSSION OF READ-ALOUDS—ALL TEXTS

Teachers: Written text makes use of richer vocabulary and more complex syntax than conversational language. It is important that young children be exposed not only to the language of everyday conversation but also to the richer and more formal language of books. This can be done through frequent reading aloud. Helping young children develop the ability to listen to and understand written texts read aloud must be an integral part of any initiative designed to build literacy.

At the kindergarten level, a child's ability to understand what he hears far outpaces his ability to independently read and understand written text. By listening to stories or nonfiction selections read aloud, children can experience the complexities of written language without expending cognitive energy on decoding; they can likewise access deeper and more complex content knowledge than they are presently able to read independently.

Careful consideration should be given to the selection of books read aloud to ensure that the vocabulary and syntax presented is rich and complex. Leveled texts will not provide the rich language experience desired during read-alouds and should only be used as a starting point with students for whom English is a second language.

Grade appropriate read-aloud selections for poetry and fiction are included on pages 9–11. Nonfiction read-alouds should be selected on the basis of the history, science, music and visual art topics identified for kindergartners in the *Core Knowledge Sequence*, with emphasis on history and science read-alouds. It is strongly recommended that daily read-alouds focus on a single topic over a sustained period of time—about two weeks—rather than intermingling read-alouds on a variety of subjects. Careful consideration should be given to the order in which nonfiction read-alouds are presented to ensure that knowledge about a topic builds in a progressive and coherent way.

Following any read-aloud, children should participate in rich, structured conversations with an adult in response to the written text that has been read aloud. In this way, they can begin to orally practice comparing, analyzing, and synthesizing ideas in written text in much the same way as they will be expected to do as independent readers in the later grades.

- Listen to and understand a variety of texts read aloud, including fictional stories, fairy tales, fables, historical narratives, drama, informational text, and poems.

Grasping Specific Details and Key Ideas

- Describe illustrations.
- Sequence four to six pictures illustrating events in a read-aloud.
- Answer questions requiring literal recall and understanding of the details and/or facts of a read-aloud, i.e., who, what, where, when, etc.
- Retell key details.
- Ask questions to clarify information in a read-aloud.
- Use narrative language to describe people, places, things, locations, events, actions, a scene or facts in a read-aloud.

Observing Craft and Structure

- Understand and use words and phrases heard in read-alouds.
- Compare and contrast similarities and differences within a single read-aloud or between two or more read-alouds.
- Make personal connections to events or experiences in a read-aloud and/or make connections among several read-alouds.

Integrating Information and Evaluating Evidence

- Prior to listening to a read-aloud, identify what they know and have learned that may be related to the specific story or topic to be read aloud.
- Use pictures accompanying the read-aloud to check and support understanding of the read-aloud.
- Make predictions prior to and during a read-aloud, based on the title, pictures, and/or text heard thus far and then compare the actual outcomes to predictions.
- Answer questions that require making interpretations, judgments, or giving opinions about what is heard in a read-aloud, including answering “why” questions that require recognizing cause/effect relationships.
- Identify who is telling a story or providing information in a text.

D. COMPREHENSION AND DISCUSSION OF READ-ALOUDS—FICTION, DRAMA, AND POETRY

- Retell or dramatize a story, using narrative language to describe characters, setting(s), and a beginning, a middle and an end to events of the story in proper sequence.
- Change some story events and provide a different story ending.
- Create and tell an original story, using narrative language to describe characters, setting(s), and a beginning, a middle and an end to events of the story in proper sequence.
- Distinguish fantasy from realistic text in a story.
- Demonstrate understanding of literary language (e.g., author, illustrator, characters, setting, plot, dialogue, personification, simile, and metaphor) and use some of these terms in retelling stories or creating their own stories.

E. COMPREHENSION AND DISCUSSION OF READ-ALOUDS—NONFICTION AND INFORMATIONAL TEXT

Teachers: Select nonfiction read-aloud topics from the kindergarten history, science, music, and visual arts topics listed on pages 12–21, with emphasis on history and science.

- Retell important facts and information from a nonfiction read-aloud.
- With assistance, categorize and organize facts and information within a given topic.
- With assistance, create and interpret timelines and lifelines related to read-alouds.
- Distinguish read-alouds that describe events that happened long ago from those that describe contemporary or current events.

II. Reading

A. PRINT AWARENESS

- Demonstrate understanding that what is said can be written and that the writing system is a way of writing down sounds.
- Demonstrate understanding of directionality (left to right, return sweep, top to bottom, front to back).
- Identify the parts of books and function of each part (front cover, back cover, title page, table of contents).
- Demonstrate correct book orientation by holding book correctly and turning pages.
- Recognize that sentences in print are made up of separate words.
- Understand that words are separated by spaces.
- Distinguish letters, words, sentences, and stories.
- Demonstrate understanding of basic print conventions by tracking and following print word for word when listening to text read aloud.
- Demonstrate understanding that the sequence of letters in a written word represents the sequence of sounds in the spoken word.
- Recognize and name the 26 letters of the alphabet in both their upper-case and lower-case forms.

- Say the letters of the alphabet in order, either in song or recitation.

B. PHONOLOGICAL AND PHONEMIC AWARENESS

- Identify environmental sounds, e.g., keys jingling, scissors cutting, clapping.
- Identify whether pairs of environmental sounds are the same or different.
- Count the number of environmental sounds heard, e.g., clapping, rhythm band instruments.
- Orally segment sentences into discrete words.
- Demonstrate understanding that words are made up of sequences of sounds.
- Demonstrate understanding that vowel sounds are produced with the mouth open and airflow unobstructed, whereas consonant sounds involve closing parts of the mouth and blocking the air flow.
- Given a pair of spoken words, select the one that is longer (i.e., contains more phonemes).
- In riddle games, supply words that begin with a target phoneme.
- Indicate whether a target phoneme is or is not present in the initial/medial/final position of a spoken word, e.g., hear /m/ at the beginning of *mat* and /g/ at the end of *bag*.
- Listen to one-syllable words and tell the beginning or ending sounds, e.g., given *dog*, identify initial /d/ or final /g/.
- Recognize the same phoneme in different spoken words, e.g., /b/ in *ball*, *bug*, and *big*.
- Identify whether pairs of phonemes are the same or different, including pairs that differ only in voicing, e.g., /b/ and /p/.
- Orally blend two to three sounds to form a word, e.g., given the sounds /k/.../a/... /t/, blend to make *cat*.
- Segment a spoken word into phonemes, e.g., given *bat*, produce the segments/b//a//t/.
- Given a spoken word, produce another word that rhymes, e.g., given *hit*, supply *bit* or *mitt*.
- Identify the number of syllables in a spoken word.

C. PHONICS: DECODING AND ENCODING

Teachers: Learning to read requires understanding and mastering the written English code through explicit and systematic phonics instruction. Research suggests that phonics instruction is most effective when specific letter-sound relationships are taught and reinforced by having children both read and write the letter-sound correspondence being studied. Reading and writing—decoding and encoding—are complementary processes that ensure mastery of the written code.

- Demonstrate understanding that a systematic, predictable relationship exists between written letters (graphemes) and spoken sounds (phonemes).
- Blend individual phonemes to pronounce printed words.
- Understand that sometimes two or more printed letters stand for a single sound.
- Read and write any CVC word, e.g., *sit* or *cat*.
- Read and write one-syllable words containing common initial consonant clusters such as tr-, fl-, dr- and sp- and consonant digraphs such as ch-, sh-, th-, etc.
- Read and write words containing separated vowel graphemes, such as, *late*, *bite*, *note*, *cute*.
- Read tricky spellings that can be sounded two ways, e.g., the letter ‘s’ sounded /s/ as in *cats* and /z/ as in *dogs*.
- Read and write chains of one-syllable words in which one sound is added, substituted, or omitted, e.g., read at > cat > bat > bad > bid.
- Read at least 15 words generally identified as very high frequency words.

CONSONANT SOUNDS AND SPELLINGS TAUGHT IN KINDERGARTEN

/b/ spelled 'b' as in *boy*, 'bb' as in *tubby*
 /d/ spelled 'd' as in *dog*, 'dd' as in *madder*
 /f/ spelled 'f' as in *fun*, 'ff' as in *stuff*
 /g/ spelled 'g' as in *get*, 'gg' as in *egg*
 /h/ spelled 'h' as in *him*
 /j/ spelled 'j' as in *jump*
 /k/ spelled 'c' as in *cat*, 'k' as in *kitten*, 'ck' as in *sick*, 'cc' as in *moccasin*
 /l/ spelled 'l' as in *lip*, 'll' as in *sell*
 /m/ spelled 'm' as in *mad*, 'mm' as in *hammer*
 /n/ spelled 'n' as in *net*, 'nn' as in *funny*
 /p/ spelled 'p' as in *pet*, 'pp' as in *happy*
 /r/ spelled 'r' as in *red*, 'rr' as in *earring*
 /s/ spelled 's' as in *sit*, 'ss' as in *dress*
 /t/ spelled 't' as in *top*, 'tt' as in *butter*
 /v/ spelled 'v' as in *vet*
 /w/ spelled 'w' as in *wet*
 /x/ spelled 'x' as in *tax*
 /y/ spelled 'y' as in *yes*
 /z/ spelled 'z' as in *zip*, 'zz' as in *buzz*, 's' as in *dogs*
 /ch/ spelled 'ch' as in *chop*
 /sh/ spelled 'sh' as in *ship*
 /th/ spelled 'th' as in *thin*
 /th/ spelled 'th' as in *then*
 /qu/ spelled 'qu' as in *quick*
 /ng/ spelled 'ng' as in *sing*, 'n' as in *pink*

VOWEL SOUNDS AND SPELLINGS TAUGHT IN KINDERGARTEN

/a/ spelled 'a' as in *cat*
 /e/ spelled 'e' as in *get*
 /i/ spelled 'i' as in *hit*
 /o/ spelled 'o' as in *hot*
 /u/ spelled 'u' as in *but*
 /ae/ spelled 'a_e' as in *cake*
 /ee/ spelled 'ee' as in *bee*
 /ie/ spelled 'i_e' as in *bike*
 /oe/ spelled 'o_e' as in *note*
 /ue/ spelled 'u_e' as in *cute*
 /er/ spelled 'er' as in *her*
 /ar/ spelled 'ar' as in *car*
 /or/ spelled 'or' as in *for*

D. ORAL READING AND FLUENCY

- Read decodable stories that incorporate the specific code knowledge that has been taught.
- Use phonics skills in conjunction with context to confirm or self-correct word recognition and understanding, rereading as necessary.
- Demonstrate understanding of and use commas and end punctuation while reading orally.
- Read aloud, alone, or with a partner at least 15 minutes each day.

E. READING COMPREHENSION—ALL TEXTS

Teachers: It is important to recognize that kindergartners are taught only some of the many letter-sound correspondences a reader needs to know to read a wide range of printed material. As a result, many kindergartners will be able to read independently only the simplest written text. At this grade level, mental energy will be primarily directed to the act of reading, i.e., decoding. A focus on the mechanics of decoding is appropriate and desirable at this early stage in the reading process. In kindergarten, attention to reading comprehension should be directed to ensuring a fundamental understanding of what has been read. At this grade level, it will generally be more effective and efficient to devote time to higher level thinking and comprehension skills at the listening and speaking level in response to written texts that are read aloud.

- Demonstrate understanding of simple decodable text after reading independently.

Grasping Specific Details and Key Ideas

- Answer questions requiring literal recall and understanding of the details and/or facts (i.e., who, what, where, when, etc.) about a text that has been read independently.
- Retell or dramatize a story, using narrative language to describe characters, setting(s), and a beginning, a middle and an end to events of the story in proper sequence.
- Use narrative language to describe people, places, things, locations, events, actions, a scene or facts from a text that has been read independently.

Observing Craft and Structure

- Understand and use words and phrases from a text that has been read independently.

Integrating Information and Evaluating Evidence

- Prior to reading, identify what they know and have learned that may be related to the specific story or topic to be read.
- Use pictures accompanying the written text to check and support understanding.
- Make predictions prior to and while reading, based on the title, pictures, and/or text read thus far and then compare the actual outcomes to predictions.
- Identify who is telling a story or providing information in a text.

III. Writing

Teachers: It is important to recognize that of all the communication skills—listening, speaking, reading, and writing—writing is the most demanding and challenging, especially for kindergartners who are just learning not only the code, but the fine motor skills and letter strokes necessary to put something down on paper. Kindergartners can, however, express themselves in writing by drawing pictures and, as they begin to learn some of the code, copying or writing words, phrases, and sentences.

In addition, students can also participate in shared writing exercises modeled and scaffolded by an adult. The focus in shared writing should be on encouraging the students to verbally express themselves coherently and in complete sentences, as the teacher serves as a scribe.

Writing to Reflect Audience, Purpose and Task

- Draw pictures to represent a text that has been heard or read independently.
- Draw pictures to represent a preference or opinion.
- Write narratives, informative and explanatory texts, and offer an opinion through shared writing exercises.
- With assistance, add details to writing.
- Create a title or caption to accompany a picture and/or shared writing.

IV. Language Conventions

- Form letters, words, phrases and sentences to communicate thoughts and ideas.
- Apply basic spelling conventions.
- Use basic capitalization and punctuation in sentences to convey meaning.

A. HANDWRITING AND SPELLING

- Hold a pencil with a pincer grasp and make marks on paper.
- Trace, copy, and print from memory the 26 letters of the alphabet accurately in both their upper-case and lower-case forms.
- Write own name.
- Write from left to right, leaving spaces between words, and top to bottom using return sweep.
- Begin to write phonemically plausible spellings for words that cannot be spelled correctly with current code knowledge, e.g., write *bote* for *boat*, *sum* for *some*, *hunee* for *honey*.
- Write words, phrases, and sentences from dictation, applying phonics knowledge.

B. PARTS OF SPEECH AND SENTENCE STRUCTURE

- Use and understand question words, i.e., what, where, when, who, how.
- Form regular plural nouns by adding 's' or 'es', i.e., dog, dogs, wish, wishes.
- Demonstrate understanding of frequently occurring prepositions, i.e., *to/from*, *in/out*, *on/off*.
- Produce and expand complete sentences orally and in shared writing exercises.

C. CAPITALIZATION, AND PUNCTUATION

- Capitalize the first word in a sentence, the pronoun *I*.
- Identify and use end punctuation, including periods, question marks, and exclamation points.

V. Poetry

Teachers: Children should be introduced to a varied selection of poetry with strong rhyme and rhythm. Children should hear these rhymes read aloud, and should say some of them aloud. Some rhymes may also be sung to familiar melodies. The poems listed here represent some of the most popular and widely anthologized titles; children may certainly be introduced to more Mother Goose rhymes beyond the selection below. Although children are not expected to memorize the following rhymes, they will delight in knowing their favorites by heart, and will experience a sense of achievement and satisfaction in being able to recite some of the rhymes.

A. MOTHER GOOSE AND OTHER TRADITIONAL POEMS

A Diller, A Dollar
 Baa, Baa, Black Sheep
 Diddle, Diddle, Dumpling
 Early to Bed
 Georgie Porgie
 Hey Diddle Diddle
 Hickory, Dickory, Dock
 Hot Cross Buns
 Humpty Dumpty
 It's Raining, It's Pouring
 Jack and Jill
 Jack Be Nimble
 Jack Sprat
 Ladybug, Ladybug
 Little Bo Peep
 Little Boy Blue

Note Regarding

PRESCHOOL Content:

Some of the poems and stories specified here are appropriate for preschoolers. Indeed, one would hope that most preschoolers would come to kindergarten having heard, for example, some Mother Goose rhymes or the story of "Goldilocks and the Three Bears." However, as not all children attend preschool, and as home preparation varies, the *Core Knowledge Sequence* offers a core of familiar rhymes and stories for all kindergarten children. See also the *Core Knowledge Preschool Sequence*, available from the Core Knowledge Foundation.

Little Jack Horner
 Little Miss Muffet
 London Bridge Is Falling Down
 Mary, Mary, Quite Contrary
 Old King Cole
 Old Mother Hubbard
 One, Two, Buckle My Shoe
 Pat-a-Cake
 Rain, Rain, Go Away
 Ride a Cock-Horse
 Ring Around the Rosey
 Rock-a-bye, Baby
 Roses Are Red
 See-Saw, Margery Daw
 Simple Simon
 Sing a Song of Sixpence
 Star Light, Star Bright
 There Was a Little Girl
 There Was an Old Woman Who Lived in a Shoe
 This Little Pig Went to Market
 Three Blind Mice

Note: The poems listed here constitute a selected core of poetry for this grade. You are encouraged to expose children to more poetry, old and new. To bring children into the spirit of poetry, read it aloud and encourage them to speak it aloud so they can experience the music in the words.

B . OTHER POEMS, OLD AND NEW

April Rain Song (Langston Hughes)
 Happy Thought (Robert Louis Stevenson)
 I Do Not Mind You, Winter Wind (Jack Prelutsky)
 Mary Had a Little Lamb (Sara Josepha Hale)
 The More It Snows (A. A. Milne)
 My Nose (Dorothy Aldis)
 Rain (Robert Louis Stevenson)
 Three Little Kittens (Eliza Lee Follen)
 Time to Rise (Robert Louis Stevenson)
 Tommy (Gwendolyn Brooks)
 Twinkle Twinkle Little Star (Jane Taylor)

VI. Fiction

Teachers: While the following works make up a strong core of literature, the content of language arts includes not only stories, fables, and poems, but also the well-practiced, operational knowledge of how written symbols represent sounds, and how those sounds and symbols convey meaning. Thus, the stories specified below are meant to complement, not to replace, materials designed to help children practice decoding and encoding skills (see above, II. Reading and III. Writing).

The following works constitute a core of stories for this grade. In kindergarten, these stories are meant to be read-aloud selections. Expose children to many more stories, including classic picture books and read-aloud books. (In schools, teachers across grade levels should communicate their choices in order to avoid undue repetition.) Children should also be exposed to nonfiction prose: biographies, books on science and history, books on art and music, etc. And, children should be given opportunities to tell and write their own stories.

A. STORIES

The Bremen Town Musicians (Brothers Grimm)
 Chicken Little (also known as “Henny-Penny”)
 Cinderella (Charles Perrault)
 Goldilocks and the Three Bears
 How Many Spots Does a Leopard Have? (African folktale)

King Midas and the Golden Touch
 The Legend of Jumping Mouse (Native American: Northern Plains legend)
 The Little Red Hen
 Little Red Riding Hood
 Momotaro: Peach Boy (Japanese folktale)
 Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs
 The Three Billy Goats Gruff
 The Three Little Pigs
 A Tug of War (African folktale)
 The Ugly Duckling (Hans Christian Andersen)
The Velveteen Rabbit (Margery Williams)
 selections from *Winnie-the-Pooh* (A. A. Milne)
 The Wolf and the Kids (Brothers Grimm)

B. AESOP'S FABLES

The Lion and the Mouse
 The Grasshopper and the Ants
 The Dog and His Shadow
 The Hare and the Tortoise

C. AMERICAN FOLK HEROES AND TALL TALES

Johnny Appleseed
 Casey Jones

D. LITERARY TERMS

Teachers: As children become familiar with stories, discuss the following:

author
 illustrator

Note: Children will read more American folk heroes and tall tales in grade 2.

VII. Sayings and Phrases

Teachers: Every culture has phrases and proverbs that make no sense when carried over literally into another culture. For many children, this section may not be needed; they will have picked up these sayings by hearing them at home and among friends. But the sayings have been one of the categories most appreciated by teachers who work with children from home cultures that differ from the standard culture of literate American English.

A dog is man's best friend.
 April showers bring May flowers.
 Better safe than sorry.
 Do unto others as you would have them do unto you.
 The early bird gets the worm.
 Great oaks from little acorns grow.
 Look before you leap.
 A place for everything and everything in its place.
 Practice makes perfect.
 [It's] raining cats and dogs.
 Where there's a will there's a way.

History and Geography: Kindergarten

Teachers: In kindergarten, children often study aspects of the world around them: the family, the school, the community, etc. The following guidelines are meant to broaden and complement that focus. The goal of studying selected topics in World History in Kindergarten is to foster curiosity and the beginnings of understanding about the larger world outside the child's locality, and about varied civilizations and ways of life. This can be done through a variety of means: story, drama, art, music, discussion, and more.

The study of geography embraces many topics throughout the *Core Knowledge Sequence*, including topics in history and science. Geographic knowledge includes a spatial sense of the world, an awareness of the physical processes that shape life, a sense of the interactions between humans and their environment, an understanding of the relations between place and culture, and an awareness of the characteristics of specific regions and cultures.

WORLD HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHY

I. Geography: Spatial Sense (working with maps, globes, and other geographic tools)

Teachers: Foster children's geographical awareness through regular work with maps and globes. Have students regularly locate themselves on maps and globes in relation to places they are studying. Children should make and use a simple map of a locality (such as classroom, home, school grounds, "treasure hunt").

- Maps and globes: what they represent, how we use them
- Rivers, lakes, and mountains: what they are and how they are represented on maps and globes
- Locate the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans.
- Locate the North and South Poles.

II. An Overview of the Seven Continents

Teachers: Help children gain a beginning geographic vocabulary and a basic sense of how we organize and talk about the world by giving names to some of the biggest pieces of land. Introduce children to the seven continents through a variety of methods and media (tracing, coloring, relief maps, etc.), and associate the continents with familiar wildlife, landmarks, etc. (for example, penguins in Antarctica; the Eiffel Tower in Europe). Throughout the school year, reinforce names and locations of continents when potential connections arise in other disciplines (for example, connect Grimm's fairy tales to Europe; voyage of Pilgrims to Europe and North America; story of "Momotaro—Peach Boy" to Asia [Japan]; study of Native Americans to North America).

- Identify and locate the seven continents on a map and globe:
 - Asia
 - Europe
 - Africa
 - North America
 - South America
 - Antarctica
 - Australia

Note: In later grades, children will continue to learn about all the continents as well as specific countries and peoples.

AMERICAN HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHY

Teachers: The study of American history begins in grades K-2 with a brief overview of major events and figures, from the earliest days to recent times. A more in-depth, chronological study of American history begins again in grade 3 and continues onward. The term “American” here generally, but not always, refers to the lands that became the United States. Other topics regarding North, Central, and South America may be found in the World History and Geography sections of this Sequence.

I. Geography

- Name and locate the town, city, or community, as well as the state where you live.
- Locate North America, the continental United States, Alaska, and Hawaii.

II. Native American Peoples, Past and Present

Teachers: As children progress through the grades of the *Core Knowledge Sequence*, they will learn about many different Native American peoples in many different regions (such as **Pacific Northwest:** Kwakiutl, Chinook; **Plateau:** Nez Perce; **Great Basin:** Shoshone, Ute; **Southwest:** Dine [Navajo], Hopi, Apache, Zuni; **Plains:** Blackfoot, Comanche, Crow, Kiowa, Dakota, Lakota [Sioux], Cheyenne, Arapaho; **Eastern Woodlands:** Huron, Iroquois, Mohican, Delaware [Lenni Lenape], Susquehanna, Massachusetts, Wampanoag, Powhatan; **Southeast:** Cherokee, Seminole). In kindergarten, study at least **one** specific group of Native Americans. You might explore a local or regional tribe or nation, and compare it with one far away.

- Become familiar with the people and ways of life of at least one Native American tribe or nation, including:
 - how they lived
 - what they wore and ate
 - the homes they lived in
 - their beliefs and stories
 - the current status of the tribe or nation

III. Early Exploration and Settlement

A. THE VOYAGE OF COLUMBUS IN 1492

- Queen Isabella and King Ferdinand of Spain
- The Niña, Pinta, and Santa Maria
- Columbus’s mistaken identification of “Indies” and “Indians”
- The idea of what was, for Europeans, a “New World”

B. THE PILGRIMS

- The Mayflower
- Plymouth Rock
- Thanksgiving Day celebration

C. JULY 4, “INDEPENDENCE DAY”

- The “birthday” of our nation
- Democracy (rule of the people): Americans wanted to rule themselves instead of being ruled by a faraway king.
- Some people were not free: slavery in early America



IV. Presidents, Past and Present

Teachers: Introduce children to famous presidents, and discuss with them such questions as: *What is the president? How does a person become president? Who are some of our most famous presidents, and what did they do that made them famous?*

See below, Symbols and
Figures: Mount Rushmore;
the White House.

- George Washington
The “Father of Our Country”
Legend of George Washington and the cherry tree
- Thomas Jefferson, author of Declaration of Independence
- Abraham Lincoln
Humble origins
“Honest Abe”
- Theodore Roosevelt
- Current United States president

V. Symbols and Figures

- Recognize and become familiar with the significance of
American flag
Statue of Liberty
Mount Rushmore
The White House

Visual Arts: Kindergarten

SEE INTRODUCTION, “The Arts in the Curriculum.”

Teachers: In schools, lessons on the visual arts should illustrate important elements of making and appreciating art, and emphasize important artists, works of art, and artistic concepts. When appropriate, topics in the visual arts may be linked to topics in other disciplines. While the following guidelines specify a variety of artworks in different media and from various cultures, they are not intended to be comprehensive. Teachers are encouraged to build upon the core content and expose children to a wide range of art and artists.

I. Elements of Art

Teachers: The generally recognized elements of art include line, shape, form, space, light, texture, and color. In kindergarten, introduce children to line and color. Engage students in recognizing and using different kinds of lines and colors, and point out lines and colors in nature. (You may also wish to observe shapes in art and nature—see Math: Geometry.)

A. COLOR

- Observe how colors can create different feelings and how certain colors can seem “warm” (red, orange, yellow) or “cool” (blue, green, purple)
- Observe the use of color in
 Pieter Bruegel, *The Hunters in the Snow*
 Helen Frankenthaler, *Blue Atmosphere*
 Paul Gauguin, *Tahitian Landscape*
 Pablo Picasso, *Le Gourmet*

B. LINE

- Identify and use different lines: straight, zigzag, curved, wavy, thick, thin
- Observe different kinds of lines in
 Katsushika Hokusai, *Tuning the Samisen*
 Henri Matisse, *Purple Robe and Anemones*
 Joan Miró, *People and Dog in the Sun*

II. Sculpture

- Recognize and discuss the following as sculptures:
 Northwest American Indian totem pole
 Statue of Liberty
- Mobiles: Alexander Calder’s *Lobster Trap and Fish Tail*

III. Looking at and Talking about Works of Art

Teachers: After children have been introduced to some elements of art and a range of artworks and artists, engage them in looking at pictures and talking about them. Ask the children about their first impressions—what they notice first, and what the picture makes them think of or feel. Go on to discuss the lines and colors, details not obvious at first, why they think the artist chose to depict things in a certain way, etc.

- Observe and talk about
 Pieter Bruegel, *Children’s Games*
 Mary Cassatt, *The Bath*
 Winslow Homer, *Snap the Whip*
 Diego Rivera, *Mother’s Helper*
 Henry O. Tanner, *The Banjo Lesson*

See also American History K:
Native Americans, *re* totem
pole.

Music: Kindergarten

SEE INTRODUCTION, “The Arts in the Curriculum.”

Teachers: In schools, lessons on music should feature activities and works that illustrate important musical concepts and terms, and should introduce important composers and works. When appropriate, topics in music may be linked to topics in other disciplines.

The following guidelines focus on content, not performance skills, though many concepts are best learned through active practice (singing, clapping rhythms, playing instruments, etc.).

I. Elements of Music

- Through participation, become familiar with some basic elements of music (rhythm, melody, harmony, form, timbre, etc.).
 - Recognize a steady beat; begin to play a steady beat.
 - Recognize that some beats have accents (stress).
 - Move responsively to music (marching, walking, hopping, swaying, etc.).
 - Recognize short and long sounds.
 - Discriminate between fast and slow.
 - Discriminate between obvious differences in pitch: high and low.
 - Discriminate between loud and soft.
 - Recognize that some phrases are the same, some different.
 - Sing unaccompanied, accompanied, and in unison.

II. Listening and Understanding

Teachers: To encourage listening skills and the beginnings of understanding, play various kinds of music often and repeatedly. In the kindergarten classroom, music can be played for enjoyment, to accompany activities, to inspire creative movement, etc. Expose children to a wide range of music, including children’s music, popular instrumental music, and music from various cultures.

- Recognize the following instruments by sight and sound: guitar, piano, trumpet, flute, violin, drum.
- Become familiar with the following works:
 - Edvard Grieg, “Morning” and “In the Hall of the Mountain King” from *Peer Gynt*
 - Victor Herbert, “March of the Toys” from *Babes in Toyland*
 - Richard Rodgers, “March of the Siamese Children” from *The King and I*
 - Camille Saint-Saëns, *Carnival of the Animals*

Note: Grieg’s “In the Hall of the Mountain King” is a good work to illustrate dynamics (loud and quiet), as well as tempo (slow and fast).

III. Songs

Teachers: See also Language Arts, Mother Goose poems. A number of the poems may be sung to familiar melodies.

The Bear Went Over the Mountain
 Bingo
 The Farmer in the Dell
 Go In and Out the Window
 Go Tell Aunt Rhody
 Here We Go Round the Mulberry Bush
 The Hokey Pokey
 Hush Little Baby
 If You’re Happy and You Know It
 Jingle Bells

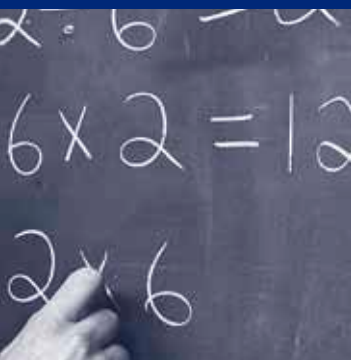
John Jacob Jingleheimer Schmidt
 Kumbaya (also Kum Ba Ya)
 London Bridge
 Old MacDonald Had a Farm
 Row, Row, Row Your Boat
 This Old Man
 Twinkle Twinkle Little Star
 The Wheels on the Bus

Teachers: You may wish to supplement the songs listed above with songs from the *Core Knowledge Preschool Sequence*, as follows:

A Tisket, A Tasket
 Are You Sleeping?
 Blue-Tail Fly (Jimmie Crack Corn)
 Do Your Ears Hang Low?
 Did You Ever See a Lassie?
 Eensy, Weensy Spider
 Five Little Ducks That I Once Knew
 Five Little Monkeys Jumping On the Bed
 Happy Birthday to You
 Head and Shoulders, Knees and Toes
 Here is the Beehive
 I Know an Old Lady
 I'm a Little Teapot
 Kookaburra
 Lazy Mary
 Looby Loo
 Oats, Peas, Beans and Barley Grow
 Oh, Do You Know the Muffin Man?
 Oh Where, Oh Where, Has My Little Dog Gone?
 One Potato, Two Potato
 Open, Shut Them
 Pop Goes the Weasel
 Teddy Bear, Teddy Bear, Turn Around
 Teddy Bears Picnic
 Where is Thumbkin?
 Who Stole the Cookie from the Cookie Jar?
 You Are My Sunshine

Mathematics: Kindergarten

Teachers: Mathematics has its own vocabulary and patterns of thinking. It is a discipline with its own language and conventions. Thus, while some lessons may offer occasional opportunities for linking mathematics to other disciplines, it is critically important to attend to math as math. From the earliest years, mathematics requires incremental review and steady practice: not only the diligent effort required to master basic facts and operations, but also thoughtful and varied practice that approaches problems from a variety of angles, and gives children a variety of opportunities to apply the same concept or operation in different types of situations. While it is important to work toward the development of “higher-order problem-solving skills,” it is equally important—indeed, it is prerequisite to achieving “higher order” skills—to have a sound grasp of basic facts, and an automatic fluency with fundamental operations.



I. Patterns and Classification

- Establish concepts of likeness and difference by sorting and classifying objects according to various attributes: size, shape, color, amount, function, etc.
- Define a set by the common property of its elements.
- In a collection of objects that includes a given set and an item that does not belong, indicate which item does not belong.
- Moving from concrete objects to pictorial representations, recognize patterns and predict the extension of a pattern.
- Extend a sequence of ordered concrete objects.

II. Numbers and Number Sense

- Using concrete objects and pictorial representations, compare sets:
 - same as (equal to)
 - more than
 - less than
 - most
 - least
- Count
 - forward from 1 to 31, first beginning with 1, and later from any given number
 - backward from 10
 - from 1 to 10 by twos
 - by fives and tens to 50
- Write numbers 1 to 31 (with special attention to the difference between certain written symbols, such as 6 and 9; 2 and 5; 1 and 7; 12 and 21, etc.).
- Count and write the number of objects in a set.
- Given a number, identify one more, one less.
- Identify ordinal position, first (1st) through sixth (6th).
- Identify pairs.
- Interpret simple pictorial graphs.
- Identify $\frac{1}{2}$ as one of two equal parts of a region or object; find $\frac{1}{2}$ of a set of concrete objects.

III. Money

- Identify pennies, nickels, dimes, and quarters.
- Identify the one-dollar bill.
- Identify the dollar sign (\$) and cents sign (¢).
- Write money amounts using the cents sign (¢).

IV. Computation

- Add and subtract to ten, using concrete objects.
- Recognize the meaning of the plus sign (+).
- Subtraction: the concept of “taking away”; recognize the meaning of the minus sign (-).

V. Measurement

- Identify familiar instruments of measurement, such as ruler, scale, thermometer.
- Compare objects according to:
 - Linear measure
 - long and short; longer than, shorter than
 - measure length using non-standard units
 - begin to measure length in inches
 - height: taller than, shorter than
 - Weight
 - heavy, light
 - heavier than, lighter than
 - Capacity (volume)
 - full and empty
 - less full than, as full as, fuller than
 - Temperature: hotter and colder
- Time
 - Sequence events: before and after; first, next, last.
 - Compare duration of events: which takes more or less time.
 - Read a clock face and tell time to the hour.
 - Know the days of the week and the months of the year.
 - Orientation in time: today, yesterday, tomorrow; morning, afternoon; this morning vs. yesterday morning, etc.

VI. Geometry

- Identify left and right hand.
- Identify top, bottom, middle.
- Know and use terms of orientation and relative position, such as:
 - closed, open
 - on, under, over
 - in front, in back (behind)
 - between, in the middle of
 - next to, beside
 - inside, outside
 - around
 - far from, near
 - above, below
 - to the right of, to the left of
 - here, there
- Identify and sort basic plane figures: square, rectangle, triangle, circle.
- Identify basic shapes in a variety of common objects and artifacts (windows, pictures, books, buildings, cars, etc.).
- Recognize shapes as the same or different.
- Make congruent shapes and designs.
- Compare size of basic plane figures (larger, smaller).

Science: Kindergarten

Teachers: Effective instruction in science requires hands-on experience and observation. In the words of the 1993 report from the American Association for the Advancement of Science, *Benchmarks for Science Literacy*, "From their very first day in school, students should be actively engaged in learning to view the world scientifically. That means encouraging them to ask questions about nature and to seek answers, collect things, count and measure things, make qualitative observations, organize collections and observations, discuss findings, etc."

While experience counts for much, book learning is also important, for it helps bring coherence and order to a child's scientific knowledge. Only when topics are presented systematically and clearly can children make steady and secure progress in their scientific learning. The child's development of scientific knowledge and understanding is in some ways a very disorderly and complex process, different for each child. But a systematic approach to the exploration of science, one that combines experience with book learning, can help provide essential building blocks for deeper understanding at a later time.



I. Plants and Plant Growth

Teachers: Through reading aloud, observation, and activities such as growing plants from seeds in varying conditions, explore the following with children:

- What plants need to grow: sufficient warmth, light, and water
- Basic parts of plants: seed, root, stem, branch, leaf
- Plants make their own food.
- Flowers and seeds: seeds as food for plants and animals (for example, rice, nuts, wheat, corn)
- Two kinds of plants: deciduous and evergreen
- Farming
 - How some food comes from farms as crops
 - How farmers must take special care to protect their crops from weeds and pests
 - How crops are harvested, kept fresh, packaged, and transported for people to buy and consume

II. Animals and Their Needs

Teachers: Through reading aloud, observation, and activities, explore with children the common characteristics and needs of animals, including:

- Animals, like plants, need food, water, and space to live and grow.
- Plants make their own food, but animals get food from eating plants or other living things.
- Offspring are very much (but not exactly) like their parents.
- Most animal babies need to be fed and cared for by their parents; human babies are especially in need of care when young.
- Pets have special needs and must be cared for by their owners.

III. The Human Body

- The five senses and associated body parts:
 - Sight: eyes
 - Hearing: ears
 - Smell: nose
 - Taste: tongue
 - Touch: skin
- Taking care of your body: exercise, cleanliness, healthy foods, rest

IV. Introduction to Magnetism

Teachers: Through reading aloud, observation, and experiments with magnets, introduce children to the idea that there are forces we cannot see that act upon objects. Children should:

- Identify familiar everyday uses of magnets (for example, in toys, in cabinet locks, in “refrigerator magnets,” etc.).
- Classify materials according to whether they are or are not attracted by a magnet.

V. Seasons and Weather

Teachers: The emphasis in kindergarten should be on observation and description; technical explanations of meteorological phenomena should be taken up in later grades; see grades 2 and 4 for more detailed study of Meteorology.

- The four seasons
- Characteristic local weather patterns during the different seasons
- The sun: source of light and warmth
- Daily weather changes
 - Temperature: thermometers are used to measure temperature
 - Clouds
 - Rainfall: how the condition of the ground varies with rainfall; rainbows
 - Thunderstorms: lightning and thunder, hail, safety during thunderstorms
 - Snow and snowflakes, blizzard

VI. Taking Care of the Earth

- Conservation: Some natural resources are limited, so people must be careful not to use too much of them (example: logging and reforestation).
- Practical measures for conserving energy and resources (for example, turning off unnecessary lights, tightly turning off faucets, etc.)
- Some materials can be recycled (for example, aluminum, glass, paper).
- Pollution (for example, littering, smog, water pollution) can be harmful, but if people are careful they can help reduce pollution.

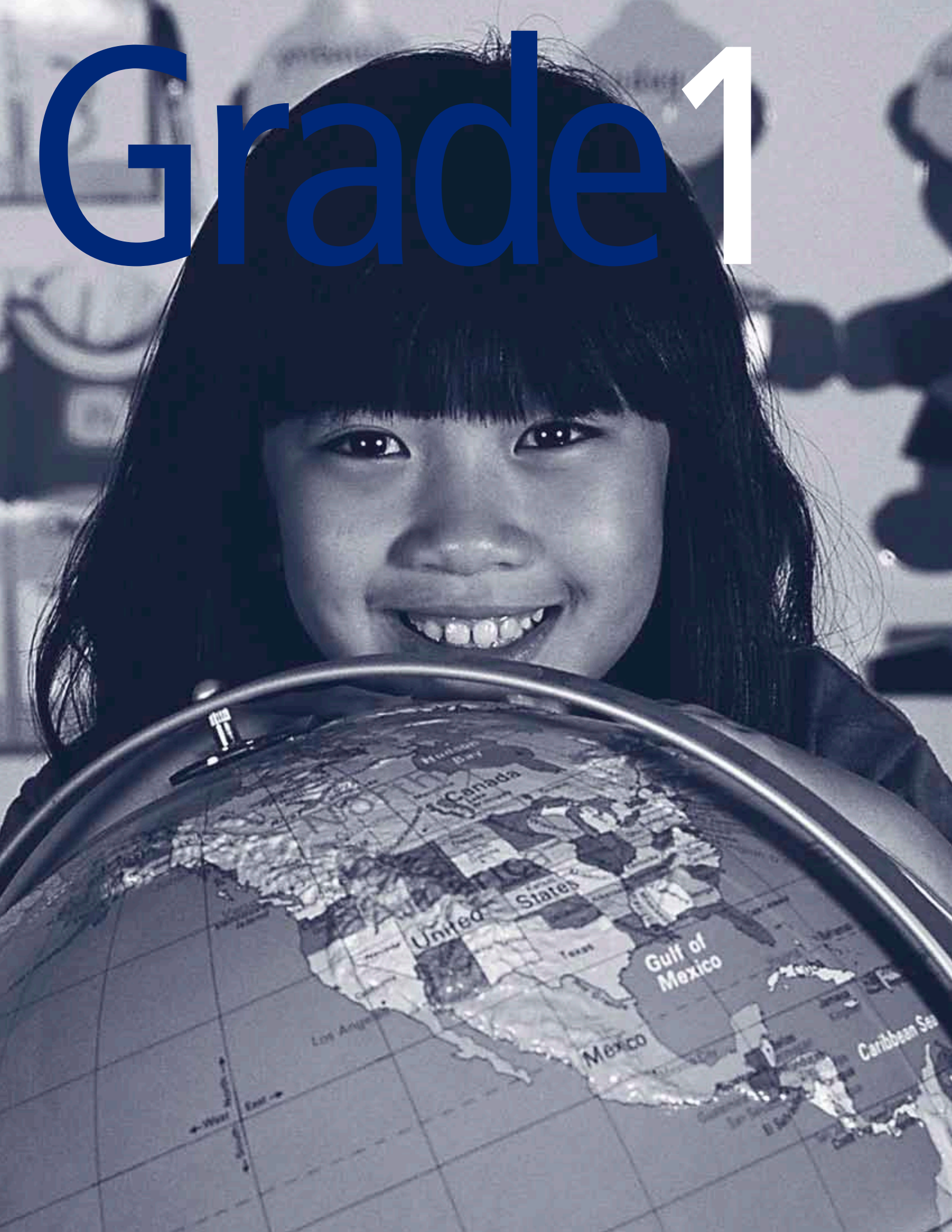
VII. Science Biographies

George Washington Carver (botanist/discovered ways to keep soil rich)

Jane Goodall (studied chimpanzees)

Wilbur and Orville Wright (made first airplane)

Grade 1



Overview of Topics

Grade 1

Language Arts

- I. Listening and Speaking
 - A. Classroom Discussion
 - B. Presentation of Ideas and Information
 - C. Comprehension and Discussion of Read-Alouds—All Texts
 - D. Comprehension and Discussion of Read-Alouds—Fiction, Drama, and Poetry
 - E. Comprehension and Discussion of Read-Alouds—Nonfiction and Informational Text
- II. Reading
 - A. Print Awareness
 - B. Phonemic Awareness
 - C. Phonics: Decoding and Encoding
 - D. Oral Reading and Fluency
 - E. Reading Comprehension—All Texts
 - F. Reading Comprehension—Fiction, Drama, and Poetry
 - G. Reading Comprehension—Nonfiction and Informational Text
- III. Writing
 - A. Narrative Writing
 - B. Informative/Explanatory Writing
 - C. Persuasive Writing (Opinion)
- IV. Language Conventions
 - A. Handwriting and Spelling
 - B. Parts of Speech and Sentence Structure
 - C. Capitalization and Punctuation
- V. Poetry
- VI. Fiction
 - A. Stories
 - B. Aesop’s Fables
 - C. Different Lands, Similar Stories
 - D. Literary Terms
- VII. Sayings and Phrases

History and Geography

World:

- I. Geography
 - A. Spatial Sense
 - B. Geographical Terms and Features
- II. Early World Civilizations
 - A. Mesopotamia: The “Cradle of Civilization”
 - B. Ancient Egypt
 - C. History of World Religions
- III. Modern Civilization and Culture: Mexico
 - A. Geography
 - B. Culture

American:

- I. Early People and Civilizations
 - A. The Earliest People: Hunters and Nomads
 - B. Early American Civilizations

- II. Early Exploration and Settlement
 - A. Columbus
 - B. The Conquistadors
 - C. English Settlers
- III. From Colonies to Independence: The American Revolution
- IV. Early Exploration of the American West
- V. Symbols and Figures

Visual Arts

- I. Art from Long Ago
- II. Elements of Art
 - A. Color
 - B. Line
 - C. Shape
 - D. Texture
- III. Kinds of Pictures: Portrait and Still Life

Music

- I. Elements of Music
- II. Listening and Understanding
 - A. Musical Terms and Concepts
 - B. Music Can Tell a Story
 - C. American Musical Traditions (Jazz)
- III. Songs

Mathematics

- I. Patterns and Classification
- II. Numbers and Number Sense
- III. Money
- IV. Computation
 - A. Addition
 - B. Subtraction
 - C. Solving Problems and Equations
- V. Measurement
- VI. Geometry

Science

- I. Living Things and Their Environments
 - A. Habitats
 - B. Oceans and Undersea Life
 - C. Environmental Change and Habitat Destruction
 - D. Special Classifications of Animals
- II. The Human Body
 - A. Body Systems
 - B. Germs, Diseases, and Preventing Illness
- III. Matter
- IV. Properties of Matter: Measurement
- V. Introduction to Electricity
- VI. Astronomy
- VII. The Earth
 - A. Geographical Features of the Earth’s Surface
 - B. What’s Inside the Earth
- VIII. Science Biographies

Language Arts: Grade 1

The *Common Core State Standards for English Language Arts* emphasize the critical importance of building nonfiction background knowledge in a coherent and sequenced way within and across grades. This can be accomplished most effectively, at each grade level, by integrating the topics from history, geography, science, and the arts in the *Core Knowledge Sequence* into the language arts block. Note that in the *Sequence*, there are many cross-curricular connections to history and science topics within Language Arts (e.g., poems, stories, and sayings), as well as to visual arts and music, which can and should be integrated into the applicable domain of study.

For Grade 1, domains include: Early World Civilizations; Modern Civilization and Culture: Mexico; Early American Civilizations; Early Exploration and Settlement; From Colonies to Independence: The American Revolution; Early Exploration of the American West; Living Things and Their Environments; The Human Body; Matter; Introduction to Electricity; Astronomy: Introduction to the Solar System; The Earth.

NOTE: The objectives listed in sections I–IV of Language Arts below are consistent with the *Core Knowledge Language Arts* program and embed all of the skills and concepts within the *Common Core State Standards for English Language Arts*.

I. Listening and Speaking

Teachers: Traditional language arts instruction has typically accorded little, if any, attention to the ongoing development of children’s listening and speaking ability. This failure to focus on the development of oral language in language arts instruction has been a serious oversight. Literacy, the ability to read and write written language, is highly correlated with students’ oral language proficiency, and the ability to understand a text read aloud is a prerequisite for making sense of the same text in printed form. It is therefore essential that children build listening and speaking competency while also developing reading and writing skills.

A. CLASSROOM DISCUSSION

- Participate in age appropriate activities involving listening and speaking.
- Speak clearly with volume appropriate to the setting.
- Use agreed-upon rules for group discussions, i.e., look at and listen to the speaker, raise hand to speak, take turns, say “excuse me” or “please,” etc.
- Ask questions to clarify conversations, directions, exercises, and/or classroom routines.
- Carry on and participate in a conversation over at least six turns, staying on topic, initiating comments or responding to a partner’s comments, with either an adult or another child of the same age.
- Identify and express physical sensations, mental states, and emotions of self and others.
- Understand and use language to express spatial and temporal relationships (*up, down, first, last, before, after*, etc.).
- Understand and use narrative language to describe people, places, things, locations, events, actions.
- Understand and use common sayings and phrases such as “Hit the nail on the head” and “Let the cat out of the bag” (see page 34).

B. PRESENTATION OF IDEAS AND INFORMATION

- Follow multi-step, oral directions.
- Give simple directions.
- Provide simple explanations.
- Recite a nursery rhyme, poem or song independently, using appropriate eye contact, volume and clear enunciation.
- Give oral presentations about personal experiences, topics of interest, and/or stories, using appropriate eye contact, volume and clear enunciation.

C. COMPREHENSION AND DISCUSSION OF READ-ALOUDS—ALL TEXTS

Teachers: Written text makes use of richer vocabulary and more complex syntax than conversational language. It is important that young children be exposed not only to the language of everyday conversation but also to the richer and more formal language of books. This can be done through frequent reading aloud. Helping young children develop the ability to listen to and understand written texts read aloud must be an integral part of any initiative designed to build literacy.

At the first grade level, a child's ability to understand what he hears far outpaces his ability to independently read and understand written text. By listening to stories or nonfiction selections read aloud, children can experience the complexities of written language without expending cognitive energy on decoding; they can likewise access deeper and more complex content knowledge than they are presently able to read independently.

Careful consideration should be given to the selection of books read aloud to ensure that the vocabulary and syntax presented is rich and complex. Leveled texts will not provide the rich language experience desired during read-alouds and should only be used as a starting point with students for whom English is a second language.

Grade appropriate read-aloud selections for poetry and fiction are included on pages 32–34. Nonfiction read-alouds should be selected on the basis of the history, science, music and visual art topics identified for Grade 1 students in the *Core Knowledge Sequence*, with emphasis on history and science read-alouds. It is strongly recommended that daily read-alouds focus on a single topic over a sustained period of time—about two weeks—rather than intermingling read-alouds on a variety of subjects. Careful consideration should be given to the order in which nonfiction read-alouds are presented to ensure that knowledge about a topic builds in a progressive and coherent way.

Following any read-aloud, children should participate in rich, structured conversations with an adult in response to the written text that has been read aloud. In this way, they can begin to orally practice comparing, analyzing, and synthesizing ideas in written text in much the same way as they will be expected to do as independent readers in the later grades.

- Listen to and understand a variety of texts read aloud, including fictional stories, fairy tales, fables, historical narratives, drama, informational text, and poems.
- Distinguish the following genres of literature: fiction, nonfiction and drama.

Grasping Specific Details and Key Ideas

- Describe illustrations.
- Sequence four to six pictures illustrating events in a read-aloud.
- Answer questions requiring literal recall and understanding of the details and/or facts of a read-aloud, i.e., who, what, where, when, etc.
- Retell key details.
- Ask questions to clarify information in a read-aloud.
- Use narrative language to describe people, places, things, locations, events, actions, a scene or facts in a read-aloud.

Observing Craft and Structure

- Understand and use words and phrases heard in read-alouds.
- Compare and contrast similarities and differences within a single read-aloud or between two or more read-alouds.
- Make personal connections to events or experiences in a read-aloud and/or make connections among several read-alouds.

Integrating Information and Evaluating Evidence

- Prior to listening to a read-aloud, identify what they know and have learned that may be related to the specific story or topic to be read aloud.
- Use pictures accompanying the read-aloud to check and support understanding of the read-aloud.

- Make predictions prior to and during a read-aloud, based on the title, pictures, and/or text heard thus far and then compare the actual outcomes to predictions.
- Answer questions that require making interpretations, judgments, or giving opinions about what is heard in a read-aloud, including answering “why” questions that require recognizing cause/effect relationships.
- Interpret information that is presented orally and then ask additional questions to clarify information or the topic in the read-aloud.
- Identify who is telling a story or providing information in a text.

D. COMPREHENSION AND DISCUSSION OF READ-ALOUDS—FICTION, DRAMA, AND POETRY

- Retell or dramatize a story, using narrative language to describe characters, setting(s), and a beginning, a middle and an end to events of the story in proper sequence.
- Compare and contrast characters from different stories.
- Change some story events and provide a different story ending.
- Create and tell an original story, using narrative language to describe characters, setting(s), and a beginning, a middle and an end to events of the story in proper sequence.
- Distinguish fantasy from realistic text in a story.
- Identify the moral or lesson of a fable, folktale, or myth.
- Demonstrate understanding of literary language (e.g., author, illustrator, characters, setting, plot, dialogue, personification, simile, and metaphor) and use some of these terms in retelling stories or creating their own stories.
- Identify sensory language and how it is used to describe people, objects, places and events.

E. COMPREHENSION AND DISCUSSION OF READ-ALOUDS—NONFICTION AND INFORMATIONAL TEXT

Teachers: Select nonfiction read-aloud topics from the first grade history, science, music, and visual arts topics listed on pages 35–47, with emphasis on history and science.

- Generate questions and seek information from multiple sources to answer questions.
- Answer questions about the details of a nonfiction text, indicating which part of the text provided the information needed to answer specific questions.
- With assistance, categorize and organize facts and information within a given topic.
- With assistance, create and interpret timelines and lifelines related to read-alouds.
- Distinguish read-alouds that describe events that happened long ago from those that describe contemporary or current events.

II Reading

A. PRINT AWARENESS

- Demonstrate understanding that what is said can be written and that the writing system is a way of writing down sounds.
- Demonstrate understanding of directionality (left to right, return sweep, top to bottom, front to back).
- Identify the parts of books and function of each part (front cover, back cover, title page, table of contents).
- Demonstrate correct book orientation by holding book correctly and turning pages.
- Recognize that sentences in print are made up of separate words.
- Understand that words are separated by spaces.
- Distinguish letters, words, sentences, and stories.
- Demonstrate understanding of basic print conventions by tracking and following print word for word when listening to text read aloud.

- Demonstrate understanding that the sequence of letters in a written word represents the sequence of sounds in the spoken word.
- Recognize and name the 26 letters of the alphabet in both their upper-case and lower-case forms.
- Say the letters of the alphabet in order, either in song or recitation.

B. PHONEMIC AWARENESS

- Demonstrate understanding that words are made up of sequences of sounds.
- Demonstrate understanding that vowel sounds are produced with the mouth open and airflow unobstructed, whereas consonant sounds involve closing parts of the mouth and blocking the air flow.
- Given a pair of spoken words, select the one that is longer (i.e., contains more phonemes).
- In riddle games, supply words that begin with a target phoneme.
- Indicate whether a target phoneme is or is not present in the initial/medial/final position of a spoken word, e.g., hear /m/ at the beginning of *mat* and /g/ at the end of *bag*.
- Listen to one-syllable words and tell the beginning or ending sounds, e.g., given *dog*, identify initial /d/ or final /g/.
- Recognize the same phoneme in different spoken words, e.g., /b/ in *ball*, *bug*, and *big*.
- Identify whether pairs of phonemes are the same or different, including pairs that differ only in voicing, e.g., /b/ and /p/.
- Orally blend two to three sounds to form a word, e.g., given the sounds /k/... /a/.../t/, blend to make *cat*.
- Segment a spoken word into phonemes, e.g., given *bat*, produce the segments/b//a//t/.
- Given a spoken word, produce another word that rhymes, e.g., given *hit*, supply *bit* or *mitt*.
- Identify the number of syllables in a spoken word.

C. PHONICS: DECODING AND ENCODING

Teachers: Learning to read requires understanding and mastering the written English code through explicit and systematic phonics instruction. Research suggests that phonics instruction is most effective when specific letter-sound relationships are taught and reinforced by having children both read and write the letter-sound correspondence being studied. Reading and writing—decoding and encoding—are complementary processes that ensure mastery of the written code.

- Demonstrate understanding that a systematic, predictable relationship exists between written letters (graphemes) and spoken sounds (phonemes).
- Blend individual phonemes to pronounce printed words.
- Understand that sometimes two or more printed letters stand for a single sound.
- Read one to two syllable words containing any of the grapheme-phoneme correspondences listed below.
- Read and write words with inflectional endings, i.e., -s, -ed, -ing, -er, -est.
- Read, understand, and write contractions, i.e., *isn't*, *I'm*, *can't*, etc.
- Sort and classify words according to the spelling used to represent a specific phoneme.
- Read tricky spellings that can be sounded two ways, e.g., the letter 's' sounded /s/ as in *cats* and /z/ as in *dogs*.
- Read and spell chains of one-syllable words in which one sound is added, substituted, or omitted, i.e., read at > cat > bat > bad > bid.
- Read at least 30 words generally identified as high frequency words.

CONSONANT SOUNDS AND SPELLINGS TAUGHT IN FIRST GRADE

/b/ spelled 'b' as in *boy*, 'bb' as in *tubby*

/d/ spelled 'd' as in *dog*, 'dd' as in *madder*, 'ed' as in *filled*

/f/ spelled 'f' as in *fun*, 'ff' as in *stuff*

/g/ spelled 'g' as in *get*, 'gg' as in *egg*

/h/ spelled 'h' as in *him*
 /j/ spelled 'j' as in *jump*, 'g' as in *gem*, 'ge' as in *fringe*
 /k/ spelled 'c' as in *cat*, 'k' as in *kitten*, 'ck' as in *sick*, 'cc' as in *moccasin*
 /l/ spelled 'l' as in *lip*, 'll' as in *sell*
 /m/ spelled 'm' as in *mad*, 'mm' as in *hammer*
 /n/ spelled 'n' as in *net*, 'nn' as in *funny*, 'kn' as in *knock*
 /p/ spelled 'p' as in *pet*, 'pp' as in *happy*
 /r/ spelled 'r' as in *red*, 'rr' as in *earring*, 'wr' as in *wrist*
 /s/ spelled 's' as in *sit*, 'ss' as in *dress*, 'c' as in *cent*, 'ce' as in *prince*, 'se' as in *rinse*
 /t/ spelled 't' as in *top*, 'tt' as in *butter*, 'ed' as in *asked*
 /v/ spelled 'v' as in *vet*, 've' as in *twelve*
 /w/ spelled 'w' as in *wet*, 'wh' as in *when*
 /x/ spelled 'x' as in *tax*
 /y/ spelled 'y' as in *yes*
 /z/ spelled 'z' as in *zip*, 'zz' as in *buzz*, 's' as in *dogs*
 /ch/ spelled 'ch' as in *chop*, 'tch' as in *itch*
 /sh/ spelled 'sh' as in *ship*
 /th/ spelled 'th' as in *thin*
 /th/ spelled 'th' as in *then*
 /qu/ spelled 'qu' as in *quick*
 /ng/ spelled 'ng' as in *sing*, 'n' as in *pink*

VOWEL SOUNDS AND SPELLINGS TAUGHT IN FIRST GRADE

/a/ spelled 'a' as in *cat*
 /e/ spelled 'e' as in *get*
 /i/ spelled 'i' as in *hit*
 /o/ spelled 'o' as in *hot*
 /u/ spelled 'u' as in *but*
 /ae/ spelled 'a_e' as in *cake*, 'ai' as in *wait*, 'ay' as in *day*, 'a' as in *paper*
 /ee/ spelled 'ee' as in *bee*, 'e' as in *me*, 'y' as in *funny*, 'ea' as in *beach*, 'e_e' as in *Pete*,
 'ie' as in *cookie*
 /ie/ spelled 'i_e' as in *bike*, 'i' as in *biting*, 'y' as in *try*, 'ie' as in *tie*, 'igh' as in *night*
 /oe/ spelled 'o_e' as in *note*, 'oa' as in *boat*, 'oe' as in *toe*, 'o' as in *open*, 'ow' as in *snow*
 /ue/ spelled 'u_e' as in *cute*
 /aw/ spelled 'aw' as in *paw*
 /oo/ spelled 'oo' as in *look*,
 /oo/ spelled 'oo' as in *soon*
 /ou/ spelled 'ou' as in *shout*
 /oi/ spelled 'oi' as in *oil*
 /er/ spelled 'er' as in *her*
 /ar/ spelled 'ar' as in *car*
 /or/ spelled 'or' as in *for*

D. ORAL READING AND FLUENCY

- Read decodable stories that incorporate the specific code knowledge that has been taught.
- Demonstrate increased accuracy, fluency, and expression on successive reading of a decodable text (50 wpm by the end of the year).
- Use phonics skills in conjunction with context to confirm or self-correct word recognition and understanding, rereading as necessary.
- Demonstrate understanding of and use commas and end punctuation while reading orally.
- Read aloud, alone, or with a partner at least 15 minutes each day.

E. READING COMPREHENSION—ALL TEXTS

Teachers: During the beginning of first grade, most students will still need to devote considerable energy when reading to deciphering the written text. Over the course of this year, they

will learn even more elements of the code, meaning that the decodable texts that they can read independently will increasingly resemble “real stories” and trade books. With practice and repeated readings of the same text, students will develop increasing automaticity, allowing them to focus more intently on the meaning of what they are reading. Both of these factors, i.e., the student’s increasing fluency and the use of more authentic text—which is now decodable because of the student’s increasing code knowledge—mean that attention to reading comprehension can move to a higher level than just the rudimentary understanding of text expected at the kindergarten level. This expectation is reflected in the increased number of objectives below that have been added to the kindergarten level objectives. However, it is important to remember that listening comprehension still far exceeds reading comprehension and that children’s ability to talk about what they have heard and/or read will exceed their ability to demonstrate that understanding in writing.

- Demonstrate understanding of completely decodable text after reading independently.

Grasping Specific Details and Key Ideas

- Sequence four to six pictures illustrating events from a text that has been read independently.
- Answer questions requiring literal recall and understanding of the details and/or facts (i.e., who, what, where, when, etc.) about a text that has been read independently.
- Retell key details from a text that has been read independently.
- Ask questions to clarify information about a text that has been read independently.
- Use narrative language to describe people, places, things, locations, events, actions, a scene or facts from a text that has been read independently.

Observing Craft and Structure

- Identify basic text features and what they mean, including title, table of contents, and chapters.
- Understand and use words and phrases from a text that has been read independently.
- Compare and contrast similarities and differences within a single text or between multiple texts read independently.
- Make personal connections to events or experiences in a text that has been read independently and/or make connections among several texts that have been read independently.

Integrating Information and Evaluating Evidence

- Prior to reading, identify what they know and have learned that may be related to the specific story or topic to be read.
- Use pictures accompanying the written text to check and support understanding.
- Make predictions prior to and while reading, based on the title, pictures, and/or text read thus far and then compare the actual outcomes to predictions.
- Answer questions that require making interpretations, judgments, or giving opinions about what is read independently, including answering “why” questions that require recognizing cause/effect relationships.
- Identify who is telling a story or providing information in a text.
- Identify temporal words that link and sequence events, i.e., *first, next, then, etc.*
- Identify words that link ideas, i.e., *for example, also, in addition.*

F. READING COMPREHENSION—FICTION, DRAMA, AND POETRY

- Retell or dramatize a story, using narrative language to describe characters, setting(s), and a beginning, a middle and an end to events of the story in proper sequence.
- Compare and contrast characters from different stories.
- Change some story events and provide a different story ending.
- Distinguish fantasy from realistic text in a story.
- Identify the moral or lesson of a fable, folktale, or myth.

- Demonstrate understanding of literary language (e.g., author, illustrator, characters, setting, plot, dialogue, personification, simile, and metaphor) and use some of these terms in retelling stories or creating their own stories.
- Identify sensory language and how it is used to describe people, objects, places and events.

G. READING COMPREHENSION—NONFICTION AND INFORMATIONAL TEXT

Teachers: Select nonfiction topics from the first grade history, science, music and visual arts topics listed on pages 35–47, with emphasis on history and science.

- With assistance, create and interpret timelines and lifelines related to text read independently.
- Distinguish text that describes events that happened long ago from text that describes contemporary or current events.

III. Writing

Teachers: It is important to recognize that of all the communication skills—listening, speaking, reading, and writing—writing is the most demanding and challenging. During the beginning of first grade, children still need to devote much of their focus and cognitive energy to the code itself, as well as the fine motor act of writing. During this period, teachers should continue to support written expression through shared writing experiences that are modeled and scaffolded by an adult.

At some point during the first grade year, however, most children will feel comfortable enough with the basic skills to begin making a transition to writing more independently. Young children’s desire to express themselves in writing should be heartily encouraged. To this end, it is important that teachers have age appropriate expectations about what first grade student writing should resemble. Students have not been taught all of the spellings they will need to achieve dictionary-correct spelling. It is therefore premature to expect that words in their independent writing will be spelled correctly. It is reasonable to expect students to use the letter-sound correspondences they have learned to set down plausible spellings for the sounds in the word. For example, a student who writes *bote* for *boat*, *dun* for *done*, or *hed* for *head* has set down a plausible spelling for each sound in the word, using the code knowledge taught in this grade. This should be seen as good spelling for this stage of literacy acquisition. Dictionary-correct spelling will be a realistic goal when students have learned more spellings and learned how to use a dictionary to check spelling.

Furthermore, while teachers can begin to model and scaffold the use of a writing process, such as “Plan-Draft-Edit,” it is equally important not to dampen student enthusiasm by rigidly insisting that *all* student writing be edited over and over again to bring the text to the “publication” stage. A sensible balance that encourages children to use their current skill knowledge when writing—without stifling creative expression—is optimal at the first grade level.

Writing to Reflect Audience, Purpose and Task

- Add details to writing.
- Begin to use tools, including technology, to plan, draft, and edit writing.

Conducting Research

- Gather information from experiences or provided text sources.

A. NARRATIVE WRITING

- Write or retell a story that includes characters, setting(s), and a beginning, a middle and an end to events of the story in proper sequence.
- Write a descriptive paragraph using sensory language.
- Create a title and an ending that are relevant to the narrative.

B. INFORMATIVE/EXPLANATORY WRITING

- Write about a topic, including a beginning and ending sentence, facts and examples relevant to the topic, and specific steps (if writing explanatory text).

C. PERSUASIVE WRITING (OPINION)

- Express an opinion or point of view in writing, providing reasons and supporting details for preference or opinion using the linking word *because*.
- Create a title that is relevant to the topic or subject of the text.
- If writing about a specific book or read-aloud, refer to the content of the text.

IV. Language Conventions

- Form letters, words, phrases and sentences to communicate thoughts and ideas.
- Apply basic spelling conventions.
- Use basic capitalization and punctuation in sentences to convey meaning.

A. HANDWRITING AND SPELLING

- Print from memory the 26 letters of the alphabet accurately in both their upper-case and lower-case forms.
- Write on primary lined paper from left to right, staying within the lines and leaving spaces between words, and from top to bottom, using return sweep.
- Write phonemically plausible spellings for words that cannot be spelled correctly with current code knowledge, e.g., write *ate* for *eight*, *boi* for *boy*, *fone* for *phone*.
- Write words, phrases, and sentences from dictation, applying phonics knowledge.
- Identify and use synonyms and antonyms.

B. PARTS OF SPEECH AND SENTENCE STRUCTURE

- Recognize, identify and use subject, object, and possessive pronouns, i.e., *I, me, my, they, them*, orally, in written text and in own writing.
- Recognize, identify and use common and proper nouns, orally, in written text, and in own writing.
- Recognize, identify and use regular verbs to convey a sense of past, present, and future tense orally, in written text, and in own writing.
- Recognize, identify, and use adjectives orally, in written text, and in own writing.
- Recognize, identify and use subjects and predicates, orally, in written text, and in own writing.
- Recognize, identify, and use statements, questions, and exclamations orally, in written text, and in own writing.
- Produce and expand complete sentences orally and in shared writing exercises.

C. CAPITALIZATION, AND PUNCTUATION

- Capitalize the first word in a sentence, the pronoun *I*, and proper nouns (names and places,) months, days of the week.
- Identify and use end punctuation, including periods, question marks, and exclamation points.
- Use commas appropriately in greetings and closings of letters, dates, and items in a series.
- Write a simple friendly letter.
- Use apostrophes to create contractions and indicate possession, i.e., *cat's meow*.
- Use quotation marks appropriately to designate direct speech.

Note: The poems listed here constitute a selected core of poetry for this grade. You are encouraged to expose children to more poetry, old and new, and to have children write their own poems. To bring children into the spirit of poetry, read it aloud and encourage them to speak it aloud so they can experience the music in the words. Although children are not expected to memorize the following rhymes, they will delight in knowing their favorites by heart, and will experience a sense of achievement and satisfaction in being able to recite some of the rhymes.

V. Poetry

Hope (Langston Hughes)
 I Know All the Sounds the Animals Make (Jack Prelutsky)
 My Shadow (Robert Louis Stevenson)
 The Owl and the Pussycat (Edward Lear)
 The Pasture (Robert Frost)
 The Purple Cow (Gelett Burgess)
 Rope Rhyme (Eloise Greenfield)
 Sing a Song of People (Lois Lenski)
 Solomon Grundy (traditional)
 The Swing (Robert Louis Stevenson)
 Table Manners [also known as “The Goops”] (Gelett Burgess)
 Thanksgiving Day [“Over the river and through the wood”] (Lydia Maria Child)
 Washington (Nancy Byrd Turner)
 Wynken, Blynken, and Nod (Eugene Field)

VI. Fiction

Teachers: While the following works make up a strong core of literature, the “content” of language arts includes not only stories, fables, and poems, but also the well-practiced, operational knowledge of how written symbols represent sounds, and how those sounds and symbols convey meaning. Thus, the stories specified below are meant to complement, not to replace, materials designed to help children practice decoding and encoding skills (see above, II. Reading and III. Writing).

The titles here constitute a core of stories for this grade. They are available in a variety of editions, some designed for novice readers, and others best for reading aloud to children. In first grade, most of the following titles should be read-aloud selections. It is recommended that you provide a mixture of texts, including some beginning readers, with their necessarily limited vocabulary and syntax, for these can give children the important sense of accomplishment that comes from being able to “read it all by myself.”

Expose children to many more stories, including classic picture books and read-aloud books. (In schools, teachers across grade levels should communicate their choices in order to avoid undue repetition.) Children should also be exposed to nonfiction prose—biographies, books on science and history, books on art and music—and they should be given opportunities to tell and write their own stories.

A. STORIES

The Boy at the Dike (folktale from Holland)
 The Frog Prince
 Hansel and Gretel
 selections from *The House at Pooh Corner* (A. A. Milne)
 How Anansi Got Stories from the Sky God (folktale from West Africa)
 It Could Always Be Worse (Yiddish folktale)
 Jack and the Beanstalk
 The Knee-High Man (African-American folktale)
 Medio Pollito (Hispanic folktale)
 The Pied Piper of Hamelin
 Pinocchio
 The Princess and the Pea
 Puss-in-Boots
 Rapunzel
 Rumpelstiltskin
 Sleeping Beauty
The Tale of Peter Rabbit (Beatrix Potter)

Tales of Br'er Rabbit (recommended tales: Br'er Rabbit Gets Br'er Fox's Dinner;
Br'er Rabbit Tricks Br'er Bear; Br'er Rabbit and the Tar Baby)
Why the Owl Has Big Eyes (Native American legend)

B. AESOP'S FABLES

The Boy Who Cried Wolf
The Dog in the Manger
The Wolf in Sheep's Clothing
The Maid and the Milk Pail
The Fox and the Grapes
The Goose and the Golden Eggs

C. DIFFERENT LANDS, SIMILAR STORIES

Teachers: To give students a sense that people all around the world tell certain stories that, while they differ in details, have much in common, introduce students to similar folktales from different lands, such as the following:

Lon Po Po (China) and Little Red Riding Hood
Issun Boshi, or One-Inch Boy (Japan); Tom Thumb (England); Thumbelina (by the Danish writer Hans Christian Andersen); Little Finger of the Watermelon Patch (Vietnam)
Some of the many variations on the Cinderella story (from Europe, Africa, China, Vietnam, Egypt, Korea, etc.)

D. LITERARY TERMS

Characters, heroes, and heroines
Drama
actors and actresses
costumes, scenery and props
theater, stage, audience

Note: Children should learn terms relating to drama as part of their participation in a play appropriate for first graders—possibly a dramatized version of one of the stories listed above.

VII. Sayings and Phrases

Teachers: Every culture has phrases and proverbs that make no sense when carried over literally into another culture. For many children, this section may not be needed; they will have picked up these sayings by hearing them at home and among friends. But the sayings have been one of the categories most appreciated by teachers who work with children from home cultures that differ from the standard culture of literate American English.

A.M. and P.M.
An apple a day keeps the doctor away.
Do unto others as you would have them do unto you. [also in Kindergarten]
Fish out of water
Hit the nail on the head.
If at first you don't succeed, try, try again.
Land of Nod
Let the cat out of the bag.
The more the merrier.
Never leave till tomorrow what you can do today.
Practice makes perfect. [also in Kindergarten]
Sour grapes
There's no place like home.
Wolf in sheep's clothing

History and Geography: Grade 1

Teachers: In first grade, children often study aspects of the world around them: the family, the school, the community, etc. The following guidelines are meant to broaden and complement that focus. The goal of studying selected topics in World History in first grade is to foster curiosity and the beginnings of understanding about the larger world outside the child's locality, and about varied civilizations and ways of life. This can be done through a variety of means: story, drama, art, music, discussion, and more.

The study of geography embraces many topics throughout the *Core Knowledge Sequence*, including topics in history and science. Geographic knowledge embraces a spatial sense of the world, an awareness of the physical processes that shape life, a sense of the interactions between humans and their environment, an understanding of the relations between place and culture, and an awareness of the characteristics of specific regions and cultures.

WORLD HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHY

I. Geography

A. SPATIAL SENSE (Working with Maps, Globes, and Other Geographic Tools)

Teachers: Foster children's geographical awareness through regular work with maps and globes. Have students regularly locate themselves on maps and globes in relation to places they are studying.

- Name your continent, country, state, and community.
- Understand that maps have keys or legends with symbols and their uses.
- Find directions on a map: east, west, north, south.
- Identify major oceans: Pacific, Atlantic, Indian, Arctic.
- Review the seven continents: Asia, Europe, Africa, North America, South America, Antarctica, Australia.
- Locate: Canada, United States, Mexico, Central America.
- Locate: the Equator, Northern Hemisphere, Southern Hemisphere, North and South Poles.

B. GEOGRAPHICAL TERMS AND FEATURES

- peninsula, harbor, bay, island

II. Early World Civilizations

Teachers: As you introduce children to early civilizations, keep in mind the question, *What is civilization?* Help children see recurring features such as settling down, agriculture, building towns and cities, and learning how to write.

A. MESOPOTAMIA: THE "CRADLE OF CIVILIZATION"

- Importance of Tigris and Euphrates Rivers
- Development of writing, why writing is important to the development of civilization
- Code of Hammurabi (early code of laws), why rules and laws are important to the development of civilization

B. ANCIENT EGYPT

- Geography
 - Africa
 - Sahara Desert
- Importance of Nile River, floods and farming
- Pharaohs
 - Tutankhamen
 - Hatshepsut, woman pharaoh
- Pyramids and mummies, animal gods, Sphinx
- Writing: hieroglyphics

See also Visual Arts 1:
Art from Long Ago: Art of
Ancient Egypt.

Note: Students will be introduced to Hinduism and Buddhism in grade 2, and examine Islam in more detail in grade 4. They also examine lasting ideas from Judaism and Christianity in grade 6.

Note: In older sources you may find these formerly used spellings: Mohammed, Mecca, Koran.

C. HISTORY OF WORLD RELIGIONS

Teachers: Since religion is a shaping force in the story of civilization, the *Core Knowledge Sequence* introduces children in the early grades to major world religions, beginning with a focus on geography and major symbols and figures. The purpose is not to explore matters of theology but to provide a basic vocabulary for understanding many events and ideas in history. The goal is to familiarize, not proselytize; to be descriptive, not prescriptive. The tone should be one of respect and balance: no religion should be disparaged by implying that it is a thing of the past. To the question, “Which one is true?” an appropriate response is: “People of different faiths believe different things to be true. The best people to guide you on this right now are your parents or someone at home.”

- Judaism
 - Belief in one God
 - Story of the Exodus: Moses leads the Hebrews out of Egypt
 - Israel, Chanukah, Star of David, Torah, synagogue
- Christianity
 - Christianity grew out of Judaism
 - Jesus, meaning of “messiah”
 - Christmas and Easter, symbol of the cross
- Islam
 - Originated in Arabia, since spread worldwide
 - Followers are called Muslims
 - Allah, Muhammad, Makkah, Qur’an, mosque
 - Symbol of crescent and star (found on the flags of many mainly Islamic nations)

III. Modern Civilization and Culture: Mexico

A. GEOGRAPHY

- North American continent, locate Mexico relative to Canada and the United States
- Central America, Yucatan Peninsula
- Pacific Ocean, Gulf of Mexico, Rio Grande
- Mexico City

B. CULTURE

- Indian and Spanish heritage
- Traditions: fiesta, piñata
- National holiday: September 16, Independence Day

Note: For historical connections, see American History 1: Maya and Aztec civilizations; Conquistadors, Cortes, Moctezuma. See also Music 1: “La Cucaracha”; Language Arts 1: “Medio Pollito,” and Visual Arts 1: Diego Rivera, *Piñata* and, *The History of Medicine in Mexico* (mural).

American History & Geography

AMERICAN HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHY

Teachers: The study of American history begins in grades K–2 with a brief overview of major events and figures, from the earliest days to recent times. A more in-depth, chronological study of American history begins again in grade 3 and continues onward. The term “American” here generally, but not always, refers to the lands that became the United States. Other topics regarding North, Central, and South America may be found in the World History and Geography sections of this Sequence.

I. Early People and Civilizations

A. THE EARLIEST PEOPLE: HUNTERS AND NOMADS

- Crossing from Asia to North America (the land bridge as one possibility)
From hunting to farming
Gradual development of early towns and cities

B. EARLY AMERICAN CIVILIZATIONS

Teachers: Children will study the Maya, Inca, and Aztec civilizations in detail in grade 5. First grade teachers should examine the fifth grade guidelines to see how these topics build in the later grade.

Here, introduce children to these civilizations. Though it is historically accurate to note the warlike nature of the Maya and Aztecs, it is recommended that mention of the practice of human sacrifice be left to the fifth grade.

- Maya in Mexico and Central America
- Aztecs in Mexico
Moctezuma (also called Montezuma)
Tenochtitlan (Mexico City)
- Inca in South America (Peru, Chile)
Cities in the Andes, Machu Picchu

II. Early Exploration and Settlement

A. COLUMBUS

Teachers: Review from kindergarten the story of Columbus’s voyage in 1492.

B. THE CONQUISTADORS

- The search for gold and silver
- Hernán Cortés and the Aztecs
- Francisco Pizarro and the Inca
- Diseases devastate Native American population

C. ENGLISH SETTLERS

- The story of the Lost Colony
Sir Walter Raleigh
Virginia Dare
- Virginia
Jamestown
Captain John Smith
Pocahontas and Powhatan
- Slavery, plantations in Southern colonies
- Massachusetts
Pilgrims, Mayflower, Thanksgiving Day
Massachusetts Bay Colony, the Puritans

Note: Early exploration and the colonial years will be studied in greater depth and detail in grade 3. First grade teachers should examine the third grade guidelines to see how these topics build in the later grade.

Note: The now-familiar name “Powhatan” was used by English settlers for the leader whose name was Wahunsonacock.



See below, Symbols and
Figures: Liberty Bell.

See also Music 1: "Yankee
Doodle."

III. From Colonies to Independence: The American Revolution

Teachers: The American Revolution will be studied in greater depth and detail in grade 4. First grade teachers should examine the fourth grade guidelines to see how these topics build in the later grade. It is recommended that first grade teachers focus on the topics specified here, and leave for fourth grade the more detailed study of the Revolution. In first grade, emphasize the *story* of the birth of our nation.

- Locate the original thirteen colonies.
- The Boston Tea Party
- Paul Revere's ride, "One if by land, two if by sea"
- Minutemen and Redcoats, the "shot heard round the world"
- Thomas Jefferson and the Declaration of Independence, "We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal. . . ."
- Fourth of July
- Benjamin Franklin: patriot, inventor, writer
- George Washington: from military commander to our first president
Martha Washington
Our national capital city named Washington
- Legend of Betsy Ross and the flag

IV. Early Exploration of the American West

Teachers: America's westward growth will be studied in grade 2 and in greater depth and detail in grade 5. First grade teachers should examine the second and fifth grade guidelines to see how these topics build in later grades.

- Daniel Boone and the Wilderness Road
- The Louisiana Purchase
Explorations of Lewis and Clark
Sacagawea
- Geography: Locate the Appalachian Mountains, the Rocky Mountains, and the Mississippi River.

V. Symbols and Figures

- Recognize and become familiar with the significance of
Liberty Bell
Current United States president
American flag
Bald eagle

Visual Arts: Grade 1

SEE INTRODUCTION, “The Arts in the Curriculum.”

Teachers: In schools, lessons on the visual arts should illustrate important elements of making and appreciating art, and emphasize important artists, works of art, and artistic concepts. When appropriate, topics in the visual arts may be linked to topics in other disciplines. While the following guidelines specify a variety of artworks in different media and from various cultures, they are not intended to be comprehensive. Teachers are encouraged to build upon the core content and expose children to a wide range of art and artists.

I. Art from Long Ago

Teachers: Help children see how art has been an important human activity since early times.

- Look at and discuss
 - Cave paintings
 - Art of Ancient Egypt
 - Great Sphinx
 - Mummy cases: Tutankhamen’s coffin
 - Bust of Queen Nefertiti

See also World History 1:
Ancient Egypt.

II. Elements of Art

Teachers: The generally recognized elements of art include line, shape, form, space, light, texture, and color. In first grade, focus on the following:

A. COLOR

Teachers: Review from Kindergarten the idea of “warm” and “cool” colors.

- Know that red, yellow, and blue are commonly referred to as the “primary colors,” and that
 - blue + yellow = green
 - blue + red = purple
 - red + yellow = orange
- Observe the use of color in
 - Claude Monet, *Tulips in Holland*
 - James A. McNeill Whistler, *Arrangement in Black and Gray* (also known as *Whistler’s Mother*)
 - Diego Rivera, *Piñata*

See also World History 1:
Mexico, *re piñata*.

B. LINE

- Identify and use different lines: straight, zigzag, curved, wavy, spiral, thick, thin
- Observe how different lines are used in
 - Jacob Lawrence, *Parade*
 - Henri Matisse, *The Swan*
 - Georgia O’ Keeffe, one of her *Shell* paintings

C. SHAPE

- Recognize basic geometric shapes—square, rectangle, triangle, circle, oval—in nature, man-made objects, and artworks, including
 - Jacob Lawrence, *Parade*
 - Grant Wood, *Stone City, Iowa*

D. TEXTURE

Teachers: Provide opportunities for children to experience both tactile and visual texture (these terms are for your reference only) by having them describe qualities of texture in natural objects (tactile texture) and in works of art (visual texture).

- Describe qualities of texture (as, for example, rough, smooth, bumpy, scratchy, slippery, etc.) in
 - Native American baskets (such as a pomo basket)
 - Edgar Degas, *Little Fourteen-Year-Old Dancer* (also known as *Dressed Ballet Dancer*)
 - Albrecht Dürer, *Young Hare*

III. Kinds of Pictures: Portrait and Still Life

Teachers: Introduce children to the terms we use to describe different kinds of paintings, discuss examples, and provide opportunities for children to create their own works in different genres. When you look at the specified works, ask the children about their first impressions—what they notice first, and what the picture makes them think of or feel. Go on to discuss lines, shapes, colors, and textures; details not obvious at first; why they think the artist chose to depict things in a certain way, etc.

- Recognize as a portrait or self-portrait:
 - Leonardo da Vinci, *Mona Lisa*
 - Francisco Goya, *Don Manuel Osorio Manrique de Zuñiga*
 - Vincent van Gogh, *Self-Portrait* [1889]
- Recognize as a still life:
 - Vincent van Gogh, *Iris*
 - Paul Cézanne, studies with fruit, such as *Apples and Oranges*
- Recognize as a mural (a painting on a wall):
 - Diego Rivera, *The History of Medicine in Mexico*

See also World History 1: Mexico, re murals of Diego Rivera.

Music: Grade 1

SEE INTRODUCTION, “The Arts in the Curriculum.”

Teachers: In schools, lessons on music should feature activities and works that illustrate important musical concepts and terms, and should introduce important composers and works. When appropriate, topics in music may be linked to topics in other disciplines.

The following guidelines focus on content, not performance skills, though many concepts are best learned through active practice (singing, clapping rhythms, playing instruments, etc.).

I. Elements of Music

- Through participation become familiar with basic elements of music (rhythm, melody, harmony, form, timbre, etc.).
 - Recognize a steady beat; moving to a beat; play a steady beat; recognize accents.
 - Move responsively to music (marching, walking, hopping, swaying, etc.).
 - Recognize short and long sounds.
 - Discriminate between fast and slow.
 - Discriminate between obvious differences in pitch: high and low.
 - Discriminate between loud and soft.
 - Understand that melody can move up and down.
 - Hum the melody while listening to music.
 - Echo short rhythms and melodic patterns.
 - Play simple rhythms and melodies.
 - Recognize like and unlike phrases.
 - Recognize that music has timbre or tone color.
 - Sing unaccompanied, accompanied, and in unison.
- Understand that music is written down in a special way and become familiar with the following notation:
 - whole note ♩ half note ♪ quarter note

II. Listening and Understanding

Teachers: Expose children to a wide range of music, including children’s music, popular instrumental music, and music from various cultures.

A. MUSICAL TERMS AND CONCEPTS

- Composers
 - Know that a composer is someone who writes music.
 - Become familiar with Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart as a composer who wrote what is known as classical music, and listen to the Allegro (first movement) from *A Little Night Music (Eine kleine Nachtmusik)*.
- Orchestra
 - Become familiar with the families of instruments in the orchestra: strings, brass, woodwinds, percussion.
 - Know that the leader of the orchestra is called the conductor.
 - Listen to Sergei Prokofiev, *Peter and the Wolf*.

Note: Children will review families of instruments and specific instruments in later grades.



Note: If resources are available, read aloud to students the story behind Tchaikovsky's *Nutcracker*, and either attend a performance or show scenes from the ballet, which is available on videotape. You may also wish to introduce children to the Suite from Tchaikovsky's *Sleeping Beauty*, in relation to the story in Language Arts 1, "Sleeping Beauty."

B. MUSIC CAN TELL A STORY

- Opera
Understand that opera combines music, singing, and acting.
Listen to selections from Humperdinck's *Hansel and Gretel*: "Brother, Come Dance with Me," "I Am the Little Sandman," "Children's Prayer."
- Instrumental Music
Listen to Paul Dukas, *The Sorcerer's Apprentice*.
- Ballet
Understand that ballet combines music and movement, often to tell a story.
Listen to Tchaikovsky's *Nutcracker Suite*.

Teachers: Familiarize children with other types of dance, such as square dancing and tap dancing.

C. AMERICAN MUSICAL TRADITIONS

- Jazz
Understand that jazz is a kind of music that developed in America, with African and African American roots, and that jazz musicians improvise.
Recognize Louis Armstrong as a great early jazz musician.

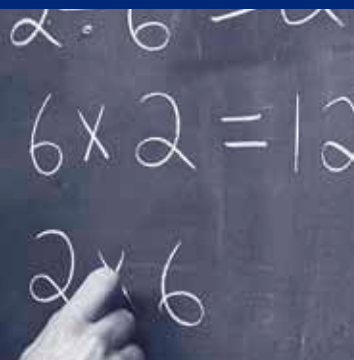
III. Songs

Teachers: You may also wish to teach children the song "Brother, Come Dance with Me" in connection with their introduction to the opera *Hansel and Gretel*. And you may wish to teach the poem "Thanksgiving Day" ("Over the river and through the wood") as a song (see Language Arts 1: Poetry).

America the Beautiful
Billy Boy
Dry Bones
For He's a Jolly Good Fellow
Frère Jacques
La Cucaracha
Make New Friends
Michael, Row the Boat Ashore
Oh, Dear, What Can the Matter Be?
Oh, John the Rabbit
Oh! Susanna
On Top of Old Smokey
She'll Be Comin' 'Round the Mountain
Skip to My Lou
Take Me Out to the Ball Game
There's a Hole in the Bucket
When the Saints Go Marching In
Yankee Doodle

Mathematics: Grade 1

Teachers: Mathematics has its own vocabulary and patterns of thinking. It is a discipline with its own language and conventions. Thus, while some lessons may offer occasional opportunities for linking mathematics to other disciplines, it is critically important to attend to math as math. From the earliest years, mathematics requires incremental review and steady practice: not only the diligent effort required to master basic facts and operations, but also thoughtful and varied practice that approaches problems from a variety of angles, and gives children a variety of opportunities to apply the same concept or operation in different types of situations. While it is important to work toward the development of “higher-order problem-solving skills,” it is equally important—indeed, it is prerequisite to achieving “higher order” skills—to have a sound grasp of basic facts, and an automatic fluency with fundamental operations.



I. Patterns and Classification

- Establish concepts of likeness and difference by sorting and classifying objects according to various attributes: size, shape, color, amount, function, etc.
- Define a set by the common property of its elements.
- In a collection of objects that includes a given set and an item that does not belong, indicate which item does not belong.
- Recognize patterns and predict the extension of a pattern.

II. Numbers and Number Sense

Teachers: Review and build on topics from kindergarten.

- Write numbers 0 - 100.
- Count from 0 - 100 by ones; twos; fives; tens.
- Count by tens from a given single-digit number.
- Count forward and backwards.
- Use tallies.
- Identify ordinal position, 1st to 10th.
- Identify dozen; half-dozen; pair.
- Recognize place value: ones, tens, hundreds.
- Identify more and less; counting how many more or less.
- Given a number, identify one more and one less; ten more and ten less.
- Compare quantities using the signs $<$, $>$, and $=$.
- Recognize fractions as part of a whole: $\frac{1}{2}$, $\frac{1}{3}$, $\frac{1}{4}$
- Create and interpret simple pictorial graphs and bar graphs.

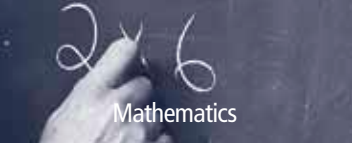
III. Money

- Identify and recognize relative value of penny, nickel, dime, quarter.
- Recognize and use dollar (\$) and cents (¢) signs.
- Show how different combinations of coins equal the same amounts of money.

IV. Computation

A. ADDITION (using concrete objects, and paper and pencil)

- Know the meaning of the plus (+) sign.
- Know what a “sum” is.
- Know addition facts to $10 + 10$ (untimed mastery).
- Add in any order.
- Know what happens when you add zero.
- Know how to write addition problems horizontally and vertically.
- Know that when you add 3 numbers, you get the same sum regardless of grouping of addends.
- Solve two-digit addition problems with and without regrouping.



B. SUBTRACTION (using concrete objects, and paper and pencil)

- Understand subtraction as “taking away.”
- Know the meaning of the minus sign (-).
- Know what a “difference” is.
- Know subtraction facts corresponding to addition facts (untimed mastery).
- Know how to write subtraction problems horizontally and vertically.
- Solve two-digit subtraction problems with and without regrouping.
- Mentally subtract 10 from a two-digit number.

C. SOLVING PROBLEMS AND EQUATIONS

- Write an addition or subtraction equation to solve basic one-step story and picture problems.
- Solve simple equations in the form of $__ - 2 = 7$; $5 + __ = 7$.

V. Measurement

- Identify familiar instruments of measurement, such as ruler, scale, thermometer.
- Compare objects according to:
 - Linear measure
 - Measure length using non-standard units.
 - Measure length in inches and feet, and in centimeters.
 - Measure and draw line segments in inches and centimeters.
 - Weight
 - Compare weights of objects using a balance scale.
 - Measure weight in non-standard units and in pounds.
 - Capacity (volume)
 - Estimate and measure capacity in cups.
 - Identify quart, gallon.
 - Temperature: associate temperature in degrees Fahrenheit with weather.
- Time
 - Sequence events: before and after; first, next, last.
 - Compare duration of events: which takes more or less time.
 - Read a clock face and tell time to the half-hour.
 - Know the days of the week and the months of the year, both in order and out of sequence.
 - Orientation in time: today, yesterday, tomorrow; morning, afternoon, evening, night; this morning vs. yesterday morning, etc.

VI. Geometry

- Identify left and right hand.
- Identify top, bottom, middle.
- Know and use terms of orientation and relative position, such as:

closed, open	around
on, under, over	far from, near
in front, in back (behind)	above, below
between, in the middle of	to the right of, to the left of
next to, beside	here, there
inside, outside	
- Identify and draw basic plane figures: square, rectangle, triangle, circle.
- Describe square, rectangle, triangle according to number of sides.
- Identify basic solid figures: sphere, cube, cone.
- Identify basic shapes in a variety of common objects and artifacts (balls, cans, windows, pictures, books, buildings, cars, etc.).
- Make congruent shapes and designs.

Teachers: Effective instruction in science requires hands-on experience and observation. In the words of the 1993 report from the American Association for the Advancement of Science, *Benchmarks for Science Literacy*, "From their very first day in school, students should be actively engaged in learning to view the world scientifically. That means encouraging them to ask questions about nature and to seek answers, collect things, count and measure things, make qualitative observations, organize collections and observations, discuss findings, etc."

While experience counts for much, book learning is also important, for it helps bring coherence and order to a child's scientific knowledge. Only when topics are presented systematically and clearly can children make steady and secure progress in their scientific learning. The child's development of scientific knowledge and understanding is in some ways a very disorderly and complex process, different for each child. But a systematic approach to the exploration of science, one that combines experience with book learning, can help provide essential building blocks for deeper understanding at a later time.

I. Living Things and Their Environments

Teachers: Introduce the idea of interdependence between living things and their environment.

A. HABITATS

- Living things live in environments to which they are particularly suited.
- Specific habitats and what lives there, for example:
 - Forest [oak trees, squirrels, raccoons, snails, mice]
 - Meadow and prairie [wildflowers, grasses, prairie dogs]
 - Underground [fungi, moles, worms]
 - Desert [cactus, lizard, scorpion]
 - Water [fish, oysters, starfish]
- The food chain or food web: a way of picturing the relationships between living things
 - Animals: big animals eat little ones, big animals die and are eaten by little ones.
 - Plants: nutrients, water, soil, air, sunlight

B. OCEANS AND UNDERSEA LIFE

- Most of the earth is covered with water.
- Locate oceans: Pacific, Atlantic, Indian, Arctic.
- Oceans are salt water (unlike fresh water rivers and lakes).
- Coast, shore, waves, tides (high and low)
- Currents, the Gulf Stream
- Landscape of the ocean floor: mountain peaks and deep valleys (trenches)
- Diversity of ocean life: from organisms too small for the eye to see (plankton), to giant whales
- Dangers to ocean life (for example, overfishing, pollution, oil spills)

C. ENVIRONMENTAL CHANGE AND HABITAT DESTRUCTION

- Environments are constantly changing, and this can sometimes pose dangers to specific habitats, for example:
 - Effects of population and development
 - Rainforest clearing, pollution, litter

D. SPECIAL CLASSIFICATIONS OF ANIMALS

- Herbivores: plant-eaters (for example, elephants, cows, deer)
- Carnivores: flesh-eaters (for example, lions, tigers)
- Omnivores: plant and animal-eaters (for example, bears)
- Extinct animals (for example, dinosaurs)

Note: The food chain will be studied again in grade 3.





Note: Major body systems will be studied in greater detail in grades 2–6.

II. The Human Body

A. BODY SYSTEMS

Teachers: Introduce the idea of body systems, and have children identify basic parts of the following body systems:

- Skeletal system: skeleton, bones, skull
- Muscular system: muscles
- Digestive system: mouth, stomach
- Circulatory system: heart and blood
- Nervous system: brain, nerves

B. GERMS, DISEASES, AND PREVENTING ILLNESS

- Taking care of your body: exercise, cleanliness, healthy foods, rest
- Vaccinations

III. Matter

Note: Children are likely to have a notion of atoms that, in absolute scientific terms, is inaccurate. The goal in this grade is to introduce concepts and terms that, over time, will be more precisely defined. Use the Teacher Handbook to define what you and your students should know and learn in Grade 1.

Teachers: Introduce children to the idea that everything is made of matter, and that all matter is made up of parts too small to see.

- Basic concept of atoms
- Names and common examples of three states of matter:
 - solid (for example, wood, rocks)
 - liquid (for example, water)
 - gas (for example, air, steam)
- Water as an example of changing states of matter of a single substance

IV. Properties of Matter: Measurement

Teachers: Have children describe and classify objects according to what they are made of, and according to their physical properties (color, shape, size, weight, texture, etc.).

- Units of measurement:
 - Length: centimeter, inch, foot
 - Volume: gallon, quart
- Temperature: degrees Fahrenheit

V. Introduction to Electricity

Teachers: Through reading aloud, observation and experiment, explore with children basic principles of electricity and electrical safety rules.

Note: Electricity will be studied in more detail in grade 4.

- Static electricity
- Basic parts of simple electric circuits (for example, batteries, wire, bulb or buzzer, switch)
- Conductive and nonconductive materials
- Safety rules for electricity (for example, never put your finger, or anything metallic, in an electrical outlet; never touch a switch or electrical appliance when your hands are wet or when you're in the bathtub; never put your finger in a lamp socket; etc.)

VI. Astronomy: Introduction to the Solar System

- Sun: source of energy, light, heat
- Moon: phases of the moon (full, half, crescent, new)
- The eight planets (Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune)
(Note: In 2006, Pluto was classified as a dwarf planet.)
- Stars
 - Constellations, Big Dipper
 - The sun is a star.
- Earth and its place in the solar system
 - The earth moves around the sun; the sun does not move.
 - The earth revolves (spins); one rotation takes one day (24 hours).
 - Sunrise and sunset
 - When it is day where you are, it is night for people on the opposite side of the earth.

VII. The Earth

See also World History and Geography: Spatial Sense.

A. GEOGRAPHICAL FEATURES OF THE EARTH'S SURFACE

- The shape of the earth, the horizon
- Oceans and continents
- North Pole and South Pole, Equator

B. WHAT'S INSIDE THE EARTH

- Inside the earth
 - Layers: crust, mantle, core
 - High temperatures
- Volcanoes and geysers
- Rocks and minerals
 - Formation and characteristics of different kinds of rocks: metamorphic, igneous, sedimentary
 - Important minerals in the earth (such as quartz, gold, sulfur, coal, diamond, iron ore)

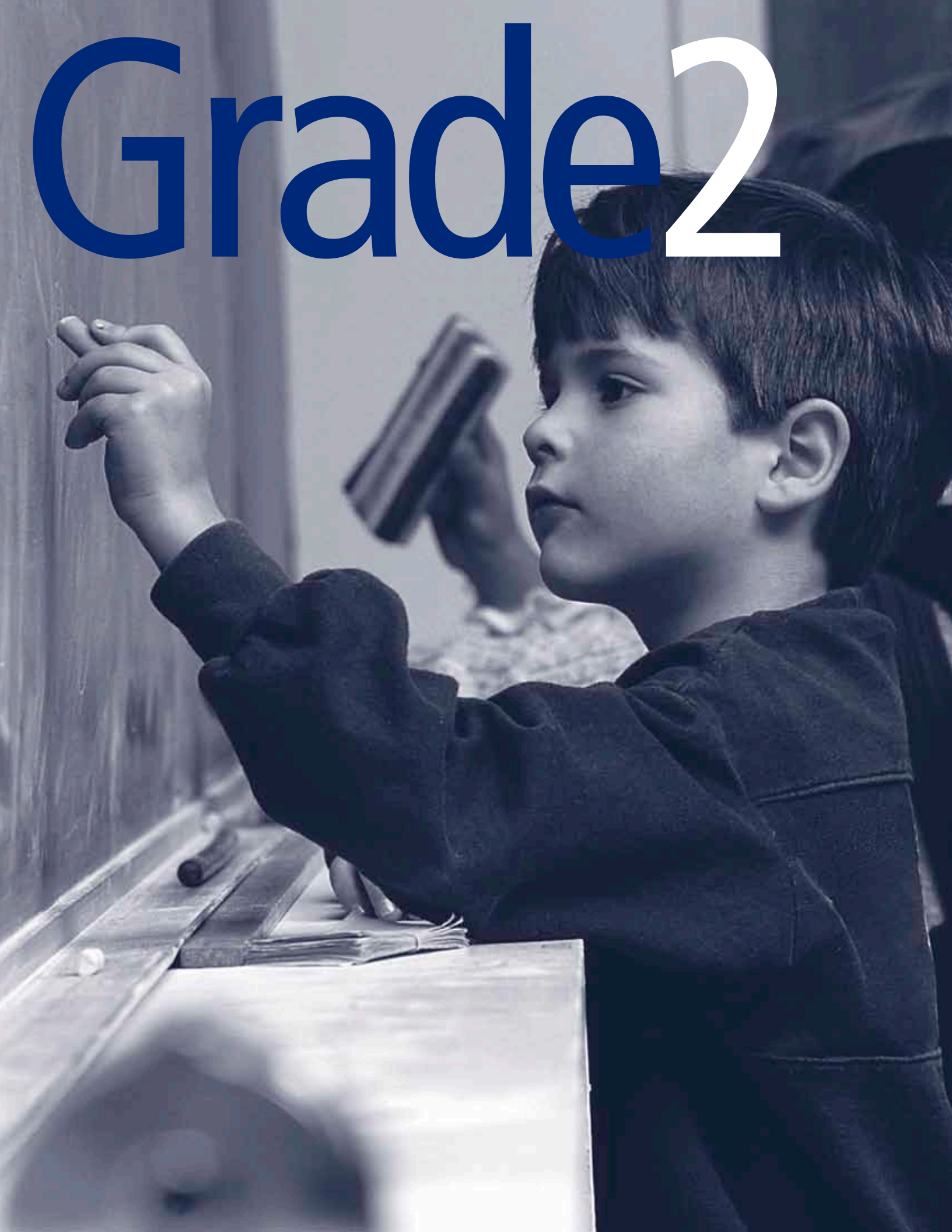
Note: Topics in geology will be studied in more detail in grade 4.

VIII. Science Biographies

Rachel Carson (got people to stop using DDT)
 Thomas Edison (invented an electric light bulb)
 Edward Jenner (found a way to stop smallpox)
 Louis Pasteur (made milk safe to drink)

See above, Environmental Change and Habitat Destruction, *re* Rachel Carson; Electricity, *re* Thomas Edison; Human Body: Vaccinations, *re* Edward Jenner; Human Body: Germs, Diseases, *re* Louis Pasteur.

Grade 2



Overview of Topics

Grade 2

Language Arts

- I. Listening and Speaking
 - A. Classroom Discussion
 - B. Presentation of Ideas and Information
 - C. Comprehension and Discussion of Read-Alouds—All Texts
 - D. Comprehension and Discussion of Read-Alouds—Fiction, Drama, and Poetry
 - E. Comprehension and Discussion of Read-Alouds—Nonfiction and Informational Text
- II. Reading
 - A. Phonics: Decoding and Encoding
 - B. Oral Reading and Fluency
 - C. Reading Comprehension—All Texts
 - D. Reading Comprehension—Fiction, Drama, and Poetry
 - E. Reading Comprehension—Nonfiction and Informational Text
- III. Writing
 - A. Narrative Writing
 - B. Informative/Explanatory Writing
 - C. Persuasive Writing (Opinion)
- IV. Language Conventions
 - A. Spelling
 - B. Parts of Speech and Sentence Structure
 - C. Capitalization and Punctuation
- V. Poetry
- VI. Fiction
 - A. Stories
 - B. Mythology of Ancient Greece
 - C. American Folk Heroes and Tall Tales
 - D. Literary Terms
- VII. Sayings and Phrases

History and Geography

World:

- I. Geography
 - A. Spatial Sense
 - B. Geographical Terms and Features
- II. Early Asian Civilizations
 - A. Geography of Asia
 - B. India
 - C. China
- III. Modern Japanese Civilization
 - A. Geography
 - B. Culture
- IV. The Ancient Greek Civilization

American:

- I. American Government: The Constitution
- II. The War of 1812

- III. Westward Expansion
 - A. Pioneers Head West
 - B. Native Americans
- IV. The Civil War
- V. Immigration and Citizenship
- VI. Fighting for a Cause
- VII. Geography of the Americas
 - A. North America
 - B. South America
- VIII. Symbols and Figures

Visual Arts

- I. Elements of Art
- II. Sculpture
- III. Kinds of Pictures: Landscapes
- IV. Abstract Art
- V. Architecture

Music

- I. Elements of Music
- II. Listening and Understanding
 - A. The Orchestra
 - B. Keyboard Instruments
 - C. Composers and Their Music
- III. Songs

Mathematics

- I. Numbers and Number Sense
- II. Fractions
- III. Money
- IV. Computation
 - A. Addition
 - B. Subtraction
 - C. Introduction to Multiplication
 - D. Solving Problems and Equations
- V. Measurement
 - A. Linear Measure
 - B. Weight
 - C. Capacity (Volume)
 - D. Temperature
 - E. Time
- VI. Geometry

Science

- I. Cycles in Nature
 - A. Seasonal Cycles
 - B. Life Cycles
 - C. The Water Cycle
- II. Insects
- III. The Human Body
 - A. Cells
 - B. Digestive and Excretory Systems
 - C. Taking Care of Your Body: A Healthy Diet
- IV. Magnetism
- V. Simple Machines
- VI. Science Biographies

Language Arts: Grade 2

The *Common Core State Standards for English Language Arts* emphasize the critical importance of building nonfiction background knowledge in a coherent and sequenced way within and across grades. This can be accomplished most effectively, at each grade level, by integrating the topics from history, geography, science, and the arts in the *Core Knowledge Sequence* into the language arts block. Note that in the *Sequence*, there are many cross-curricular connections to history and science topics within Language Arts (e.g., poems, stories, and sayings), as well as to visual arts and music, which can and should be integrated into the applicable domain of study.

For Grade 2, domains include: Early Asian Civilizations; Modern Japanese Civilization; The Ancient Greek Civilization; American Government: The Constitution; The War of 1812; Westward Expansion; The Civil War; Immigration and Citizenship; Fighting for a Cause; Cycles in Nature; Insects; The Human Body; Magnetism; Simple Machines.

NOTE: The objectives listed in sections I–IV of Language Arts below are consistent with the *Core Knowledge Language Arts* program and embed all of the skills and concepts within the *Common Core State Standards for English Language Arts*.

I. Listening and Speaking

Teachers: Traditional language arts instruction has typically accorded little, if any, attention to the ongoing development of children’s listening and speaking ability. This failure to focus on the development of oral language in language arts instruction has been a serious oversight. Literacy, the ability to read and write written language, is highly correlated with students’ oral language proficiency, and the ability to understand a text read aloud is a prerequisite for making sense of the same text in printed form. It is therefore essential that children build listening and speaking competency while also developing reading and writing skills.

A. CLASSROOM DISCUSSION

- Maintain attention and actively participate in discussions about a variety of topics, ideas, and texts in both small and large group settings.
- Speak clearly with volume appropriate to the setting.
- Use agreed-upon rules for group discussions, i.e., look at and listen to the speaker, raise hand to speak, take turns, say “excuse me” or “please,” etc.
- Ask questions to clarify conversations, directions, exercises, and/or classroom routines.
- Carry on and participate in a conversation over at least six turns, staying on topic, initiating comments or responding to a partner’s comments, with either an adult or another child of the same age.
- Participate in a conversation or group discussion by making reference to, or building upon, a comment made by another person.
- Identify and express physical sensations, mental states, and emotions of self and others.
- Understand and use language to express spatial and temporal relationships (*up, down, first, last, before, after, etc.*).
- Understand and use narrative language to describe people, places, things, locations, events, actions.
- Understand and use common sayings and phrases such as “Don’t judge a book by its cover” and “Better late than never” (see page 60).

B. PRESENTATION OF IDEAS AND INFORMATION

- Follow multi-step, oral directions.
- Give simple directions.
- Provide simple explanations.

- Recite a nursery rhyme, poem or song independently, using appropriate eye contact, volume and clear enunciation.
- Give oral presentations about personal experiences, topics of interest, stories, and summaries of factual information that have been presented orally, visually or through multimedia, using appropriate eye contact, volume and clear enunciation.

C. COMPREHENSION AND DISCUSSION OF READ-ALOUDS—ALL TEXTS

Teachers: Written text makes use of richer vocabulary and more complex syntax than conversational language. It is important that young children be exposed not only to the language of everyday conversation but also to the richer and more formal language of books. This can be done through frequent reading aloud. Helping young children develop the ability to listen to and understand written texts read aloud must be an integral part of any initiative designed to build literacy.

At the second grade level, students are becoming increasingly skilled as independent readers. Nevertheless, research indicates that reading comprehension ability does not catch up to listening comprehension until the middle school grades. It is therefore still important to provide second graders with extensive read aloud experiences of both fiction and nonfiction texts.

Careful consideration should be given to the selection of books read aloud to ensure that the vocabulary and syntax presented is rich and complex. Leveled texts will not provide the rich language experience desired during read-alouds and should only be used as a starting point with students for whom English is a second language.

Grade appropriate read-aloud selections for poetry and fiction are included on pages 58–60. Nonfiction read-alouds should be selected on the basis of the history, science, music and visual art topics identified for Grade 2 students in the *Core Knowledge Sequence*, with emphasis on history and science read-alouds. It is strongly recommended that daily read-alouds focus on a single topic over a sustained period of time—about two weeks—rather than intermingling read-alouds on a variety of subjects. Careful consideration should be given to the order in which nonfiction read-alouds are presented to ensure that knowledge about a topic builds in a progressive and coherent way.

Following any read-aloud, children should participate in rich, structured conversations with an adult in response to the written text that has been read aloud. In this way, they can begin to orally practice comparing, analyzing, and synthesizing ideas in written text in much the same way as they will be expected to do as independent readers in the later grades.

- Listen to and understand a variety of texts read aloud, including fictional stories, fairy tales, fables, historical narratives, drama, informational text, and poems.
- Distinguish the following genres of literature: fiction, nonfiction and drama.

Grasping Specific Details and Key Ideas

- Describe illustrations.
- Sequence four to six pictures illustrating events in a read aloud.
- Answer questions requiring literal recall and understanding of the details and/or facts of a read-aloud, i.e., who, what, where, when, etc.
- Retell key details.
- Summarize in one's own words selected parts of a read-aloud.
- Ask questions to clarify information in a read-aloud.
- Use narrative language to describe people, places, things, locations, events, actions, a scene or facts in a read-aloud.

Observing Craft and Structure

- Understand and use words and phrases heard in read-alouds.
- Compare and contrast similarities and differences within a single read-aloud or between two or more read-alouds.
- Make personal connections to events or experiences in a read-aloud and/or make connections among several read-alouds.

Integrating Information and Evaluating Evidence

- Prior to listening to a read-aloud, identify what they know and have learned that may be related to the specific story or topic to be read aloud.
- Use pictures accompanying the read-aloud to check and support understanding of the read-aloud.
- Make predictions prior to and during a read-aloud, based on the title, pictures, and/or text heard thus far and then compare the actual outcomes to predictions.
- Answer questions that require making interpretations, judgments, or giving opinions about what is heard in a read-aloud, including answering “why” questions that require recognizing cause/effect relationships.
- Interpret information that is presented orally and then ask additional questions to clarify information or the topic in the read-aloud.
- Identify who is telling a story or providing information in a text.

D. COMPREHENSION AND DISCUSSION OF READ-ALOUDS—FICTION, DRAMA, AND POETRY

- Retell a story, using narrative language to describe characters, setting(s), and the plot of the story in proper sequence.
- Compare and contrast characters from different stories.
- Describe characters in increasing depth by referring to dialogue and/or their actions in the story.
- Change some story events and provide a different story ending.
- Create and tell an original story, using narrative language to describe characters, setting(s), and the plot of the story in proper sequence.
- Distinguish fantasy from realistic text in a story.
- Identify the moral or lesson of a fable, folktale, or myth.
- Demonstrate understanding of literary language (e.g., author, illustrator, characters, setting, plot, dialogue, personification, simile, and metaphor) and use some of these terms in retelling stories or creating their own stories.
- Identify repetitions in phrases, refrains, or sounds in poems or songs.
- Identify sensory language and how it is used to describe people, objects, places and events.
- Describe the use of rhyme, rhythm and sensory images used in poetry.

E. COMPREHENSION AND DISCUSSION OF READ-ALOUDS—NONFICTION AND INFORMATIONAL TEXT

Teachers: Select nonfiction read-aloud topics from the second grade history, science, music, and visual arts topics listed on pages 61–75, with emphasis on history and science.

- Generate questions and seek information from multiple sources to answer questions.
- Answer questions about the details of a nonfiction text, indicating which part of the text provided the information needed to answer specific questions.
- With assistance, categorize and organize facts and information within a given topic.
- With assistance, create and interpret timelines and lifelines related to read-alouds.
- Interpret information presented in diagrams, charts, graphs, etc.
- Distinguish read-alouds that describe events that happened long ago from those that describe contemporary or current events.

II Reading

A. PHONICS: DECODING AND ENCODING

Teachers: Learning to read requires understanding and mastering the written English code through explicit and systematic phonics instruction. Research suggests that phonics instruction is most effective when specific letter-sound relationships are taught and reinforced by having children both read and write the letter-sound correspondence being studied. Reading

and writing—decoding and encoding—are complementary processes that ensure mastery of the written code.

- Demonstrate understanding that a systematic, predictable relationship exists between written letters (graphemes) and spoken sounds (phonemes).
- Blend individual phonemes to pronounce printed words.
- Understand that sometimes two or more printed letters stand for a single sound.
- Read multi-syllable words containing any of the grapheme-phoneme correspondences listed below.
- Read and write words with inflectional endings, i.e., -s, -ed, -ing, -er, -est.
- Read, understand, and write contractions, i.e., *isn't*, *I'm*, *can't*, etc.
- Sort and classify words according to the spelling used to represent a specific phoneme.
- Read tricky spellings that can be sounded two ways, e.g., the letter 's' sounded /s/ as in *cats* and /z/ as in *dogs*.
- Read and spell chains of one-syllable words in which one sound is added, substituted, or omitted, i.e., read at > cat > bat > bad > bid.
- Read at least 100 words generally identified as high frequency words.

CONSONANT SOUNDS AND SPELLINGS TAUGHT IN SECOND GRADE

/b/ spelled 'b' as in *boy*, 'bb' as in *tubby*
 /d/ spelled 'd' as in *dog*, 'dd' as in *madder*, 'ed' as in *filled*
 /f/ spelled 'f' as in *fun*, 'ff' as in *stuff*
 /g/ spelled 'g' as in *get*, 'gg' as in *egg*
 /h/ spelled 'h' as in *him*
 /j/ spelled 'j' as in *jump*, 'g' as in *gem*, 'ge' as in *fringe*
 /k/ spelled 'c' as in *cat*, 'k' as in *kitten*, 'ck' as in *sick*, 'cc' as in *moccasin*
 /l/ spelled 'l' as in *lip*, 'll' as in *sell*
 /m/ spelled 'm' as in *mad*, 'mm' as in *hammer*
 /n/ spelled 'n' as in *net*, 'nn' as in *funny*, 'kn' as in *knock*
 /p/ spelled 'p' as in *pet*, 'pp' as in *happy*
 /r/ spelled 'r' as in *red*, 'rr' as in *earring*, 'wr' as in *wrist*
 /s/ spelled 's' as in *sit*, 'ss' as in *dress*, 'c' as in *cent*, 'ce' as in *prince*, 'se' as in *rinse*
 /t/ spelled 't' as in *top*, 'tt' as in *butter*, 'ed' as in *asked*
 /v/ spelled 'v' as in *vet*, 've' as in *twelve*
 /w/ spelled 'w' as in *wet*, 'wh' as in *when*
 /x/ spelled 'x' as in *tax*
 /y/ spelled 'y' as in *yes*
 /z/ spelled 'z' as in *zip*, 'zz' as in *buzz*, 's' as in *dogs*
 /ch/ spelled 'ch' as in *chop*, 'tch' as in *itch*
 /sh/ spelled 'sh' as in *ship*
 /th/ spelled 'th' as in *thin*
 /th/ spelled 'th' as in *then*
 /qu/ spelled 'qu' as in *quick*
 /ng/ spelled 'ng' as in *sing*, 'n' as in *pink*

VOWEL SOUNDS AND SPELLINGS TAUGHT IN SECOND GRADE

/a/ spelled 'a' as in *cat*
 /e/ spelled 'e' as in *get*, 'ea' as in *head*
 /i/ spelled 'i' as in *hit*, 'y' as in *myth*
 /o/ spelled 'o' as in *hot*, 'a' as in *wall*
 /u/ spelled 'u' as in *but*, 'o' as in *son*
 /ae/ spelled 'a_e' as in *cake*, 'ai' as in *wait*, 'ay' as in *day*, 'a' as in *paper*, 'ey' as in *hey*,
 'ei' as in *weight*, 'ea' as in *great*
 /ee/ spelled 'ee' as in *bee*, 'e' as in *me*, 'y' as in *funny*, 'ea' as in *beach*, 'e_e' as in *Pete*,
 'ie' as in *cookie*, 'i' as in *ski*, 'ey' as in *key*

- /ie/ spelled 'i_e' as in *bike*, 'i' as in *biting*, 'y' as in *try*, 'ie' as in *tie*, 'igh' as in *night*
- /oe/ spelled 'o_e' as in *note*, 'oa' as in *boat*, 'oe' as in *toe*, 'o' as in *open*, 'ow' as in *snow*
- /ue/ spelled 'u_e' as in *cute*, 'u' as in *unit*, 'ue' as in *cue*
- /aw/ spelled 'aw' as in *paw*, 'au' as in *Paul*, 'augh' as in *caught*, 'ough' as in *bought*
- /oo/ spelled 'oo' as in *look*, 'u' as in *student*, 'ue' as in *blue*, 'ui' as in *fruit*, 'ew' as in *new*, 'u_e' as in *tune*
- /oo/ spelled 'oo' as in *soon*
- /ou/ spelled 'ou' as in *shout*, 'ow' as in *now*
- /oi/ spelled 'oi' as in *oil*, 'oy' as in *toy*
- /er/ spelled 'er' as in *her*, 'ur' as in *hurt*, 'ir' as in *bird*, 'ar' as in *dollar*
- /ar/ spelled 'ar' as in *car*
- /or/ spelled 'or' as in *for*, 'ore' as in *more*, 'our' as in *four*, 'oor' as in *door*
- Schwa spelled 'a' as in *about*
- /shun/ spelled 'tion' as in *mention*

B. ORAL READING AND FLUENCY

- Read decodable stories that incorporate the specific code knowledge that has been taught.
- Demonstrate increased accuracy, fluency, and expression on successive reading of a decodable text (90 wpm by the end of the year).
- Use phonics skills in conjunction with context to confirm or self-correct word recognition and understanding, rereading as necessary.
- Demonstrate understanding of and use commas and end punctuation while reading orally.
- Read aloud, alone, or with a partner at least 20 minutes each day.

C. READING COMPREHENSION—ALL TEXTS

Teachers: At the second grade level, students should be demonstrating ever-increasing code knowledge and fluency in their independent reading, allowing them to focus more intently on the meaning of what they are reading. This increased focus on reading comprehension is reflected in the number and complexity of the objectives below, as compared to earlier grades. However, it is important to remember that listening comprehension still far exceeds reading comprehension and that children’s ability to talk about what they have heard and/or read will exceed their ability to demonstrate that understanding in writing.

- Demonstrate understanding of text—the majority of which is decodable—after independent reading.

Grasping Specific Details and Key Ideas

- Sequence four to six pictures illustrating events from a text that has been read independently.
- Answer questions requiring literal recall and understanding of the details and/or facts (i.e., who, what, where, when, etc.) about a text that has been read independently.
- Retell key details from a text that has been read independently.
- Summarize in one’s own words selected parts of a text.
- Ask questions to clarify information about a text that has been read independently.
- Use narrative language to describe people, places, things, locations, events, actions, a scene or facts from a text that has been read independently.

Observing Craft and Structure

- Identify basic text features and what they mean, including title, table of contents, chapter headings and captions.
- Understand and use words and phrases from a text that has been read independently.
- Compare and contrast similarities and differences within a single text or between multiple texts read independently.
- Make personal connections to events or experiences in a text that has been read independently and/or make connections among several texts that have been read independently.

Integrating Information and Evaluating Evidence

- Prior to reading, identify what they know and have learned that may be related to the specific story or topic to be read.
- Use pictures accompanying the written text to check and support understanding.
- Make predictions prior to and while reading, based on the title, pictures, and/or text read thus far and then compare the actual outcomes to predictions.
- Answer questions that require making interpretations, judgments, or giving opinions about what is read independently, including answering “why” questions that require recognizing cause/effect relationships.
- Interpret information that is read independently and then ask questions to clarify this information.
- Identify who is telling a story or providing information in a text.
- Identify temporal words that link and sequence events, i.e., *first, next, then*, etc.
- Identify words that link ideas, i.e., *for example, also, in addition*.

D. READING COMPREHENSION—FICTION, DRAMA, AND POETRY

- Retell a story, using narrative language to describe characters, setting(s), and the plot of the story in proper sequence.
- Compare and contrast characters from different stories.
- Describe characters in increasing depth by referring to dialogue and/or their actions in the story.
- Change some story events and provide a different story ending.
- Distinguish fantasy from realistic text in a story.
- Identify the moral or lesson of a fable, folktale, or myth.
- Demonstrate understanding of literary language (e.g., author, illustrator, characters, setting, plot, dialogue, personification, simile, and metaphor) and use some of these terms in retelling stories or creating their own stories.
- Identify sensory language and how it is used to describe people, objects, places, and events.
- Identify repetitions in phrases, refrains, or sounds in poems or songs.
- Describe the use of rhyme, rhythm and sensory images used in poetry.

E. READING COMPREHENSION—NONFICTION AND INFORMATIONAL TEXT

Teachers: Select nonfiction topics from the second grade history, science, music and visual arts topics listed on pages 61–75 with emphasis on history and science.

- Generate questions and seek information from multiple sources to answer questions.
- Answer questions about the details of a nonfiction text, indicating which part of the text provided the information needed to answer specific questions.
- Interpret information presented in diagrams, charts, graphs, etc.
- With assistance, categorize and organize facts and information for a given topic.
- With assistance, create and interpret timelines and lifelines related to text read independently.
- Distinguish text that describes events that happened long ago from text that describes contemporary or current events.

III. Writing

Teachers: Students develop ever increasing code knowledge and fluency in reading during second grade and, as a result, most will also become increasingly comfortable and competent in expressing their thoughts and ideas in writing.

Teachers should, however, have age appropriate expectations about what second grade student writing should resemble. Students’ spelling skills will often lag behind the code knowledge they demonstrate in reading. It is reasonable to expect that the students will use the letter-sound correspondences they have learned thus far to set down plausible spellings for the sounds in the word.

For example, a student who writes *doller* for *dollar*, *wate* for *wait* or *weight* has set down a plausible spelling for each sound in the word, using the code knowledge taught in this grade. This should be seen as acceptable spelling for this stage of literacy acquisition. With continued writing practice, students should begin to include more dictionary correct spellings for words that they read and write frequently. Dictionary-correct spelling as the rule will be a realistic goal when students have learned more spellings, had repeated writing practice opportunities and have learned how to use a dictionary to check spelling.

At the second grade level, teachers should model and scaffold use of a writing process, such as “Plan-Draft-Edit,” as students learn to write in various genres. It is important, though, not to dampen student enthusiasm for writing by rigidly insisting that *all* student writing be edited over and over again to bring the text to the “publication” stage. A sensible balance that encourages children to use their current skill knowledge when writing, as well as a simple editing rubric for review—without stifling creative expression—is optimal at the second grade level.

Writing to Reflect Audience, Purpose and Task

- Add details to writing.
- Begin to use tools, including technology, to plan, draft, and edit writing.

Conducting Research

- Gather information from experiences or provided text sources.

A. NARRATIVE WRITING

- Write a familiar story that includes setting(s), character(s), dialogue, and if appropriate, several events, using temporal words and phrases to indicate the chronology of events.
- Write a personal narrative.
- Create a title and an ending that are relevant to the narrative.

B. INFORMATIVE/EXPLANATORY WRITING

- Write about a topic, including a beginning and ending sentence, facts and examples relevant to the topic, and specific steps (if writing explanatory text).
- Group similar information into paragraphs.
- Use linking words such as *also*, *another*, *and*, etc. to connect ideas within a paragraph.

C. PERSUASIVE WRITING (OPINION)

- Express an opinion or point of view in writing, providing reasons and supporting details for preference or opinion.
- Use words to link opinions with reasons or supporting details, such as *because*, *also*, *another*.
- Create a title that is relevant to the topic or subject of the text.
- If writing about a specific book or read-aloud, refer to the content of the text.

IV. Language Conventions

- Form sentences and paragraphs to communicate thoughts and ideas.
- Apply basic spelling conventions.
- Use basic capitalization and punctuation in sentences to convey meaning.

A. SPELLING

- Write phonemically plausible spellings for words using current code knowledge, e.g., write *doller* for *dollar*, *wate* for *wait* or *weight*.
- Write words, phrases, and sentences from dictation, applying phonics knowledge.
- Alphabetize words to the second letter.
- Use a children’s dictionary, with assistance, to check spelling and verify the meaning of words.
- Identify and use synonyms, antonyms, homophones, and compound words.

B. PARTS OF SPEECH AND SENTENCE STRUCTURE

- Recognize, identify and use subject, object, and possessive pronouns, i.e., *I, me, my, they, them*, orally, in written text and in own writing.
- Recognize, identify and use correct noun-pronoun agreement orally, in written text and in own writing.
- Recognize, identify and use common and proper nouns, orally, in written text, and in own writing.
- Recognize, identify, and use the articles *a* and *an* appropriately orally, in written text and in own writing.
- Recognize, identify and use selected regular and irregular plural nouns orally, in written text and in own writing.
- Recognize, identify and use selected regular and irregular past, present, and future tense verbs orally, in written text, and in own writing.
- Recognize, identify, and use adjectives orally, in written text, and in own writing.
- Recognize, identify, and use adverbs orally, in written text, and in own writing.
- Recognize, identify and use subjects and predicates, orally, in written text, and in own writing.
- Recognize, identify, and use statements, questions, and exclamations orally, in written text, and in own writing.
- Recognize, identify, and use complete simple and compound sentences.

C. CAPITALIZATION, AND PUNCTUATION

- Capitalize the first word in a sentence, the pronoun *I*, and proper nouns (names and places,) months, days of the week, titles of people, and addresses.
- Recognize, identify and use abbreviations with correct punctuation for the months, days of the week, titles of people, and addresses.
- Identify and use end punctuation, including periods, question marks, and exclamation points.
- Use commas appropriately in greetings and closings of letters, dates, items in a series, and addresses.
- Write a simple friendly letter.
- Use apostrophes to create contractions and indicate possession, i.e., *cat's meow*.
- Use quotation marks appropriately to designate direct speech.

V. Poetry

Note: The poems listed here constitute a selected core of poetry for this grade. You are encouraged to expose children to more poetry, old and new, and to have children write their own poems. To bring children into the spirit of poetry, read it aloud and encourage them to read it aloud so they can experience the music in the words.

Bed in Summer (Robert Louis Stevenson)
 Bee! I'm expecting you (Emily Dickinson)
 Buffalo Dusk (Carl Sandburg)
 Caterpillars (Aileen Fisher)
 Discovery (Harry Behn)
 Harriet Tubman (Eloise Greenfield)
 Hurt No Living Thing (Christina Rossetti)
 Lincoln (Nancy Byrd Turner)
 The Night Before Christmas (Clement Clarke Moore)
 Rudolph Is Tired of the City (Gwendolyn Brooks)
 Seashell (Federico Garcia Lorca)
 Smart (Shel Silverstein)
 Something Told the Wild Geese (Rachel Field)
 There Was an Old Man with a Beard (Edward Lear)
 Who Has Seen the Wind? (Christina Rossetti)
 Windy Nights (Robert Louis Stevenson)

See below, Literary Terms—
 limerick, *re* Edward Lear.

VI. Fiction

Note: Review Drama from first grade, and engage children in dramatic activities, possibly with one of the stories below in the form of a play.

Teachers: The titles listed below are available in a variety of editions, including both adaptations for novice readers and others that lend themselves to reading aloud to children—for example, *Charlotte’s Web* or “How the Camel Got His Hump.” It is recommended that you provide a mixture of texts. Editions designed for beginning readers can help children practice decoding skills. Read-aloud texts, which the children may not be capable of reading on their own, can be understood when the words are read aloud and talked about with a helpful adult. Such active listening to vocabulary and syntax that go beyond the limits of grade-level readability formulas is an important part of developing an increasingly sophisticated verbal sense.

The titles below constitute a core of stories for this grade. Expose children to many more stories, including classic picture books, read-aloud books, etc. (In schools, teachers across grade levels should communicate their choices in order to avoid undue repetition.) Children should also be exposed to nonfiction prose—biographies, books on science and history, books on art and music—and they should be given opportunities to tell and write their own stories.

A. STORIES

- Beauty and the Beast
- The Blind Men and the Elephant (a fable from India)
- A Christmas Carol* (Charles Dickens)
- Charlotte’s Web* (E. B. White)
- The Emperor’s New Clothes (Hans Christian Andersen)
- The Fisherman and His Wife (Brothers Grimm)
- How the Camel Got His Hump (a “Just-So” story by Rudyard Kipling)
- Iktomi stories (legends of the Plains Indian trickster figure, such as Iktomi Lost His Eyes; Iktomi and the Berries; Iktomi and the Boulder)
- The Magic Paintbrush (a Chinese folktale)
- El Pajaro Cu (a Hispanic folktale)
- selections from *Peter Pan* (James M. Barrie)
- Talk (a West African folktale)
- The Tiger, the Brahman, and the Jackal (a folktale from India)
- The Tongue-Cut Sparrow (a folktale from Japan)

B. MYTHOLOGY OF ANCIENT GREECE

Teachers: See *World History and Geography 2: The Ancient Greek Civilization*.

- Gods of Ancient Greece (and Rome)

Zeus (Jupiter)	Ares (Mars)
Hera (Juno)	Hermes (Mercury)
Apollo (Apollo)	Athena (Minerva)
Artemis (Diana)	Hephaestus (Vulcan)
Poseidon (Neptune)	Dionysus (Bacchus)
Aphrodite (Venus)	Eros (Cupid)
Demeter (Ceres)	Hades (Pluto)
- Mount Olympus: home of the gods
- Mythological creatures and characters
 - Atlas (holding the world on his shoulders)
 - centaurs
 - Cerberus
 - Pegasus
 - Pan
- Greek Myths
 - Prometheus (how he brought fire from the gods to men)
 - Pandora’s Box
 - Oedipus and the Sphinx
 - Theseus and the Minotaur
 - Daedelus and Icarus

Note: “The Magic Paintbrush” is also known as “Tye May and the Magic Brush” and “Liang [or Ma Liang] and the Magic Brush.”

See also *World History 2: India*, re “The Blind Men and the Elephant” and “The Tiger, the Brahman, and the Jackal.”

Note: Roman names are listed in parentheses because, although children do not study ancient Rome until third grade in the *Core Knowledge Sequence*, you are likely to encounter both Greek and Roman names in various books of myths you may use.

Note: Students will read more myths in third grade; see *Language Arts 3*.

Arachne the Weaver
Swift-footed Atalanta
Demeter and Persephone
Hercules (Heracles) and the Labors of Hercules

C. AMERICAN FOLK HEROES AND TALL TALES

Teachers: Johnny Appleseed and Casey Jones were introduced in kindergarten.

Paul Bunyan
Johnny Appleseed
John Henry
Pecos Bill
Casey Jones

See also Music 2: III. Songs,
"John Henry."

D. LITERARY TERMS

Teachers: In the course of their studies, children should learn the following terms:

myth
tall tale
limerick

VII. Sayings and Phrases

Teachers: Every culture has phrases and proverbs that make no sense when carried over literally into another culture. For many children, this section may not be needed; they will have picked up these sayings by hearing them at home and among friends. But the sayings have been one of the categories most appreciated by teachers who work with children from home cultures that differ from the standard culture of literate American English.

Back to the drawing board
Better late than never
Cold feet
Don't cry over spilled milk.
Don't judge a book by its cover.
Easier said than done
Eaten out of house and home
Get a taste of your own medicine
Get up on the wrong side of the bed
In hot water
Keep your fingers crossed.
Practice what you preach.
The real McCoy
Two heads are better than one.
Turn over a new leaf
Where there's a will there's a way.
You can't teach an old dog new tricks.

History and Geography: Grade 2

Teachers: In second grade, children often study aspects of the world around them: the family, the school, the community, etc. The following guidelines are meant to broaden and complement that focus. The goal of studying selected topics in World History in second grade is to foster curiosity and the beginnings of understanding about the larger world outside the child's locality, and about varied civilizations and ways of life. This can be done through a variety of means: story, drama, art, music, discussion, and more.

The study of geography embraces many topics throughout the *Core Knowledge Sequence*, including topics in history and science. Geographic knowledge includes a spatial sense of the world, an awareness of the physical processes that shape life, a sense of the interactions between humans and their environment, an understanding of the relations between place and culture, and an awareness of the characteristics of specific regions and cultures.

WORLD HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHY

I. Geography

A. SPATIAL SENSE (Working with Maps, Globes, and Other Geographic Tools)

Teachers: Review and reinforce topics from grade 1, including:

- Name your continent, country, state, and community.
- Understand that maps have keys or legends with symbols and their uses.
- Find directions on a map: east, west, north, south.
- Identify major oceans: Pacific, Atlantic, Indian, Arctic.
- The seven continents: Asia, Europe, Africa, North America, South America, Antarctica, Australia.
- Locate: Canada, United States, Mexico, Central America.
- Locate: the Equator, Northern Hemisphere and Southern Hemisphere, North and South Poles.

B. GEOGRAPHICAL TERMS AND FEATURES

Teachers: Review terms from grade 1 (peninsula, harbor, bay, island), and add:

- coast, valley, prairie, desert, oasis

II. Early Asian Civilizations

Teachers: Since religion is a shaping force in the story of civilization, the *Core Knowledge Sequence* introduces children in the early grades to major world religions, beginning with a focus on geography and major symbols and figures. The purpose is not to explore matters of theology but to provide a basic vocabulary for understanding many events and ideas in history. The goal is to familiarize, not proselytize; to be descriptive, not prescriptive. The tone should be one of respect and balance: no religion should be disparaged by implying that it is a thing of the past. To the question, "Which one is true?" an appropriate response is: "People of different faiths believe different things to be true. The best people to guide you on this right now are your parents or someone at home."

A. GEOGRAPHY OF ASIA

- The largest continent, with the most populous countries in the world
- Locate: China, India, Japan

B. INDIA

- Indus River and Ganges River
- Hinduism
Brahma, Vishnu, Shiva

See also below, American History and Geography: Geography of the Americas.

See also Language Arts 2: "The Tiger, the Brahman, and the Jackal," and "The Blind Men and the Elephant," re India.

See also Visual Arts 2:
Architecture: Great Stupa,
re Buddhism.

See also Language Arts 2:
"The Magic Paintbrush."

Note: Students will study
feudal Japan in grade 5.
See also Language Arts 2:
"The Tongue-Cut Sparrow";
Visual Arts 2: Elements of
Art: Hokusai, *The Great
Wave*; and, Architecture:
Himeji Castle.

See also Language Arts 2:
Greek Myths; Visual Arts 2:
Sculpture, Discus Thrower;
Architecture, The Parthenon.

Note: Suggested topics
for learning about
Alexander include his
tutoring by Aristotle, his
horse Bucephalus, and the
legend of the Gordian knot.

- Many holy books, including the Rig Veda
- Buddhism
Prince Siddhartha becomes Buddha, "the Enlightened One"
Buddhism begins as an outgrowth of Hinduism in India, and then spreads through
many countries in Asia.
King Asoka (also spelled Ashoka)

C. CHINA

Teachers: Students will study China again in grade 4. Second grade teachers should examine the fourth grade guidelines to see how these topics build in the later grade.

- Yellow (Huang He) and Yangtze (Chang Jiang) Rivers
- Teachings of Confucius (for example, honor your ancestors)
- Great Wall of China
- Invention of paper
- Importance of silk
- Chinese New Year

III. Modern Japanese Civilization

A. GEOGRAPHY

- Locate relative to continental Asia: "land of the rising sun"
- A country made up of islands; four major islands
- Pacific Ocean, Sea of Japan
- Mt. Fuji
- Tokyo

B. CULTURE

- Japanese flag
- Big modern cities, centers of industry and business
- Traditional craft: origami
- Traditional costume: kimono

IV. The Ancient Greek Civilization

Teachers: Students will study Greece again in grade 6, with a focus on the legacy of ideas from ancient Greece and Rome.

- Geography: Mediterranean Sea and Aegean Sea, Crete
- Sparta
- Athens as a city-state: the beginnings of democracy
- Persian Wars: Marathon and Thermopylae
- Olympic games
- Worship of gods and goddesses
- Great thinkers: Socrates, Plato, and Aristotle
- Alexander the Great

American History and Geography

AMERICAN HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHY

Teachers: The study of American history begins in grades K-2 with a brief overview of major events and figures, from the earliest days to recent times. A more in-depth, chronological study of American history begins again in grade 3 and continues onward. The term “American” here generally, but not always, refers to the lands that became the United States. Other topics regarding North, Central, and South America may be found in the World History and Geography sections of this Sequence.

I. American Government: The Constitution

Teachers: Through analogies to familiar settings—the family, the school, the community—discuss some basic questions regarding American government, such as: “What is government?” “What are some basic functions of American government?” (Making and enforcing laws; settling disputes; protecting rights and liberties, etc.) Only basic questions need to be addressed at this grade level. In fourth grade students will examine in more detail specific issues and institutions of American government, including, for example, the separation of powers, and the relation between state and federal government.

- American government is based on the Constitution, the highest law of our land.
- James Madison, the “Father of the Constitution”
- Government by the consent of the governed: “We the people”

II. The War of 1812

- President James Madison and Dolley Madison
- British impressment of American sailors
- Old Ironsides
- British burn the White House
- Fort McHenry, Francis Scott Key, and “The Star-Spangled Banner”
- Battle of New Orleans, Andrew Jackson

III. Westward Expansion

Teachers: Students will study Westward Expansion in greater depth and detail in grade 5. Second grade teachers should examine the fifth grade guidelines to see how these topics build in the later grade. It is recommended that second grade teachers keep their focus on the people and events specified here, and leave for fifth grade the figures and ideas specified for that grade.

A. PIONEERS HEAD WEST

- New means of travel
 - Robert Fulton, invention of the steamboat
 - Erie Canal
 - Railroads: the Transcontinental Railroad
- Routes west: wagon trains on the Oregon Trail
- The Pony Express

B. NATIVE AMERICANS

- Sequoyah and the Cherokee alphabet
- Forced removal to reservations: the “Trail of Tears”
- Some Native Americans displaced from their homes and ways of life by railroads (the “iron horse”)
- Effect of near extermination of buffalo on Plains Indians

See also Language Arts 2:
Iktomi stories.

IV. The Civil War

Teachers: Students will study the Civil War in greater depth and detail in grade 5. Second grade teachers should examine the fifth grade guidelines to see how these topics build in the later grade.

- Controversy over slavery
- Harriet Tubman, the “underground railroad”
- Northern v. Southern states: Yankees and Rebels
- Ulysses S. Grant and Robert E. Lee
- Clara Barton, “Angel of the Battlefield,” founder of American Red Cross
- President Abraham Lincoln: keeping the Union together
- Emancipation Proclamation and the end of slavery

V. Immigration and Citizenship

Teachers: Students will study Immigration and Urbanization in greater depth and detail in grade 6. Second grade teachers should examine the sixth grade American History guidelines to see how these topics build in the later grade. In second grade, it is recommended that teachers use narrative, biography, and other accessible means to introduce children to the idea that many people have come to America (and continue to come here) from all around the world, for many reasons: to find freedom, to seek a better life, to leave behind bad conditions in their native lands, etc. Discuss with children: What is an immigrant? Why do people leave their home countries to make a new home in America? What is it like to be a newcomer in America? What hardships have immigrants faced? What opportunities have they found?

- America perceived as a “land of opportunity”
- The meaning of “e pluribus unum” (a national motto you can see on the back of coins)
- Ellis Island and the significance of the Statue of Liberty
- Millions of newcomers to America
 - Large populations of immigrants settle in major cities (such as New York, Chicago, Philadelphia, Detroit, Cleveland, Boston, San Francisco)
- The idea of citizenship
 - What it means to be a citizen of a nation
 - American citizens have certain rights and responsibilities (for example, voting, eligible to hold public office, paying taxes)
 - Becoming an American citizen (by birth, naturalization)

VI. Fighting for a Cause

Teachers: Through narrative, biography, and other accessible means, introduce students to the idea that while America is a country founded upon “the proposition that all men are created equal,” equality has not always been granted to all Americans. Many people, however, have dedicated themselves to the struggle to extend equal rights to all Americans. Specific figures and issues to study include:

- Susan B. Anthony and the right to vote
- Eleanor Roosevelt and civil rights and human rights
- Mary McLeod Bethune and educational opportunity
- Jackie Robinson and the integration of major league baseball
- Rosa Parks and the bus boycott in Montgomery, Alabama
- Martin Luther King, Jr. and the dream of equal rights for all
- Cesar Chavez and the rights of migrant workers

Note: In grade 4, students will study, in the historical context of antebellum reform, early pioneers in the women’s movement in America, including Elizabeth Cady Stanton, Lucretia Mott, Margaret Fuller, and Sojourner Truth.

Note: Students will study the modern American civil rights movement in more depth and detail in grade 8.

Note: In fifth grade, the American Geography requirements include “fifty states and capitals.” Teachers in grades two through four may want to introduce these incrementally to prepare for the fifth grade requirement.

VII. Geography of the Americas

A. NORTH AMERICA

- North America: Canada, United States, Mexico
- The United States
 - Fifty states: 48 contiguous states, plus Alaska and Hawaii
 - Current territories (American Samoa, Guam, Puerto Rico, and U.S. Virgin Islands)
 - Mississippi River
 - Appalachian and Rocky Mountains
 - Great Lakes
- Atlantic and Pacific Oceans, Gulf of Mexico, Caribbean Sea, West Indies
- Central America

B. SOUTH AMERICA

- Brazil: largest country in South America, Amazon River, rain forests
- Peru and Chile: Andes Mountains
- Locate: Venezuela, Colombia, Ecuador
- Bolivia: named after Simon Bolivar, “The Liberator”
- Argentina: the Pampas
- Main languages: Spanish and (in Brazil) Portuguese

VIII. Symbols and Figures

- Recognize and become familiar with the significance of
 - U. S. flag: current and earlier versions
 - Statue of Liberty
 - Lincoln Memorial

Visual Arts: Grade 2

SEE INTRODUCTION, “The Arts in the Curriculum.”

Teachers: In schools, lessons on the visual arts should illustrate important elements of making and appreciating art, and emphasize important artists, works of art, and artistic concepts. When appropriate, topics in the visual arts may be linked to topics in other disciplines. While the following guidelines specify a variety of artworks in different media and from various cultures, they are not intended to be comprehensive. Teachers are encouraged to build upon the core content and expose children to a wide range of art and artists.

I. Elements of Art

Teachers: The generally recognized elements of art include line, shape, form, space, light, texture, and color. In second grade, continue when appropriate to discuss qualities of line, shape, color, and texture that children learned about in kindergarten and first grade.

- Recognize lines as horizontal, vertical, or diagonal.
- Observe the use of line in
 - Pablo Picasso, *Mother and Child*
 - Katsushika Hokusai, *The Great Wave at Kanagawa Nami-Ura* from *Thirty-six Views of Mt. Fuji*

See also World History 2: Japan, re Hokusai.

II. Sculpture

- Observe shape, mass, and line in sculptures, including
 - The Discus Thrower*
 - Flying Horse* (from Wu-Wei, China)
 - Auguste Rodin, *The Thinker*

See also World History 2: The Ancient Greek Civilization, re *The Discus Thrower*; and China, re *Flying Horse*.

III. Kinds of Pictures: Landscapes

Teachers: Briefly review from grade 1: portrait, self-portrait, and still life. In discussing the following works, ask the children about their first impressions—what they notice first, and what the picture makes them think of or feel. Go on to discuss lines, shapes, colors, and textures; details not obvious at first; why they think the artist chose to depict things in a certain way, etc.

- Recognize as landscapes and discuss
 - Thomas Cole, *The Oxbow* (also known as *View from Mount Holyoke, Northampton, Massachusetts, after a Thunderstorm*)
 - El Greco, *View of Toledo* (also known as *Toledo in a Storm*)
 - Henri Rousseau, *Virgin Forest*
 - Vincent van Gogh, *The Starry Night*

Note: You may wish to recall from kindergarten, Joan Miró, *People and Dog in the Sun*.

IV. Abstract Art

- Compare lifelike and abstract animals, including
 - Paintings of birds by John James Audubon
 - Albrecht Dürer, *Young Hare*
 - Paul Klee, *Cat and Bird*
 - Pablo Picasso, *Bull's Head* (made from bicycle seat and handlebars)
 - Henri Matisse, *The Snail* (also known as *Chromatic Composition*)
- Observe and discuss examples of abstract painting and sculpture, including
 - Marc Chagall, *I and the Village*
 - Constantin Brancusi, *Bird in Space*

V. Architecture

See also World History 2:
The Ancient Greek
Civilization, *re* the
Parthenon; India, *re* the
Great Stupa; Japan, *re*
Himeji Castle.




- Understand architecture as the art of designing buildings.
- Understand symmetry and a line of symmetry, and observe symmetry in the design of some buildings (such as the Parthenon).
- Noting line, shape, and special features (such as columns and domes), look at
 - The Parthenon
 - Great Stupa (Buddhist temple in Sanchi, India)
 - Himeji Castle (also known as “White Heron Castle,” Japan)
 - The Guggenheim Museum (New York City)

SEE INTRODUCTION, “The Arts in the Curriculum.”

Teachers: In schools, lessons on music should feature activities and works that illustrate important musical concepts and terms, and should introduce important composers and works. When appropriate, topics in music may be linked to topics in other disciplines.

The following guidelines focus on content, not performance skills, though many concepts are best learned through active practice (singing, clapping rhythms, playing instruments, etc.).

I. Elements of Music

- Through participation, become familiar with basic elements of music (rhythm, melody, harmony, form, timbre, etc.).
 - Recognize a steady beat, accents, and the downbeat; play a steady beat.
 - Move responsively to music (marching, walking, hopping, swaying, etc.).
 - Recognize short and long sounds.
 - Discriminate between fast and slow; gradually slowing down and getting faster.
 - Discriminate between differences in pitch: high and low.
 - Discriminate between loud and soft; gradually increasing and decreasing volume.
 - Understand that melody can move up and down.
 - Hum the melody while listening to music.
 - Echo short rhythms and melodic patterns.
 - Play simple rhythms and melodies.
 - Recognize like and unlike phrases.
 - Recognize timbre (tone color).
 - Sing unaccompanied, accompanied, and in unison.
 - Recognize verse and refrain.
 - Recognize that musical notes have names.
 - Recognize a scale as a series of notes.
 - Sing the C major scale using “do re mi” etc.
- Understand the following notation:
 - ≡ staff,  treble clef, names of lines and spaces in the treble clef
 - whole note  half note  quarter note
 - whole rest, half rest, quarter rest

II. Listening and Understanding

Teachers: Expose children to a wide range of music, including children’s music, popular instrumental music, and music from various cultures.

A. THE ORCHESTRA

- Review families of instruments: strings, brass, woodwinds, percussion.
- Become familiar with instruments in the string family—violin, viola, cello, double bass—and listen to
 - Camille Saint-Saëns, from *Carnival of the Animals*: “The Swan” (cello) and “Elephants” (double bass)
 - Antonio Vivaldi, *The Four Seasons* (see below, Composers and Their Music)
- Become familiar with instruments in the percussion family—for example, drums (timpani, snare), xylophone, wood block, maracas, cymbals, triangle, tambourine—and listen to Carlos Chavez, *Toccata for Percussion*, third movement.

Note: In third grade, students will take a closer look at the brass and woodwind families.

Note: If you have recordings or other resources, also introduce African drumming and Latin American music with percussion.

See also below, Composers and Their Music, Bach, *Toccata and Fugue in D minor* (organ).

B. KEYBOARD INSTRUMENTS

- Recognize that the piano and organ are keyboard instruments, and listen to a variety of keyboard music, including:
 - Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart, *Rondo Alla turca* from *Piano Sonata K. 331*
 - Ludwig van Beethoven, *Für Elise*
 - Felix Mendelssohn, from *Songs without Words*, “Spring Song”

C. COMPOSERS AND THEIR MUSIC

Teachers: Provide brief, child-friendly biographical profiles of the following composers, and listen to representative works:

- Antonio Vivaldi, *The Four Seasons*
- Johann Sebastian Bach, *Minuet in G major* (collected by Bach in the *Anna Magdalena Notebook*); *Jesu, Joy of Man’s Desiring*; *Toccata and Fugue in D minor*
- Ludwig van Beethoven, *Symphony No. 6 (“Pastoral”)*: first movement and from final movement, “Thunderstorm” to end of symphony

See also Language Arts 2: American tall tales, re “Casey Jones,” and “John Henry.”

See also American History 2: Civil War, re “Dixie,” “Follow the Drinking Gourd,” and “When Johnny Comes Marching Home.”

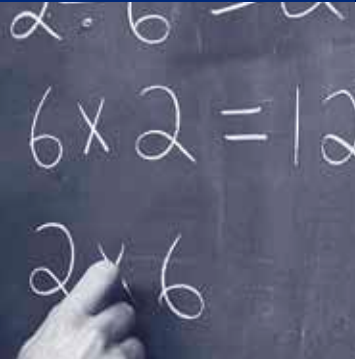
See also American History 2: War of 1812, re “The Star-Spangled Banner.”

III. Songs

Buffalo Gals
 Casey Jones (chorus only)
 Clementine
 Dixie
 Do-Re-Mi
 The Erie Canal
 Follow the Drinking Gourd
 Good Bye Old Paint
 Home on the Range
 I’ve Been Working on the Railroad
 John Henry
 Old Dan Tucker
 The Star-Spangled Banner
 Swing Low, Sweet Chariot
 This Land Is Your Land
 When Johnny Comes Marching Home

Mathematics: Grade 2

Teachers: Mathematics has its own vocabulary and patterns of thinking. It is a discipline with its own language and conventions. Thus, while some lessons may offer occasional opportunities for linking mathematics to other disciplines, it is critically important to attend to math as math. From the earliest years, mathematics requires incremental review and steady practice: not only the diligent effort required to master basic facts and operations, but also thoughtful and varied practice that approaches problems from a variety of angles, and gives children a variety of opportunities to apply the same concept or operation in different types of situations. While it is important to work toward the development of “higher-order problem-solving skills,” it is equally important—indeed, it is prerequisite to achieving higher order skills—to have a sound grasp of basic facts, and an automatic fluency with fundamental operations.



I. Numbers and Number Sense

- Write numbers to 1,000.
- Read and write words for numbers from one to one-hundred.
- Order and compare numbers to 1,000, using the signs $<$, $>$, and $=$.
- Count
 - by twos, threes, fives, and tens
 - by tens from any given number
 - by hundreds to 1,000; by fifties to 1,000
 - forward and backward
- Use a number line.
- Use tallies.
- Identify ordinal position, 1st to 20th, and write words for ordinal numbers, first to twentieth.
- Identify even and odd numbers.
- Identify dozen; half-dozen; pair.
- Recognize place value: ones, tens, hundreds, thousands.
- Write numbers up to hundreds in expanded form (for example $64 = 60 + 4$; $367 = 300 + 60 + 7$).
- Given a number, identify one more and one less; ten more and ten less.
- Round to the nearest ten.
- Create and interpret simple bar graphs.
- Identify and extend numerical and symbolic patterns.
- Record numeric data systematically and find the lowest and highest values in a data set.

II. Fractions

- Recognize these fractions as part of a whole set or region and write the corresponding numerical symbols: $\frac{1}{2}$, $\frac{1}{3}$, $\frac{1}{4}$, $\frac{1}{5}$, $\frac{1}{6}$, $\frac{1}{8}$, $\frac{1}{10}$.
- Recognize fractions that are equal to 1.

III. Money

- Recognize relative values of a penny, nickel, dime, quarter, and dollar.
- Write amounts of money using \$ and ¢ signs, and the decimal point.
- Show how different combinations of coins equal the same amounts of money.
- Add and subtract amounts of money.

IV. Computation

A. ADDITION

- Achieve timed mastery of addition facts (2 seconds).
- Recognize what an addend is.
- Know how to write addition problems horizontally and vertically.
- Know how to add in any order and check a sum by changing the order of the addends.
- Estimate the sum.
- Solve two-digit and three-digit addition problems with and without regrouping.
- Find the sum (up to 999) of any two whole numbers.
- Add three two-digit numbers.
- Practice doubling (adding a number to itself).

B. SUBTRACTION

- Understand the inverse relation between addition and subtraction; use addition to check subtraction.
- Know addition and subtraction “fact families.”
- Achieve mastery of subtraction facts.
- Estimate the difference.
- Know how to write subtraction problems horizontally and vertically.
- Solve two-digit and three-digit subtraction problems with and without regrouping.
- Given two whole numbers of 999 or less, find the difference.

C. INTRODUCTION TO MULTIPLICATION

- Recognize the “times” sign (\times).
- Know what “factor” and “product” mean.
- Understand that you can multiply numbers in any order.
- Multiplication facts: know the product of any single-digit number \times 1, 2, 3, 4, 5.
- Know what happens when you multiply by 1, by 0, and by 10.
- Practice simple word problems involving multiplication.

D. SOLVING PROBLEMS AND EQUATIONS

- Solve basic word problems.
- Write and solve simple equations in the form of $__ - 9 = 7$; $7 + __ = 16$; $4 \times __ = 8$.

V. Measurement

A. LINEAR MEASURE

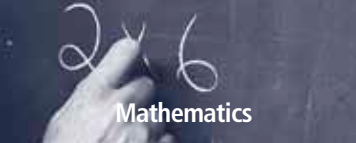
- Make linear measurements in feet and inches, and in centimeters.
- Know that one foot = 12 inches.
- Know abbreviations: ft., in.
- Measure and draw line segments in inches to $1/2$ inch, and in centimeters.
- Estimate linear measurements, then measure to check estimates.

B. WEIGHT

- Compare weights of objects using a balance scale.
- Estimate and measure weight in pounds, and know abbreviation: lb.

C. CAPACITY (VOLUME)

- Estimate and measure capacity in cups.
- Measure liquid volumes: cups, pints, quarts, gallons.
- Compare U.S. and metric liquid volumes: quart and liter (one liter is a little more than one quart).



D. TEMPERATURE

- Measure and record temperature in degrees Fahrenheit to the nearest 2 degrees.
- Know the degree sign: °

E. TIME

- Read a clock face and tell time to five-minute intervals.
- Know how to distinguish time as A.M. or P.M.
- Understand noon and midnight.
- Solve problems on elapsed time (how much time has passed?).
- Using a calendar, identify the date, day of the week, month, and year.
- Write the date using words and numbers.

VI. Geometry

Teachers: Review and reinforce topics from grade 1 as necessary (left and right, orientation and position, etc.)

- Identify and draw basic plane figures: square, rectangle, triangle, circle.
- Describe square, rectangle, triangle according to number of sides; distinguish between square and rectangle as regards length of sides (a square has sides of equal length).
- Measure perimeter in inches of squares and rectangles.
- Identify solid figures—sphere, cube, pyramid, cone, cylinder—and associate solid figures with planar shapes: sphere (circle), cube (square), pyramid (triangle).
- Make congruent shapes and designs.
- Identify lines as horizontal; vertical; perpendicular; parallel.
- Name lines and line segments (for example, line AB; segment CD).
- Identify a line of symmetry, and create simple symmetric figures.

Teachers: Effective instruction in science requires hands-on experience and observation. In the words of the 1993 report from the American Association for the Advancement of Science, *Benchmarks for Science Literacy*, "From their very first day in school, students should be actively engaged in learning to view the world scientifically. That means encouraging them to ask questions about nature and to seek answers, collect things, count and measure things, make qualitative observations, organize collections and observations, discuss findings, etc."

While experience counts for much, book learning is also important, for it helps bring coherence and order to a child's scientific knowledge. Only when topics are presented systematically and clearly can children make steady and secure progress in their scientific learning. The child's development of scientific knowledge and understanding is in some ways a very disorderly and complex process, different for each child. But a systematic approach to the exploration of science, one that combines experience with book learning, can help provide essential building blocks for deeper understanding at a later time.



I. Cycles in Nature

A. SEASONAL CYCLES

- The four seasons and earth's orbit around the sun (one year)
- Seasons and life processes
 - Spring: sprouting, sap flow in plants, mating and hatching
 - Summer: growth
 - Fall: ripening, migration
 - Winter: plant dormancy, animal hibernation

B. LIFE CYCLES

- The life cycle: birth, growth, reproduction, death
- Reproduction in plants and animals
 - From seed to seed with a plant
 - From egg to egg with a chicken
 - From frog to frog
 - From butterfly to butterfly: metamorphosis (see below: Insects)

C. THE WATER CYCLE

- Most of the earth's surface is covered by water.
- The water cycle
 - Evaporation and condensation
 - Water vapor in the air, humidity
 - Clouds: cirrus, cumulus, stratus
 - Precipitation, groundwater

Note: In fourth grade, students will review the water cycle and study other topics in meteorology.

II. Insects

- Insects can be helpful and harmful to people.
 - Helpful: pollination; products like honey, beeswax, and silk; eat harmful insects
 - Harmful: destroy crops, trees, wooden buildings, clothes; carry disease; bite or sting
- Distinguishing characteristics
 - Exoskeleton, chitin
 - Six legs and three body parts: head, thorax and abdomen
 - Most but not all insects have wings.
- Life cycles: metamorphosis
 - Some insects look like miniature adults when born from eggs, and they molt to grow (examples: grasshopper, cricket).
 - Some insects go through distinct stages of egg, larva, pupa, adult (examples: butterflies, ants).



- Social insects
 - Most insects live solitary lives, but some are social (such as ants, honeybees, termites, wasps).
 - Ants: colonies
 - Honeybees: workers, drones, queen

III. The Human Body

A. CELLS

- All living things are made up of cells, too small to be seen without a microscope.
 - Cells make up tissues.
 - Tissues make up organs.
 - Organs work in systems.

B. THE DIGESTIVE AND EXCRETORY SYSTEMS

Teachers: Explore with children what happens to the food we eat by studying body parts and functions involved in taking in food and getting rid of waste. Children should become familiar with the following:

- Salivary glands, taste buds
- Teeth: incisors, bicuspid, molars
- Esophagus, stomach, liver, small intestine, large intestine
- Kidneys, urine, bladder, urethra, anus, appendix

C. TAKING CARE OF YOUR BODY: A HEALTHY DIET

- The “food pyramid” or “MyPlate”
- Vitamins and minerals

IV. Magnetism

Teachers: Magnetism was introduced in kindergarten. Review and introduce new topics in second grade, with greater emphasis on experimentation.

- Magnetism demonstrates that there are forces we cannot see that act upon objects.
- Most magnets contain iron.
- Lodestones: naturally occurring magnets
- Magnetic poles: north-seeking and south-seeking poles
- Magnetic field (strongest at the poles)
- Law of magnetic attraction: unlike poles attract, like poles repel
- The earth behaves as if it were a huge magnet: north and south magnetic poles (near, but not the same as, geographic North Pole and South Pole)
- Orienteering: use of a magnetized needle in a compass, which will always point to the north

V. Simple Machines

Teachers: Examine with children how specific tools are made to perform specific jobs—for example, hammers, screwdrivers, pliers, etc. Through observation and experimentation, examine with children how simple machines help make work easier, and how they are applied and combined in familiar tools and machines.

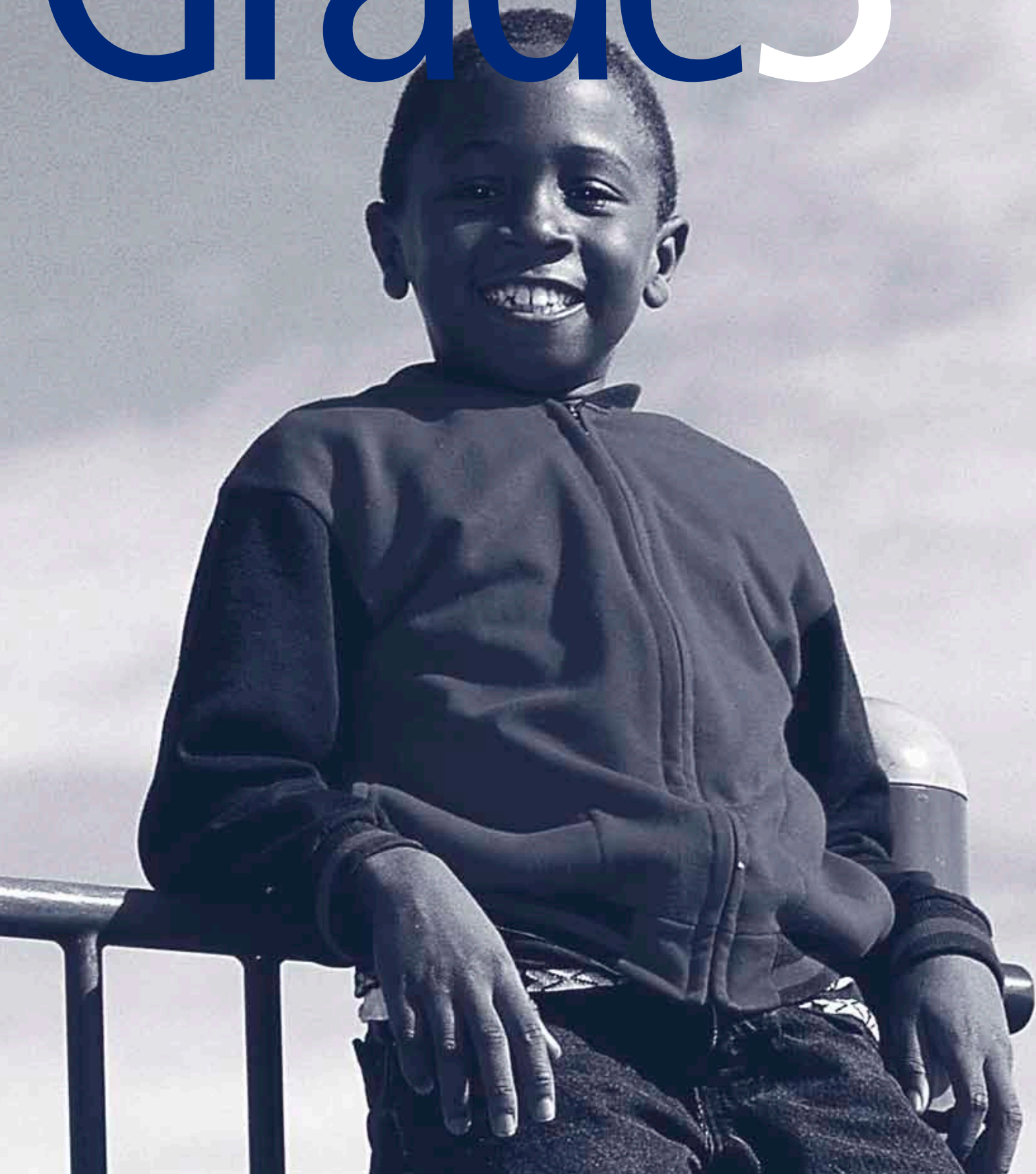
- Simple machines
 - lever
 - pulley
 - wheel-and-axle
 - gears: wheels with teeth and notches
 - how gears work, and familiar uses (for example, in bicycles)
 - inclined plane
 - wedge
 - screw
- Friction, and ways to reduce friction (lubricants, rollers, etc.)

VI. Science Biographies

See above, Human Body:
Cells re Anton van
Leeuwenhoek; Simple
Machines: Friction, re Elijah
McCoy.

Anton van Leeuwenhoek (invented the microscope)
Elijah McCoy (invented the automatic lubricator/the real McCoy)
Florence Nightingale (helped the wounded in the Crimean War/made hospitals more
sanitary)
Daniel Hale Williams (performed the first open-chest surgery)

Grade 3



Overview of Topics

Grade 3

Language Arts

- I. Reading and Writing
 - A. Reading Comprehension and Response
 - B. Writing
 - C. Spelling, Grammar, and Usage
 - D. Vocabulary
- II. Poetry
- III. Fiction
 - A. Stories
 - B. Myths and Mythical Characters
 - C. Literary Terms
- IV. Sayings and Phrases

History and Geography

World:

- I. World Geography
 - A. Spatial Sense
 - B. Geographical Terms and Features
 - C. Canada
 - D. Important Rivers of the World
- II. The Ancient Roman Civilization
 - A. Geography of the Mediterranean Region
 - B. Background
 - C. The Empire
 - D. The "Decline and Fall" of Rome
 - E. The Eastern Roman Empire: Byzantine Civilization
- III. The Vikings

American:

- I. The Earliest Americans
 - A. Crossing from Asia to North America
 - B. Native Americans
- II. Early Exploration of North America
 - A. Early Spanish Exploration and Settlement
 - B. Exploration and Settlement of the American Southwest
 - C. The Search for the Northwest Passage
- III. The Thirteen Colonies: Life and Times Before the Revolution
 - A. Geography
 - B. Southern Colonies
 - C. New England Colonies
 - D. Middle Atlantic Colonies

Visual Arts

- I. Elements of Art
 - A. Light
 - B. Space in Artworks
 - C. Design: How the Elements of Art Work Together
- II. American Indian Art
- III. Art of Ancient Rome and Byzantine Civilization

Music

- I. Elements of Music
- II. Listening and Understanding
 - A. The Orchestra
 - B. Composers and Their Music
 - C. Musical Connections
- III. Songs

Mathematics

- I. Numbers and Number Sense
- II. Fractions and Decimals
- III. Money
- IV. Computation
 - A. Addition
 - B. Subtraction
 - C. Multiplication
 - D. Division
 - E. Solving Problems and Equations
- V. Measurement
 - A. Linear Measure
 - B. Weight
 - C. Capacity (Volume)
 - D. Temperature
 - E. Time
- VI. Geometry

Science

- I. Introduction to Classification of Animals
- II. The Human Body
 - A. The Muscular System
 - B. The Skeletal System
 - C. The Nervous System
 - D. Vision: How the Eye Works
 - E. Hearing: How the Ear Works
- III. Light and Optics
- IV. Sound
- V. Ecology
- VI. Astronomy
- VII. Science Biographies

Language Arts: Grade 3

The *Common Core State Standards for English Language Arts* emphasize the critical importance of building nonfiction background knowledge in a coherent and sequenced way within and across grades. This can be accomplished most effectively, at each grade level, by integrating the topics from history, geography, science, and the arts in the *Core Knowledge Sequence* into the language arts block. Note that in the *Sequence*, there are many cross-curricular connections to history and science topics within Language Arts (e.g., poems, stories, and sayings), as well as to visual arts and music, which can and should be integrated into the applicable domain of study.

For Grade 3, domains include: The Ancient Roman Civilization; The Vikings; The Earliest Americans; Early Exploration of North America; The Thirteen Colonies: Life and Times Before the Revolution; Introduction to Classification of Animals; The Human Body; Light and Optics; Sound; Ecology; Astronomy.

NOTE: The objectives listed in **I. Reading and Writing** are currently under revision, as part of the *Core Knowledge Language Arts* program development for Grades 3–5. The revised Grade 3 goals and objectives will be conceptually consistent with the K–2 language arts sections of the 2010 edition of the *Sequence* and will be posted at www.coreknowledge.org as part of the online *Sequence* as soon as they are available.

I. Reading and Writing

Teachers: Many of the following sub-goals are designed to help children achieve the overall goal for reading in third grade: to be able to read (both aloud and silently), with fluency, accuracy, and comprehension any story or other text appropriately written for third grade. Such texts include Beverly Cleary's *Ramona* books, Laura Ingalls Wilder's *Little House in the Big Woods*, and third-grade-level volumes in such nonfiction series as *Let's Read and Find Out* and *New True Books*.

In third grade, children should be competent decoders of most one- and two-syllable words, and they should become increasingly able to use their knowledge of phonemes, syllable boundaries, and prefixes and suffixes to decode multisyllable words. Systematic attention to decoding skills should be provided as needed for children who have not achieved the goals specified for grades 1 and 2.

A. READING COMPREHENSION AND RESPONSE

- Independently read and comprehend longer works of fiction (“chapter books”) and nonfiction appropriately written for third grade or beyond.
- Point to specific words or passages that are causing difficulties in comprehension.
- Orally summarize main points from fiction and nonfiction readings.
- Ask and pose plausible answers to how, why, and what-if questions in interpreting texts, both fiction and nonfiction.
- Use a dictionary to answer questions regarding meaning and usage of words with which he or she is unfamiliar.
- Know how to use a table of contents and index to locate information.

B. WRITING

Teachers: Children should be given many opportunities for writing, both imaginative and expository, with teacher guidance that strikes a balance between encouraging creativity and requiring correct use of conventions. The following guidelines build on the second grade guidelines: please refer to them and provide review and reinforcement as necessary to ensure mastery.

Note: Children should read outside of school at least 20 minutes daily.

- Produce a variety of types of writing—such as stories, reports, poems, letters, descriptions—and make reasonable judgments about what to include in his or her own written works based on the purpose and type of composition.
- Know how to gather information from basic print sources (such as a children’s encyclopedia), and write a short report presenting the information in his or her own words.
- Know how to use established conventions when writing a friendly letter: heading, salutation (greeting), closing, signature.
- Produce written work with a beginning, middle, and end.
- Organize material in paragraphs and understand
 - how to use a topic sentence
 - how to develop a paragraph with examples and details
 - that each new paragraph is indented
- In some writings, proceed with guidance through a process of gathering information, organizing thoughts, composing a draft, revising to clarify and refine his or her meaning, and proofreading with attention to spelling, mechanics, and presentation of a final draft.

Note: Review from grade 2: capital letters for the first word of a sentence; proper nouns; the pronoun “I”; holidays and months and days of the week; names of countries, cities, states; main words in titles; initials.

Note: Review and reinforce from grade 2: singular and plural nouns; making words plural with /s/ or /es/; irregular plurals; correct usage of irregular verbs (*be*, *have*, *do*, *go*, *come*, etc.); regular past tense with *-ed* and past tense of irregular verbs.

Note: Children should know that a *possessive* noun shows ownership.

Note: Teach only words that can be clearly analyzed into prefix and base word; for example, do not teach “discover” or “display” as prefixed words.

C. SPELLING, GRAMMAR, AND USAGE

- Spell most words correctly or with a highly probable spelling, and use a dictionary to check and correct spellings about which he or she is uncertain.
- Use capital letters correctly.
- Understand what a complete sentence is, and
 - identify subject and predicate in single-clause sentences
 - distinguish complete sentences from fragments
- Identify and use different sentence types:
 - declarative (makes a statement)
 - interrogative (asks a question)
 - imperative (gives a command)
 - exclamatory (for example, “What a hit!”)
- Know the following parts of speech and how they are used:
 - nouns (for concrete nouns)
 - pronouns (singular and plural)
 - verbs: action verbs and auxiliary (helping) verbs
 - adjectives (including articles: *a* before a consonant, *an* before a vowel, and *the*)
 - adverbs
- Know how to use the following punctuation:
 - end punctuation: period, question mark, or exclamation point
 - comma: between day and year when writing a date; between city and state in an address; in a series; after *yes* and *no*
 - apostrophe: in contractions; in singular and plural possessive nouns
- Recognize and avoid the double negative.

D. VOCABULARY

- Know what prefixes and suffixes are and how the following affect word meaning:
 - Prefixes:
 - re* meaning “again” (as in reuse, refill)
 - un* meaning “not” (as in unfriendly, unpleasant)
 - dis* meaning “not” (as in dishonest, disobey)
 - un* meaning “opposite of” or “reversing an action” (as in untie, unlock)
 - dis* meaning “opposite of” or “reversing an action” (as in disappear, dismount)
 - Suffixes:
 - er* and *or* (as in singer, painter, actor)
 - less* (as in careless, hopeless)
 - ly* (as in quickly, calmly)

Note: Review synonyms and antonyms.

- Know what homophones are (for example, by, buy; hole, whole) and correct usage of homophones that commonly cause problems:
 their, there, they're
 your, you're
 its, it's
 here, hear
 to, too, two
- Recognize common abbreviations (for example, St., Rd., Mr., Mrs., Ms., Dr., U.S.A., ft., in., lb.).

II. Poetry

Teachers: The poems listed here constitute a selected core of poetry for this grade. You are encouraged to expose children to more poetry, old and new, and to have children write their own poems. To bring children into the spirit of poetry, read it aloud and encourage them to read it aloud so they can experience the music in the words. At this grade, poetry should be a source of delight; technical analysis should be delayed until later grades.

Adventures of Isabel (Ogden Nash)
 The Bee (Isaac Watts; see also below, "The Crocodile")
 By Myself (Eloise Greenfield)
 Catch a Little Rhyme (Eve Merriam)
 The Crocodile (Lewis Carroll)
 Dream Variations (Langston Hughes)
 Eletelephony (Laura Richards)
 Father William (Lewis Carroll)
 First Thanksgiving of All (Nancy Byrd Turner)
 For want of a nail, the shoe was lost . . . (traditional)
 Jimmy Jet and His TV Set (Shel Silverstein)
 Knoxville, Tennessee (Nikki Giovanni)
 Trees (Sergeant Joyce Kilmer)

III. Fiction

Teachers: The titles here constitute a selected core of stories for this grade. Expose children to many more stories, and encourage children to write their own stories. Children should also be exposed to nonfiction prose: biographies, books about science and history, books on art and music, etc. Also, engage children in dramatic activities, possibly with one of the stories below in the form of a play. Some of the following works, such as *Alice in Wonderland* and *The Wind in the Willows*, lend themselves to reading aloud to children.

A. STORIES

Alice in Wonderland (Lewis Carroll)
 from *The Arabian Nights*:
 Aladdin and the Wonderful Lamp
 Ali Baba and the Forty Thieves
 The Hunting of the Great Bear (an Iroquois legend about the origin of the Big Dipper)
 The Husband Who Was to Mind the House (a Norse/English folktale, also known as "Gone is Gone")
 The Little Match Girl (Hans Christian Andersen)
 The People Could Fly (an African American folktale)
 Three Words of Wisdom (a folktale from Mexico)
 William Tell
 selections from *The Wind in the Willows*: "The River Bank" and
 "The Open Road" (Kenneth Grahame)

See also American History 3:
 Slavery in the Colonies, re
 "The People Who Could Fly."

See also World History 3:
Vikings.

See also World History 3,
Ancient Rome.

B. MYTHS AND MYTHICAL CHARACTERS

- Norse Mythology
 - Asgard (home of the gods)
 - Valhalla
 - Hel (underworld)
 - Odin
 - Thor
 - trolls
 - Norse gods and English names for days of the week: Tyr, Odin [Wodin], Thor, Frigg [Freya]
- More Myths and Legends of Ancient Greece and Rome
 - Jason and the Golden Fleece
 - Perseus and Medusa
 - Cupid and Psyche
 - The Sword of Damocles
 - Damon and Pythias
 - Androcles and the Lion
 - Horatius at the Bridge

C. LITERARY TERMS

biography and autobiography
fiction and nonfiction

IV. Sayings and Phrases

Teachers: Every culture has phrases and proverbs that make no sense when carried over literally into another culture. For many children, this section may not be needed; they will have picked up these sayings by hearing them at home and among friends. But the sayings have been one of the categories most appreciated by teachers who work with children from home cultures that differ from the standard culture of literate American English.

Actions speak louder than words.
His bark is worse than his bite.
Beat around the bush
Beggars can't be choosers.
Clean bill of health
Cold shoulder
A feather in your cap
Last straw
Let bygones be bygones.
One rotten apple spoils the whole barrel.
On its last legs
Rule the roost
The show must go on.
Touch and go
When in Rome do as the Romans do.
Rome wasn't built in a day.

History and Geography: Grade 3

WORLD HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHY

I. World Geography

Teachers: The study of geography embraces many topics throughout the *Core Knowledge Sequence*, including topics in history and science. Geographic knowledge includes a spatial sense of the world, an awareness of the physical processes that shape life, a sense of the interactions between humans and their environment, an understanding of the relations between place and culture, and an awareness of the characteristics of specific regions and cultures.

A. SPATIAL SENSE (Working with Maps, Globes, and Other Geographic Tools)

Teachers: Review and reinforce earlier topics, and add new topics as follows:

- Name your continent, country, state, and community.
- Understand that maps have keys or legends with symbols and their uses.
- Find directions on a map: east, west, north, south.
- Identify major oceans: Pacific, Atlantic, Indian, Arctic.
- The seven continents: Asia, Europe, Africa, North America, South America, Antarctica, Australia
- Locate: Canada, United States, Mexico, Central America.
- Locate: the Equator, Northern Hemisphere and Southern Hemisphere, North and South Poles.
- Measure straight-line distances using a bar scale.
- Use an atlas and, if available, on-line sources to find geographic information.

B. GEOGRAPHICAL TERMS AND FEATURES

Teachers: Review terms from grade 1 (peninsula, harbor, bay, island) and grade 2 (coast, valley, desert, oasis, prairie), and add:

- boundary, channel, delta, isthmus, plateau, reservoir, strait

C. CANADA

- Locate in relation to United States
- French and British heritage, French-speaking Quebec
- Rocky Mountains
- Hudson Bay, St. Lawrence River, Yukon River
- Divided into provinces
- Major cities, including Montreal, Quebec, Toronto, Vancouver

D. IMPORTANT RIVERS OF THE WORLD

- Terms: source, mouth, tributary, drainage basin
- Asia: Ob, Yellow (Huang He), Yangtze (Chang Jiang), Ganges, Indus, Tigris, Euphrates
- Africa: Nile, Niger, Congo
- South America: Amazon, Parana, Orinoco
- North America: Mississippi and major tributaries, Mackenzie, Yukon
- Australia: Murray-Darling
- Europe: Volga, Danube, Rhine

See also below,
American History and
Geography II.C: Search for
the Northwest Passage.

II. The Ancient Roman Civilization

Teachers: Students will study Rome again in grade 6, with a focus on the legacy of ideas from ancient Greece and Rome.

A. GEOGRAPHY OF THE MEDITERRANEAN REGION

- Mediterranean Sea, Aegean Sea, Adriatic Sea
- Greece, Italy (peninsula), France, Spain
- Strait of Gibraltar, Atlantic Ocean
- North Africa, Asia Minor (peninsula), Turkey
- Bosphorus (strait), Black Sea, Istanbul (Constantinople)
- Red Sea, Persian Gulf, Indian Ocean

B. BACKGROUND

- Define B.C. / A.D. and B.C.E. / C.E.
- The legend of Romulus and Remus
- Latin as the language of Rome
- Worship of gods and goddesses, largely based on Greek religion
- The Republic: Senate, Patricians, Plebeians
- Punic Wars: Carthage, Hannibal

C. THE EMPIRE

- Julius Caesar
 - Defeats Pompey in civil war, becomes dictator
 - “Veni, vidi, vici” (“I came, I saw, I conquered”)
 - Cleopatra of Egypt
 - Caesar assassinated in the Senate, Brutus
- Augustus Caesar
- Life in the Roman Empire
 - The Forum: temples, marketplaces, etc.
 - The Colosseum: circuses, gladiator combat, chariot races
 - Roads, bridges, and aqueducts
- Eruption of Mt. Vesuvius, destruction of Pompeii
- Persecution of Christians

D. THE “DECLINE AND FALL” OF ROME

- Weak and corrupt emperors, legend of Nero fiddling as Rome burns
- Civil wars
- City of Rome sacked
- Social and moral decay

E. THE EASTERN ROMAN EMPIRE: BYZANTINE CIVILIZATION

- The rise of the Eastern Roman Empire, known as the Byzantine Empire
- Constantine, emperor who made Christianity the official religion of Rome
- Constantinople (now called Istanbul) merges diverse influences and cultures.
- Justinian, Justinian’s Code

See also Language Arts 3:
More Myths and Legends of
Ancient Greece and Rome.

See also Visual Arts 3:
Art of Ancient Rome and
Byzantine Civilization.

III. The Vikings

- From area now called Scandinavia (Sweden, Denmark, Norway)
- Also called Norsemen, they were skilled sailors and shipbuilders.
- Traders, and sometimes raiders of the European coast
- Eric the Red and Leif Ericson (Leif “the Lucky”)
- Earliest Europeans (long before Columbus) we know of to come to North America
 - Locate: Greenland, Canada, Newfoundland

See also Language Arts 3:
Norse Myths.

American History and Geography

AMERICAN HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHY

Teachers: In third grade, students begin a more detailed and in-depth chronological investigation of topics, some of which have been introduced in grades K–2. Specific topics include: the early exploration of North America; ways of life of specific Native American peoples; life in colonial America before the Revolution. Use of timelines is encouraged. The following guidelines are meant to complement any locally required studies of the family, community, or region. Note that in fifth grade the American Geography requirements include “fifty states and capitals”; teachers in grades two through four may want to introduce these incrementally to prepare for the fifth grade requirement.

I. The Earliest Americans

A. CROSSING FROM ASIA TO NORTH AMERICA

- During the Ice Age, nomadic hunters cross from Asia to North America (now the Bering Strait). (Crossing a land bridge is just one of many theories.) Different peoples, with different languages and ways of life, eventually spread out over the North and South American continents. These early peoples include:
 - Inuits (Eskimos)
 - Anasazi, pueblo builders and cliff dwellers
 - Mound builders

B. NATIVE AMERICANS

- In the Southwest
 - Pueblos (Hopi, Zuni)
 - Dine (Navajo)
 - Apaches
- Eastern “Woodland” Indians
 - Woodland culture: wigwams, longhouses, farming, peace pipe, Shaman and Sachem
 - Major tribes and nations (such as Powhatan, Delaware, Susquehanna, Mohican, Massachusetts, Iroquois Confederacy)
- In the Southeast
 - Cherokee
 - Seminole

II. Early Exploration of North America

Teachers: In fifth grade, students will examine European exploration in a more global context. Third grade teachers should look ahead to the fifth grade World History guidelines (under “European Exploration, Trade, and the Clash of Cultures”) to see how the topics introduced here will be developed and extended later. It is recommended that third grade teachers keep their focus on the explorers and events specified here, and leave for fifth grade the figures and ideas specified for that grade.

A. EARLY SPANISH EXPLORATION AND SETTLEMENT

- Settlement of Florida
- Ponce de Leon, legend of the Fountain of Youth
- Hernando de Soto
- Founding of St. Augustine (oldest continuous European settlement in what is now the U.S.)
- Geography: Caribbean Sea, West Indies, Puerto Rico, Cuba, Gulf of Mexico, Mississippi River

See also Language Arts 3: “The Hunting of the Great Bear” (an Iroquois legend).

B. EXPLORATION AND SETTLEMENT OF THE AMERICAN SOUTHWEST

- Early Spanish explorers in the lands that are now the states of Texas, New Mexico, Arizona, and California; missionary settlements (missions), especially in Texas and California
- Coronado and the legend of the “Seven Cities of Cibola” (of Gold)
- Geography: Grand Canyon and Rio Grande
- Conflicts between the Spanish and the Pueblos (1680 revolt led by Popé)

C. THE SEARCH FOR THE NORTHWEST PASSAGE

- Many explorers undertook the perilous, sometimes fatal, voyage to find a short cut across North America to Asia, including:
 - John Cabot: Newfoundland
 - Champlain: “New France” and Quebec
 - Henry Hudson: the Hudson River
- Geography
 - “New France” and Quebec
 - Canada, St. Lawrence River
 - The Great Lakes: Superior, Michigan, Huron, Erie, Ontario

Note: Students may also be interested to learn about Amerigo Vespucci, the unlikely source of our country’s name.

III. The Thirteen Colonies: Life and Times Before the Revolution

Teachers: Discuss with children the definition of “colony” and why countries establish colonies. Help children see that the thirteen English colonies were not alike. Different groups of people came to America with different motivations (hoping to get rich, looking for religious freedom, etc.), and the thirteen colonies developed in different ways.

A. GEOGRAPHY

- The thirteen colonies by region: New England, Middle Atlantic, Southern
- Differences in climate from north to south: corresponding differences in agriculture (subsistence farming in New England, gradual development of large plantations in the South)
- Important cities in the development of trade and government: Philadelphia, Boston, New York, Charleston

B. SOUTHERN COLONIES

- Southern colonies: Virginia, Maryland, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia
- Virginia
 - Chesapeake Bay, James River
 - 1607: three ships of the London Company (later called the Virginia Company) arrive in Virginia, seeking gold and other riches
 - Establishment of Jamestown, first continuous English colony in the New World
 - Trade with Powhatan Indians (see also Eastern Woodland Indians, above)
 - John Smith
 - Pocahontas, marriage to John Rolfe
 - Diseases kill many people, both colonists and Indians
 - The Starving Time
 - Clashes between American Indians and English colonists
 - Development of tobacco as a cash crop, development of plantations
 - 1619: first African laborers brought to Virginia
- Maryland
 - A colony established mainly as a refuge for Catholics
 - Lord Baltimore
- South Carolina
 - Charleston
 - Plantations (rice, indigo) and slave labor

Note: The question of fact vs. legend regarding the rescue of John Smith by Pocahontas presents a good opportunity to explore what historians know and how they seek to learn about the past.

See also Language Arts 3:
“The People Who Could Fly”
re slavery in the colonies.

- Georgia
 - James Oglethorpe’s plan to establish a colony for English debtors
- Slavery in the Southern colonies
 - Economic reasons that the Southern colonies came to rely on slavery (for example, slave labor on large plantations)
 - The difference between indentured servants and slaves: slaves as property
 - The Middle Passage

C. NEW ENGLAND COLONIES

- New England colonies: Massachusetts, New Hampshire, Connecticut, Rhode Island
- Gradual development of maritime economy: fishing and shipbuilding
- Massachusetts
 - Colonists seeking religious freedom: in England, an official “established” church (the Church of England), which did not allow people to worship as they chose
 - The Pilgrims
 - From England to Holland to Massachusetts
 - 1620: Voyage of the Mayflower
 - Significance of the Mayflower Compact
 - Plymouth, William Bradford
 - Helped by Wampanoag Indians: Massasoit, Tisquantum (Squanto)
 - The Puritans
 - Massachusetts Bay Colony, Governor John Winthrop: “We shall be as a city upon a hill.”
 - Emphasis on reading and education, the *New England Primer*
- Rhode Island
 - Roger Williams: belief in religious toleration
 - Anne Hutchinson

Note: In fifth grade, students will explore the social changes that led to the Protestant Reformation.

D. MIDDLE ATLANTIC COLONIES

- Middle Atlantic colonies: New York, New Jersey, Delaware, Pennsylvania
- New York
 - Dutch settlements and trading posts in “New Netherland”
 - Dutch West India Company acquires Manhattan Island and Long Island through a (probably misunderstood) purchase from the Indians; Dutch establish New Amsterdam (today, New York City)
 - English take over from the Dutch, and rename the colony New York
- Pennsylvania
 - William Penn
 - Society of Friends, “Quakers”
 - Philadelphia

Visual Arts: Grade 3

SEE INTRODUCTION, “The Arts in the Curriculum.”

Teachers: In schools, lessons on the visual arts should illustrate important elements of making and appreciating art, and emphasize important artists, works of art, and artistic concepts. When appropriate, topics in the visual arts may be linked to topics in other disciplines. While the following guidelines specify a variety of artworks in different media and from various cultures, they are not intended to be comprehensive. Teachers are encouraged to build upon the core content and expose children to a wide range of art and artists.

I. Elements of Art

Teachers: The generally recognized elements of art include line, shape, form, space, light, texture, and color. In third grade, build on what the children have learned in earlier grades as you introduce concepts of light, space, and design.

A. LIGHT

- Observe how artists use light and shadow (to focus our attention, affect our emotions, etc.) in
James Chapin, *Ruby Green Singing*
Jan Vermeer, *Milkmaid*

B. SPACE IN ARTWORKS

- Understand the following terms: two-dimensional (height, width) and three-dimensional (height, width, depth)
- Observe relationship between two-dimensional and three-dimensional shapes: square to cube, triangle to pyramid, circle to sphere and cylinder
- Observe how artists can make two-dimensional look three-dimensional by creating an illusion of depth, and examine the foreground, middle ground, and background in paintings, including
Jean Millet, *The Gleaners*
Pieter Bruegel, *Peasant Wedding*

C. DESIGN: HOW THE ELEMENTS OF ART WORK TOGETHER

- Become familiar with how these terms are used in discussing works of art:
Figure and ground
Pattern
Balance and symmetry
- Examine design—how the elements of art work together—in
Rosa Bonheur, *The Horse Fair*
Mary Cassatt, *The Bath*
Early American quilts
Edward Hicks, *The Peaceable Kingdom*
Henri Matisse, cut-outs: *Icarus*
Edvard Munch, *The Scream*
Horace Pippin, *Victorian Interior*
Faith Ringgold, *Tar Beach*

Note: Students will take a more detailed look at perspective in grade 5.

See also American History 3: Colonial America, re Early American quilts and *The Peaceable Kingdom*.

II. American Indian Art

Teachers: The works of art specified below are associated with the Southwest and Eastern Woodland Indians studied in third grade, thus other works of art, such as totem poles, are not listed here because they would be more appropriately examined when students are introduced to the Pacific Northwest Indians. Students should be made aware of the spiritual purposes and significance of many American Indian works of art.

- Become familiar with American Indian works, including
 - Kachina dolls (Hopi, Zuni)
 - Navajo (Dine) blankets and rugs, sand paintings
 - Jewelry

III. Art of Ancient Rome and Byzantine Civilization

Teachers: The works of art listed here may be introduced as part of your study of ancient Roman civilization; see *World History Grade 3*.

- Become familiar with artworks of ancient Roman and Byzantine civilization, including
 - Le Pont du Gard
 - The Pantheon
 - Byzantine mosaics
 - Hagia Sophia







Music: Grade 3

SEE INTRODUCTION, “The Arts in the Curriculum.”

Teachers: In schools, lessons on music should feature activities and works that illustrate important musical concepts and terms, and should introduce important composers and works. When appropriate, topics in music may be linked to topics in other disciplines.

The following guidelines focus on content, not performance skills, though many concepts are best learned through active practice (singing, clapping rhythms, playing instruments, etc.).

I. Elements of Music

- Through participation, become familiar with basic elements of music (rhythm, melody, harmony, form, timbre, etc.).
 - Recognize a steady beat, accents, and the downbeat; play a steady beat.
 - Move responsively to music.
 - Recognize short and long sounds.
 - Discriminate between fast and slow; gradually slowing down and getting faster.
 - Discriminate between differences in pitch: high and low.
 - Discriminate between loud and soft; gradually increasing and decreasing volume.
 - Understand that melody can move up and down.
 - Hum the melody while listening to music.
 - Echo short rhythms and melodic patterns.
 - Play simple rhythms and melodies.
 - Sing unaccompanied, accompanied, and in unison.
 - Recognize harmony; sing rounds.
 - Recognize verse and refrain.
 - Continue work with timbre and phrasing.
 - Review names of musical notes; scale as a series of notes; singing the C major scale using “do re mi” etc.
- Understand the following notation
 - names of lines and spaces in the treble clef
 -  treble clef,  staff, bar line, double bar line, measure, repeat signs
 -  whole note  half note  quarter note  eighth note
 - whole rest, half rest, quarter rest
 - meter signature: $\frac{4}{4}$ $\frac{2}{4}$ $\frac{3}{4}$
 - soft *p* *pp* loud *f* *ff*

II. Listening and Understanding

Teachers: Expose children to a wide range of music, including children’s music, popular instrumental music, and music from various cultures.

A. THE ORCHESTRA

- Review families of instruments: strings, brass, woodwinds, percussion.
- Become familiar with brass instruments—trumpet, French horn, trombone, tuba—and listen to
 - Gioacchino Rossini, *William Tell Overture*, finale (trumpet)
 - Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart, selections from the *Horn Concertos* (French horn)

See also below, re brass instruments, Composers and Their Music: Aaron Copland’s *Fanfare for the Common Man*, and John Philip Sousa, *Stars and Stripes Forever*. See also Language Arts 3: William Tell.

Note: When you explore woodwinds with children, you may also want to recall Prokofiev’s *Peter and the Wolf*: the duck’s theme (oboe), cat’s theme (clarinet), bird’s theme (flute), and Grandfather’s theme (bassoon).

See below, Songs, “Simple Gifts.”

See also Language Arts 3: Tales from “The Arabian Nights” re *Scheherazade*. Also, re Norse mythology, you may want to introduce Wagner’s “The Ride of the Valkyries.”

Note: Review from earlier grades “America the Beautiful” and “The Star-Spangled Banner.”

- Become familiar with woodwind instruments—flute and piccolo (no reeds); clarinet, oboe, bassoon (with reeds)—and listen to
 Claude Debussy, *Prelude to the Afternoon of a Faun* (flute)
 Opening of George Gershwin’s *Rhapsody in Blue* (clarinet)

B. COMPOSERS AND THEIR MUSIC

Teachers: Provide brief, child-friendly biographical profiles of the following composers, and listen to representative works:

- Peter Ilich Tchaikovsky, *Suite from Swan Lake*
- John Philip Sousa, *Stars and Stripes Forever*
- Aaron Copland, *Fanfare for the Common Man*; “Hoedown” from *Rodeo*, “Simple Gifts” from *Appalachian Spring*

C. MUSICAL CONNECTIONS

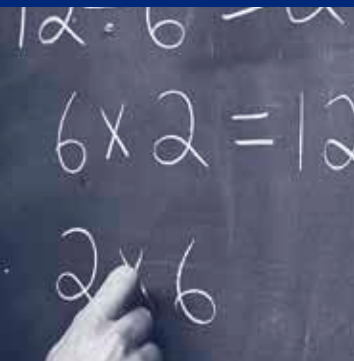
Teachers: Introduce children to the following in connection with topics in other disciplines:

- Nikolai Rimsky-Korsakov, *Scheherazade*, part one: “The Sea and Sinbad’s Ship”

III. Songs

- Alouette
- America (“My country, ’tis of thee”)
- A Bicycle Built for Two (chorus only)
- Down in the Valley
- He’s Got the Whole World in His Hands
- Hey, Ho, Nobody Home (round)
- In the Good Old Summertime (chorus only)
- Li’l Liza Jane
- My Bonnie Lies Over the Ocean
- Polly Wolly Doodle
- The Man on the Flying Trapeze (chorus only)
- The Sidewalks of New York (chorus only)
- Simple Gifts (“Tis a gift to be simple”)
- This Little Light of Mine
- You’re a Grand Old Flag

Teachers: Mathematics has its own vocabulary and patterns of thinking. It is a discipline with its own language and conventions. Thus, while some lessons may offer occasional opportunities for linking mathematics to other disciplines, it is critically important to attend to math as math. From the earliest years, mathematics requires incremental review and steady practice: not only the diligent effort required to master basic facts and operations, but also thoughtful and varied practice that approaches problems from a variety of angles, and gives children a variety of opportunities to apply the same concept or operation in different types of situations. While it is important to work toward the development of “higher-order problem-solving skills,” it is equally important—indeed, it is prerequisite to achieving “higher order” skills—to have a sound grasp of basic facts, and an automatic fluency with fundamental operations.



I. Numbers and Number Sense

- Read and write numbers (in digits and words) up to six digits.
- Recognize place value up to hundred thousands.
- Order and compare numbers to 999,999, using the signs $<$, $>$, and $=$.
- Count by twos, threes, fives, and tens; count by tens from any given number.
- Write numbers in expanded form.
- Use a number line.
- Identify ordinal position, 1st to 100th.
- Review: even and odd numbers; dozen; half-dozen; pair.
- Round to the nearest ten; to the nearest hundred.
- Identify perfect squares (and square roots) to 100, and recognize the square root sign: $\sqrt{\quad}$
- Identify Roman numerals from 1 to 20 (I - XX).
- Understand what negative numbers are in relation to familiar uses (such as temperatures below zero).
- Locate positive and negative whole numbers on a number line.
- Create and interpret bar graphs and line graphs.
- Record outcomes for a simple event (for example, tossing a die) and display the results graphically.

II. Fractions and Decimals

- Recognize fractions to $\frac{1}{10}$ and fractions whose denominator is 100.
- Identify numerator and denominator.
- Write mixed numbers.
- Recognize equivalent fractions (for example, $\frac{1}{2} = \frac{3}{6}$).
- Compare fractions with like denominators, using the signs $<$, $>$, and $=$.
- Know and write decimal equivalents to $\frac{1}{4}$, $\frac{1}{2}$, $\frac{3}{4}$.
- Read and write decimals to the hundredths.

III. Money

- Write amounts of money using \$ and ¢ signs, and the decimal point.
- Make change, using as few coins as possible.
- Add and subtract amounts of money.
- Multiply and divide amounts of money by small whole numbers.

IV. Computation

Teachers: Children should know their basic addition and subtraction facts; review and reinforce as necessary to ensure mastery.

A. ADDITION

- Review and practice basic addition facts.
- Mentally estimate a sum.
- Use mental computation strategies.
- Addition with and without regrouping: find the sum (up to 10,000) of any two whole numbers.

B. SUBTRACTION

- Understand addition and subtraction as inverse operations; use addition to check subtraction.
- Review and practice basic subtraction facts.
- Mentally estimate the difference.
- Use mental computation strategies.
- Subtraction with and without regrouping: given two whole numbers of 10,000 or less, find the difference.

C. MULTIPLICATION

- Master basic multiplication facts to 10×10 .
- Mentally multiply, by 10, 100, and 1,000.
- Multiply two whole numbers, with and without regrouping, in which one factor is 9 or less and the other is a multi-digit number up to three digits.
- Write numbers in expanded form using multiplication, for example: $9,278 = (9 \times 1,000) + (2 \times 100) + (7 \times 10) + 8$.
- Estimate a product.
- Solve word problems involving multiplication.

D. DIVISION

- Understand multiplication and division as inverse operations.
- Know the meaning of dividend, divisor, and quotient.
- Know basic division facts to $100 \div 10$.
- Know that you cannot divide by 0.
- Know that any number divided by 1 = that number.
- Divide two- and three-digit dividends by one-digit divisors.
- Solve division problems with remainders.
- Check division by multiplying (and adding remainder).

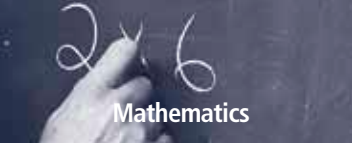
E. SOLVING PROBLEMS AND EQUATIONS

- Solve two-step word problems.
- Solve equations in the form of $__ \times 9 = 63$; $81 \div __ = 9$.
- Solve problems with more than one operation, as in $(43 - 32) \times (5 + 3) = __$.
- Read and write expressions that use parentheses to indicate order of multiple operations.

V. Measurement

A. LINEAR MEASURE

- Make linear measurements in yards, feet, and inches; and, in centimeters and meters.
- Know that one foot = 12 inches; one yard = 36 inches; 3 feet = 1 yard; 1 meter = 100 centimeters; 1 meter is a little more than one yard.
- Measure and draw line segments in inches (to $\frac{1}{4}$ inch), and in centimeters.
- Estimate linear measurements, then measure to check estimates.



B. WEIGHT

- Compare weights of objects using a balance scale.
- Estimate and measure weight in pounds and ounces; grams and kilograms.
- Know abbreviations: lb., oz., g, kg

C. CAPACITY (VOLUME)

- Estimate and measure liquid capacity in cups, pints, quarts, gallons, and liters.
- Know that 1 quart = 2 pints; 1 gallon = 4 quarts.
- Compare U.S. and metric liquid volumes: quart and liter (one liter is a little more than one quart).

D. TEMPERATURE

- Measure and record temperature in degrees Fahrenheit and Celsius.
- Know the degree sign: °
- Identify freezing point of water as $32^{\circ}\text{ F} = 0^{\circ}\text{ C}$.

E. TIME

- Read a clock face and tell time to the minute as either A.M. or P.M.; tell time in terms of both “minutes before” and “minutes after” the hour.
- Solve problems on elapsed time (how much time has passed?).
- Using a calendar, identify the date, day of the week, month, and year.
- Write the date using words (for name of month) and numbers, and only numbers.

VI. Geometry

- Identify lines as horizontal, vertical, perpendicular, or parallel.
- Name lines and line segments (for example, line AB; segment CD).
- Polygons: recognize vertex (plural: vertices); identify sides as line segments (for example, side CD); identify pentagon, hexagon, and octagon (regular).
- Identify angles by letter names (for example, \angle ABC); identify a right angle; know that there are four right angles in a square or rectangle.
- Compute area in square inches (in^2) and square centimeters (cm^2).
- Recognize and draw congruent figures; identify a line of symmetry, and create symmetric figures.
- Identify solid figures: sphere, cube, rectangular solid, pyramid, cone, cylinder.

Science: Grade 3

Teachers: Effective instruction in science requires hands-on experience and observation. In the words of the 1993 report from the American Association for the Advancement of Science, *Benchmarks for Science Literacy*, "From their very first day in school, students should be actively engaged in learning to view the world scientifically. That means encouraging them to ask questions about nature and to seek answers, collect things, count and measure things, make qualitative observations, organize collections and observations, discuss findings, etc."

While experience counts for much, book learning is also important, for it helps bring coherence and order to a child's scientific knowledge. Only when topics are presented systematically and clearly can children make steady and secure progress in their scientific learning. The child's development of scientific knowledge and understanding is in some ways a very disorderly and complex process, different for each child. But a systematic approach to the exploration of science, one that combines experience with book learning, can help provide essential building blocks for deeper understanding at a later time.



I. Introduction to Classification of Animals

- Scientists classify animals according to the characteristics they share, for example:
 - Cold-blooded or warm-blooded
 - Vertebrates (have backbones and internal skeletons) or invertebrates (do not have backbones or internal skeletons)
- Different classes of vertebrates

Teachers: Children should become familiar with examples of animals in each class and some basic characteristics of each class, such as:

Fish: aquatic animals, breathe through gills, cold-blooded, most have scales, most develop from eggs that the female lays outside her body

Amphibians: live part of their lives in water and part on land, have gills when young, later develop lungs, cold-blooded, usually have moist skin

Reptiles: hatch from eggs, cold-blooded, have dry, thick, scaly skin

Birds: warm-blooded, most can fly, have feathers and wings, most build nests, hatch from eggs, most baby birds must be fed by parents and cared for until they can survive on their own (though some, like baby chickens and quail, can search for food a few hours after hatching)

Mammals: warm-blooded, have hair on their bodies, parents care for the young, females produce milk for their babies, breathe through lungs, most are terrestrial (live on land) though some are aquatic

II. The Human Body

A. THE MUSCULAR SYSTEM

- Muscles
 - Involuntary and voluntary muscles

B. THE SKELETAL SYSTEM

- Skeleton, bones, marrow
- Musculo-skeletal connections
 - Ligaments
 - Tendons, Achilles tendon
 - Cartilage
- Skull, cranium
- Spinal column, vertebrae
- Joints
- Ribs, rib cage, sternum
- Scapula (shoulder blades), pelvis, tibia, fibula
- Broken bones, x-rays



C. THE NERVOUS SYSTEM

- Brain: medulla, cerebellum, cerebrum, cerebral cortex
- Spinal cord
- Nerves
- Reflexes

D. VISION: HOW THE EYE WORKS

- Parts of the eye: cornea, iris and pupil, lens, retina
- Optic nerve
- Farsighted and nearsighted

E. HEARING: HOW THE EAR WORKS

- Sound as vibration
- Outer ear, ear canal
- Eardrum
- Three tiny bones (hammer, anvil, and stirrup) pass vibrations to the cochlea
- Auditory nerve

III. Light and Optics

Teachers: Through experimentation and observation, introduce children to some of the basic physical phenomena of light, with associated vocabulary.

Note: Students will study light in more detail in grade 8.

- The speed of light: light travels at an amazingly high speed.
- Light travels in straight lines (as can be demonstrated by forming shadows).
- Transparent and opaque objects
- Reflection
 - Mirrors: plane, concave, convex
 - Uses of mirrors in telescopes and some microscopes
- The spectrum: use a prism to demonstrate that white light is made up of a spectrum of colors.
- Lenses can be used for magnifying and bending light (as in magnifying glass, microscope, camera, telescope, binoculars).

IV. Sound

Teachers: Through experimentation and observation, introduce children to some of the basic physical phenomena of sound, with associated vocabulary.

Note: Students will study sound in more detail in grade 8.

- Sound is caused by an object vibrating rapidly.
- Sounds travel through solids, liquids, and gases.
- Sound waves are much slower than light waves.
- Qualities of sound
 - Pitch: high or low, faster vibrations = higher pitch, slower vibrations = lower pitch
 - Intensity: loudness and quietness
- Human voice
 - Larynx (voice box)
 - Vibrating vocal cords: longer, thicker vocal cords create lower, deeper voices
- Sound and how the human ear works
- Protecting your hearing

See above, II.E: Hearing.

V. Ecology

Teachers: Some topics here, such as habitats, were introduced in first grade. In this grade, develop in more detail, and explore new topics.

- Habitats, interdependence of organisms and their environment
- The concept of a “balance of nature” (constantly changing, not a static condition)
- The food chain or food web: producers, consumers, decomposers (Although the tendency is to recognize the limits of these models as well. See also Grade 1.)
- Ecosystems: how they can be affected by changes in environment (for example, rainfall, food supply, etc.), and by man-made changes
- Man-made threats to the environment
 - Air pollution: emissions, smog
 - Water pollution: industrial waste, run-off from farming
- Measures we can take to protect the environment (for example, conservation, recycling)

VI. Astronomy

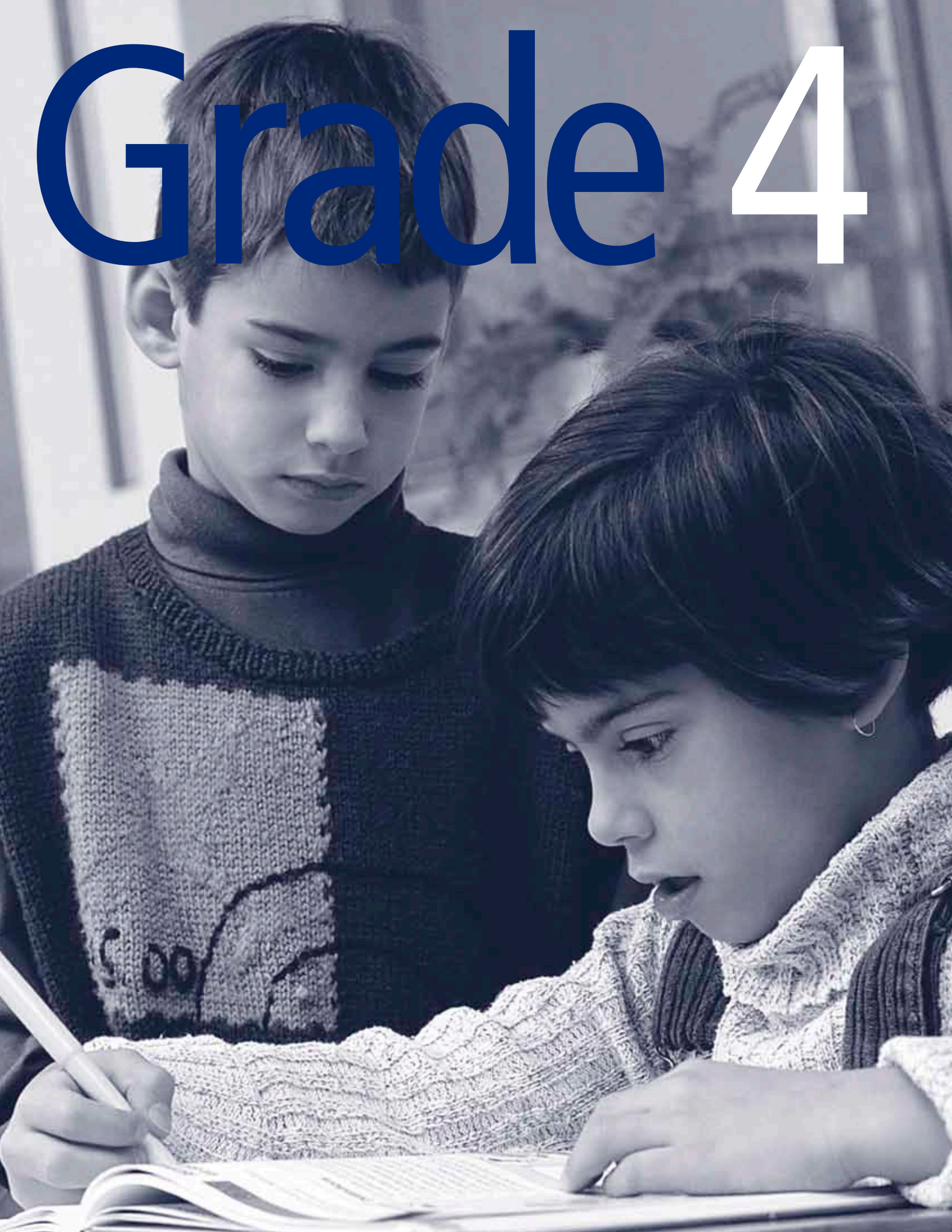
- The “Big Bang” as one theory
- The universe: an extent almost beyond imagining
- Galaxies: Milky Way and Andromeda
- Our solar system
 - Sun: source of energy (heat and light)
 - The eight planets: Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune
- Planetary motion: orbit and rotation
 - How day and night on earth are caused by the earth’s rotation
 - Sunrise in the east and sunset in the west
 - How the seasons are caused by the earth’s orbit around the sun, tilt of the earth’s axis
- Gravity, gravitational pull
 - Gravitational pull of the moon (and to a lesser degree, the sun) causes ocean tides on earth
 - Gravitational pull of “black holes” prevents even light from escaping
- Asteroids, meteors (“shooting stars”), comets, Halley’s Comet
- How an eclipse happens
- Stars and constellations
- Orienteering (finding your way) by using North Star, Big Dipper
- Exploration of space
 - Observation through telescopes
 - Rockets and satellites: from unmanned to manned flights
 - Apollo 11, first landing on the moon: “One small step for a man, one giant leap for mankind.”
 - Space shuttle

VII. Science Biographies

See above, Sound, *re*
Alexander Graham Bell;
Astronomy, *re* Copernicus;
Exploration of Space, *re*
Mae Jemison; Ecology, *re*
John Muir.

Alexander Graham Bell (invented the telephone)
Copernicus (had new sun-centered idea about the solar system)
Mae Jemison (astronaut and medical pioneer)
John Muir (conservationist who helped create many national parks)

Grade 4



Overview of Topics

Grade 4

Language Arts

- I. Writing, Grammar, and Usage
 - A. Writing and Research
 - B. Grammar and Usage
- II. Poetry
 - A. Poems
 - B. Terms
- III. Fiction
 - A. Stories
 - B. Myths and Mythical Characters
 - C. Literary Terms
- IV. Speeches
- V. Sayings and Phrases

History and Geography

World:

- I. World Geography
 - A. Spatial Sense
 - B. Mountains and Mountain Ranges
- II. Europe in the Middle Ages
 - A. Geography Related to the Development of Western Europe
 - B. Background
 - C. Developments in History of the Christian Church
 - D. Feudalism
 - E. The Norman Conquest
 - F. Growth of Towns
 - G. England in the Middle Ages
- III. The Spread of Islam and the "Holy Wars"
 - A. Islam
 - B. Development of Islamic Civilization
 - C. Wars Between Muslims and Christians
- IV. Early and Medieval African Kingdoms
 - A. Geography of Africa
 - B. Early African Kingdoms
 - C. Medieval Kingdoms of the Sudan
- V. China: Dynasties and Conquerors

American:

- I. The American Revolution
 - A. Background: The French and Indian War
 - B. Causes and Provocations
 - C. The Revolution
- II. Making a Constitutional Government
 - A. Main Ideas Behind the Declaration of Independence
 - B. Making a New Government: From the Declaration to the Constitution
 - C. The Constitution of the United States
 - D. Levels and Functions of Government (National, State, Local)
- III. Early Presidents and Politics
- IV. Reformers
- V. Symbols and Figures

Visual Arts

- I. Art of the Middle Ages in Europe
- II. Islamic Art and Architecture
- III. The Art of Africa
- IV. The Art of China
- V. The Art of a New Nation: The United States

Music

- I. Elements of Music
- II. Listening and Understanding
 - A. The Orchestra
 - B. Vocal Ranges
 - C. Composers and Their Music
 - D. Musical Connections
- III. Songs

Mathematics

- I. Numbers and Number Sense
- II. Fractions and Decimals
 - A. Fractions
 - B. Decimals
- III. Money
- IV. Computation
 - A. Multiplication
 - B. Division
 - C. Solving Problems and Equations
- V. Measurement
- VI. Geometry

Science

- I. The Human Body
 - A. The Circulatory System
 - B. The Respiratory System
- II. Chemistry: Basic Terms and Concepts
 - A. Atoms
 - B. Properties of Matter
 - C. Elements
 - D. Solutions
- III. Electricity
- IV. Geology: The Earth and Its Changes
 - A. The Earth's Layers
 - B. How Mountains Are Formed
 - C. Rocks
 - D. Weathering and Erosion
- V. Meteorology
- VI. Science Biographies

Language Arts: Grade 4

The *Common Core State Standards for English Language Arts* emphasize the critical importance of building nonfiction background knowledge in a coherent and sequenced way within and across grades. This can be accomplished most effectively, at each grade level, by integrating the topics from history, geography, science, and the arts in the *Core Knowledge Sequence* into the language arts block. Note that in the *Sequence*, there are many cross-curricular connections to history and science topics within Language Arts (e.g., poems, stories, and sayings), as well as to visual arts and music, which can and should be integrated into the applicable domain of study.

For Grade 4, domains include: Europe in the Middle Ages; The Spread of Islam and the “Holy Wars”; Early and Medieval African Kingdoms; China: Dynasties and Conquerors; The American Revolution; Making a Constitutional Government; Early Presidents and Politics; Reformers; The Human Body; Chemistry: Basic Terms and Concepts; Electricity; Geology: The Earth and Its Changes; Meteorology.

NOTE: The objectives listed in **I. Writing, Grammar, and Usage** are currently under revision, as part of the *Core Knowledge Language Arts* program development for Grades 3–5. The revised Grade 4 goals and objectives will be conceptually consistent with the K–2 language arts sections of the 2010 edition of the *Sequence* and will be posted at www.coreknowledge.org as part of the online *Sequence* as soon as they are available.

I. Writing, Grammar, and Usage

Teachers: Children should be given many opportunities for writing, both imaginative and expository, but place a stronger emphasis than in previous grades on expository writing, including, for example, summaries, book reports, and descriptive essays. Provide guidance that strikes a balance between encouraging creativity and requiring correct use of conventions. Children should be given more responsibility for (and guidance in) editing for organization and development of ideas, and proofreading to correct errors in spelling, usage, and mechanics. In fourth grade, children should be able to spell most words or provide a highly probable spelling, and know how to use a dictionary to check and correct words that present difficulty. They should receive regular practice in vocabulary enrichment.

Note: Introduce fourth graders to the purpose of a bibliography, and have them prepare one that identifies basic publication information about the sources used, such as author, title, and date of publication.

A. WRITING AND RESEARCH

- Produce a variety of types of writing—including stories, reports, summaries, descriptions, poems, letters—with a coherent structure or story line.
- Know how to gather information from different sources (such as an encyclopedia, magazines, interviews, observations, atlas, on-line), and write short reports presenting the information in his or her own words, with attention to the following:
 - understanding the purpose and audience of the writing
 - defining a main idea and sticking to it
 - providing an introduction and conclusion
 - organizing material in coherent paragraphs
 - documenting sources in a rudimentary bibliography
- Organize material in paragraphs and understand
 - how to use a topic sentence
 - how to develop a paragraph with examples and details
 - that each new paragraph is indented

B. GRAMMAR AND USAGE

- Understand what a complete sentence is, and identify subject and predicate in single-clause sentences
distinguish complete sentences from fragments
identify and correct run-on sentences
- Identify subject and verb in a sentence and understand that they must agree.
- Identify and use different sentence types: declarative, interrogative, imperative, exclamatory.
- Know the following parts of speech and how they are used: nouns, pronouns, verbs (action verbs and auxiliary verbs), adjectives (including articles), adverbs, conjunctions (*and, but, or*), interjections.
- Know how to use the following punctuation:
 - end punctuation: period, question mark, or exclamation point
 - comma: between day and year when writing a date, between city and state in an address, in a series, after *yes* and *no*, before conjunctions that combine sentences, inside quotation marks in dialogue
 - apostrophe: in contractions, in singular and plural possessive nouns
 - quotation marks: in dialogue, for titles of poems, songs, short stories, magazine articles
- Understand what synonyms and antonyms are, and provide synonyms or antonyms for given words.
- Use underlining or italics for titles of books.
- Know how the following prefixes and suffixes affect word meaning:
 - Prefixes:
 - im, in* (as in impossible, incorrect)
 - non* (as in nonfiction, nonviolent)
 - mis* (as in misbehave, misspell)
 - en* (as in enable, endanger)
 - pre* (as in prehistoric, pregame)
 - Suffixes:
 - ily, y* (as in easily, speedily, tricky)
 - ful* (as in thoughtful, wonderful)
 - able, ible* (as in washable, flexible)
 - ment* (as in agreement, amazement)
- Review correct usage of problematic homophones:
 - their, there, they're
 - your, you're
 - its, it's
 - here, hear
 - to, too, two

Note: A brief review of prefixes and suffixes introduced in third grade is recommended. Prefixes: *re, un, dis*. Suffixes: *er* and *or, less, ly*.

II. Poetry

Teachers: The poems listed here constitute a selected core of poetry for this grade. You are encouraged to expose children to more poetry, old and new, and to have children write their own poems. To bring children into the spirit of poetry, read it aloud and encourage them to read it aloud so they can experience the music in the words. At this grade, poetry should be a source of delight; technical analysis should be delayed until later grades.

A. POEMS

Afternoon on a Hill (Edna St. Vincent Millay)
 Clarence (Shel Silverstein)
 Clouds (Christina Rossetti)
 Concord Hymn (Ralph Waldo Emerson)
 Dreams (Langston Hughes)
 the drum (Nikki Giovanni)

Fog (Carl Sandburg)
 George Washington (Rosemary and Stephen Vincent Benet)
 Humanity (Elma Stuckey)
 Life Doesn't Frighten Me (Maya Angelou)
 Monday's Child Is Fair of Face (traditional)
 Paul Revere's Ride (Henry Wadsworth Longfellow)
 The Pobble Who Has No Toes (Edward Lear)
 The Rhinoceros (Ogden Nash)
 Things (Eloise Greenfield)
 A Tragic Story (William Makepeace Thackeray)

B. TERMS

stanza and line

III. Fiction

Teachers: In fourth grade, children should be fluent, competent readers of appropriate materials. Decoding skills should be automatic, allowing the children to focus on meaning. Regular practice in reading aloud and independent silent reading should continue. Children should read outside of school at least 20 minutes daily.

The titles below constitute a selected core of stories for this grade. Teachers and parents are encouraged to expose children to many more stories, and to encourage children to write their own stories. Children should also be exposed to nonfiction prose: biographies, books about science and history, books on art and music, etc. Also, engage children in dramatic activities, possibly with one of the stories below in the form of a play. Some of the stories below—such as *Gulliver's Travels*, *Robinson Crusoe*, and the stories by Washington Irving—are available in editions adapted for young readers.

A. STORIES

The Fire on the Mountain (an Ethiopian folktale)
 from *Gulliver's Travels*: Gulliver in Lilliput and Brobdingnag (Jonathan Swift)
The Legend of Sleepy Hollow and *Rip Van Winkle* (Washington Irving)
 The Magic Brocade (a Chinese folktale)
Pollyanna (Eleanor Porter)
Robinson Crusoe (Daniel Defoe)
 Robin Hood
 St. George and the Dragon
Treasure Island (Robert Louis Stevenson)

B. MYTHS AND MYTHICAL CHARACTERS

Legends of King Arthur and the Knights of the Round Table
 How Arthur Became King
 The Sword in the Stone
 The Sword Excalibur
 Guinevere
 Merlin and the Lady of the Lake
 Sir Lancelot

C. LITERARY TERMS

novel
 plot
 setting

See also American History 4: American Revolution, re stories by Washington Irving.

Note: "The Magic Brocade" is also known as "The Chuang Brocade," "The Enchanted Tapestry," "The Magic Tapestry," and "The Weaving of a Dream."

See also World History 4: The Middle Ages, re "Robin Hood" and "St. George and the Dragon."

See also World History 4: The Middle Ages, feudalism and chivalry, re Legends of King Arthur.

IV. Speeches

Teachers: Famous passages from the following speeches should be taught in connection with topics in American History 4.

Patrick Henry: "Give me liberty or give me death"

Sojourner Truth: "Ain't I a woman?"

V. Sayings and Phrases

Teachers: Every culture has phrases and proverbs that make no sense when carried over literally into another culture. For many children, this section may not be needed; they will have picked up these sayings by hearing them at home and among friends. But the sayings have been one of the categories most appreciated by teachers who work with children from home cultures that differ from the standard culture of literate American English.

An ounce of prevention is worth a pound of cure.
 As the crow flies
 Beauty is only skin deep.
 The bigger they are, the harder they fall.
 Birds of a feather flock together.
 Blow hot and cold
 Break the ice
 Bull in a china shop
 Bury the hatchet
 Can't hold a candle to
 Don't count your chickens before they hatch.
 Don't put all your eggs in one basket.
 Etc.
 Go to pot
 Half a loaf is better than none.
 Haste makes waste.
 Laugh and the world laughs with you.
 Lightning never strikes twice in the same place.
 Live and let live.
 Make ends meet.
 Make hay while the sun shines.
 Money burning a hole in your pocket
 Once in a blue moon
 One picture is worth a thousand words.
 On the warpath
 RSVP
 Run-of-the-mill
 Seeing is believing.
 Shipshape
 Through thick and thin
 Timbuktu
 Two wrongs don't make a right.
 When it rains, it pours.
 You can lead a horse to water, but you can't make it drink.

History and Geography: Grade 4

WORLD HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHY

I. World Geography

Teachers: The study of geography embraces many topics throughout the *Core Knowledge Sequence*, including topics in history and science. Geographic knowledge includes a spatial sense of the world, an awareness of the physical processes that shape life, a sense of the interactions between humans and their environment, an understanding of the relations between place and culture, and an awareness of the characteristics of specific regions and cultures. Many geographic topics are listed below in connection with historical topics.

A. SPATIAL SENSE (Working with Maps, Globes, and Other Geographic Tools)

Teachers: Review as necessary map-reading skills and concepts, as well as geographic terms, from previous grades (see *Geography guidelines for grade 3*).

- Measure distances using map scales.
- Read maps and globes using longitude and latitude, coordinates, degrees.
- Prime Meridian (0 degrees); Greenwich, England; 180° Line (International Date Line)
- Relief maps: elevations and depressions

B. MOUNTAINS AND MOUNTAIN RANGES

- Major mountain ranges
 - South America: Andes
 - North America: Rockies and Appalachians
 - Asia: Himalayas and Urals
 - Africa: Atlas Mountains
 - Europe: Alps
- High mountains of the world
 - Asia: Everest
 - North America: McKinley
 - South America: Aconcagua
 - Europe: Mont Blanc
 - Africa: Kilimanjaro

II. Europe in the Middle Ages

A. GEOGRAPHY RELATED TO THE DEVELOPMENT OF WESTERN EUROPE

- Rivers: Danube, Rhine, Rhone, and Oder
- Mountains: Alps, Pyrenees
- Iberian Peninsula: Spain and Portugal, proximity to North Africa
- France: the region known as Normandy
- Mediterranean Sea, North Sea, Baltic Sea
- British Isles: England, Ireland, Scotland, Wales; the English Channel

B. BACKGROUND

- Beginning about A.D. 200, nomadic, warlike tribes began moving into western Europe, attacking the western Roman Empire; city of Rome sacked by Visigoths in A.D. 410
The Huns: Attila the Hun
- Peoples settling in old Roman Empire included Vandals (cf. English word “vandalism”), Franks in Gaul (now France), Angles (in England: cf. “Angle-land”) and Saxons.
- The “Middle Ages” are generally dated from about A.D. 450 to 1400. Approximately the first three centuries after the fall of Rome (A.D. 476) are sometimes called the “Dark Ages.”

See also Science 4: How Mountains Are Formed.

See also Visual Arts 4: Art of the Middle Ages in Europe: Medieval Madonnas and Gothic architecture. And see Music 4, Gregorian chant.

See also Language Arts 4: Legends of King Arthur.

C. DEVELOPMENTS IN HISTORY OF THE CHRISTIAN CHURCH

- Growing power of the pope (Bishop of Rome)
- Arguments among Christians: split into Roman Catholic Church and Eastern Orthodox Church
- Conversion of many Germanic peoples to Christianity
- Rise of monasteries, preservation of classical learning
- Charlemagne
 - Temporarily unites the western Roman Empire
 - Crowned Emperor by the pope in A.D. 800, the idea of a united “Holy Roman Empire”
 - Charlemagne’s love and encouragement of learning

D. FEUDALISM

- Life on a manor, castles
- Lords, vassals, knights, freedmen, serfs
- Code of chivalry
- Knight, squire, page

E. THE NORMAN CONQUEST

- Locate the region called Normandy.
- William the Conqueror: Battle of Hastings, 1066

F. GROWTH OF TOWNS

- Towns as centers of commerce, guilds and apprentices
- Weakening of feudal ties

G. ENGLAND IN THE MIDDLE AGES

- Henry II
 - Beginnings of trial by jury
 - Murder of Thomas Becket in Canterbury Cathedral
 - Eleanor of Aquitaine
- Significance of the Magna Carta, King John, 1215
- Parliament: beginnings of representative government
- The Hundred Years’ War
 - Joan of Arc
- The Black Death sweeps across Europe

III. The Spread of Islam and the “Holy Wars”

Teachers: Since religion is a shaping force in the story of civilization, the *Core Knowledge Sequence* introduces children in the early grades to major world religions, beginning with a focus on geography and major symbols and figures. In the fourth grade the focus is on history, geography, and the development of a civilization. The purpose is not to explore matters of theology but to understand the place of religion and religious ideas in history. The goal is to familiarize, not proselytize; to be descriptive, not prescriptive. The tone should be one of respect and balance: no religion should be disparaged by implying that it is a thing of the past.

A review of major religions introduced in earlier grades in the *Core Knowledge Sequence* is recommended: Judaism/Christianity/Islam (Grade 1) and Hinduism/Buddhism (grade 2).

A. ISLAM

- Muhammad: the last prophet
- Allah, Qur’an, *jihad*
- Sacred city of Makkah, mosques

Note: In older sources you may find these formerly used spellings: Mohammed, Mecca, Koran.

- “Five pillars” of Islam:
 - Declaration of faith
 - Prayer (five times daily), facing toward Makkah
 - Fasting during Ramadan
 - Help the needy
 - Pilgrimage to Makkah
- Arab peoples unite to spread Islam in northern Africa, through the eastern Roman empire, and as far west as Spain.
- Islamic Turks conquer region around the Mediterranean; in 1453, Constantinople becomes Istanbul.
- The first Muslims were Arabs, but today diverse people around the world are Muslims.

B. DEVELOPMENT OF ISLAMIC CIVILIZATION

- Contributions to science and mathematics: Avicenna (Ibn Sina), Arabic numerals
- Muslim scholars translate and preserve writings of Greeks and Romans
- Thriving cities as centers of Islamic art and learning, such as Cordoba (Spain)

C. WARS BETWEEN MUSLIMS AND CHRISTIANS

- The Holy Land, Jerusalem
- The Crusades
- Saladin and Richard the Lion-Hearted
- Growing trade and cultural exchange between east and west

See also Visual Arts 4: Islamic Art and Architecture.

IV. Early and Medieval African Kingdoms

A. GEOGRAPHY OF AFRICA

- Mediterranean Sea and Red Sea, Atlantic and Indian Oceans
- Cape of Good Hope
- Madagascar
- Major rivers: Nile, Niger, Congo
- Atlas Mountains, Mt. Kilimanjaro
- Contrasting climate in different regions:
 - Deserts: Sahara, Kalahari
 - Tropical rain forests (along lower West African coast and Congo River)
 - Savanna (grasslands)
 - The Sahel (the fertile region below the Sahara)

B. EARLY AFRICAN KINGDOMS

- Kush (in a region also called Nubia): once ruled by Egypt, then became rulers of Egypt
- Aksum (also spelled Axum): a trading kingdom in what is now Ethiopia

See also Language Arts 4: “The Fire on the Mountain.”

C. MEDIEVAL KINGDOMS OF THE SUDAN

- Trans-Saharan trade led to a succession of flourishing kingdoms: Ghana, Mali, and Songhai
 - Camel caravans
 - Trade in gold, iron, salt, ivory, and slaves
 - The city of Timbuktu: center of trade and learning
 - Spread of Islam into West Africa through merchants and travelers
 - Ibn Batuta (also spelled Battutah, Batuta), world traveler and geographer
- Mali: Sundiata Keita, Mansa Musa
- Songhai: Askia Muhammad

See also Visual Arts 4: The Art of Africa.

Note: In older sources you are likely to find Chinggis Khan spelled as Genghis Khan, and Khubilai Khan spelled as Kublai Khan.

See also Visual Arts 4: The Art of China; and Language Arts 4: "The Magic Brocade."

V. China: Dynasties and Conquerors

- Qin Shihuangdi, first emperor, begins construction of Great Wall
- Han dynasty: trade in silk and spices, the Silk Road, invention of paper
- Tang and Song dynasties: highly developed civilization, extensive trade, important inventions (including compass, gunpowder, paper money)
- Mongol invasions and rule
 - Chinggis Khan and the "Golden Horde"
 - Khubilai Khan: establishes capital at what is now Beijing
 - Marco Polo
- Ming dynasty
 - The "Forbidden City"
 - Explorations of Zheng He

American History and Geography

AMERICAN HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHY

Teachers: The following guidelines are meant to complement any locally required studies of the family, community, state, or region. Note that in fifth grade the American Geography requirements include “fifty states and capitals”; teachers in grades two through four may want to introduce these incrementally to prepare for the fifth grade requirement.

I. The American Revolution

Teachers: In fourth grade students should undertake a detailed study of the causes, major figures, and consequences of the American Revolution, with a focus on main events and figures, as well as these questions: What caused the colonists to break away and become an independent nation? What significant ideas and values are at the heart of the American Revolution?

A. BACKGROUND: THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR

- Also known as the Seven Years’ War, part of an ongoing struggle between Britain and France for control of colonies in various regions around the world (in this case, in North America)
- Alliances with Native Americans
- The Battle of Quebec
- British victory gains territory but leaves Britain financially weakened.

B. CAUSES AND PROVOCATIONS

- British taxes, “No taxation without representation”
- Boston Massacre, Crispus Attucks
- Boston Tea Party
- The Intolerable Acts close the port of Boston and require Americans to provide quarters for British troops
- First Continental Congress protests to King George III
- Thomas Paine’s *Common Sense*

C. THE REVOLUTION

- Paul Revere’s ride, “One if by land, two if by sea”
- Lexington and Concord
The “shot heard ’round the world”
Redcoats and Minute Men
- Bunker Hill
- Second Continental Congress: George Washington appointed commander in chief of Continental Army
- Declaration of Independence
Primarily written by Thomas Jefferson
Adopted July 4, 1776
“We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal, that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable Rights, that among these are Life, Liberty, and the pursuit of Happiness.”
- Women in the Revolution: Elizabeth Freeman, Deborah Sampson, Phillis Wheatley, Molly Pitcher
- Loyalists (Tories)
- Victory at Saratoga, alliance with France
- European helpers (Lafayette, the French fleet, Bernardo de Galvez, Kosciusko, von Steuben)
- Valley Forge
- Benedict Arnold

See also Language Arts 4:
stories by Washington Irving,
and speech by Patrick Henry,
“Give me liberty. . .”

- John Paul Jones: “I have not yet begun to fight.”
- Nathan Hale: “I only regret that I have but one life to lose for my country.”
- Cornwallis: surrender at Yorktown

II. Making a Constitutional Government

Teachers: Examine some of the basic values and principles of American democracy, in both theory and practice, as defined in the Declaration of Independence and the U. S. Constitution, both in historical context and in terms of present-day practice. In examining the significance of the U. S. Constitution, introduce students to the unique nature of the American experiment, the difficult task of establishing a democratic government, the compromises the framers of the Constitution were willing to make, and the persistent threats to success. In order to appreciate the boldness and fragility of the American attempt to establish a republican government based on a constitution, students should know that republican governments were rare at this time. Discuss with students basic questions and issues about government, such as: Why do societies need government? Why does a society need laws? Who makes the laws in the United States? What might happen in the absence of government and laws?

A. MAIN IDEAS BEHIND THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE

- The proposition that “All men are created equal”
- The responsibility of government to protect the “unalienable rights” of the people
- Natural rights: “Life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness”
- The “right of the people ... to institute new government”

B. MAKING A NEW GOVERNMENT: FROM THE DECLARATION TO THE CONSTITUTION

- Definition of “republican” government: republican = government by elected representatives of the people
- Articles of Confederation: weak central government
- “Founding Fathers”: James Madison as “Father of the Constitution”
- Constitutional Convention
 - Arguments between small and large states
 - The divisive issue of slavery, “three-fifths” compromise

C. THE CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES

- Preamble to the Constitution: “We the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquility, provide for the common defense, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.”
- The separation and sharing of powers in American government: three branches of government
 - Legislative branch: Congress = House of Representatives and Senate, makes laws
 - Executive branch: headed by the president, carries out laws
 - Judicial branch: a court system headed by the Supreme Court (itself headed by the Chief Justice), deals with those who break laws and with disagreements about laws
- Checks and balances, limits on government power, veto
- The Bill of Rights: first ten amendments to the Constitution, including:
 - Freedom of religion, speech, and the press (First Amendment)
 - Protection against “unreasonable searches and seizures”
 - The right to “due process of law”
 - The right to trial by jury
 - Protection against “cruel and unusual punishments”

Note: The National Standards for Civics and Government recommend that students address the issue of power vs. authority: “Where do people in government get the authority to make, apply, and enforce rules and laws and manage disputes about them?” “Identify examples of authority, e.g., the authority of teachers and administrators to make rules for schools, the authority of a crossing guard to direct traffic, the authority of the president to represent the United States in dealing with other nations.” “Identify examples of power without authority, e.g., a neighborhood bully forcing younger children to give up their lunch money, a robber holding up a bank, a gang leader ordering members to injure others.” Available from the Center for Civic Education, 5145 Douglas Fir Road, Calabasas, CA 91302; tel. (818) 591-9321.

D. LEVELS AND FUNCTIONS OF GOVERNMENT (NATIONAL, STATE, LOCAL)

- Identify current government officials, including
President and vice-president of the U.S.
State governor
- State governments: established by state constitutions (which are subordinate to the U.S. Constitution, the highest law in the land), like the national government, each state government has its legislative, executive, and judicial branches
- Local governments: purposes, functions, and officials
- How government services are paid for (taxes on individuals and businesses, fees, tolls, etc.)
- How people can participate in government

III. Early Presidents and Politics

- Define: cabinet and administration
- George Washington as first President, Vice-President John Adams
- John Adams, second president, Abigail Adams
- National capitol established at Washington, D.C.
- Growth of political parties
Arguments between Thomas Jefferson and Alexander Hamilton: two opposed visions of America, as an agricultural or industrial society
Present-day system: two main parties (Democrats and Republicans), and independents
- Thomas Jefferson, third president
Correspondence between Jefferson and Benjamin Banneker
Jefferson as multifaceted leader (architect, inventor, musician, etc.)
The Louisiana Purchase (review from grade 1) doubles the nation's size and gains control of Mississippi River.
- James Madison, fourth president
War of 1812 (briefly review from grade 2)
- James Monroe, fifth president, the Monroe Doctrine
- John Quincy Adams, sixth president
- Andrew Jackson, seventh president
Popular military hero, Battle of New Orleans in War of 1812
Presidency of "the common man"
Indian removal policies

See also Visual Arts 4:
The Art of a New Nation,
Architecture of Monticello;
and Science Biographies 4:
Benjamin Banneker.

IV. Reformers

Teachers: Introduce children to some prominent people and movements in the ferment of social change in America prior to the Civil War:

- Abolitionists
- Dorothea Dix and the treatment of the insane
- Horace Mann and public schools
- Women's rights
Seneca Falls convention
Elizabeth Cady Stanton
Lucretia Mott
Amelia Bloomer
Sojourner Truth

See also Language Arts 4:
Speeches, Sojourner Truth's
"Ain't I a woman?"

V. Symbols and Figures

- Recognize and become familiar with the significance of
Spirit of '76 (painting)
White House and Capitol Building
Great Seal of the United States

Visual Arts: Grade 4

SEE INTRODUCTION, “The Arts in the Curriculum.”

Teachers: In schools, lessons on the visual arts should illustrate important elements of making and appreciating art, and emphasize important artists, works of art, and artistic concepts. When appropriate, topics in the visual arts may be linked to topics in other disciplines. While the following guidelines specify a variety of artworks in different media and from various cultures, they are not intended to be comprehensive. Teachers are encouraged to build upon the core content and expose children to a wide range of art and artists.

In studying the works of art specified below, and in creating their own art, students should review, develop, and apply concepts introduced in previous grades, such as line, shape, form, space, texture, color, light, design, symmetry, etc.

I. Art of the Middle Ages in Europe

Teachers: Study of the following works of art may be integrated with study of related topics in fourth grade World History: Europe in the Middle Ages.

- Note the generally religious nature of European art in the Middle Ages, including
 - Examples of medieval Madonnas (such as *Madonna and Child on a Curved Throne*—13th century Byzantine)
 - Illuminated manuscripts (such as *The Book of Kells*)
 - Tapestries (such as the Unicorn tapestries)
- Become familiar with features of Gothic architecture (spires, pointed arches, flying buttresses, rose windows, gargoyles and statues) and famous cathedrals, including Notre Dame (Paris).

II. Islamic Art and Architecture

Teachers: Study of the following works of art may be integrated with study of related topics in fourth grade World History: The Spread of Islam.

- Become familiar with examples of Islamic art, including illuminated manuscript and illumination of the Qur’an (Koran).
- Note characteristic features of Islamic architecture, such as domes and minarets, in Dome of the Rock (Mosque of Omar), Jerusalem
 - Alhambra Palace, Spain
 - Taj Mahal, India

III. The Art of Africa

Teachers: Study of the following works of art may be integrated with study of related topics in fourth grade World History: Early and Medieval African Kingdoms.

- Note the spiritual purposes and significance of many African works of art, such as masks used in ceremonies for planting, harvesting, or hunting.
- Become familiar with examples of art from specific regions and peoples in Africa, such as
 - Antelope headdresses of Mali
 - Sculptures by Yoruba artists in the city of Ife
 - Ivory carvings and bronze sculptures of Benin

IV. The Art of China

Teachers: Study of the following works of art may be integrated with study of related topics in fourth grade World History, China: Dynasties and Conquerors.

- Become familiar with examples of Chinese art, including
 - Silk scrolls
 - Calligraphy (the art of brush writing and painting)
 - Porcelain

V. The Art of a New Nation: The United States

Teachers: Study of the following works of art may be integrated with study of related topics in fourth grade American History.

Note: While *Washington Crossing the Delaware* is not in origin an American work of art—it was painted by Emanuel Leutze, a German, some seventy-five years after the event it depicts—it has become widely recognized and embraced as a symbol of the American Revolution.

- Become familiar with famous portraits and paintings, including
 - John Singleton Copley, *Paul Revere*
 - Gilbert Stuart, *George Washington*
 - Washington Crossing the Delaware*
- Become familiar with the architecture of Thomas Jefferson's Monticello.

Music: Grade 4

SEE INTRODUCTION, “The Arts in the Curriculum.”

Teachers: In schools, lessons on music should feature activities and works that illustrate important musical concepts and terms, and should introduce important composers and works. When appropriate, topics in music may be linked to topics in other disciplines.

The following guidelines focus on content, not performance skills, though many concepts are best learned through active practice (singing, clapping rhythms, playing instruments, etc.).



I. Elements of Music

- Through participation, become familiar with basic elements of music (rhythm, melody, harmony, form, timbre, etc.).
 - Recognize a steady beat, accents, and the downbeat; play a steady beat and a simple rhythm pattern.
 - Discriminate between fast and slow; gradually slowing down and getting faster.
 - Discriminate between differences in pitch: high and low.
 - Discriminate between loud and soft; gradually increasing and decreasing volume.
 - Understand *legato* (smoothly flowing progression of notes) and *staccato* (crisp, distinct notes).
 - Sing unaccompanied, accompanied, and in unison.
 - Recognize harmony; sing simple rounds and canons.
 - Recognize verse and refrain; also, introduction and coda.
 - Continue work with timbre and phrasing.
 - Recognize theme and variations, and listen to Mozart, *Variations on “Ah! vous dirai-je Maman”* (famously known as “Twinkle Twinkle Little Star”).
 - Sing or play simple melodies.
- Understanding the following notation:
 - names of lines and spaces in the treble clef; middle C
 - ♩ treble clef, ≡ staff, | bar line, || double bar line, repeat signs
 - whole note ↓ half note ↓ quarter note ♪ eighth note
 - whole rest, half rest, quarter rest
 - tied notes and dotted notes
 - ♯ sharps ♭ flats
 - Da capo* [*DC*] *al fine*
 - meter signature $\frac{4}{4}$ $\frac{2}{4}$ $\frac{3}{4}$
 - soft *pp* *p* *mp* loud *mf* *f* *ff*

II. Listening and Understanding

Teachers: Expose children to a wide range of music, including children’s music, popular instrumental music, and music from various cultures.

A. THE ORCHESTRA

- Review the orchestra, including families of instruments and specific instruments, by listening to Benjamin Britten, *The Young Person’s Guide to the Orchestra*.

B. VOCAL RANGES

Teachers: Students should learn to recognize and name the different vocal ranges, and apply their knowledge by beginning part singing.

See below, Composers and Their Music: Mozart, *Magic Flute*.

Recognize vocal ranges of the female voice:

- high = soprano
- middle = mezzo soprano
- low = alto

Recognize vocal ranges of the male voice:

- high = tenor
- middle = baritone
- low = bass

C. COMPOSERS AND THEIR MUSIC

Teachers: Provide brief, child-friendly biographical profiles of the following composers, and listen to representative works.

Note: Children were introduced to Mozart and the first movement of *A Little Night Music* in first grade.

- George Frederick Handel, “Hallelujah Chorus” from *The Messiah*
- Franz Joseph Haydn, *Symphony No. 94* (“*Surprise*”)
- Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart, *The Magic Flute*, selections, including:
 - Overture; Introduction, “Zu Hilfe! Zu Hilfe!” (Tamino, Three Ladies); Aria, “Der Vogelfänger bin ich ja” (Papageno); Recitative and Aria, “O zittre nicht, mein lieber Sohn!” (Queen of the Night); Aria, “Ein Mädchen oder Weibchen” (Papageno); Duet, “Pa-pa-gena! Pa-pa-geno!” (Papageno and Papagena); Finale, Recitative and Chorus, “Die Strahlen der Sonne” (Sarastro and Chorus)

D. MUSICAL CONNECTIONS

Teachers: Introduce children to the following in connection with topics in other disciplines:

See also World History 4: The Middle Ages, re Gregorian chant.

- Gregorian chant

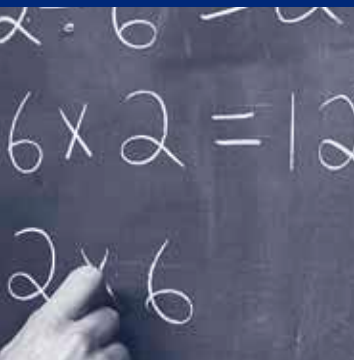
III. Songs

- Auld Lang Syne
- Blow the Man Down
- Cockles and Mussels
- Comin’ Through the Rye
- I Love the Mountains (round) ?
- Loch Lomond
- My Grandfather’s Clock
- Taps
- The Yellow Rose of Texas
- Waltzing Matilda

Songs of the U.S. Armed Forces:

- Air Force Song
- Navy Song (Anchors Aweigh)
- The Army Goes [The Caissons Go] Rolling Along
- The Marine’s Hymn

Teachers: Mathematics has its own vocabulary and patterns of thinking. It is a discipline with its own language and conventions. Thus, while some lessons may offer occasional opportunities for linking mathematics to other disciplines, it is critically important to attend to math as math. From the earliest years, mathematics requires incremental review and steady practice: not only the diligent effort required to master basic facts and operations, but also thoughtful and varied practice that approaches problems from a variety of angles, and gives children a variety of opportunities to apply the same concept or operation in different types of situations. While it is important to work toward the development of “higher-order problem-solving skills,” it is equally important—indeed, it is prerequisite to achieving “higher order” skills—to have a sound grasp of basic facts, and an automatic fluency with fundamental operations.



I. Numbers and Number Sense

- Read and write numbers (in digits and words) up to nine digits.
- Recognize place value up to hundred millions.
- Order and compare numbers to 999,999,999 using the signs $<$, $>$, and $=$.
- Write numbers in expanded form.
- Use a number line; locate positive and negative whole numbers on a number line.
- Round to the nearest ten; to the nearest hundred; to the nearest thousand.
- Identify perfect squares (and square roots) to 144; recognize the square root sign: $\sqrt{\quad}$
- Identify Roman numerals from 1 to 1,000 (I - M), and identify years as written in Roman numerals.
- Create and interpret bar graphs and line graphs.
- Plot points on a coordinate plane (grid), using ordered pairs of positive whole numbers.
- Know the meanings of multiple, factor, prime number, and composite number.

II. Fractions and Decimals

A. FRACTIONS

- Recognize fractions to one-twelfth.
- Identify numerator and denominator.
- Write mixed numbers; change improper fractions to mixed numbers and vice versa.
- Recognize equivalent fractions (for example, $\frac{1}{2} = \frac{3}{6}$).
- Put fractions in lowest terms.
- Rename fractions with unlike denominators to fractions with common denominators.
- Compare fractions with like and unlike denominators, using the signs $<$, $>$, and $=$.
- Solve problems in the form of $\frac{2}{3} = \frac{\quad}{12}$.
- Add and subtract fractions with like denominators.
- Express simple outcomes as fractions (for example, 3 out of 4 as $\frac{3}{4}$).

B. DECIMALS

- Read and write decimals to the nearest thousandth.
- Read and write decimals as fractions (for example, $0.39 = 39/100$).
- Write decimal equivalents for halves, quarters, eighths, and tenths.
- Compare fractions to decimals using the signs $<$, $>$, and $=$.
- Write decimals in expanded form.
- Round decimals to the nearest tenth; to the nearest hundredth.
- Compare decimals, using the signs $<$, $>$, and $=$.
- Read and write decimals on a number line.
- Add and subtract with decimal numbers to two places.

III. Money

- Solve problems involving making change in amounts up to \$100.00.
- Solve multiplication and division problems with money.

IV. Computation

Teachers: By this grade level, children should have mastered all basic whole number operations for addition and subtraction. Review and reinforce topics from previous grades as necessary.

A. MULTIPLICATION

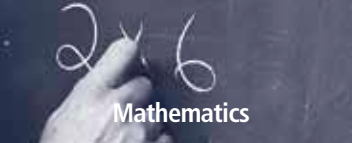
- Review and reinforce basic multiplication facts to 10×10 .
- Mentally multiply by 10, 100, and 1,000.
- Identify multiples of a given number; common multiples of two given numbers.
- Multiply by two-digit and three-digit numbers.
- Write numbers in expanded form using multiplication.
- Estimate a product.
- Use mental computation strategies for multiplication, such as breaking a problem into partial products, for example: $3 \times 27 = (3 \times 20) + (3 \times 7) = 60 + 21 = 81$.
- Check multiplication by changing the order of the factors.
- Multiply three factors in any given order.
- Solve word problems involving multiplication.

B. DIVISION

- Understand multiplication and division as inverse operations.
- Review the meaning of dividend, divisor, and quotient.
- Review and reinforce basic division facts to $100 \div 10$.
- Identify different ways of writing division problems: $28 \div 7$ $7 \overline{)28}$ $28/7$
- Identify factors of a given number; common factors of two given numbers.
- Review: you cannot divide by 0; any number divided by 1 = that number.
- Estimate the quotient.
- Divide dividends up to four-digits by one-digit and two-digit divisors.
- Solve division problems with remainders.
- Check division by multiplying (and adding remainder).

C. SOLVING PROBLEMS AND EQUATIONS

- Solve two-step word problems.
- Solve equations in the form of $__ \times 9 = 63$; $81 \div __ = 9$.
- Solve problems with more than one operation, as in $(72 \div 9) \times (36 \div 4) = __$
- Equality properties
 - Know that equals added to equals are equal.
 - Know that equals multiplied by equals are equal.
- Use letters to stand for any number, as in working with a formula (for example, area of rectangle: $A = L \times W$).



V. Measurement

- Linear measure: estimate and make linear measurements in yards, feet, and inches (to $\frac{1}{8}$ in.); and in meters, centimeters, and millimeters.
- Weight: estimate and measure weight in pounds and ounces; grams and kilograms.
- Capacity (volume): estimate and measure liquid capacity in teaspoons, tablespoons, cups, pints, quarts, gallons; and in milliliters and liters.
- Know the following equivalences among U. S. customary units of measurement, and solve problems involving changing units of measurement:

Linear measure

$$1 \text{ ft.} = 12 \text{ in.}$$

$$1 \text{ yd.} = 3 \text{ ft.} = 36 \text{ in.}$$

$$1 \text{ mi.} = 5,280 \text{ ft.}$$

$$1 \text{ mi.} = 1,760 \text{ yd.}$$

Weight

$$1 \text{ lb.} = 16 \text{ oz.}$$

$$1 \text{ ton} = 2,000 \text{ lb.}$$

Capacity (volume)

$$1 \text{ cup} = 8 \text{ fl. oz. (fluid ounces)}$$

$$1 \text{ pt.} = 2 \text{ c.}$$

$$1 \text{ qt.} = 2 \text{ pt.}$$

$$1 \text{ gal.} = 4 \text{ qt.}$$

- Know the following equivalences among metric units of measurement, and solve problems involving changing units of measurement:

Linear measure

$$1 \text{ cm} = 10 \text{ mm (millimeters)}$$

$$1 \text{ m} = 1,000 \text{ mm}$$

$$1 \text{ m} = 100 \text{ cm}$$

$$1 \text{ km} = 1,000 \text{ m}$$

Mass

$$1 \text{ cg (centigram)} = 10 \text{ mg (milligrams)}$$

$$1 \text{ g} = 1,000 \text{ mg}$$

$$1 \text{ g} = 100 \text{ cg}$$

$$1 \text{ kg} = 1,000 \text{ g}$$

Capacity (volume)

$$1 \text{ cl (centiliter)} = 10 \text{ ml (milliliters)}$$

$$1 \text{ liter} = 1,000 \text{ ml}$$

$$1 \text{ liter} = 100 \text{ cl}$$

- Time: solve problems on elapsed time.

VI. Geometry

- Identify and draw points, segments, rays, lines.
- Identify and draw lines: horizontal; vertical; perpendicular; parallel; intersecting.
- Identify angles; identify angles as right, acute, or obtuse.
- Identify polygons:
 - Triangle, quadrilateral, pentagon, hexagon, and octagon (regular)
 - Parallelogram, trapezoid, rectangle, square
- Identify and draw diagonals of quadrilaterals.
- Circles: Identify radius (plural: radii) and diameter; $\text{radius} = \frac{1}{2} \text{ diameter}$
- Recognize similar and congruent figures.
- Know the formula for the area of a rectangle ($\text{Area} = \text{length} \times \text{width}$) and solve problems involving finding area in a variety of square units (such as mi^2 ; yd^2 ; ft^2 ; in^2 ; km^2 ; m^2 ; cm^2 ; mm^2)
- Compute volume of rectangular prisms in cubic units (cm^3 , in^3).

Science: Grade 4

Teachers: Effective instruction in science requires hands-on experience and observation. In the words of the 1993 report from the American Association for the Advancement of Science, *Benchmarks for Science Literacy*, “From their very first day in school, students should be actively engaged in learning to view the world scientifically. That means encouraging them to ask questions about nature and to seek answers, collect things, count and measure things, make qualitative observations, organize collections and observations, discuss findings, etc.”

While experience counts for much, book learning is also important, for it helps bring coherence and order to a child’s scientific knowledge. Only when topics are presented systematically and clearly can children make steady and secure progress in their scientific learning. The child’s development of scientific knowledge and understanding is in some ways a very disorderly and complex process, different for each child. But a systematic approach to the exploration of science, one that combines experience with book learning, can help provide essential building blocks for deeper understanding at a later time.



Note: The lymphatic system will be studied in grade 6.

See below, Science Biographies, Charles Drew.

I. The Human Body

A. THE CIRCULATORY SYSTEM

- Pioneering work of William Harvey
- Heart: four chambers (atrium/atria or atriums [plural] and ventricle/ventricles), aorta
- Blood
 - Red blood cells (corpuscles), white blood cells (corpuscles), platelets, hemoglobin, plasma, antibodies
 - Blood vessels: arteries, veins, capillaries
 - Blood pressure, pulse
 - Coagulation (clotting)
- Filtering function of liver and spleen
- Fatty deposits can clog blood vessels and cause a heart attack.
- Blood types (four basic types: A, B, AB, O) and transfusions

B. THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM

- Process of taking in oxygen and getting rid of carbon dioxide
- Nose, throat, voice box, trachea (windpipe)
- Lungs, bronchi, bronchial tubes, diaphragm, ribs, alveoli (air sacs)
- Smoking: damage to lung tissue, lung cancer

II. Chemistry: Basic Terms and Concepts

A. ATOMS

- All matter is made up of particles too small for the eye to see, called atoms.
- Scientists have developed models of atoms; while these models have changed over time as scientists make new discoveries, the models help us imagine what we cannot see.
- Atoms are made up of even tinier particles: protons, neutrons, electrons.
- The concept of electrical charge
 - Positive charge (+): proton
 - Negative charge (-): electron
 - Neutral (neither positive nor negative): neutron
 - “Unlike charges attract, like charges repel” (relate to magnetic attraction and repulsion)

B. PROPERTIES OF MATTER

- Mass: the amount of matter in an object, similar to weight
- Volume: the amount of space a thing fills
- Density: how much matter is packed into the space an object fills
- Vacuum: the absence of matter



C. ELEMENTS

- Elements are the basic kinds of matter, of which there are a little more than one hundred. There are many different kinds of atoms, but an element has only one kind of atom. Familiar elements, such as gold, copper, aluminum, oxygen, iron
Most things are made up of a combination of elements.

D. SOLUTIONS

- A solution is formed when a substance (the solute) is dissolved in another substance (the solvent), such as when sugar or salt is dissolved in water; the dissolved substance is present in the solution even though you cannot see it.
- Concentration and saturation (as demonstrated through simple experiments with crystallization)

III. Electricity

Teachers: Through reading, observation, and experiment, examine the following:

- Electricity as the charge of electrons
- Static electricity
- Electric current
- Electric circuits, and experiments with simple circuits (battery, wire, light bulb, filament, switch, fuse)
Closed circuit, open circuit, short circuit
- Conductors and insulators
- Electromagnets: how they work and common uses
- Using electricity safely

See above, Chemistry, re electrons.

Note: Students will study electricity in more detail in grade 8.

IV. Geology: The Earth and Its Changes

A. THE EARTH'S LAYERS

- Crust, mantle, core (outer core and inner core)
- Movement of crustal plates
- Earthquakes
Faults, San Andreas fault
Measuring intensity: seismograph and Richter scale
Tsunamis
- Volcanoes
Magma
Lava and lava flow
Active, dormant, or extinct
Famous volcanoes: Vesuvius, Krakatoa, Mount St. Helens
- Hot springs and geysers: Old Faithful (in Yellowstone National Park)
- Theories of how the continents and oceans were formed: Pangaea and continental drift

B. HOW MOUNTAINS ARE FORMED

- Volcanic mountains, folded mountains, fault-block mountains, dome-shaped mountains
- Undersea mountain peaks and trenches (Mariana Trench)

C. ROCKS

- Formation and characteristics of metamorphic, igneous, and sedimentary rock

See also Geography 4: Major Mountain Ranges.

D. WEATHERING AND EROSION

- Physical and chemical weathering
- Weathering and erosion by water, wind, and glaciers
- The formation of soil: topsoil, subsoil, bedrock

V. Meteorology

- The water cycle (review from grade 2): evaporation, condensation, precipitation
- Clouds: cirrus, stratus, cumulus (review from grade 2)
- The atmosphere
 - Troposphere, stratosphere, mesosphere, thermosphere, exosphere
 - How the sun and the earth heat the atmosphere
- Air movement: wind direction and speed, prevailing winds, air pressure, low and high pressure, air masses
- Cold and warm fronts: thunderheads, lightning and electric charge, thunder, tornadoes, hurricanes
- Forecasting the weather: barometers (relation between changes in atmospheric pressure and weather), weather maps, weather satellites
- Weather and climate: “weather” refers to daily changes in temperature, rainfall, sunshine, etc., while “climate” refers to weather trends that are longer than the cycle of the seasons.

VI. Science Biographies

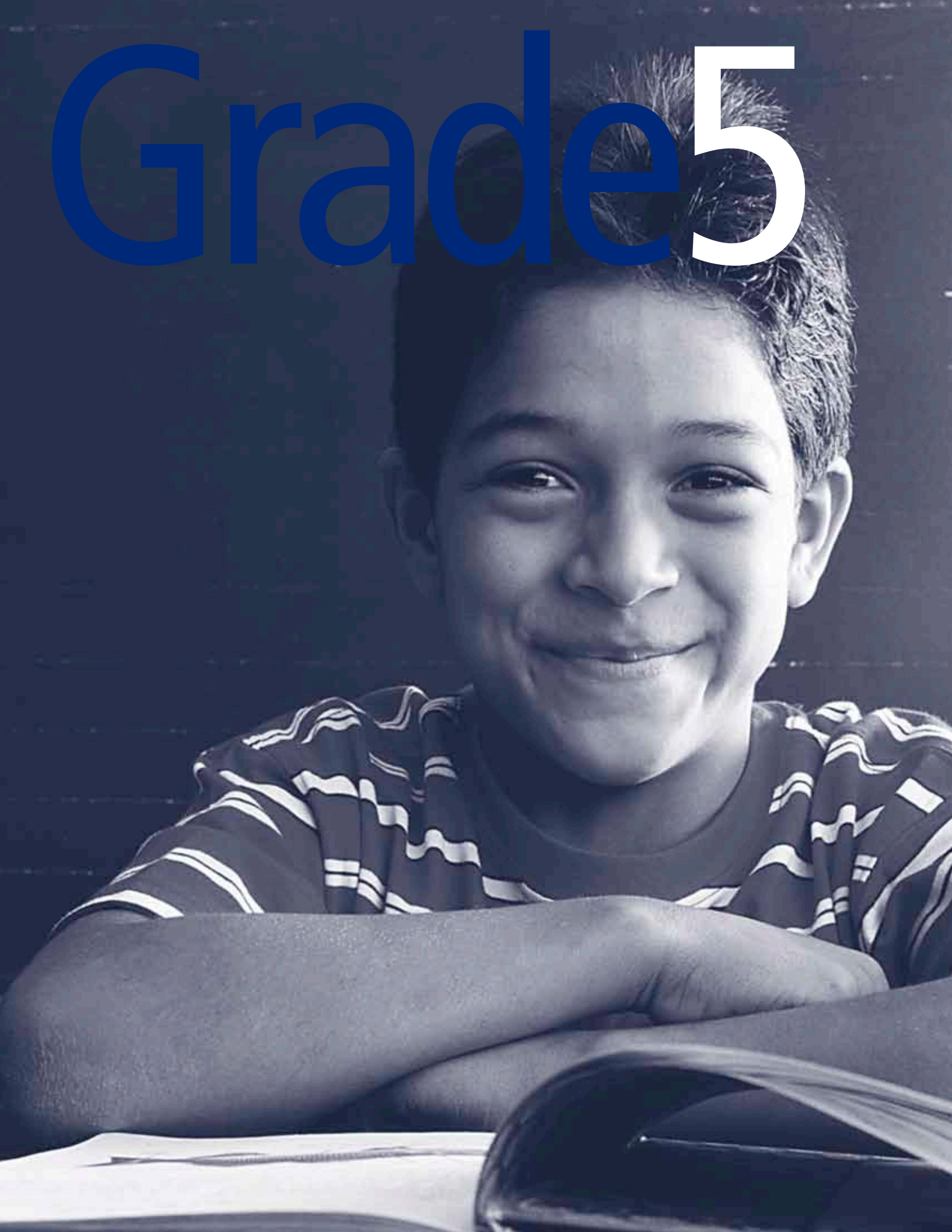
Benjamin Banneker (published almanac; reproduced plans to build Washington, D.C. entirely from memory)

Elizabeth Blackwell (first female to graduate from medical school in the United States)

Charles Drew (pioneered work in blood research, blood transfusions, and the development of blood banks)

Michael Faraday (chemist and physicist whose work led to the development of the electric motor and electric generator)

Grade 5



Overview of Topics

Grade 5

Language Arts

- I. Writing, Grammar, and Usage
 - A. Writing and Research
 - B. Grammar and Usage
 - C. Vocabulary
- II. Poetry
 - A. Poems
 - B. Terms
- III. Fiction and Drama
 - A. Stories
 - B. Drama
 - C. Myths and Legends
 - D. Literary Terms
- IV. Speeches
- V. Sayings and Phrases

History and Geography

World:

- I. World Geography
 - A. Spatial Sense
 - B. Great Lakes of the World
- II. Early American Civilizations
 - A. Geography
 - B. Maya, Aztec and Inca Civilizations
 - C. Spanish Conquerors
- III. European Exploration, Trade, and the Clash of Cultures
 - A. Background
 - B. European Exploration, Trade, and Colonization
 - C. Trade and Slavery
- IV. The Renaissance and the Reformation
 - A. The Renaissance
 - B. The Reformation
- V. England from the Golden Age to the Glorious Revolution
 - A. England in the Golden Age
 - B. From the English Revolution to the Glorious Revolution
- VI. Russia: Early Growth and Expansion
 - A. Geography
 - B. History and Culture
- VII. Feudal Japan
 - A. Geography
 - B. History and Culture

American:

- I. Westward Expansion
 - A. Westward Expansion before the Civil War
 - B. Westward Expansion after the Civil War
- II. The Civil War: Causes, Conflicts, Consequences
 - A. Toward the Civil War
 - B. The Civil War
 - C. Reconstruction

- III. Native Americans: Cultures and Conflicts
 - A. Culture and Life
 - B. American Government Policies
 - C. Conflicts
- IV. U. S. Geography

Visual Arts

- I. Art of the Renaissance
- II. American Art: Nineteenth-Century United States
- III. Art of Japan

Music

- I. Elements of Music
- II. Listening and Understanding
 - A. Composers and Their Music
 - B. Musical Connections
- III. American Musical Traditions (Spirituals)
- IV. Songs

Mathematics

- I. Numbers and Number Sense
- II. Ratio and Percent
 - A. Ratio
 - B. Percent
- III. Fractions and Decimals
 - A. Fractions
 - B. Decimals
- IV. Computation
 - A. Addition
 - B. Multiplication
 - C. Division
 - D. Solving Problems and Equations
- V. Measurement
- VI. Geometry
- VII. Probability and Statistics
- VIII. Pre-Algebra

Science

- I. Classifying Living Things
- II. Cells: Structures and Processes
- III. Plant Structures and Processes
 - A. Structure: Non-Vascular and Vascular Plants
 - B. Photosynthesis
 - C. Reproduction
- IV. Life Cycles and Reproduction
 - A. The Life Cycle and Reproduction
 - B. Sexual Reproduction in Animals
- V. The Human Body
 - A. Changes in Human Adolescence
 - B. The Endocrine System
 - C. The Reproductive System
- VI. Chemistry: Matter and Change
 - A. Atoms, Molecules, and Compounds
 - B. Elements
 - C. Chemical and Physical Change
- VII. Science Biographies

Language Arts: Grade 5



The *Common Core State Standards for English Language Arts* emphasize the critical importance of building nonfiction background knowledge in a coherent and sequenced way within and across grades. This can be accomplished most effectively, at each grade level, by integrating the topics from history, geography, science, and the arts in the *Core Knowledge Sequence* into the language arts block. Note that in the *Sequence*, there are many cross-curricular connections to history and science topics within Language Arts (e.g., poems, stories, and sayings), as well as to visual arts and music, which can and should be integrated into the applicable domain of study.

For Grade 5, domains include: Early American Civilizations; European Exploration, Trade, and the Clash of Cultures; The Renaissance and the Reformation; England from the Golden Age to the Glorious Revolution; Russia: Early Growth and Expansion; Feudal Japan; Westward Expansion; The Civil War: Causes, Conflicts, Consequences; Native Americans: Cultures and Conflicts; Classifying Living Things; Cells: Structures and Processes; Plant Structures and Processes; Life Cycles and Reproduction; The Human Body.

NOTE: The objectives listed in I. Writing, Grammar, and Usage are currently under revision, as part of the *Core Knowledge Language Arts* program development for Grades 3–5. The revised Grade 5 goals and objectives will be conceptually consistent with the K–2 language arts sections of the 2010 edition of the *Sequence* and will be posted at www.coreknowledge.org as part of the online *Sequence* as soon as they are available.

I. Writing, Grammar, and Usage

Teachers: Students should be given many opportunities for writing with teacher guidance that strikes a balance between encouraging creativity and requiring correct use of conventions. Continue imaginative writing but place a stronger emphasis than in previous grades on expository writing, including, for example, summaries, book reports, essays that explain a process, and descriptive essays. In fifth grade, it is appropriate to place a greater emphasis on revision, with the expectation that students will revise and edit to produce (in some cases) a finished product that is thoughtful, well-organized, and reasonably correct in grammar, mechanics, and spelling. In fifth grade, students should be reasonably competent spellers, and in the habit of using a dictionary to check and correct words that present difficulty. They should receive regular practice in vocabulary enrichment.

Note: Review from grade 4: how to use a topic sentence; how to develop a paragraph with examples and details.

A. WRITING AND RESEARCH

- Produce a variety of types of writing—including reports, summaries, letters, descriptions, research essays, essays that explain a process, stories, poems—with a coherent structure or story line.
- Know how to gather information from different sources (such as an encyclopedia, magazines, interviews, observations, atlas, on-line), and write short reports synthesizing information from at least three different sources, presenting the information in his or her own words, with attention to the following:
 - understanding the purpose and audience of the writing
 - defining a main idea and sticking to it
 - providing an introduction and conclusion
 - organizing material in coherent paragraphs
 - illustrating points with relevant examples
 - documenting sources in a rudimentary bibliography

Note: Punctuation studied in earlier grades includes: end punctuation (period, question mark, or exclamation point); comma (between day and year when writing a date, between city and state in an address, in a series, after yes and no, before conjunctions that combine sentences, inside quotation marks in dialogue); apostrophe (in contractions, in singular and plural possessive nouns); and quotation marks (in dialogue, and for titles of poems, songs, short stories, magazine articles).

Note: A brief review of prefixes and suffixes introduced in earlier grades is recommended. Prefixes: *re, un, dis, im (in), non, mis, en, pre*. Suffixes: *er and or, less, ly, ily, y, ful, able, ible, ment*.

B. GRAMMAR AND USAGE

- Understand what a complete sentence is, and identify subject and predicate
correct fragments and run-ons
- Identify subject and verb in a sentence and understand that they must agree.
- Know the following parts of speech and how they are used: nouns, verbs (action verbs and auxiliary verbs), adjectives (including articles), adverbs, conjunctions, interjections.
- Understand that pronouns must agree with their antecedents in case (nominative, objective, possessive), number, and gender.
- Correctly use punctuation studied in earlier grades, as well as the colon before a list
commas with an appositive
- Use underlining or italics for titles of books.

C. VOCABULARY

- Know how the following prefixes and suffixes affect word meaning:

Prefixes:

anti (as in antisocial, antibacterial)

co (as in coeducation, co-captain)

fore (as in forefather, foresee)

il, ir (as in illegal, irregular)

inter (as in interstate)

mid (as in midnight, Midwest)

post (as in postseason, postwar)

semi (as in semicircle, semiprecious)

Suffixes:

ist (as in artist, pianist)

ish (as in stylish, foolish)

ness (as in forgiveness, happiness)

tion, sion (as in relation, extension)

II. Poetry

Teachers: The poems listed here constitute a selected core of poetry for this grade. Expose children to more poetry, old and new, and have children write their own poems. To bring children into the spirit of poetry, read it aloud and encourage them to read it aloud so they can experience the music in the words. At this grade, poetry should be primarily a source of delight. This is also an appropriate grade at which to begin looking at poems in more detail, asking questions about the poet's use of language, noting the use of devices such as simile, metaphor, alliteration, etc.

A. POEMS

The Arrow And The Song (Henry Wadsworth Longfellow)

Barbara Frietchie (John Greenleaf Whittier)

Battle Hymn of the Republic (Julia Ward Howe)

A bird came down the walk (Emily Dickinson)

Casey at the Bat (Ernest Lawrence Thayer)

The Eagle (Alfred Lord Tennyson)

I Hear America Singing (Walt Whitman)

I like to see it lap the miles (Emily Dickinson)

I, too, sing America (Langston Hughes)

Jabberwocky (Lewis Carroll)

Narcissa (Gwendolyn Brooks)

O Captain! My Captain! (Walt Whitman)

A Poison Tree (William Blake)

The Road Not Taken (Robert Frost)

The Snowstorm (Ralph Waldo Emerson)

Some Opposites (Richard Wilbur)

The Tiger (William Blake)

A Wise Old Owl (Edward Hersey Richards)

Note: See also below, III. D, Literary Terms: Literal and figurative language.

- B. TERMS**
 onomatopoeia
 alliteration

III. Fiction and Drama

Teachers: In fifth grade, students should be fluent, competent readers of appropriate materials. Regular independent silent reading should continue. Students should read outside of school at least 25 minutes daily.

The titles below constitute a selected core of stories for this grade. Expose children to many more stories, and encourage children to write their own stories. Children should also be exposed to nonfiction prose: biographies, books about science and history, books on art and music, etc.

Some of the works below, such as *Don Quixote*, *Narrative of the Life of Frederick Douglass*, or *A Midsummer Night's Dream* are available in editions adapted for young readers.

A. STORIES

- The Adventures of Tom Sawyer* (Mark Twain)
- episodes from *Don Quixote* (Miguel de Cervantes)
- Little Women* (Part First) (Louisa May Alcott)
- Narrative of the Life of Frederick Douglass* (Frederick Douglass)
- The Secret Garden* (Frances Hodgson Burnett)
- Tales of Sherlock Holmes, including “The Red-Headed League” (Arthur Conan Doyle)

See also World History 5: The Renaissance, re *Don Quixote*.

B. DRAMA

- *A Midsummer Night's Dream* (William Shakespeare)
- Terms:
 - tragedy and comedy
 - act, scene
 - Globe Theater

See also World History 5: The Renaissance, re *A Midsummer Night's Dream*.

C. MYTHS AND LEGENDS

- A Tale of the Oki Islands (a legend from Japan, also known as “The Samurai’s Daughter”)
- Morning Star and Scarface: the Sun Dance (a Plains Native American legend, also known as “The Legend of Scarface”)
- Native American trickster stories (for example, tales of Coyote, Raven, or Grandmother Spider)

See also World History 5: Feudal Japan, re “A Tale of the Oki Islands.”

See also American History 5: Native American Cultures, re “Morning Star and Scarface” and Native American trickster stories.

D. LITERARY TERMS

- Pen name (pseudonym)
- Literal and figurative language
 - imagery
 - metaphor and simile
 - symbol
 - personification

IV. Speeches

- Abraham Lincoln: The Gettysburg Address
- Chief Joseph (High’moot Tooyalakekt): “I will fight no more forever”

See also American History 5: Civil War; and, Native Americans: Cultures and Conflicts.

V. Sayings and Phrases

Teachers: Every culture has phrases and proverbs that make no sense when carried over literally into another culture. For many children, this section may not be needed; they will have picked up these sayings by hearing them at home and among friends. But the sayings have been one of the categories most appreciated by teachers who work with children from home cultures that differ from the standard culture of literate American English.

Birthday suit
Bite the hand that feeds you.
Chip on your shoulder
Count your blessings.
Eat crow
Eleventh hour
Eureka!
Every cloud has a silver lining.
Few and far between
Forty winks
The grass is always greener on the
 other side (of the hill).
To kill two birds with one stone
Lock, stock and barrel
Make a mountain out of a molehill

A miss is as good as a mile.
It's never too late to mend.
Out of the frying pan and into the fire.
A penny saved is a penny earned.
Read between the lines.
Sit on the fence
Steal his/her thunder
Take the bull by the horns.
Till the cows come home
Time heals all wounds.
Tom, Dick and Harry
Vice versa
A watched pot never boils.
Well begun is half done.
What will be will be.

History and Geography: Grade 5

WORLD HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHY

I. World Geography

Teachers: The study of geography embraces many topics throughout the *Core Knowledge Sequence*, including topics in history and science. Geographic knowledge includes a spatial sense of the world, an awareness of the physical processes that shape life, a sense of the interactions between humans and their environment, an understanding of the relations between place and culture, and an awareness of the characteristics of specific regions and cultures. Many geographic topics are listed below in connection with historical topics.

A. SPATIAL SENSE (Working with Maps, Globes, and Other Geographic Tools)

Teachers: Review as necessary map-reading skills and concepts, as well as geographic terms, from previous grades.

- Read maps and globes using longitude and latitude, coordinates, degrees.
- Tropic of Cancer and Tropic of Capricorn: relation to seasons and temperature
- Climate zones: Arctic, Tropical, Temperate
- Time zones (review from Grade 4): Prime Meridian (0 degrees); Greenwich, England; 180° Line (International Date Line)
- Arctic Circle (imaginary lines and boundaries) and Antarctic Circle
- From a round globe to a flat map: Mercator projection, conic and plane projections

B. GREAT LAKES OF THE WORLD

- Eurasia: Caspian Sea
- Asia: Aral Sea
- Africa: Victoria, Tanganyika, Chad
- North America: Superior, Huron, Michigan
- South America: Maracaibo, Titicaca

II. Early American Civilizations

Teachers: Discuss with students: How do we know about these ancient civilizations? (Through archaeological findings; ancient artifacts and writings; writings by European missionaries and conquerors, etc.).

A. GEOGRAPHY

- Identify and locate Central America and South America on maps and globes.
Largest countries in South America: Brazil and Argentina
- Amazon River
- Andes Mountains

B. MAYA, AZTEC, AND INCA CIVILIZATIONS

- The Mayas
Ancient Mayas lived in what is now southern Mexico and parts of Central America; their descendants still live there today.
Accomplishments as architects and artisans: pyramids and temples
Development of a system of hieroglyphic writing
Knowledge of astronomy and mathematics; development of a 365-day calendar;
early use of concept of zero

See also below, II.A: Geography of Early American Civilizations; III.C: Trade and Slavery; VI.B: Geography of Russia; VII.B: Geography of Japan.

- The Aztecs
 - A warrior culture, at its height in the 1400s and early 1500s, the Aztec empire covered much of what is now central Mexico.
 - The island city of Tenochtitlan: aqueducts, massive temples, etc.
 - Moctezuma (also spelled Montezuma)
 - Ruler-priests; practice of human sacrifice
 - The Inca
 - Ruled an empire stretching along the Pacific coast of South America
 - Built great cities (Machu Picchu, Cuzco) high in the Andes, connected by a system of roads
- C. SPANISH CONQUERORS**
- Conquistadors: Cortés and Pizzaro
 - Advantage of Spanish weapons (guns, cannons)
 - Diseases devastate native peoples

III. European Exploration, Trade, and the Clash of Cultures

Teachers: It is recommended that you use timelines to place these people and events in the context of the students' previous studies (especially in grade 3) of the early exploration and settlement of North America. Fifth grade teachers should examine the third grade guidelines for American History in order to use the familiar topics as a foundation upon which to build knowledge of the new topics.

Note: Place the great wave of exploration by Europeans in the context of various peoples exploring beyond their own borders, including Islamic traders and (recall from Grade 4) Zheng He of China.

A. BACKGROUND

- Beginning in the 1400s Europeans set forth in a great wave of exploration and trade.
- European motivations
 - Muslims controlled many trade routes.
 - Profit through trade in goods such as gold, silver, silks, sugar, and spices
 - Spread of Christianity: missionaries
- Geography of the spice trade
 - The Moluccas, also called the "Spice Islands": part of present-day Indonesia
 - Locate: the region known as Indochina, the Malay Peninsula, the Philippines
 - Definition of "archipelago"
 - "Ring of Fire": earthquakes and volcanic activity

B. EUROPEAN EXPLORATION, TRADE, AND COLONIZATION

- Portugal
 - Prince Henry the Navigator, exploration of the West African coast
 - Bartolomeu Dias rounds the Cape of Good Hope
 - Vasco da Gama: spice trade with India, exploration of East Africa
 - Portuguese conquer East African Swahili city-states
 - Cabral claims Brazil
- Spain
 - Two worlds meet: Christopher Columbus and the Tainos
 - Bartolomé de las Casas speaks out against enslavement and mistreatment of native peoples
 - Treaty of Tordesillas between Portugal and Spain
 - Balboa reaches the Pacific
 - Magellan crosses the Pacific, one of his ships returns to Spain, making the first round-the-world voyage
- England and France
 - Search for Northwest Passage (review from grade 3)
 - Colonies in North America and West Indies
 - Trading posts in India

Note: Briefly review from American History 3: "Early Spanish Exploration and Settlement." Also, see above, II.C, Spanish Conquerors.

Note: Briefly review from American History 3: search for Northwest Passage. You may also want to introduce other explorers, such as Verrazano and Cartier.

- Holland (The Netherlands)
 - The Dutch take over Portuguese trade routes and colonies in Africa and the East Indies
 - The Dutch in South Africa, Cape Town
 - The Dutch in North America: New Netherland (review from grade 3), later lost to England

C. TRADE AND SLAVERY

- The sugar trade
 - African slaves on Portuguese sugar plantations on islands off West African coast, such as São Tomé
 - Sugar plantations on Caribbean islands
 - West Indies: Cuba, Puerto Rico, Bahamas, Dominican Republic, Haiti, Jamaica
- Transatlantic slave trade: the “triangular trade” from Europe to Africa to colonies in the Caribbean and the Americas
 - The “Slave Coast” in West Africa
 - The Middle Passage

IV. The Renaissance and the Reformation

A. THE RENAISSANCE

- Islamic scholars translate Greek works and so help preserve classical civilization.
- A “rebirth” of ideas from ancient Greece and Rome
- New trade and new wealth
- Italian city states: Venice, Florence, Rome
- Patrons of the arts and learning
 - The Medici Family and Florence
 - The Popes and Rome
- Leonardo da Vinci, Michelangelo
- Renaissance ideals and values as embodied in
 - The Courtier* by Castiglione: the “Renaissance man”
 - The Prince* by Machiavelli: real-world politics

B. THE REFORMATION

- Gutenberg’s printing press: the Bible made widely available
- The Protestant Reformation
 - Martin Luther and the 95 Theses
 - John Calvin
- The Counter-Reformation
- Copernicus and Galileo: Conflicts between science and the church
 - Ptolemaic (earth-centered) vs. sun-centered models of the universe

V. England from the Golden Age to the Glorious Revolution

A. ENGLAND IN THE GOLDEN AGE

- Henry VIII and the Church of England
- Elizabeth I
- British naval dominance
 - Defeat of the Spanish Armada
 - Sir Francis Drake
 - British exploration and North American settlements

See also Visual Arts 5: The Art of the Renaissance; and Language Arts 5: Shakespeare, *A Midsummer Night’s Dream*; Cervantes, *Don Quixote*.

See also Language Arts 5: Shakespeare.

B. FROM THE ENGLISH REVOLUTION TO THE GLORIOUS REVOLUTION

- The English Revolution
 - King Charles I, Puritans and Parliament
 - Civil War: Cavaliers and Roundheads
 - Execution of Charles I
 - Oliver Cromwell and the Puritan regime
 - The Restoration (1660): Charles II restored to the English throne, many Puritans leave England for America
- The “Glorious Revolution” (also called the Bloodless Revolution)
 - King James II replaced by William and Mary
 - Bill of Rights: Parliament limits the power of the monarchy

VI. Russia: Early Growth and Expansion

A. GEOGRAPHY

- Moscow and St. Petersburg
- Ural Mountains, Siberia, steppes
- Volga and Don Rivers
- Black, Caspian, and Baltic Seas
- Search for a warm-water port

B. HISTORY AND CULTURE

- Russia as successor to Byzantine Empire: Moscow as new center of Eastern Orthodox Church and of Byzantine culture (after the fall of Constantinople in 1453)
- Ivan III (the Great), czar (from the Latin “Caesar”)
- Ivan IV (the Terrible)
- Peter the Great: modernizing and “Westernizing” Russia
- Catherine the Great
 - Reforms of Peter and Catherine make life even harder for peasants

VII. Feudal Japan

A. GEOGRAPHY

- Pacific Ocean, Sea of Japan
- Four main islands: Hokkaido, Honshu (largest), Shikoku, Kyushu
- Tokyo
- Typhoons, earthquakes
- The Pacific Rim

B. HISTORY AND CULTURE

- Emperor as nominal leader, but real power in the hands of shoguns
- Samurai, code of Bushido
- Rigid class system in feudal Japanese society
- Japan closed to outsiders
- Religion
 - Buddhism: the four Noble Truths and the Eightfold Path, Nirvana
 - Shintoism: reverence for ancestors, reverence for nature, *kami*

See also Language Arts 5:
“A Tale of the Oki Islands.”

Note: Review from grade 2:
Buddhism’s origins in India,
spread throughout Asia.

American History and Geography

AMERICAN HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHY

I. Westward Expansion

Teachers: Guidelines for the study of Westward Expansion are divided into two parts, with part A focusing on the decades before the Civil War, and part B focusing on the years after the Civil War. You may wish to plan a single unit on Westward Expansion, or divide your studies with a unit on the Civil War (see II below).

A. WESTWARD EXPANSION BEFORE THE CIVIL WAR

- Geography
 - Rivers: James, Hudson, St. Lawrence, Mississippi, Missouri, Ohio, Columbia, Rio Grande
 - Erie Canal connecting the Hudson River and Lake Erie
 - Appalachian and Rocky Mountains
 - Continental Divide and the flow of rivers: east of Rockies to the Arctic or Atlantic Oceans, west of Rockies to the Pacific Ocean
 - Great Plains stretching from Canada to Mexico
- Early exploration of the west
 - Daniel Boone, Cumberland Gap, Wilderness Trail
 - Lewis and Clark, Sacagawea
 - “Mountain men,” fur trade
 - Zebulon Pike, Pike’s Peak
- Pioneers
 - Getting there in wagon trains, flatboats, steamboats
 - Many pioneers set out from St. Louis (where the Missouri and Mississippi Rivers meet).
 - Land routes: Santa Fe Trail and Oregon Trail
 - Mormons (Latter-day Saints) settle in Utah, Brigham Young, Great Salt Lake
 - Gold Rush, '49ers
- Native American resistance
 - More and more settlers move onto Native American lands, treaties made and broken
 - Tecumseh (Shawnee): attempted to unite tribes in defending their land
 - Battle of Tippecanoe
 - Osceola, Seminole leader
- “Manifest Destiny” and conflict with Mexico
 - The meaning of “manifest destiny”
 - Early settlement of Texas: Stephen Austin
 - General Antonio Lopez de Santa Anna
 - Battle of the Alamo (“Remember the Alamo”), Davy Crockett, Jim Bowie
- The Mexican-American War
 - General Zachary Taylor (“Old Rough and Ready”)
 - Some Americans strongly oppose the war, Henry David Thoreau’s “Civil Disobedience”
 - Mexican lands ceded to the United States (California, Nevada, Utah, parts of Colorado, New Mexico, Arizona)

B. WESTWARD EXPANSION AFTER THE CIVIL WAR

- Homestead Act (1862), many thousands of Americans and immigrants start farms in the West
- “Go west, young man” (Horace Greeley’s advice)
- Railroads, Transcontinental Railroad links east and west, immigrant labor
- Cowboys, cattle drives
- The “wild west,” reality versus legend: Billy the Kid, Jesse James, Annie Oakley, Buffalo Bill
- “Buffalo Soldiers,” African American troops in the West
- U. S. purchases Alaska from Russia, “Seward’s folly”
- 1890: the closing of the American frontier (as acknowledged in the U. S. Census), the symbolic significance of the frontier

Note: Fifth grade students who have been through earlier grades of the *Core Knowledge Sequence* have been introduced to exploration and pioneers in grades 1 and 2.

See also Language Arts 5:
*Narrative of the Life of
Frederick Douglass.*

See also Language Arts /
Music 5: "The Battle Hymn
of the Republic"; and
Language Arts 5: Gettysburg
Address.

Note: Those who wish to
examine other battles may
want to include Vicksburg
(and Lincoln's famous words,
"The Father of Waters again
goes unvexed to the sea")
and the Battle of Mobile
Bay (with Admiral David
Farragut's famous words,
"Damn the torpedoes, full
speed ahead!").

See also Language Arts 5:
Walt Whitman's poem "O
Captain! My Captain!" *re*
the assassination of Lincoln.

See also Language Arts 5:
American Indian trickster
myths; and, Chief Joseph, "I
will fight no more forever."

II. The Civil War: Causes, Conflicts, Consequences

A. TOWARD THE CIVIL WAR

- Abolitionists: William Lloyd Garrison and *The Liberator*, Frederick Douglass
- Slave life and rebellions
- Industrial North versus agricultural South
- Mason-Dixon Line
- Controversy over whether to allow slavery in territories and new states
 - Missouri Compromise of 1820
 - Dred Scott decision allows slavery in the territories
- Importance of Harriet Beecher Stowe's *Uncle Tom's Cabin*
- John Brown, Harper's Ferry
- Lincoln: "A house divided against itself cannot stand."
 - Lincoln-Douglas debates
 - Lincoln elected president, Southern states secede

B. THE CIVIL WAR

- Fort Sumter
- Confederacy, Jefferson Davis
- Yankees and Rebels, Blue and Gray
- First Battle of Bull Run
- Robert E. Lee and Ulysses S. Grant
- General Stonewall Jackson
- Ironclad ships, battle of the USS *Monitor* and the CSS *Virginia* (formerly the USS *Merrimack*)
- Battle of Antietam Creek
- The Emancipation Proclamation
- Gettysburg and the Gettysburg Address
- African-American troops, Massachusetts Regiment led by Colonel Shaw
- Sherman's march to the sea, burning of Atlanta
- Lincoln re-elected, concluding words of the Second Inaugural Address ("With malice toward none, with charity for all. . .")
- Richmond (Confederate capital) falls to Union forces
- Surrender at Appomattox
- Assassination of Lincoln by John Wilkes Booth

C. RECONSTRUCTION

- The South in ruins
- Struggle for control of the South, Radical Republicans vs. Andrew Johnson, impeachment
- Carpetbaggers and scalawags
- Freedmen's Bureau, "40 acres and a mule"
- 13th, 14th, and 15th Amendments to the Constitution
- Black Codes, the Ku Klux Klan and "vigilante justice"
- End of Reconstruction, Compromise of 1877, all federal troops removed from the South

III. Native Americans: Cultures and Conflicts

A. CULTURE AND LIFE

- Great Basin (for example, Nez Perce)
- Plateau (for example, Shoshone and Ute)
- Plains (for example, Arapaho, Cheyenne, Lakota [Sioux], Blackfeet, Crow)
 - Extermination of buffalo (review from grade 2)
- Pacific Northwest (for example, Chinook, Kwakiutl, Yakima)

B. AMERICAN GOVERNMENT POLICIES

- Bureau of Indian Affairs
- Forced removal to reservations
- Attempts to break down tribal life, assimilation policies, Carlisle School

C. CONFLICTS

- Sand Creek Massacre
- Little Big Horn: Crazy Horse, Sitting Bull, Custer's Last Stand
- Wounded Knee
 - Ghost Dance

IV. U. S. Geography

- Locate: Western Hemisphere, North America, Caribbean Sea, Gulf of Mexico
- The Gulf Stream, how it affects climate
- Regions and their characteristics: New England, Mid-Atlantic, South, Midwest, Great Plains, Southwest, West, Pacific Northwest
- Fifty states and capitals

Visual Arts: Grade 5

SEE INTRODUCTION, “The Arts in the Curriculum.”

Teachers: In schools, lessons on the visual arts should illustrate important elements of making and appreciating art, and emphasize important artists, works of art, and artistic concepts. When appropriate, topics in the visual arts may be linked to topics in other disciplines. While the following guidelines specify a variety of artworks in different media and from various cultures, they are not intended to be comprehensive. Teachers are encouraged to build upon the core content and expose children to a wide range of art and artists.

In studying the works of art specified below, and in creating their own art, students should review, develop, and apply concepts introduced in previous grades, such as line, shape, form, space, texture, color, light, design, and symmetry.

I. Art of the Renaissance

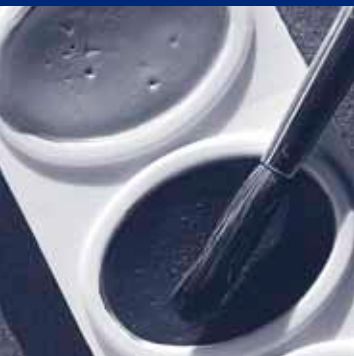
Teachers: Study of the following artists and works of art may be integrated with study of related topics in World History 5: The Renaissance.

- The shift in world view from medieval to Renaissance art, a new emphasis on humanity and the natural world
- The influence of Greek and Roman art on Renaissance artists (classical subject matter, idealization of human form, balance and proportion)
- The development of linear perspective during the Italian Renaissance
 - The vantage point or point-of-view of the viewer
 - Convergence of lines toward a vanishing point, the horizon line
- Observe and discuss works in different genres—such as portrait, fresco, Madonna—by Italian Renaissance artists, including
 - Sandro Botticelli, *The Birth of Venus*
 - Leonardo da Vinci: *The Proportions of Man*, *Mona Lisa*, *The Last Supper*
 - Michelangelo, Ceiling of the Sistine Chapel, especially the detail known as *The Creation of Adam*
 - Raphael: *The Marriage of the Virgin*, examples of his Madonnas (such as *Madonna and Child with the Infant St. John*, *The Alba Madonna*, or *The Small Cowper Madonna*)
- Become familiar with Renaissance sculpture, including
 - Donatello, *Saint George*
 - Michelangelo, *David*
- Become familiar with Renaissance architecture, including
 - The Florence Cathedral, dome designed by Filippo Brunelleschi
 - St. Peter’s in Rome
- Observe and discuss paintings of the Northern Renaissance, including
 - Pieter Bruegel, *Peasant Wedding*
 - Albrecht Dürer, *Self-Portrait* (such as from 1498 or 1500)
 - Jan van Eyck, *Giovanni Arnolfini and His Wife* (also known as *Arnolfini Wedding*)

II. American Art: Nineteenth-Century United States

- Become familiar with the Hudson River School of landscape painting, including
 - Thomas Cole, *The Oxbow (The Connecticut River Near Northampton)* (also known as *View from Mount Holyoke, Northampton, Massachusetts, after a Thunderstorm*)
 - Albert Bierstadt, *Rocky Mountains, Lander’s Peak*
- Become familiar with genre paintings, including
 - George Caleb Bingham, *Fur Traders Descending the Missouri*
 - William Sidney Mount, *Eel Spearing at Setauket*

Note: When you study perspective, review from grade 3 foreground, middle ground, and background; and, for contrast, examine paintings that do not attempt to create an illusion of depth, for example, *Madonna and Child on a Curved Throne* (see Visual Arts 4: Art of the Middle Ages).



See also American History 5: Civil War, *re* photographs by Brady; and African American troops in the Civil War: Shaw and the Massachusetts 54th, *re* Saint-Gaudens's *Shaw Memorial*.

See also World History 5: Feudal Japan.

- Become familiar with art related to the Civil War, including Civil War photography of Mathew Brady and his colleagues
The Shaw Memorial sculpture of Augustus Saint-Gaudens
- Become familiar with popular prints by Currier and Ives.

III. Art of Japan

- Become familiar with
The Great Buddha (also known as the Kamakura Buddha)
Landscape gardens

Music: Grade 5

SEE INTRODUCTION, "The Arts in the Curriculum."

Teachers: In schools, lessons on music should feature activities and works that illustrate important musical concepts and terms, and should introduce important composers and works. When appropriate, topics in music may be linked to topics in other disciplines.



The following guidelines focus on content, not performance skills, though many concepts are best learned through active practice (singing, clapping rhythms, playing instruments, etc.).

I. Elements of Music

- Through participation, become familiar with basic elements of music (rhythm, melody, harmony, form, timbre, etc.).
 Recognize a steady beat, accents, and the downbeat; play a steady beat, a simple rhythm pattern, simultaneous rhythm patterns, and syncopation patterns.
 Discriminate between fast and slow; gradually slowing down and getting faster; *accelerando* and *ritardando*.
 Discriminate between differences in pitch: high and low.
 Discriminate between loud and soft; gradually increasing and decreasing volume; *crescendo* and *decrescendo*.
 Understand *legato* (smoothly flowing progression of notes) and *staccato* (crisp, distinct notes).
 Sing unaccompanied, accompanied, and in unison.
 Recognize harmony; sing rounds and canons; two- and three-part singing.
 Recognize introduction, interlude, and coda in musical selections.
 Recognize verse and refrain.
 Continue work with timbre and phrasing.
 Recognize theme and variations.
 Sing or play simple melodies while reading scores.


- Understand the following notation and terms:

names of lines and spaces in the treble clef; middle C

 treble clef,  staff, bar line, double bar line, measure, repeat signs

 whole note  half note  quarter note  eighth note

whole rest, half rest, quarter rest, eighth rest

 grouped sixteenth notes

tied notes and dotted notes

sharps ♭ flats

Da capo [*dc.*] *al fine*

meter signature $\frac{4}{4}$ $\frac{2}{4}$ $\frac{3}{4}$ or common time $\frac{2}{4}$ $\frac{3}{4}$ $\frac{6}{8}$

soft *pp* *p* *mp* loud *mf* *f* *ff*

II. Listening and Understanding

Teachers: Expose children to a wide range of music, including children’s music, popular instrumental music, and music from various cultures.

Note: Children were introduced to Beethoven in grade 2.

See also below, Songs, “Greensleeves”; and see World History 5: The Renaissance.

See also Language Arts 5: Shakespeare’s *A Midsummer Night’s Dream*.

Note: Spirituals introduced in earlier grades include “Swing Low, Sweet Chariot,” “He’s Got the Whole World in His Hands,” and “This Little Light of Mine.”

See also above, III. American Musical Traditions, Spirituals.

See also American History 5: Civil War, re “Battle Hymn of the Republic.” Also, you may wish to recall songs from grade 2: “Dixie,” “Follow the Drinking Gourd,” and “When Johnny Comes Marching Home.”

A. COMPOSERS AND THEIR MUSIC

Teachers: Provide brief, child-friendly biographical profiles of the following composers, and listen to representative works:

- Ludwig van Beethoven, *Symphony No. 5*
- Modest Mussorgsky, *Pictures at an Exhibition* (as orchestrated by Ravel)

B. MUSICAL CONNECTIONS

Teachers: Introduce children to the following works in connection with topics in other disciplines:

- Music from the Renaissance (such as choral works of Josquin Desprez; lute songs by John Dowland)
- Felix Mendelssohn, Overture, Scherzo, and Wedding March from *A Midsummer Night’s Dream*

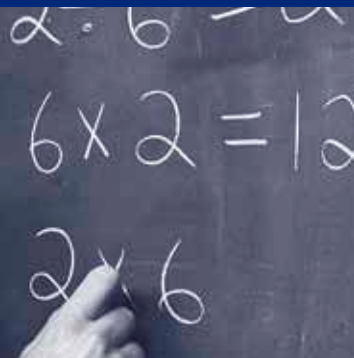
III. American Musical Traditions

- Spirituals
Originated by African-Americans, many spirituals go back to the days of slavery. Familiar spirituals, such as:
Down by the Riverside
Sometimes I Feel Like a Motherless Child
Wayfaring Stranger
We Shall Overcome

IV. Songs

Battle Hymn of the Republic
Danny Boy
Dona Nobis Pacem (round)
Git Along Little Dogies
God Bless America
Greensleeves
The Happy Wanderer
Havah Nagilah
If I Had a Hammer
Red River Valley
Sakura
Shenandoah
Sweet Betsy from Pike

Teachers: Mathematics has its own vocabulary and patterns of thinking. It is a discipline with its own language and conventions. Thus, while some lessons may offer occasional opportunities for linking mathematics to other disciplines, it is critically important to attend to math as math. From the earliest years, mathematics requires incremental review and steady practice: not only the diligent effort required to master basic facts and operations, but also thoughtful and varied practice that approaches problems from a variety of angles, and gives children a variety of opportunities to apply the same concept or operation in different types of situations. While it is important to work toward the development of “higher-order problem-solving skills,” it is equally important—indeed, it is prerequisite to achieving “higher order” skills—to have a sound grasp of basic facts, and an automatic fluency with fundamental operations.



I. Numbers and Number Sense

- Read and write numbers (in digits and words) up to the billions.
- Recognize place value up to billions.
- Order and compare numbers to 999,999,999 using the signs $<$, $>$, and $=$.
- Write numbers in expanded form.
- Integers
 - Locate positive and negative integers on a number line.
 - Compare integers using the symbols $<$, $>$, $=$.
 - Know that the sum of an integer and its opposite is 0.
 - Add and subtract positive and negative integers.
- Using a number line, locate positive and negative whole numbers.
- Round to the nearest ten; to the nearest hundred; to the nearest thousand; to the nearest hundred thousand.
- Exponents
 - Review perfect squares and square roots to 144; recognize the square root sign, $\sqrt{\quad}$.
 - Using the terms *squared* and *cubed* and *to the n th power*, read and evaluate numerical expressions with exponents.
 - Identify the powers of ten up to 10^6 .
- Identify a set and the members of a set, as indicated by $\{ \}$.
- Identify numbers under 100 as prime or composite.
- Identify prime factors of numbers to 100 and write using exponential notation for multiple primes.
- Determine the greatest common factor (GCF) of given numbers.
- Determine the least common multiple (LCM) of given numbers.

II. Ratio and Percent

A. RATIO

- Determine and express simple ratios.
- Use ratio to create a simple scale drawing.
- Ratio and rate: solve problems on speed as a ratio, using the formula $S = D/T$ (or $D = R \times T$).

B. PERCENT

- Recognize the percent sign (%) and understand percent as “per hundred.”
- Express equivalences between fractions, decimals, and percents, and know common equivalences:
 - $\frac{1}{10} = 10\%$
 - $\frac{1}{4} = 25\%$
 - $\frac{1}{2} = 50\%$
 - $\frac{3}{4} = 75\%$
- Find the given percent of a number.

III. Fractions and Decimals

A. FRACTIONS

- Determine the least common denominator (LCD) of fractions with unlike denominators.
- Recognize equivalent fractions (for example, $\frac{1}{2} = \frac{3}{6}$).
- Put fractions in lowest terms.
- Compare fractions with like and unlike denominators, using the signs $<$, $>$, and $=$.
- Identify the reciprocal of a given fraction; know that the product of a given number and its reciprocal = 1.
- Add and subtract mixed numbers and fractions with like and unlike denominators.
- Multiply and divide fractions.
- Add and subtract fractions with like and unlike denominators.
- Add and subtract mixed numbers and fractions; multiply mixed numbers and fractions.
- Round fractions to the nearest whole number.
- Write fractions as decimals (e.g., $\frac{1}{4} = 0.25$; $\frac{17}{25} = 0.68$; $\frac{1}{3} = 0.3333 \dots$ or 0.33, rounded to the nearest hundredth).

B. DECIMALS

- Read, write, and order decimals to the nearest ten-thousandth.
- Write decimals in expanded form.
- Read and write decimals on a number line.
- Round decimals (and decimal quotients) to the nearest tenth; to the nearest hundredth; to the nearest thousandth.
- Estimate decimal sums, differences, and products by rounding.
- Add and subtract decimals through ten-thousandths.
- Multiply decimals: by 10, 100, and 1,000; by another decimal.
- Divide decimals by whole numbers and decimals.

IV. Computation

A. ADDITION

- Commutative and associative properties: know the names and understand the properties.

B. MULTIPLICATION

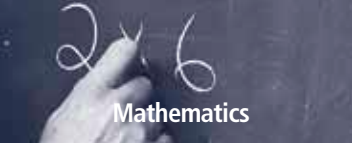
- Commutative, associative, and distributive properties: know the names and understand the properties.
- Multiply two factors of up to four digits each.
- Write numbers in expanded form using multiplication.
- Estimate a product.
- Use mental computation strategies for multiplication, such as breaking a problem into partial products, for example: $3 \times 27 = (3 \times 20) + (3 \times 7) = 60 + 21 = 81$.
- Solve word problems involving multiplication.

C. DIVISION

- Understand multiplication and division as inverse operations.
- Know what it means for one number to be “divisible” by another number.
- Know that you cannot divide by 0; that any number divided by 1 = that number.
- Estimate the quotient.
- Know how to move the decimal point when dividing by 10, 100, or 1,000.
- Divide dividends up to four digits by one-digit, two-digit, and three-digit divisors.
- Solve division problems with remainders; round a repeating decimal quotient.
- Check division by multiplying (and adding remainder).

D. SOLVING PROBLEMS AND EQUATIONS

- Solve word problems with multiple steps.
- Solve problems with more than one operation.



V. Measurement

Teachers: Review and reinforce as necessary from grade 4 topics on linear measure, weight, and capacity (volume). Also review various equivalences, which students should be able to recall from memory.

- Convert to common units in problems involving addition and subtraction of different units.
- Time: Solve problems on elapsed time; regroup when multiplying and dividing amounts of time.

VI. Geometry

- Identify and draw points, segments, rays, lines.
- Identify and draw lines: horizontal; vertical; perpendicular; parallel; intersecting.
- Measure the degrees in angles, and know that
right angle = 90° acute angle: less than 90°
obtuse angle: greater than 90° straight angle = 180°
- Identify and construct different kinds of triangles: equilateral, right, and isosceles.
- Know what it means for triangles to be congruent.
- Identify polygons:
triangle, quadrilateral, pentagon, hexagon, and octagon
parallelogram, trapezoid, rhombus, rectangle, square
- Know that regular polygons have sides of equal length and angles of equal measure.
- Identify and draw diagonals of polygons.
- Circles
Identify arc, chord, radius (plural: radii), and diameter (radius = $\frac{1}{2}$ diameter).
Using a compass, draw circles with a given diameter or radius.
Find the circumference of a circle using the formulas $C = \pi d$, and $C = 2 \pi r$,
using 3.14 as the value of π .
- Area
Review the formula for the area of a rectangle (Area = length x width) and solve problems involving finding area in a variety of square units (such as mi^2 ; yd^2 ; ft^2 ; in^2 ; km^2 ; m^2 ; cm^2 ; mm^2).
Find the area of triangles, using the formula $A = \frac{1}{2}(b \times h)$.
Find the area of a parallelogram using the formula $A = b \times h$.
Find the area of an irregular figure (such as a trapezoid) by dividing into regular figures for which you know how to find the area.
Compute volume of rectangular prisms in cubic units (cm^3 , in^3), using the formula $V = l \times w \times h$.
Find the surface area of a rectangular prism.

VII. Probability and Statistics

- Understand probability as a measure of the likelihood that an event will happen; using simple models, express probability of a given event as a fraction, as a percent, and as a decimal between 0 and 1.
- Collect and organize data in graphic form (bar, line, and circle graphs).
- Solve problems requiring interpretation and application of graphically displayed data.
- Find the average (mean) of a given set of numbers.
- Plot points on a coordinate plane, using ordered pairs of positive and negative whole numbers.
- Graph simple functions.

VIII. Pre-Algebra

- Recognize variables and solve basic equations using variables.
- Write and solve equations for word problems.
- Find the value of an expression given the replacement values for the variables, for example: What is $7 - c$ if c is 3.5?

Science: Grade 5

Teachers: Effective instruction in science requires hands-on experience and observation. In the words of the 1993 report from the American Association for the Advancement of Science, *Benchmarks for Science Literacy*, "From their very first day in school, students should be actively engaged in learning to view the world scientifically. That means encouraging them to ask questions about nature and to seek answers, collect things, count and measure things, make qualitative observations, organize collections and observations, discuss findings, etc."

While experience counts for much, book learning is also important, for it helps bring coherence and order to a child's scientific knowledge. Only when topics are presented systematically and clearly can children make steady and secure progress in their scientific learning. The child's development of scientific knowledge and understanding is in some ways a very disorderly and complex process, different for each child. But a systematic approach to the exploration of science, one that combines experience with book learning, can help provide essential building blocks for deeper understanding at a later time.



I. Classifying Living Things

Teachers: As the children study animal classification, discuss: *Why do we classify? How does classification help us understand the natural world?*

- Scientists have divided living things into five large groups called kingdoms, as follows:
 - Plant
 - Animal
 - Fungus (mushrooms, yeast, mold, mildew)
 - Protist (algae, protozoans, amoeba, euglena)
 - Moneran, also called Prokaryote (bacteria, blue-green algae/cyano bacteria)
- Each kingdom is divided into smaller groupings as follows:
 - Kingdom
 - Phylum
 - Class
 - Order
 - Family
 - Genus
 - Species
 - (Variety)
- When classifying living things, scientists use special names made up of Latin words (or words made to sound like Latin words), which help scientists around the world understand each other and ensure that they are using the same names for the same living things.
 - Homo sapiens*: the scientific name for the species to which human beings belong (genus *Homo*, species *sapiens*)
 - Taxonomists: biologists who specialize in classification
- Different classes of vertebrates and major characteristics: fish, amphibians, reptiles, birds, mammals (review from grade 3)

Teachers: Introduce an example of how an animal is classified, in order for students to become familiar with the system of classification, not to memorize specific names. For example, a collie dog is classified as follows:

Kingdom: Animalia
 Phylum: Chordata (Subphylum: Vertebrata)
 Class: Mammalia (mammal)
 Order: Carnivora (eats meat)

Note: A useful mnemonic device is "King Philip Came Over For Good Spaghetti."



Family: Canidae (a group with doglike characteristics)
Genus: *Canis* (a coyote, wolf, or dog)
Species: *familiaris* (a domestic dog)
Variety: Collie

II. Cells: Structures and Processes

Note: Students will study cell division in more detail, including the processes of mitosis and meiosis, in grade 7.

See below, III. B, Photosynthesis re plant cells.

- All living things are made up of cells.
- Structure of cells (both plant and animal)
 - Cell membrane: selectively allows substances in and out
 - Nucleus: surrounded by nuclear membrane, contains genetic material, divides for reproduction
 - Cytoplasm contains organelles, small structures that carry out the chemical activities of the cell, including mitochondria (which produce the cell's energy) and vacuoles (which store food, water, or wastes).
- Plant cells, unlike animal cells, have cell walls and chloroplasts.
- Cells without nuclei: monerans (bacteria)
- Some organisms consist of only a single cell: for example, amoeba, protozoans, some algae.
- Cells are shaped differently in order to perform different functions.
- Organization of cells into tissues, organs, and systems:
 - In complex organisms, groups of cells form tissues (for example, in animals, skin tissue or muscle tissue; in plants, the skin of an onion or the bark of a tree).
 - Tissues with similar functions form organs (for example, in some animals, the heart, stomach, or brain; in some plants, the root or flower).
 - In complex organisms, organs work together in a system (recall, for example, from earlier studies of the human body, the digestive, circulatory, and respiratory systems).

III. Plant Structures and Processes

A. STRUCTURE: NON-VASCULAR AND VASCULAR PLANTS

- Non-vascular plants (for example, algae)
- Vascular plants
 - Vascular plants have tubelike structures that allow water and dissolved nutrients to move through the plant.
 - Parts and functions of vascular plants: roots, stems and buds, leaves

B. PHOTOSYNTHESIS

- Photosynthesis is an important life process that occurs in plant cells, but not animal cells (photo = light; synthesis = putting together). Unlike animals, plants make their own food, through the process of photosynthesis.
- Role in photosynthesis of: energy from sunlight, chlorophyll, carbon dioxide and water, xylem and phloem, stomata, oxygen, sugar (glucose)

C. REPRODUCTION

- Asexual reproduction
 - Example of algae
 - Vegetative reproduction: runners (for example, strawberries) and bulbs (for example, onions), growing plants from eyes, buds, leaves, roots, and stems
- Sexual reproduction by spore-bearing plants (for example, mosses and ferns)
- Sexual reproduction of non-flowering seed plants: conifers (for example, pines), male and female cones, wind pollination
- Sexual reproduction of flowering plants (for example, peas)
 - Functions of sepals and petals, stamen (male), anther, pistil (female), ovary (or ovule)

See below, IV. Life Cycles and Reproduction: asexual and sexual reproduction.

Process of seed and fruit production: pollen, wind, insect and bird pollination, fertilization, growth of ovary, mature fruit

Seed germination and plant growth: seed coat, embryo and endosperm, germination (sprouting of new plant), monocots (for example, corn) and dicots (for example, beans)

IV. Life Cycles and Reproduction

A. THE LIFE CYCLE AND REPRODUCTION

- Life cycle: development of an organism from birth to growth, reproduction, death
Example: Growth stages of a human: embryo, fetus, newborn, infancy, childhood, adolescence, adulthood, old age
- All living things reproduce themselves. Reproduction may be asexual or sexual.
Examples of asexual reproduction: fission (splitting) of bacteria, spores from mildews, molds, and mushrooms, budding of yeast cells, regeneration and cloning
Sexual reproduction requires the joining of special male and female cells, called gametes, to form a fertilized egg.

B. SEXUAL REPRODUCTION IN ANIMALS

- Reproductive organs: testes (sperm) and ovaries (eggs)
- External fertilization: spawning
- Internal fertilization: birds, mammals
- Development of the embryo: egg, zygote, embryo, growth in uterus, fetus, newborn

V. The Human Body

A. CHANGES IN HUMAN ADOLESCENCE

- Puberty
Glands and hormones (see below, Endocrine System), growth spurt, hair growth, breasts, voice change

B. THE ENDOCRINE SYSTEM

- The human body has two types of glands: duct glands (such as the salivary glands), and ductless glands, also known as endocrine glands.
- Endocrine glands secrete (give off) chemicals called hormones. Different hormones control different body processes.
- Pituitary gland: located at the bottom of the brain; secretes hormones that control other glands, and hormones that regulate growth
- Thyroid gland: located below the voice box; secretes a hormone that controls the rate at which the body burns and uses food
- Pancreas: both a duct and ductless gland; secretes a hormone called insulin that regulates how the body uses and stores sugar; when the pancreas does not produce enough insulin, a person has a sickness called diabetes (which can be controlled)
- Adrenal glands: secrete a hormone called adrenaline, especially when a person is frightened or angry, causing rapid heartbeat and breathing

C. THE REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM

- Females: ovaries, fallopian tubes, uterus, vagina, menstruation
- Males: testes, scrotum, penis, urethra, semen
- Sexual reproduction: intercourse, fertilization, zygote, implantation of zygote in the uterus, pregnancy, embryo, fetus, newborn

Note: There is some flexibility in the grade-level placement of the study of topics relating to human reproduction, as different schools and districts have differing local requirements, typically introducing these topics in either fifth or sixth grade.



VI. Chemistry: Matter and Change

A. ATOMS, MOLECULES, AND COMPOUNDS

- Basics of atomic structure: nucleus, protons (positive charge), neutrons (neutral), electrons (negative charge)
- Atoms are constantly in motion, electrons move around the nucleus in paths called shells (or energy levels).
- Atoms may join together to form molecules and compounds.
- Common compounds and their formulas:
water H_2O
salt NaCl
carbon dioxide CO_2

B. ELEMENTS

- Elements have atoms of only one kind, having the same number of protons. There are a little more than 100 different elements.
- The Periodic Table: organizes elements with common properties
Atomic symbol and atomic number
- Some well-known elements and their symbols:
Hydrogen H
Helium He
Carbon C
Nitrogen N
Oxygen O
Sodium Na
Aluminum Al
Silicon Si
Chlorine Cl
Iron Fe
Copper Cu
Silver Ag
Gold Au
- Two important categories of elements: metals and non-metals
Metals comprise about $\frac{2}{3}$ of the known elements.
Properties of metals: most are shiny, ductile, malleable, conductive

C. CHEMICAL AND PHYSICAL CHANGE

- Chemical change changes what a molecule is made up of and results in a new substance with a new molecular structure. Examples of chemical change: rusting of iron, burning of wood, milk turning sour
- Physical change changes only the properties or appearance of the substance, but does not change what the substance is made up of. Examples of physical change: cutting wood or paper, breaking glass, freezing water

Note: Students will examine the relation between the periodic table and atomic structure in more detail in grade 7.

Note: Qualitative description and investigation of chemical change is sufficient at this grade level.

See also World History 5: The Renaissance, *re* Galileo. See above, Classifying Living Things, *re* Linnaeus; Cells, *re* Ernest Just; Human Body—Endocrine System (Hormones), *re* Percy Lavon Julian.

VII. Science Biographies

Galileo (“Father of modern science” who provided scientific support for Copernicus’s sun-centered universe)

Percy Lavon Julian (biologist and inventor who developed synthetic cortisone to treat arthritis pain)

Ernest Just (biologist and medical pioneer who specialized in studying cells and reproduction in marine animals)

Carl Linnaeus (botanist and “Father of taxonomy” who standardized the classification system)

Grade 6



Overview of Topics

Grade 6

English

- I. Writing, Grammar, and Usage
 - A. Writing and Research
 - B. Speaking and Listening
 - C. Grammar and Usage
 - D. Spelling
 - E. Vocabulary
- II. Poetry
 - A. Poems
 - B. Terms
- III. Fiction and Drama
 - A. Stories
 - B. Drama
 - C. Classical Mythology
 - D. Literary Terms
- IV. Sayings and Phrases

History and Geography

World:

- I. World Geography
 - A. Spatial Sense
 - B. Great Deserts of the World
- II. Lasting Ideas from Ancient Civilizations
 - A. Judaism and Christianity
 - B. Ancient Greece
 - C. Ancient Rome
- III. The Enlightenment
- IV. The French Revolution
- V. Romanticism
- VI. Industrialism, Capitalism, and Socialism
 - A. The Industrial Revolution
 - B. Capitalism
 - C. Socialism
- VII. Latin American Independence Movements
 - A. History
 - B. Geography of Latin America

American:

- I. Immigration, Industrialization, and Urbanization
 - A. Immigration
 - B. Industrialization and Urbanization
- II. Reform

Visual Arts

- I. Art History: Periods and Schools
 - A. Classical Art: The Art of Ancient Greece and Rome
 - B. Gothic Art
 - C. The Renaissance
 - D. Baroque
 - E. Rococo
 - F. Neoclassical
 - G. Romantic
 - H. Realism

Music

- I. Elements of Music
- II. Classical Music: From Baroque to Romantic
 - A. Baroque
 - B. Classical
 - C. Romantic

Mathematics

- I. Numbers and Number Sense
- II. Ratio, Percent, and Proportion
 - A. Ratio and Proportion
 - B. Percent
- III. Computation
 - A. Addition
 - B. Multiplication
 - C. Division
 - D. Solving Problems and Equations
- IV. Measurement
- V. Geometry
- VI. Probability and Statistics
- VII. Pre-Algebra

Science

- I. Plate Tectonics
- II. Oceans
- III. Astronomy: Gravity, Stars, and Galaxies
- IV. Energy, Heat, and Energy Transfer
 - A. Energy
 - B. Heat
 - C. Physical Change: Energy Transfer
- V. The Human Body: Lymphatic and Immune Systems
- VI. Science Biographies



I. Writing, Grammar, and Usage

Teachers: Students should be given many opportunities for writing, both imaginative and expository, with teacher guidance that strikes a balance between encouraging creativity and requiring correct use of conventions. In sixth grade, it is appropriate to emphasize revision, with the expectation that students will revise and edit to produce (in some cases) a finished product that is thoughtful, well-organized, and reasonably correct in grammar, mechanics, and spelling. Continue imaginative writing but place a stronger emphasis than in previous grades on expository writing, including, for example, summaries, book reports, essays that explain a process, and descriptive essays. Note also the requirement below for writing persuasive essays, a research essay, and a standard business letter.

A. WRITING AND RESEARCH

- Learn strategies and conventions for writing a persuasive essay, with attention to
 - defining a thesis (that is, a central proposition, a main idea)
 - supporting the thesis with evidence, examples, and reasoning
 - distinguishing evidence from opinion
 - anticipating and answering counter-arguments
 - maintaining a reasonable tone
- Write a research essay, with attention to
 - asking open-ended questions
 - gathering relevant data through library and field research
 - summarizing, paraphrasing, and quoting accurately when taking notes
 - defining a thesis
 - organizing with an outline
 - integrating quotations from sources
 - acknowledging sources and avoiding plagiarism
 - preparing a bibliography
- Write a standard business letter.

B. SPEAKING AND LISTENING

- Participate civilly and productively in group discussions.
- Give a short speech to the class that is well-organized and well-supported.
- Demonstrate an ability to use standard pronunciation when speaking to large groups and in formal circumstances, such as a job interview.

C. GRAMMAR AND USAGE

- Understand what a complete sentence is, and
 - identify subject and predicate
 - identify independent and dependent clauses
 - correct fragments and run-ons
- Identify different sentence types, and write for variety by using
 - simple sentences
 - compound sentences
 - complex sentences
 - compound-complex sentences
- Correctly use punctuation introduced in earlier grades, and learn how to use a semi-colon or comma with *and*, *but*, or *or* to separate the sentences that form a compound sentence.
- Recognize verbs in active voice and passive voice, and avoid unnecessary use of passive voice.



- Recognize the following troublesome verbs and how to use them correctly:
 - sit, set
 - rise, raise
 - lie, lay
- Correctly use the following:
 - good / well
 - between / among
 - bring / take
 - accept / except
 - fewer / less
 - like / as
 - affect / effect
 - who / whom
 - imply / infer
 - principle / principal
 - their / there / they're

D. SPELLING

- Review spelling rules for use of *ie* and *ei*; for adding prefixes and suffixes
- Continue work with spelling, with special attention to commonly misspelled words, including:

Note: More commonly misspelled words are listed in grades 7 and 8.

acquaintance	develop	naturally	separate
amateur	embarrassed	occurrence	similar
analyze	exaggerate	parallel	sophomore
answer	exercise	peasant	substitute
athlete	fulfill	philosopher	success
Britain	gymnasium	possess	suspicion
characteristic	hypocrite	privilege	tragedy
committee	innocence	receipt	woman
conscious	interrupt	recommendation	writing
cooperate	license	repetition	
criticize	marriage	restaurant	
dependent	minimum	rhythm	

E. VOCABULARY

Teachers: Students should know the meaning of these Latin and Greek words that form common word roots and be able to give examples of English words that are based on them.

Note: More Latin and Greek words and roots are listed in grades 7 and 8. In the listings here, L = Latin, G = Greek. No single form of the Latin or Greek words is consistently used here, but rather the form that is most similar to related English words.

<u>Latin/Greek Word</u>	<u>Meaning</u>	<u>Examples</u>
annus [L]	year	annual, anniversary
ante [L]	before	antebellum, antecedent
aqua [L]	water	aquarium
astron [G]	star	astronaut, astronomy
bi [L]	two	bisect, bipartisan
bios [G]	life	biology, biography
centum [L]	hundred	cent, percent
decem [L]	ten	decade, decimal
dico, dictum [L]	say, thing said	dictation, dictionary
duo [G, L]	two	duplicate
ge [G]	earth	geology, geography
hydor [G]	water	hydrant, hydroelectric
magnus [L]	large, great	magnificent, magnify
mega [G]	large, great	megaphone, megalomania
mikros [G]	small	microscope, microfilm
minus [L]	smaller	diminish, minor
monos [G]	single	monologue, monarch, monopoly

omnis [L]	all	omnipotent, omniscient
phileo [G]	to love	philosophy, philanthropist
phone [G]	sound, voice	phonograph, telephone
photo [from G <i>phos</i>]	light	photograph, photocopy
poly [G]	many	polygon
post [L]	after	posthumous, posterity
pre [L]	before	predict, prepare
primus [L]	first	primary, primitive
protos [G]	first	prototype, protozoa
psyche[G]	soul, mind	psychology
quartus [L]	fourth	quadrant, quarter
tele [G]	at a distance	telephone, television, telepathy
thermos [G]	heat	thermometer, thermostat
tri [G, L]	three	trilogy, triangle
unus [L]	one	unanimous, unilateral
video, visum [L]	see, seen	evident, visual
vita [L]	life	vitality, vitamin

II. Poetry

A. POEMS

Teachers: The poems listed here constitute a selected core of poetry for this grade. You are encouraged to expose students to more poetry, old and new, and to have students write their own poems. To bring students into the spirit of poetry, read it aloud and encourage them to read it aloud so they can experience the music in the words. At this grade, poetry should be a source of delight, and, upon occasion, the subject of close attention. Students should examine some poems in detail, discussing what the poems mean as well as asking questions about the poet’s use of language.

- All the world’s a stage [from *As You Like It*] (William Shakespeare)
- Apostrophe to the Ocean [from *Childe Harold’s Pilgrimage*, Canto 4, Nos. 178-184] (George Gordon Byron)
- I Wandered Lonely as a Cloud (William Wordsworth)
- If (Rudyard Kipling)
- Mother to Son (Langston Hughes)
- Lift Ev’ry Voice and Sing (James Weldon Johnson)
- A narrow fellow in the grass (Emily Dickinson)
- A Psalm of Life (Henry Wadsworth Longfellow)
- The Raven (Edgar Allan Poe)
- A Song of Greatness (a Chippewa song, trans. Mary Austin)
- Stopping by Woods on a Snowy Evening (Robert Frost)
- Sympathy (Paul Laurence Dunbar)
- There is no frigate like a book (Emily Dickinson)
- The Walloping Window-blind (Charles E. Carryl)
- Woman Work (Maya Angelou)

B. TERMS

- meter
- iamb
- couplet
- rhyme scheme
- free verse

See also World History 6: Romanticism, re “Apostrophe to the Ocean” and “I Wandered Lonely as a Cloud.”

III. Fiction and Drama

Teachers: *The Iliad*, *The Odyssey*, and *Julius Caesar* are available in editions adapted for young readers.

A. STORIES

The Iliad and *The Odyssey* (Homer)
The Prince and the Pauper (Mark Twain)

B. DRAMA

Julius Caesar (William Shakespeare)

C. CLASSICAL MYTHOLOGY

Apollo and Daphne
Orpheus and Eurydice
Narcissus and Echo
Pygmalion and Galatea

D. LITERARY TERMS

- Epic
- Literal and figurative language (review from grade 5)
 - imagery
 - metaphor and simile
 - symbol
 - personification

See also World History 6:
Ancient Greece, re *The Iliad*
and *The Odyssey*.

See also World History 6:
Ancient Rome, re *Julius*
Caesar.

See also World History 6:
Ancient Greece and Rome.
Students who are not familiar
with classical myths specified
in grades 2 and 3 of the *Core*
Knowledge Sequence should
read those selections as well.

IV. Sayings and Phrases

Teachers: Every culture has phrases and proverbs that make no sense when carried over literally into another culture. For many children, this section may not be needed; they will have picked up these sayings by hearing them at home and among friends. But the sayings have been one of the categories most appreciated by teachers who work with children from home cultures that differ from the standard culture of literate American English.

All for one and one for all.
All's well that ends well.
Bee in your bonnet
The best-laid plans of mice and men oft go awry.
A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush.
Bite the dust
Catch-as-catch-can
Don't cut off your nose to spite your face.
Don't lock the stable door after the horse is stolen.
Don't look a gift horse in the mouth.
Eat humble pie
A fool and his money are soon parted.
A friend in need is a friend indeed.
Give the devil his due.
Good fences make good neighbors.
He who hesitates is lost.
He who laughs last laughs best.
Hitch your wagon to a star.
If wishes were horses, beggars would ride.
The leopard doesn't change his spots.
Little strokes fell great oaks.
Money is the root of all evil.

Necessity is the mother of invention.
It's never over till it's over.
Nose out of joint
Nothing will come of nothing.
Once bitten, twice shy.
On tenterhooks
Pot calling the kettle black
Procrastination is the thief of time.
The proof of the pudding is in the eating.
RIP
The road to hell is paved with good intentions.
Rome wasn't built in a day.
Rule of thumb
A stitch in time saves nine.
Strike while the iron is hot.
Tempest in a teapot
Tenderfoot
There's more than one way to skin a cat.
Touché!
Truth is stranger than fiction.

History and Geography: Grade 6

Teachers: The World History guidelines for sixth grade begin with a study of ancient civilizations introduced in earlier grades in the *Core Knowledge Sequence*. Topics include Judaism, Christianity, and the civilizations of ancient Greece and Rome. The focus in sixth grade should be on the legacy of enduring ideas from these civilizations—ideas about democracy and government, for example, or about right and wrong. After this study of lasting ideas from ancient civilizations, the World History guidelines pick up the chronological thread from earlier grades with a study of the Enlightenment. You are encouraged to use timelines and engage students in a brief review of some major intervening events in order to help students make a smooth transition across the gap in centuries between the ancient civilizations and the Enlightenment.

In sixth grade, the World History guidelines catch up chronologically with the American History guidelines. The World History guidelines take students up to the consequences of industrialization in the mid-nineteenth century, and this is where the American History guidelines begin.

WORLD HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHY

I. World Geography

Teachers: By sixth grade, children should have a good working knowledge of map-reading skills, as well as geographic terms and features introduced in earlier grades. The study of geography embraces many topics throughout the *Core Knowledge Sequence*, including topics in history and science. Geographic knowledge includes a spatial sense of the world, an awareness of the physical processes that shape life, a sense of the interactions between humans and their environment, an understanding of the relations between place and culture, and an awareness of the characteristics of specific regions and cultures. Many geographic topics are listed below in connection with historical topics.

A. SPATIAL SENSE (Working with Maps, Globes, and Other Geographic Tools)

Teachers: As necessary, review and reinforce topics from earlier grades, including:

- Continents and major oceans
- How to read maps and globes using longitude and latitude, coordinates, degrees
- Tropic of Cancer and Tropic of Capricorn: relation to seasons and temperature
- Climate zones: Arctic, Tropic, Temperate
- Time zones (review from Grade 4): Prime Meridian (0 degrees); Greenwich, England; 180° Line (International Date Line)
- Arctic Circle (imaginary lines and boundaries) and Antarctic Circle

B. GREAT DESERTS OF THE WORLD

- What is a desert? Hot and cold deserts
- Major deserts in
 - Africa: Sahara, Kalahari
 - Australia: a mostly desert continent
 - Asia: Gobi; much of Arabian Peninsula
 - North America: Mojave, Chihuahuan, Sonoran
 - South America: Atacama Desert

Note: In earlier grades, children were introduced to major rivers (see Geography 3), mountains (see Geography 4), and lakes (see Geography 5) of the world.

II. Lasting Ideas from Ancient Civilizations

A. JUDAISM AND CHRISTIANITY

Teachers: Since religion is a shaping force in the story of civilization, the *Core Knowledge Sequence* introduces children in the early grades to major world religions, beginning with a focus on geography and major symbols and figures. Here in the sixth grade the focus is on history, geography, and ideas. The purpose is not to explore matters of theology but to understand the place of religion and religious ideas in history. The goal is to familiarize, not proselytize; to be descriptive, not prescriptive. The tone should be one of respect and balance: no religion should be disparaged by implying that it is a thing of the past.

A review of major religions introduced in earlier grades in the *Core Knowledge Sequence* is recommended: Judaism/Christianity/Islam (grade 1), Hinduism/Buddhism (grade 2), Islam (grade 4), and Buddhism/Shintoism (grade 5).

- Basic ideas in common
 - The nature of God and of humanity
 - Hebrew Bible and Old Testament of Christian Bible
- Judaism: central ideas and moral teachings
 - Torah, monotheism
 - The idea of a “covenant” between God and man
 - Concepts of law, justice, and social responsibility: the Ten Commandments
- Christianity: central ideas and moral teachings
 - New Testament
 - The Sermon on the Mount and the two “great commandments” (Matthew 22: 37-40)
- Geography of the Middle East
 - Birthplace of major world religions: Judaism, Christianity, Islam
 - Anatolian Peninsula, Arabian Peninsula
 - Mesopotamia, Tigris and Euphrates Rivers
 - Atlas Mountains, Taurus Mountains
 - Mediterranean Sea, Red Sea, Black Sea, Arabian Sea, Persian Gulf
 - The “silk road”
 - Climate and terrain: vast deserts (Sahara, Arabian)

Note: Students will examine the political and physical geography of the present-day Middle East in grade 8.

See also English 6: Homer, *The Iliad* and *The Odyssey* and Classical Mythology.

B. ANCIENT GREECE

Teachers: Briefly review from grade 2: religion, art, architecture, daily life of ancient Greece.

- The Greek polis (city-state) and patriotism
- Beginnings of democratic government: Modern American democratic government has its roots in Athenian democracy (despite the obvious limitations on democracy in ancient Greece, for example, slavery, vote denied to women)
 - The Assembly
 - Suffrage, majority vote
- The “classical” ideal of human life and works
 - The ideal of the well-rounded individual and worthy citizen
 - Pericles and the “Golden Age”
 - Architecture: the Parthenon
 - Games: The Olympics
- Greek wars: victory and hubris, defeat and shame
 - Persian Wars: Marathon, Thermopylae, Salamis
 - The Peloponnesian War: Sparta defeats Athens
- Socrates and Plato
 - Socrates was Plato’s teacher; we know of him through Plato’s writings.
 - For Socrates, wisdom is knowing that you do not know.
 - The trial of Socrates

See also Visual Arts 6: Raphael’s *School of Athens*. You may also want to examine David’s *Death of Socrates*.

- Plato and Aristotle
Plato was Aristotle's teacher.
They agreed that reason and philosophy should rule our lives, not emotion and rhetoric.
They disagreed about where true "reality" is: Plato says it is beyond physical things in ideas (cf. the "allegory of the cave"); Aristotle says reality is only in physical things.
- Alexander the Great and the spread of Greek ("Hellenistic") culture: the library at Alexandria

C. ANCIENT ROME

Teachers: Briefly review from grade 3: Romulus and Remus, Roman gods, legends, daily life, etc.

- The Roman Republic
Builds upon Greek and classical ideals
Class and status: patricians and plebeians, slaves
Roman government: consuls, tribunes, and senators
- The Punic Wars: Rome vs. Carthage
- Julius Caesar
- Augustus Caesar
Pax Romana
Roman law and the administration of a vast, diverse empire
Virgil, *The Aeneid*: epic on the legendary origins of Rome
- Christianity under the Roman Empire
Jesus's instruction to "Render unto Caesar the things which are Caesar's, and unto God the things that are God's" [Matthew 22:21]
Roman persecution of Christians
Constantine: first Christian Roman emperor
- The "decline and fall" of the Roman Empire
Causes debated by historians for many hundreds of years (outer forces such as shrinking trade, attacks and invasions vs. inner forces such as disease, jobless masses, taxes, corruption and violence, rival religions and ethnic groups, weak emperors)
Rome's "decline and fall" perceived as an "object lesson" for later generations and societies

See also English 6:
Shakespeare's *Julius Caesar*.

III. The Enlightenment

Teachers: You are encouraged to use timelines and engage students in a brief review of some major intervening events in order to help students make a smooth transition across the gap in centuries between the ancient civilizations and the Enlightenment. Place the Enlightenment (17th and 18th centuries) in chronological context, in relation to eras and movements studied in earlier grades (Middle Ages, Age of Exploration & Renaissance, American Revolution, etc.).

- Faith in science and human reason, as exemplified by
Isaac Newton and the laws of nature
Descartes: "cogito ergo sum"
- Two ideas of "human nature": Thomas Hobbes and John Locke
Hobbes: the need for a strong governing authority as a check on "the condition of man . . . [which] is a condition of war of everyone against everyone"
Locke: the idea of man as a "tabula rasa" and the optimistic belief in education;
argues against doctrine of divine right of kings and for government by consent of the governed
- Influence of the Enlightenment on the beginnings of the United States
Thomas Jefferson: the idea of "natural rights" in the Declaration of Independence
Montesquieu and the idea of separation of powers in government

See also Science 6: Science
Biographies: Isaac Newton.

IV. The French Revolution

Teachers: While the focus here is on the French Revolution, make connections with what students already know about the American Revolution, and place the American and French Revolutions in the larger global context of ideas and movements.

- The influence of Enlightenment ideas and of the English Revolution on revolutionary movements in America and France
- The American Revolution: the French alliance and its effect on both sides
- The Old Regime in France (*L'Ancien Régime*)
 - The social classes: the three Estates
 - Louis XIV, the “Sun King”: Versailles
 - Louis XV: “*Après moi, le déluge*”
 - Louis XVI: the end of the Old Regime
 - Marie Antoinette: the famous legend of “Let them eat cake”
- 1789: from the Three Estates to the National Assembly
 - July 14, Bastille Day
 - Declaration of the Rights of Man
 - October 5, Women’s March on Versailles
 - “Liberty, Equality, Fraternity”
- Louis XVI and Marie Antoinette to the guillotine
- Reign of Terror: Robespierre, the Jacobins, and the “Committee of Public Safety”
- Revolutionary arts and the new classicism
- Napoleon Bonaparte and the First French Empire
 - Napoleon as military genius
 - Crowned Emperor Napoleon I: reinventing the Roman Empire
 - The invasion of Russia
 - Exile to Elba
 - Wellington and Waterloo

See also Visual Arts 6: David, *Oath of the Horatii*; Delacroix, *Liberty Leading the People*.

V. Romanticism

- Beginning in early nineteenth century Europe, Romanticism refers to the cultural movement characterized by:
 - The rejection of classicism and classical values
 - An emphasis instead on emotion and imagination (instead of reason)
 - An emphasis on nature and the private self (instead of society and man in society)
- The influence of Jean-Jacques Rousseau’s celebration of man in a state of nature (as opposed to man in society): “Man is born free and everywhere he is in chains”; the idea of the “noble savage”
- Romanticism in literature, the visual arts, and music

See also English 6: Wordsworth, “I Wandered Lonely as a Cloud”; Byron, “Apostrophe to the Ocean” (from *Childe Harold’s Pilgrimage*); Visual Arts 6, Romantic Art; and Music 6, Romantic Music.

VI. Industrialism, Capitalism, and Socialism

A. THE INDUSTRIAL REVOLUTION

- Beginnings in Great Britain
 - Revolution in transportation: canals, railroads, new highways
 - Steam power: James Watt
- Revolution in textiles: Eli Whitney and the cotton gin, factory production
- Iron and steel mills
- The early factory system
 - Families move from farm villages to factory towns
 - Unsafe, oppressive working conditions in mills and mines
 - Women and child laborers
 - Low wages, poverty, slums, disease in factory towns
 - Violent resistance: Luddites

Note: In sixth grade, the World History guidelines catch up chronologically with the American History guidelines. The World History guidelines take students up to the consequences of industrialization in the mid-nineteenth century, and this is where the American History guidelines begin. See American History 6, Industrialization and Urbanization.

B. CAPITALISM

- Adam Smith and the idea of laissez faire vs. government intervention in economic and social matters
- Law of supply and demand
- Growing gaps between social classes: Disraeli's image of "two nations" (the rich and the poor)

C. SOCIALISM

- An idea that took many forms, all of which had in common their attempt to offer an alternative to capitalism
 - For the public ownership of large industries, transport, banks, etc., and the more equal distribution of wealth
- Marxism: the Communist form of Socialism
 - Karl Marx and Friedrich Engels, The Communist Manifesto: "Workers of the world, unite!"
 - Class struggle: bourgeoisie and proletariat
 - Communists, in contrast to Socialists, opposed all forms of private property.

See also American History 6:
Labor, International Workers
of the World; Eugene Debs.

VII. Latin American Independence Movements**A. HISTORY**

- The name "Latin America" comes from the Latin origin of the languages now most widely spoken (Spanish and Portuguese).
- Haitian revolution
 - Toussaint L'Ouverture
 - Abolition of West Indian slavery
- Mexican revolutions
 - Miguel Hidalgo
 - José María Morelos
 - Santa Anna vs. the United States
 - Benito Juárez
 - Pancho Villa, Emiliano Zapata
- Liberators
 - Simon Bolivar
 - José de San Martín
 - Bernardo O'Higgins
- New nations in Central America: Costa Rica, El Salvador, Guatemala, Honduras, Nicaragua
- Brazilian independence from Portugal

B. GEOGRAPHY OF LATIN AMERICA

- Mexico: Yucatan Peninsula, Mexico City
- Panama: isthmus, Panama Canal
- Central America and South America: locate major cities and countries including
 - Caracas (Venezuela)
 - Bogota (Colombia)
 - Quito (Ecuador)
 - Lima (Peru)
 - Santiago (Chile)
 - La Paz (Bolivia)
- Andes Mountains
- Brazil: largest country in South America, rain forests, Rio de Janeiro, Amazon River
- Argentina: Rio de la Plata, Buenos Aires, Pampas

Teachers: The sixth grade American History guidelines pick up chronologically with the World History guidelines on mid-nineteenth century industrialism and its consequences.



See below, Reform: Jane Addams, settlement houses; Jacob Riis, ghettos in the modern city.

See also World History 6: Industrial Revolution.

See also World History 6: Capitalism, laissez-faire.

I. Immigration, Industrialization, and Urbanization

A. IMMIGRATION

- Waves of new immigrants from about 1830 onward
 - Great migrations from Ireland (potato famine) and Germany
 - From about 1880 on, many immigrants arrive from southern and eastern Europe.
 - Immigrants from Asian countries, especially China
 - Ellis Island, “The New Colossus” (poem on the Statue of Liberty, written by Emma Lazarus)
 - Large populations of immigrants settle in major cities, including New York, Chicago, Philadelphia, Detroit, Cleveland, Boston, San Francisco
- The tension between ideals and realities
 - The metaphor of America as a “melting pot”
 - America perceived as “land of opportunity” vs. resistance, discrimination, and “nativism”
 - Resistance to Catholics and Jews
 - Chinese Exclusion Act

B. INDUSTRIALIZATION AND URBANIZATION

- The post-Civil War industrial boom
 - The “Gilded Age”
 - The growing gap between social classes
 - Horatio Alger and the “rags to riches” story
 - Growth of industrial cities: Chicago, Cleveland, Pittsburgh
 - Many thousands of African-Americans move north.
 - Urban corruption, “machine” politics: “Boss” Tweed in New York City, Tammany Hall
- The condition of labor
 - Factory conditions: “sweat shops,” long work hours, low wages, women and child laborers
 - Unions: American Federation of Labor, Samuel Gompers
 - Strikes and retaliation: Haymarket Square; Homestead, Pennsylvania
 - Labor Day
- The growing influence of big business: industrialists and capitalists
 - “Captains of industry” and “robber barons”: Andrew Carnegie, J. P. Morgan, Cornelius Vanderbilt
 - John D. Rockefeller and the Standard Oil Company as an example of the growing power of monopolies and trusts
 - Capitalists as philanthropists (funding museums, libraries, universities, etc.)
- “Free enterprise” vs. government regulation of business: Interstate Commerce Act and Sherman Antitrust Act attempt to limit power of monopolies

II. Reform

- Populism
 - Discontent and unrest among farmers
 - The gold standard vs. “free silver”
 - William Jennings Bryan
- The Progressive Era
 - “Muckraking”: Ida Tarbell on the Standard Oil Company; Upton Sinclair, *The Jungle*, on the meat packing industry
 - Jane Addams: settlement houses

See also English 6: Poetry,
Paul Laurence Dunbar,
"Sympathy."

Note: Briefly review people
and ideas studied in grade 4,
American History, Reformers:
Women's Rights.

See also World History 6:
Socialism and Capitalism.

- Jacob Riis, *How the Other Half Lives*: tenements and ghettos in the modern city
- President Theodore (Teddy) Roosevelt: conservation and trust-busting
- Reform for African-Americans
 - Ida B. Wells: campaign against lynching
 - Booker T. Washington: Tuskegee Institute, Atlanta Exposition Address,
"Cast down your bucket where you are"
 - W. E. B. DuBois: founding of NAACP, "The problem of the twentieth century is the
problem of the color line," *The Souls of Black Folk*
- Women's suffrage
 - Susan B. Anthony
 - Nineteenth Amendment (1920)
- The Socialist critique of America: Eugene V. Debs

Visual Arts: Grade 6

SEE INTRODUCTION, “The Arts in the Curriculum.”

Teachers: In schools, lessons on the visual arts should illustrate important elements of making and appreciating art, and emphasize important artists, works of art, and artistic concepts. When appropriate, topics in the visual arts may be linked to topics in other disciplines. While the following guidelines specify a variety of artworks in different media and from various cultures, they are not intended to be comprehensive. Teachers are encouraged to build upon the core content and expose children to a wide range of art and artists.

In studying the works of art specified below, and in creating their own art, students should review, develop, and apply concepts introduced in previous grades, such as line, shape, form, space, texture, color, light, design, and symmetry.

I. Art History: Periods and Schools

Teachers: The focus here is intended to combine art history with analysis of specific illustrative works. Introduce the idea of classifying Western art by periods and schools, with major characteristics of each period and school. Timelines may help students situate the periods and schools. Note that the periods and characteristics are not absolute distinctions but generally helpful categories (to which there are always exceptions) often used in discussions of art. The following topics extend to the mid-nineteenth century. In later grades, students will examine late-nineteenth and twentieth-century art movements.

A. CLASSICAL ART: THE ART OF ANCIENT GREECE AND ROME

- Observe characteristics considered “classic”—emphasis on balance and proportion, idealization of human form—in
The Parthenon and the Pantheon
The Discus Thrower and *Apollo Belvedere*

B. GOTHIC ART (ca. 12th - 15th centuries)

- Briefly review the religious inspiration and characteristic features of Gothic cathedrals.

C. THE RENAISSANCE (ca. 1350-1600)

- Briefly review main features of Renaissance art (revival of classical subjects and techniques, emphasis on humanity, discovery of perspective) and examine representative works, including
Raphael, *The School of Athens*
Michelangelo, *David* (review from grade 5)

D. BAROQUE (ca. 17th century)

- Note the dramatic use of light and shade, turbulent compositions, and vivid emotional expression in
El Greco, *View of Toledo* (also known as *Toledo in a Storm*)
Rembrandt: a self-portrait, such as *Self-Portrait, 1659*

E. ROCOCO (ca. mid- to late-1700's)

- Note the decorative and “pretty” nature of Rococo art, the use of soft pastel colors, and the refined, sentimental, or playful subjects in
Jean Honoré Fragonard, *The Swing*

See also World History 6: Lasting Ideas from Greece and Rome, re Classical art.

See Visual Arts 4 for more detailed guidelines on Gothic architecture.

See Visual Arts 5 for more detailed guidelines on Renaissance art. See also World History 6: Lasting Ideas from Greece and Rome, re Raphael's *School of Athens*.

See also World History 6: French Revolution, *re* David. You may also wish to introduce David's *Death of Socrates* when you study Lasting Ideas from Greece and Rome. See World History 6.

See also World History 6: Romanticism, *re* Romantic art; and French Revolution, *re* Delacroix's *Liberty Leading the People*.

F. NEOCLASSICAL (ca. late 18th - early 19th century)

- Note as characteristic of Neoclassical art the reaction against Baroque and Rococo, the revival of classical forms and subjects, belief in high moral purpose of art, and balanced, clearly articulated forms in
Jacques Louis David, *Oath of the Horatii*

G. ROMANTIC (ca. late 18th - 19th century)

- Note how Romantic art is in part a reaction against Neoclassicism, with a bold, expressive, emotional style, and a characteristic interest in the exotic or in powerful forces in nature, in
Francisco Goya, *The Bullfight*
Eugene Delacroix, *Liberty Leading the People*
Caspar David Friedrich, *The Chalk Cliffs on Rugen*












H. REALISM (ca. mid- to late-19th century)

- Note the Realist's characteristic belief that art should represent ordinary people and activities, that art does not have to be uplifting, edifying, or beautiful, in
Jean Millet, *The Gleaners*
Gustave Courbet, *The Stone Breakers*
- Become familiar with examples of American realism, including
Winslow Homer, *Northeaster*
Thomas Eakins, *The Gross Clinic*
Henry O. Tanner, *The Banjo Lesson*

SEE INTRODUCTION, "The Arts in the Curriculum."

I. Elements of Music

Teachers: The Music guidelines for grades 6–8 share a basic vocabulary of the elements of music that can inform the discussion, appreciation, and study of selected musical works. Following these guidelines are recommendations in each grade for a core of musical content, broadly organized as a history of music from early to modern times, with attention to specific periods, composers, and genres. While these guidelines focus on musical vocabulary, appreciation, and history, musical performance should be encouraged and emphasized as local resources allow.

- Review as necessary from earlier grades:
 - The orchestra and families of instruments (strings, wind, brass, percussion); keyboard instruments
 - Vocal ranges: soprano, mezzo-soprano, alto; tenor, baritone, bass
- Recognize frequently used Italian terms:
 - grave* (very very slow)
 - largo* (very slow)
 - adagio* (slow)
 - andante* (moderate; "walking")
 - moderato* (medium)
 - allegro* (fast)
 - presto* (very fast)
 - prestissimo* (as fast as you can go)
 - ritardando* and *accelerando* (gradually slowing down and getting faster)
 - crescendo* and *decrescendo* (gradually increasing and decreasing volume)
 - legato* (smoothly flowing progression of notes), *staccato* (crisp, distinct notes)
- Recognize introduction, interlude, and coda in musical selections.
- Recognize theme and variations.
- Identify chords [such as I (tonic), IV (subdominant), V (dominant); V7]; major and minor chords; chord changes; intervals (third, fourth, fifth).
- Understand what an octave is.
- Understand the following notation and terms:
 - names of lines and spaces in the treble clef; middle C
 -  treble clef  bass clef  staff, bar line, double bar line, measure, repeat signs
 -  whole note  half note  quarter note  eighth note
 - whole rest, half rest, quarter rest, eighth rest
 -  grouped sixteenth notes
 - tied notes and dotted notes
 -  sharps  flats  naturals
 - Da capo* [*Da Capo*] *al fine*
 - meter signature: $\frac{4}{4}$ or common time $\frac{2}{4}$ $\frac{3}{4}$ $\frac{6}{8}$
 - soft *pp* *p* *mp* loud *mf* *f* *ff*

II. Classical Music: From Baroque to Romantic

Teachers: While these guidelines focus on musical vocabulary, appreciation, and history, musical performance should be encouraged and emphasized as resources allow. The focus here combines music history with appreciation of illustrative works, and introduces the idea of classifying Western music by periods, with examples of specific composers and works, as well as some associated musical terms. Timelines may help students situate the periods. The periods and their characteristics are not absolute distinctions but generally helpful categories often used in discussions of music. A brief review of Medieval (grade 4) and Renaissance (grade 5) music is suggested.

Note: re Baroque music, recall from grade 2, Antonio Vivaldi, *The Four Seasons*.

Note: re classical symphony, recall from grade 4, Haydn, *Symphony No. 94* (“Surprise”); and, from grade 5, Beethoven, *Symphony No. 5*.

Note: Beethoven and Schubert are often considered transitional figures between Classic and Romantic. Students will study other Romantic composers in seventh grade, including Brahms, Berlioz, Liszt, and Wagner.

A. BAROQUE (ca. 1600-1750)

- Counterpoint, fugue, oratorio
- Johann Sebastian Bach: selections from *Brandenburg Concertos*, selections from *The Well-Tempered Clavier*, selections from the *Cantatas* such as *BWV 80*, *BWV 140*, or *BWV 147*
- George Frederick Handel: selections from *Water Music*, “Hallelujah Chorus” from *The Messiah*

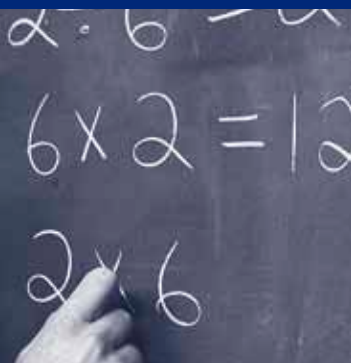
B. CLASSICAL (ca. 1750-1825)

- The classical symphony (typically in four movements)
Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart, *Symphony No. 40*
- The classical concerto: soloist, cadenza
Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart, *Piano Concerto No. 21*
- Chamber music: string quartet, sonata
Franz Joseph Haydn, *String Quartet Opus 76 No. 3, “Emperor”*
Ludwig van Beethoven, *Piano Sonata No. 14 (“Moonlight” Sonata)*

C. ROMANTIC (ca. 1800-1900)

- Beethoven as a transitional figure: *Symphony No. 9* (fourth movement)
- Romantic composers and works:
Franz Schubert, lieder (art songs): *Die Forelle* (“The Trout”), *Gretchen am Spinnrade* (“Gretchen at the Spinning Wheel”)
Frederic Chopin: “Funeral March” from *Piano Sonata No. 2 in B flat minor, “Minute” Waltz*, “*Revolutionary*” *Etude in C minor*
Robert Schumann, *Piano Concerto in A Minor*

Teachers: Mathematics has its own vocabulary and patterns of thinking. It is a discipline with its own language and conventions. Thus, while some lessons may offer occasional opportunities for linking mathematics to other disciplines, it is critically important to attend to math as math. From the earliest years, mathematics requires incremental review and steady practice: not only the diligent effort required to master basic facts and operations, but also thoughtful and varied practice that approaches problems from a variety of angles, and gives children a variety of opportunities to apply the same concept or operation in different types of situations. While it is important to work toward the development of “higher-order problem-solving skills,” it is equally important—indeed, it is prerequisite to achieving “higher order” skills—to have a sound grasp of basic facts, and an automatic fluency with fundamental operations.



I. Numbers and Number Sense

- Read and write numbers (in digits and words) up to the trillions.
- Recognize place value up to hundred-billions.
- Integers (review):
 - Locate positive and negative integers on a number line.
 - Compare integers using $<$, $>$, $=$.
 - Know that the sum of an integer and its opposite is 0.
 - Add and subtract positive and negative integers.
- Determine whether a number is a prime number or composite number.
- Round to the nearest ten; to the nearest hundred; to the nearest thousand; to the nearest hundred thousand; to the nearest million.
- Compare and order whole numbers, mixed numbers, fractions, and decimals, using the symbols $<$, $>$, $=$.
- Determine the greatest common factor (GCF) of given numbers.
- Determine the least common multiple (LCM) of given numbers.
- Exponents:
 - Review squares and square roots.
 - Using the terms *squared* and *cubed* and *to the n th power*, read and evaluate numerical expressions with exponents.
 - Review powers of ten.
 - Write numbers in expanded notation using exponents.

Note: See Math 5: Fractions and Decimals; review these topics as needed.

II. Ratio, Percent, and Proportion

A. RATIO AND PROPORTION

- Solve proportions, including word problems involving proportions with one unknown.
- Use ratios and proportions to interpret map scales and scale drawings.
- Set up and solve proportions from similar triangles.
- Understand the justification for solving proportions by cross-multiplication.

B. PERCENT

- Convert between fractions, decimals, and percents.
- Find the given percent of a number, and find what percent a given number is of another number.
- Solve problems involving percent increase and decrease.
- Find an unknown number when a percent of the number is known.
- Use expressions with percents greater than 100% and less than 1%.

III. Computation

A. ADDITION

- Addition, commutative and associative properties: know the names and understand the properties.
Understand addition and subtraction as inverse operations.
Add and subtract with integers, fractions and decimals, both positive and negative.

B. MULTIPLICATION

- Commutative, associative, and distributive properties: know the names and understand the properties.
- Multiply multi-digit factors, with and without a calculator.
- Estimate a product.
- Multiply with integers, fractions, and decimals, both positive and negative.
- Distributive property for multiplication over addition or subtraction, that is, $A \times (B+C)$ or $A \times (B-C)$: understand its use in procedures such as multi-digit multiplication.

C. DIVISION

- Understand multiplication and division as inverse operations.
- Estimate the quotient.
- Divide multi-digit dividends by up to three-digit divisors, with and without a calculator.
- Divide with integers, fractions, or decimals, both positive and negative.

D. SOLVING PROBLEMS AND EQUATIONS

- Solve word problems with multiple steps.
- Solve problems with more than one operation, according to order of operations (with and without a calculator).

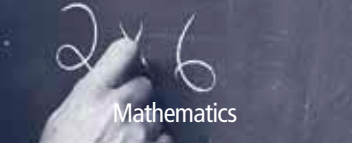
IV. Measurement

Teachers: Students should know all information regarding measurement presented in grades 4 and 5; review and reinforce as necessary.

- Solve problems requiring conversion of units within the U. S. Customary System, and within the metric system.
- Associate prefixes used in metric system with quantities:
kilo = thousand
hecto = hundred
deka = ten
deci = tenth
centi = hundredth
milli = thousandth
- Time: solve problems on elapsed time; express parts of an hour in fraction or decimal form.

V. Geometry

- Identify and use signs that mean
congruent \cong
similar \sim
parallel \parallel
perpendicular \perp
- Construct parallel lines and a parallelogram.
- Construct a perpendicular bisector.
- Know that if two lines are parallel, any line perpendicular to one is also perpendicular to the other; and, that two lines perpendicular to the same line are parallel.



- Angles:
 - Identify and measure the degrees in angles (review terms: right, acute, obtuse, straight).
 - Bisect an angle.
 - Construct an angle congruent to a given angle.
 - Construct a figure congruent to a given figure, using reflection over a line of symmetry, and identify corresponding parts.
 - Show how congruent plane figures can be made to correspond through reflection, rotation, and translation.
- Triangles:
 - Know that the sum of the measures of the angles of a triangle is 180° .
 - Construct different kinds of triangles.
 - Know terms by which we classify kinds of triangles:
 - by length of sides: equilateral, isosceles, scalene
 - by angles: right, acute, obtuse
- Identify congruent angles and sides, and axes of symmetry, in parallelograms, rhombuses, rectangles, and squares.
- Find the area (A) and perimeter (P) of plane figures, or given the area or perimeter find the missing dimension, using the following formulas:
 - rectangle
 - $A = lw$
 - $P = 2(l + w)$
 - square
 - $A = s^2$
 - $P = 4s$
 - triangle
 - $A = \frac{1}{2}bh$
 - $P = s_1 + s_2 + s_3$
 - parallelogram
 - $A = bh$
 - $P = 2(b + s)$
- Circles:
 - Identify arc, chord, radius (plural: radii), and diameter; know that radius = $\frac{1}{2}$ diameter.
 - Using a compass, draw circles with a given diameter or radius.
 - Solve problems involving application of the formulas for finding the circumference of a circle: $C = \pi d$, and $C = 2\pi r$, using 3.14 as the value of π .
 - Find the area of a circle using the formula $A = \pi r^2$
- Find volume of rectangular solids, or given the volume find a missing dimension, using the formulas $V = lwh$, or $V = bh$ (in which b = area of base).

VI. Probability and Statistics

- Find the range and measures of central tendency (mean, median, and mode) of a given set of numbers.
- Understand the differences among the measures of central tendency and when each might be used.
- Understand the use of a sample to estimate a population parameter (such as the mean), and that larger samples provide more stable estimates.
- Represent all possible outcomes of independent compound events in an organized way and determine the theoretical probability of each outcome.
- Compute the probability of any one of a set of disjoint events as the sum of their individual probabilities.
- Solve problems requiring interpretation and application of graphically displayed data.
- Given a set of data, find the mean, median, range, and mode.
- Construct a histogram; a tree diagram.

- Coordinate plane:
 - Plot points on a coordinate plane, using ordered pairs of positive and negative whole numbers.
 - Use the terms *origin* (0,0), *x-axis*, and *y-axis*.
 - Graph simple functions and solve problems involving use of a coordinate plane.

VII. Pre-Algebra

- Recognize uses of variables and solve linear equations in one variable.
- Solve word problems by assigning variables to unknown quantities, writing appropriate equations, and solving them.
- Find the value for an expression, given replacement values for the variables; for example, what is $7/x - y$ when x is 2 and y is 10?
- Simplify expressions with variables by combining like terms.
- Understand the use of the distributive property in variable expressions such as $2x(2y + 3)$.

Teachers: Effective instruction in science requires not only hands-on experience and observation but also book learning, which helps bring coherence and order to a student's scientific knowledge. Only when topics are presented systematically and clearly can students make steady and secure progress in their scientific learning. The Science sequence for the middle school grades aims for more intensive and selective study of topics, a number of which were introduced in earlier grades. It also continues the practice of studying topics from each of the major realms of science (physical, life, and earth science). Students are expected to do experiments and write reports on their findings.



I. Plate Tectonics

- The surface of the earth
 - The surface of the earth is in constant movement.
 - The present features of earth come from its ongoing history. After the sun was formed, matter cooled creating the planets. The continents were once joined (Pangaea).
- Layered structure of the earth
 - Crust: surface layer of mainly basalt or granite, 5 to 25 miles thick
 - Mantle: 1,800 miles thick, rock of intermediate density, moves very slowly
 - Outer core: liquid iron and nickel
 - Inner core: solid iron and nickel, 800 miles thick, about 7,000 degrees C
- Crust movements
 - The surface of earth is made up of rigid plates that are in constant motion.
 - Plates move because molten rock rises and falls under the crust causing slowly flowing currents under the plates.
 - Plates move at speeds ranging from 1 to 4 inches (5-10 centimeters) per year.
 - Earthquakes usually occur where stress has been built up by plates moving in opposite directions against each other. Earthquakes cause waves (vibrations) which have:
 - focus, the point below the surface where the quake begins
 - epicenter, the point on the surface above the focus
 - Severity of ground shaking is measured on the Richter scale; each unit on the scale represents a tenfold severity increase
- Volcanoes usually occur where plates are pulling apart or coming together, but some occur at holes (hot spots) in the crust away from plate boundaries. As plates move over these hot spots, they cause chains of volcanoes and island chains like the Hawaiian Islands.
- Evidence for long-term movement of plates includes fit of continents and matches of rock types, fossils, and structures; ocean floor age and topography; ancient climate zones; locations of earthquakes, volcanoes, and mountain ranges; magnetic directions in ancient rocks.

II. Oceans

- Surface
 - The world ocean covers most of the earth's surface (71 per cent).
 - Three major subdivisions of the world ocean: Atlantic, Pacific, and Indian Oceans
 - Islands consist of high parts of submerged continents, volcanic peaks, coral atolls.
- Subsurface land features
 - Continental shelf, continental slope, continental rise, abyssal plains
 - Mid-ocean ridges and trenches, plate tectonics
 - Mid-Atlantic Ridge, Mariana Trench
- Ocean bottom: average depth of sediment .3 mile, consists of rock particles and organic remains
- Composition of seawater: dilute solution of salts which come from weathering and erosion of continental rocks.
 - Sodium chloride is the main salt.

- **Currents, tides, and waves**
 - Surface currents: large circular streams kept in motion by prevailing winds and rotation of the earth; Gulf Stream (North Atlantic), Kuroshio (North Pacific)
 - Subsurface currents are caused by upwelling from prevailing offshore winds (Peru, Chile) and density differences (Antarctica); the upwelling pushes up nutrients from the ocean floor.
 - Tides are caused by gravitational forces of the sun and moon; there are two tides daily.
 - Waves are caused by wind on the ocean's surface.
 - Water molecules tend to move up and down in place and not move with the wave.
 - Crest and trough, wave height and wavelength, shoreline friction
 - Tsunamis: destructive, fast-moving large waves caused mainly by earthquakes
- **Marine life**
 - Life zones are determined by the depth to which light can penetrate making photosynthesis possible, and by the availability of nutrients.
 - The bottom (benthic zone) extends from sunlit continental shelf to dark sparsely populated depths. Shallow lighted water extending over continental shelf contains 90% of marine species.
 - Pelagic zone: water in open oceans
 - Classification of marine life
 - Bottom-living (benthic) such as kelp and mollusks
 - Free-swimming (nekton) such as fish and whales
 - Small drifting plants and animals (plankton), which are the dominant life and food source of the ocean
 - The basis for most marine life is phytoplankton (plant-plankton), which carry on photosynthesis near surface; contrast zooplankton (animal plankton).
 - Most deepwater life depends on rain of organic matter from above. The densest concentration of marine life is found in surface waters, such as those off Chile, where nutrient-rich water wells up to the bright surface.

III. Astronomy: Gravity, Stars, and Galaxies

- **Gravity: an attractive force between objects**
 - Newton's law of universal gravitation: Between any two objects in the universe there is an attractive force, gravity, which grows greater as the objects move closer to each other.
 - How gravity keeps the planets in orbit
- **Stars**
 - The sun is a star.
 - Kinds of stars (by size): giants, dwarfs, pulsars
 - Supernova; black holes
 - Apparent movement of stars caused by rotation of the earth
 - Constellations: visual groupings of stars, for example, Big Dipper, Orion
 - Astronomical distance measured in light years
- **Galaxies**
 - The Milky Way is our galaxy; the Andromeda Galaxy is closest to the Milky Way.
 - Quasars are the most distant visible objects (because the brightest).

See below, Energy: Nuclear energy, re Stars.

IV. Energy, Heat, and Energy Transfer

A. ENERGY

- Six forms of energy: mechanical, heat, electrical, wave, chemical, nuclear
- The many forms of energy are interchangeable, for example, gasoline in a car, windmills, hydroelectric plants.
- Sources of energy: for example, heat (coal, natural gas, solar, atomic, geothermal, and thermonuclear), mechanical motion (such as falling water, wind)



- Fossil fuels: a finite resource
Carbon, coal, oil, natural gas
Environmental impact of fossil fuels: carbon dioxide and global warming theory, greenhouse effect, oil spills, acid rain
- Nuclear energy
Uranium, fission, nuclear reactor, radioactive waste
Nuclear power plants: safety and accidents (for example, Three Mile Island, Chernobyl)

B. HEAT

- Heat and temperature: how vigorously atoms are moving and colliding
- Three ways that heat energy can be transferred: conduction, convection, radiation
The direction of heat transfer

C. PHYSICAL CHANGE: ENERGY TRANSFER

- States of matter (solid, liquid, gas) in terms of molecular motion
In gases, loosely packed atoms and molecules move independently and collide often. Volume and shape change readily.
In liquids, atoms and molecules are more loosely packed than in solids and can move past each other. Liquids change shape readily but resist change in volume.
In solids, atoms and molecules are more tightly packed and can only vibrate. Solids resist change in shape and volume.
- Most substances are solid at low temperatures, liquid at medium temperatures, and gaseous at high temperatures.
- A change of phase is a physical change (no new substance is produced).
- Matter can be made to change phases by adding or removing energy.
- Expansion and contraction
Expansion is adding heat energy to a substance, which causes the molecules to move more quickly and the substance to expand.
Contraction is when a substance loses heat energy, the molecules slow down, and the substance contracts.
Water as a special case: water expands when it changes from a liquid to a solid.
- Changing phases: condensation; freezing; melting; boiling
Different amounts of energy are required to change the phase of different substances.
Each substance has its own melting and boiling point.
The freezing point and boiling point of water (in degrees Celsius and Fahrenheit)
- Distillation: separation of mixtures of liquids with different boiling points.

V. The Human Body

- The circulatory and lymphatic systems
Briefly review from grade 4: circulatory system
Lymph, lymph nodes, white cells, tonsils
Blood pressure, hardening and clogging of arteries
- The immune system fights infections from bacteria, viruses, fungi.
White cells, antibodies, antigens
Vaccines, communicable and non-communicable diseases, epidemics
Bacterial diseases: tetanus, typhoid, tuberculosis; antibiotics like penicillin, discovered by Alexander Fleming
Viral diseases: common cold, chicken pox, mononucleosis, rabies, polio, AIDS

Note: See Science 5 for the human reproductive system. There is some flexibility in the grade-level placement of the study of topics relating to human reproduction, as different schools and districts have differing local requirements, typically introducing these topics in either fifth or sixth grade.

See above, Plate Tectonics
re Wegener; Energy re
Curie; Astronomy, Gravity,
re Newton. See also World
History 6, The Enlightenment,
re Newton.

VI. Science Biographies

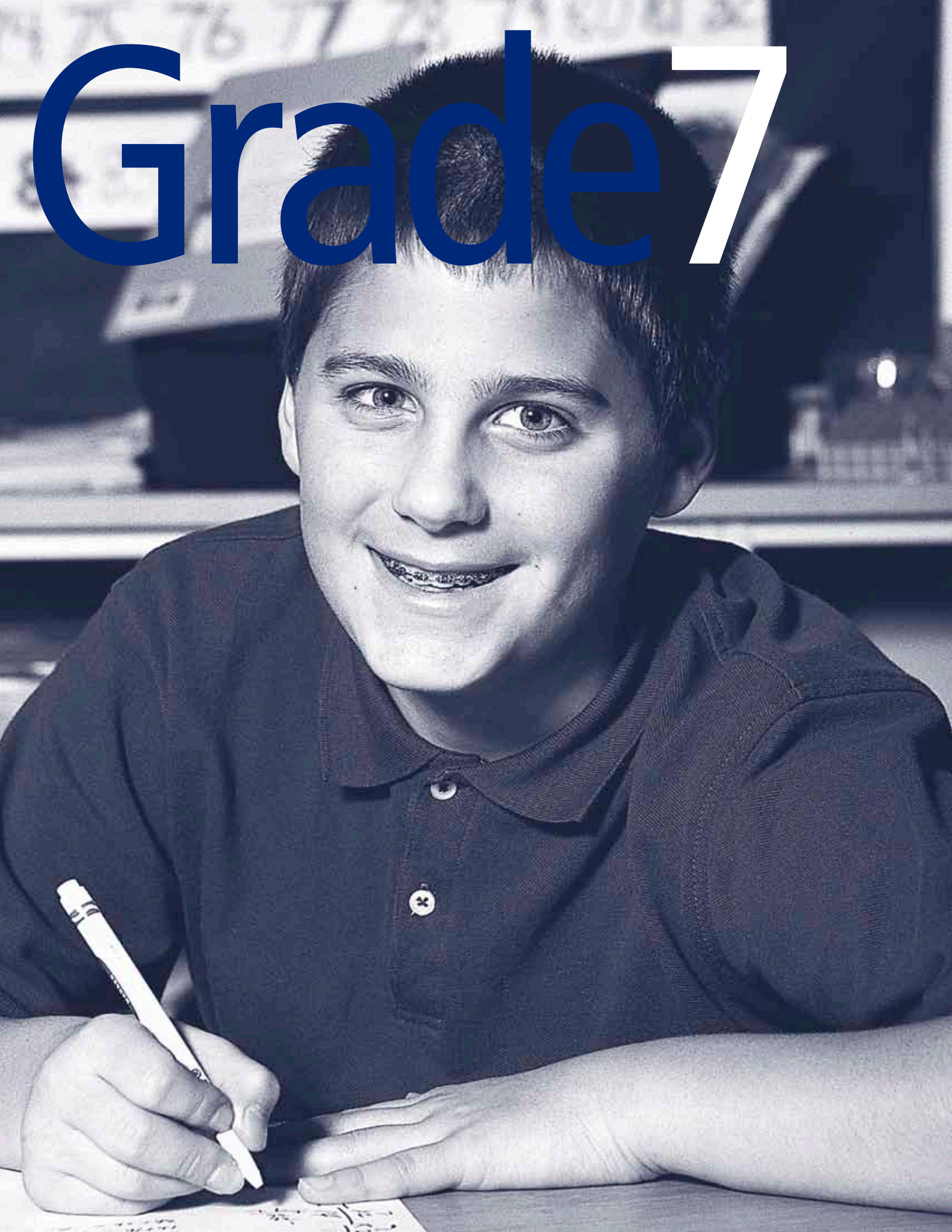
Marie Curie (advances in science of radioactivity; discovered the elements polonium and radium)

Lewis Howard Latimer (worked with Alexander Graham Bell on drawings of Bell's invention, the telephone; improved Thomas Edison's light bulb)

Isaac Newton (known for advances in physics; outlined laws of gravity and invented the telescope)

Alfred Wegener (known for theory that the continents were once joined together and split apart to form the continents; now known as "the continental drift")

Grade 7



Overview of Topics

Grade 7

English

- I. Writing, Grammar, and Usage
 - A. Writing and Research
 - B. Speaking and Listening
 - C. Grammar
 - D. Spelling
 - E. Vocabulary
- II. Poetry
 - A. Poems
 - B. Elements of Poetry
- III. Fiction, Nonfiction, and Drama
 - A. Short Stories
 - B. Novels
 - C. Elements of Fiction
 - D. Essays and Speeches
 - E. Autobiography
 - F. Drama
 - G. Literary Terms
- IV. Foreign Phrases Commonly Used in English

History and Geography

- I. America Becomes a World Power
- II. World War I: "The Great War," 1914–1918
 - A. History
 - B. Geography of Western and Central Europe
- III. The Russian Revolution
 - A. History
 - B. Geography
- IV. America from the Twenties to the New Deal
 - A. America in the Twenties
 - B. The Great Depression
 - C. Roosevelt and the New Deal
- V. World War II
 - A. The Rise of Totalitarianism in Europe
 - B. World War II in Europe and at Home, 1939–45
 - C. World War II in the Pacific, and the End of the War
- VI. Geography of the United States

Visual Arts

- I. Art History: Periods and Schools
 - A. Impressionism
 - B. Post-Impressionism
 - C. Expressionism and Abstraction
 - D. Modern American Painting

Music

- I. Elements of Music
- II. Classical Music: Romantics and Nationalists
 - A. Romantic Composers and Works
 - B. Music and National Identity
- III. American Musical Traditions (Blues and Jazz)

Mathematics

- I. Pre-Algebra
 - A. Properties of the Real Numbers
 - B. Linear Applications and Proportionality
 - C. Polynomial Arithmetic
 - D. Equivalent Equations and Inequalities
 - E. Integer Exponents
- II. Geometry
 - A. Three-Dimensional Objects
 - B. Angle Pairs
 - C. Triangles
 - D. Measurement
- III. Probability and Statistics

Science

- I. Atomic Structure
- II. Chemical Bonds and Reactions
- III. Cell Division and Genetics
- IV. History of the Earth and Life Forms
 - A. Paleontology
 - B. Geologic Time
- V. Evolution
 - A. Evolution
 - B. Natural Selection
 - C. Extinction and Speciation
- VI. Science Biographies

I. Writing, Grammar, and Usage

Teachers: Students should be given opportunities to write fiction, poetry, or drama, but instruction should emphasize repeated expository writing. Students should examine their work with attention to unity, coherence, and emphasis. Expository essays should have a main point and stick to it, and have a coherent structure, typically following the pattern of introduction, body, and conclusion. Paragraphs should have a unified focus, be developed with evidence and examples, and have transitions between them. Essays should have appropriate tone and diction, as well as correct spelling and grammar in their final form. Standards for writing apply across the disciplines.

A. WRITING AND RESEARCH

- Expository writing: Write nonfiction essays that describe, narrate, persuade, and compare and contrast.
- Write research essays, with attention to
 - asking open-ended questions
 - gathering relevant data through library and field research
 - summarizing, paraphrasing, and quoting accurately when taking notes
 - defining a thesis (that is, a central proposition, a main idea)
 - organizing with an outline
 - integrating quotations from sources
 - acknowledging sources and avoiding plagiarism
 - preparing a bibliography

B. SPEAKING AND LISTENING

- Participate civilly and productively in group discussions.
- Give a short speech to the class that is well-organized and well-supported.
- Demonstrate an ability to use standard pronunciation when speaking to large groups and in formal circumstances, such as a job interview.

C. GRAMMAR

Teachers: Students should have a working understanding of the following terms and be able to use them to discuss and analyze writing.

Parts of the Sentence

- Prepositional phrases
 - Identify as adjectival or adverbial
 - Identify word(s) modified by the prepositional phrase
 - Object of preposition (note that pronouns are in objective case)
 - Punctuation of prepositional phrases
- Subject and verb
 - Find complete subject and complete predicate
 - Identify simple subject and simple verb (after eliminating prepositional phrases):
 - in statements
 - in questions
 - in commands (you understood)
 - with there and here
 - Auxiliary verbs
 - Noun of direct address
 - Subject-verb agreement:
 - with compound subjects
 - with compound subjects joined by *or*
 - with indefinite pronouns (for example, everyone, anyone, some, all)



See also English 6 for more guidelines on writing persuasive essays.



- Complements
 - Find direct and indirect objects
 - Review linking vs. action verbs
 - Predicate nominative
 - Predicate adjective
- Appositives
 - Identify and tell which noun is renamed
 - Use of commas with appositive phrases
- Participles
 - Identify past, present participles
 - Identify participial phrases
 - Find the noun modified
 - Commas with participial phrases
- Gerunds and gerund phrases
 - Identify and tell its use in the sentence (subject, direct object, indirect object, appositive, predicate nominative, object of preposition)
- Infinitives and infinitive phrases
 - Adjective and adverb: find the word it modifies
 - Noun: tell its use in the sentence

Clauses

- Review: sentences classified by structure
 - Simple; compound (coordinating conjunctions v. conjunctive adverbs); complex; compound-complex
- Review independent (main) v. dependent (subordinate) clauses
- Kinds of dependent clauses
 - Adjective clauses
 - Identify and tell noun modified
 - Introductory words: relative pronouns, relative adverbs (where, when)
 - Implied “that”
 - Commas with nonrestrictive (nonessential) adjective clause
 - Adverb clauses
 - Identify and tell the word(s) modified
 - Subordinating conjunctions (for example, because, although, when, since, before, after, as soon as, where)
 - Comma after introductory adverbial clause
 - Noun clauses
 - Identify and tell use in the sentence (subject, predicate nominative, direct object, indirect object, object of preposition, appositive, objective complement, noun of direct address)

D. SPELLING

- Continue work with spelling, with special attention to commonly misspelled words, including:

achievement	despise	muscular	scholar
address	doesn't	occasionally	shepherd
analysis	environment	offense	sincerely
anonymous	excellent	particularly	sponsor
argument	existence	persuade	succeed
beginning	grammar	politician	surprise
business	hypocrisy	prejudice	tendency
college	immediately	probably	thorough
conscience	interpret	recognize	truly
control	knowledge	remembrance	women
criticism	lieutenant	responsibility	written
definite	medieval	rhyme	
description	muscle	sacrifice	

Note: More commonly misspelled words are listed in grades 6 and 8.

E. VOCABULARY

Teachers: Students should know the meaning of these Latin and Greek words that form common word roots and be able to give examples of English words that are based on them.

Note: More Latin and Greek words and roots are listed in grades 6 and 8. In the listings here, L = Latin, G = Greek. No single form of the Latin or Greek words is consistently used here, but rather the form that is most similar to related English words.

<u>Latin/Greek Word</u>	<u>Meaning</u>	<u>Examples</u>
ab [L]	away from	abnormal, absent
ad [L]	to, forward	advocate, advance
amo [L]	love	amiable, amorous
audio [L]	hear	audience, inaudible
auto [G]	self	automobile, autocrat
bene [L]	good/well	beneficial, benefit
circum [L]	around	circulate, circumference
celer [L]	swift	accelerate
chronos [G]	time	chronological
cresco [L]	grow	increase, decrease
cum [L]	with	compose, accommodate
curro [L]	run	current, cursive, course
demos [G]	people	democracy, epidemic
erro [L]	wander, stray	error, erratic
ex [L]	from, out of	exclaim, exhaust
extra [L]	outside	extravagant, extraordinary
facio [L]	make	effect, affect
fero [L]	bring, bear	confer, defer
fragilis [L]	breakable	fragile, fragment
finis [L]	end	confine, finality
homos [G]	same	homogenous
hyper [G]	over, beyond	hypertension, hyperactive
hypo [G]	under, beneath	hypodermic, hypothesis
jacio [L]	throw	eject, interject
judex [L]	a judge	judge, prejudice
juro [L]	swear	jury, perjury
makros [G]	long	macrocosm
malus [L]	bad	malady, malice
manus [L]	hand	manufacture, manuscript
morphe [G]	form	metamorphosis, amorphous
neos [G]	new	neophyte
pan [G]	all	panorama, panacea
pedis [L]	foot	pedal, biped
polis [G]	city	metropolis
pro [L]	before, for	proceed, propose, prodigy
pseudos [G]	a lie	pseudonym
re [L]	back, again	react, reply, revise
scribo [L]	write	scribble, inscribe
sentio [L]	feel (with senses)	sensation, sensual, sentry
sequor [L]	follow	subsequent, sequel
solvo [L]	loosen	solution, dissolve, solvent
specto [L]	look at	inspect, speculate, perspective
strictus [L]	drawn tight	strict, constricted
sub [L]	under	subdue, subject, subtract
super [L]	above	superficial, superlative, supreme
syn [G]	together	synchronize, synthesis
tendo [L]	stretch	tension, intense, detention
teneo [L]	hold, keep	contain, content, maintain
trans [L]	across	transfer, transcontinental
valeo [L]	be strong	prevail, valiant
venio [L]	come	event, advent
voco [L]	call	vocal, voice, vociferous
volvo [L]	revolve	evolve, revolution
zoon, zoe [G]	animal, life	zoology, protozoa

See also History 7: World War I, re Wilfred Owen; and, America in the Twenties, Harlem Renaissance, re Langston Hughes and Countee Cullen.

II. Poetry

Teachers: The poems listed here constitute a selected core of poetry for this grade. You are encouraged to expose students to more poetry, old and new, and to have students write their own poems. Students should examine some poems in detail, discussing what the poems mean as well as asking questions about the poet's use of language.

A. POEMS

Annabel Lee (Edgar Allan Poe)
 Because I could not stop for Death (Emily Dickinson)
 The Charge of the Light Brigade (Alfred Lord Tennyson)
 The Chimney Sweeper (both versions from *The Songs of Innocence* and *The Songs of Experience*; William Blake)
 The Cremation of Sam McGee (Robert Service)
 Dulce et Decorum Est (Wilfred Owen)
 Fire and Ice; Nothing Gold Can Stay (Robert Frost)
 Heritage (Countee Cullen)
 Macavity: The Mystery Cat (T.S. Eliot)
 The Negro Speaks of Rivers; Harlem; Life is Fine (Langston Hughes)
 This Is Just to Say; The Red Wheelbarrow (William Carlos Williams)

B. ELEMENTS OF POETRY

- Review: meter, iamb, rhyme scheme, free verse, couplet, onomatopoeia, alliteration
- Stanzas and refrains
- Forms
 - ballad
 - sonnet
 - lyric
 - narrative
 - limerick
 - haiku
- Types of rhyme: end, internal, slant, eye

III. Fiction, Nonfiction, and Drama

A. SHORT STORIES

"The Gift of the Magi" (O. Henry)
 "The Necklace" (Guy de Maupassant)
 "The Secret Life of Walter Mitty" (James Thurber)
 "The Tell-Tale Heart"; "The Purloined Letter" (Edgar Allan Poe)

B. NOVELS / NOVELLAS

The Call of the Wild (Jack London)
Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde (Robert Louis Stevenson)

C. ELEMENTS OF FICTION

- Review aspects of plot and setting
- Theme
- Point of view in narration
 - omniscient narrator
 - unreliable narrator
 - third person limited
 - first person
- Conflict: external and internal
- Suspense and climax

See also History 7: World War II, re Roosevelt's "Declaration of War" and Anne Frank's *Diary of a Young Girl*.

D. ESSAYS AND SPEECHES

- "Shooting an Elephant" (George Orwell)
- "The Night the Bed Fell" (James Thurber)
- "Declaration of War on Japan" (Franklin D. Roosevelt)

E. AUTOBIOGRAPHY

Diary of a Young Girl (Anne Frank)

F. DRAMA

- *Cyrano de Bergerac* (Edmond Rostand)
- Elements of drama
 - Tragedy and comedy (review)
 - Aspects of conflict, suspense, and characterization
 - Soliloquies and asides

G. LITERARY TERMS

- Irony: verbal, situational, dramatic
- Flashbacks and foreshadowing
- Hyperbole; oxymoron; parody

IV. Foreign Phrases Commonly Used in English

Teachers: Students should learn the meaning of the following Latin phrases that are commonly used in English speech and writing.

Note: In eighth grade, students will learn French phrases commonly used in English speech and writing.

ad hoc - concerned with a particular purpose; improvised [literally, "to the thing"]
 bona fides - good faith; sincere, involving no deceit or fraud
 carpe diem - seize the day, enjoy the present
 caveat emptor - let the buyer beware, buy at your own risk
 de facto - in reality, actually existing
 in extremis - in extreme circumstances, especially at the point of death
 in medias res - in the midst of things
 in toto - altogether, entirely
 modus operandi - a method of procedure
 modus vivendi - a way of living, getting along
 persona non grata - an unacceptable or unwelcome person
 prima facie - at first view, apparently; self-evident
 pro bono publico - for the public good
 pro forma - for the sake of form, carried out as a matter of formality
 quid pro quo - something given or received in exchange for something else
 requiescat in pace, R I P - may he or she rest in peace [seen on tombstones]
 sic transit gloria mundi - thus passes away the glory of the world
 sine qua non - something absolutely indispensable [literally, "without which not"]
 sub rosa - secretly

History and Geography: Grade 7

Teachers: In earlier grades, the history guidelines in the *Core Knowledge Sequence* were organized into separate strands on World History and American History. Because the World and American History strands merged chronologically in sixth grade, here in seventh grade the Sequence presents a unified section on History and Geography. Central themes of the history guidelines in grades seven and eight are growth and change in American democracy, and interactions with world forces, particularly nationalism and totalitarianism. Fundamental principles and structure of American government will be reviewed in a civics unit in eighth grade.

The study of geography aims at understanding the spatial relationship between nature and human culture and processes that change environments. Following the main outline of the history curriculum, seventh grade students study the geography of Europe, the United States, and Japan, while eighth graders will study the Middle East, South Asia, China, Canada, Mexico, and post-Cold War changes. Students should learn locations as well as the relationships between physical and human systems.

I. America Becomes a World Power

- Expansion of the U.S. Navy, Captain Alfred T. Mahan
- U.S. annexation of Hawaii
- The Spanish-American War
 - Cuban War for Independence, José Martí
 - Teddy Roosevelt and the Rough Riders
 - Spain gives the U.S. Guam, Puerto Rico, and the Philippines
- Complications of imperialism: War with the Philippines, Anti-Imperialist League
- Building the Panama Canal: “Roosevelt Corollary” to the Monroe Doctrine, “Speak softly and carry a big stick.”

II. World War I: “The Great War,” 1914–1918

A. HISTORY

- National pride and greed as causes: European nationalism, militarism, and colonialism
 - The British Empire: Queen Victoria
 - Italy becomes a nation: Garibaldi
 - German nationalism and militarism: Bismarck unifies Germany, war against France, France cedes Alsace-Lorraine to Germany
 - European imperialism and rivalries in Africa
 - Stanley and Livingstone
 - British invade Egypt to protect Suez Canal
 - French in North Africa
 - Berlin Conference and the “scramble for Africa”
- Entangling defense treaties: Allies vs. Central Powers, Archduke Ferdinand assassinated
- The Western Front and Eastern Front, Gallipoli, Lawrence of Arabia
- War of attrition and the scale of losses: Battle of the Marne (1914), new war technologies (for example, machine guns, tanks, airplanes, submarines), trench warfare
- U.S. neutrality ends: sinking of the Lusitania, “Make the world safe for democracy”
- Armistice Day, Nov. 11, 1918, abdication of Kaiser Wilhelm II
- Treaty of Versailles
 - New central European states and national boundaries
 - German reparations and disarmament
- Woodrow Wilson’s 14 Points
 - League of Nations, concept of collective security

B. GEOGRAPHY OF WESTERN AND CENTRAL EUROPE

Teachers: Students should regularly consult maps in reference to the following topics.

- Physical features
 - Mountains: Alps, Apennines, Carpathians, Pyrenees
 - Danube and Rhine Rivers
 - Seas: Adriatic, Aegean, Baltic, Black, Mediterranean, North
- Population and natural resources, acid rain damage
- Languages, major religions
- Legacy of Roman Empire: city sites, transportation routes
- Industrial Revolution leads to urbanization (review from grade 6)
- Scandinavia: comprised of Denmark, Norway, Sweden, sometimes also includes Finland and Iceland
 - Cities: Copenhagen (Denmark), Oslo (Norway), Stockholm (Sweden), Helsinki (Finland)
- United Kingdom: comprised of Great Britain (England, Scotland, Wales) and Northern Ireland
 - Irish Sea, English Channel
 - North Sea: gas and oil
 - England: London, Thames River
 - Scotland: Glasgow, Edinburgh
 - Northern Ireland: Ulster and Belfast, Catholic-Protestant strife
 - Ireland: Dublin (review from grade 6: famine of 1840s, mass emigration)
- France
 - Alps, Mont Blanc
 - Seine and Rhone Rivers
 - Bay of Biscay, Strait of Dover
 - Corsica (island)
 - Major cities: Paris, Lyon, Marseilles
- Belgium, Netherlands (Holland), and Luxembourg
 - Cities: Brussels (Belgium), Amsterdam, Rotterdam, The Hague (Netherlands)
- Germany
 - Cities: Berlin, Bonn, Hamburg, Munich
 - Ruhr Valley: mining region, industrial cities including Essen
 - Largest population in Europe, highly urbanized
- Austria and Switzerland
 - Mostly mountainous (the Alps)
 - Cities: Vienna (Austria), Bern, Geneva (Switzerland)
- Italy
 - Apennines
 - Sardinia and Sicily (islands)
 - Cities: Milan, Rome, Venice, Florence
 - Vatican City: independent state within Rome
- Iberian Peninsula: Spain and Portugal
 - Cities: Madrid (Spain), Lisbon (Portugal)

III. The Russian Revolution

A. HISTORY

- Tensions in the Russian identity: Westernizers vs. traditionalists
- Revolution of 1905, “Bloody Sunday,” Russo-Japanese War
- The last czar: Nicholas II and Alexandra
- Economic strains of World War I
- Revolutions of 1917
 - March Revolution ousts Czar
 - October Revolution: Bolsheviks, Lenin and revolutionary Marxism
- Civil War: Bolsheviks defeat Czarist counterrevolution, Bolsheviks become the Communist Party, creation of the Soviet Union

B. GEOGRAPHY

Teachers: Students should regularly consult maps in reference to the following topics.

- Overview
 - Territorially the largest state in the world
 - All parts exposed to Arctic air masses
 - Little moisture reaches Russia, because of distance from Atlantic Ocean, and because Himalayas block movement of warm, moist air from south
 - Population concentrated west of Ural Mountains
 - Siberia: rich in resources
 - Mongolia: Russian-dominated buffer state with China
 - Few well-located ports
 - Rich oil and natural gas regions
- Physical features:
 - Volga and Don Rivers (connected by canal)
 - Caspian Sea, Aral Sea (being drained by irrigation projects)
 - Sea of Japan, Bering Strait
- Cities: Moscow, Petersburg (formerly Leningrad), Vladivostok, Volgograd (formerly Stalingrad)

IV. America from the Twenties to the New Deal

A. AMERICA IN THE TWENTIES

- Isolationism: restrictions on immigration, Red Scare, Sacco and Vanzetti, Ku Klux Klan
- The “Roaring Twenties”: flappers, prohibition and gangsterism, St. Valentine’s Day Massacre, Al Capone
- The Lost Generation: Ernest Hemingway, F. Scott Fitzgerald
- Scopes “Monkey Trial”
- Women’s right to vote: 19th Amendment
- “New Negro” movement, Harlem Renaissance
 - African American exodus from segregated South to northern cities
 - W. E. B. Du Bois: *The Souls of Black Folk*, NAACP (review from grade 6)
 - Zora Neal Hurston, Countee Cullen, Langston Hughes
 - “The Jazz Age”: Duke Ellington, Louis Armstrong
 - Marcus Garvey, black separatist movement
- Technological advances
 - Henry Ford’s assembly line production, Model T
 - Residential electrification: mass ownership of radio, Will Rogers
 - Movies: from silent to sound, Charlie Chaplin
 - Pioneers of flight: Charles Lindbergh, Amelia Earhart
 - Decline of rural population

B. THE GREAT DEPRESSION

- Wall Street stock market Crash of ’29, “Black Tuesday”
- Hoover insists on European payment of war debts, Smoot-Hawley Tariff Act
- Mass unemployment
 - Agricultural prices collapse following European peace
 - Factory mechanization eliminates jobs
 - Bonus Army
 - “Hoovervilles”
- The Dust Bowl, “Okie” migrations
- Radicals: Huey Long, American Communist Party, Sinclair Lewis

See below, VII. Geography of the United States: New York City.

See also Music 7: American Musical Traditions: Jazz.

C. ROOSEVELT AND THE NEW DEAL

- Franklin Delano Roosevelt: “The only thing we have to fear is fear itself”
Eleanor Roosevelt
- The New Deal
 - Growth of unions: John L. Lewis and the CIO (Congress of Industrial Organizations),
A. Philip Randolph, Memorial Day Massacre
 - New social welfare programs: Social Security
 - New regulatory agencies: Securities and Exchange Commission, National Labor
Relations Board
 - Tennessee Valley Authority
- Roosevelt’s use of executive power: “Imperial Presidency”, “court packing”

Note: re growth of unions, recall from grade 6, American Federation of Labor.

V. World War II

A. THE RISE OF TOTALITARIANISM IN EUROPE

- Italy
 - Mussolini establishes fascism
 - Attack on Ethiopia
- Germany
 - Weimar Republic, economic repercussions of WWI
 - Adolf Hitler and the rise of Nazi totalitarianism: cult of the *Führer* (“leader”),
Mein Kampf
 - Nazism and the ideology of fascism, in contrast to communism and democracy
 - Racial doctrines of the Nazis: anti-Semitism, the concept of *Lebensraum* (literally, “living space”) for the “master race,” *Kristallnacht*
 - The Third Reich before the War: Gestapo, mass propaganda, book burning
- The Soviet Union
 - Communist totalitarianism: Josef Stalin, “Socialism in one country”
 - Collectivization of agriculture
 - Five-year plans for industrialization
 - The Great Purge
- Spanish Civil War
 - Franco, International Brigade, Guernica

See also Visual Arts 7:
Picasso’s *Guernica*.

B. WORLD WAR II IN EUROPE AND AT HOME, 1939–45

- Hitler defies Versailles Treaty: reoccupation of Rhineland, *Anschluss*, annexation of Austria
- Appeasement: Munich Agreement, “peace in our time”
- Soviet-Nazi Nonaggression Pact
- *Blitzkrieg*: invasion of Poland, fall of France, Dunkirk
- Battle of Britain: Winston Churchill, “nothing to offer but blood, toil, tears, and sweat”
- The Home Front in America
 - American Lend-Lease supplies, Atlantic Charter
 - America First movement
 - U.S. mobilization for war: desegregation of defense industries, “Rosie the Riveter,”
rationing, war bonds
 - America races Germany to develop the atomic bomb: the Manhattan Project
- Hitler invades Soviet Union: battles of Leningrad and Stalingrad
- The Holocaust: “Final Solution,” concentration camps (Dachau, Auschwitz)
- North Africa Campaign: El Alamein
- D-Day: Allied invasion of Normandy, General Dwight Eisenhower
- Battle of the Bulge, bombing of Dresden
- Yalta Conference
- Surrender of Germany, Soviet Army takes Berlin

See also English 7:
Autobiography, Anne Frank’s
Diary of a Young Girl.

C. WORLD WAR II IN THE PACIFIC, AND THE END OF THE WAR

- Historical background: Japan's rise to power
 - Geography of Japan (review all topics from grade 5)
 - Sea of Japan and Korea Strait
 - High population density, very limited farmland, heavy reliance on imported raw materials and food
 - End of Japanese isolation, Commodore Matthew Perry
 - Meiji Restoration: end of feudal Japan, industrialization and modernization
 - Japanese imperialism: occupation of Korea, invasion of Manchuria, Rape of Nanking
 - Japanese-Soviet neutrality treaty
- Pearl Harbor, Dec. 7, 1941: "A day that will live in infamy."
- Internment of Japanese-Americans
- Fall of the Philippines: Bataan Death March, General Douglas MacArthur, "I shall return."
- Battle of Midway
- Island amphibious landings: Guadalcanal, Iwo Jima
- Surrender of Japan
 - Atom bombs dropped on Hiroshima and Nagasaki, the Enola Gay
 - U.S. dictates pacifist constitution for Japan, Emperor Hirohito
- Potsdam Conference, Nuremberg war crimes trials
- Creation of United Nations: Security Council, Universal Declaration of Human Rights

See also English 7: Essays and Speeches, Roosevelt's "Declaration of War."

VI. Geography of the United States

Teachers: Students should regularly consult maps in reference to the following topics:

- Physical features
 - General forms: Gulf/Atlantic coastal plain, Appalachian highlands and Piedmont, Midwest lowlands, Great Plains, Rocky Mountains, Intermountain Basin and Range, Pacific coast ranges, Arctic coastal plain
 - Mountains: Rockies, Appalachians, Sierra Nevada, Cascades, Adirondacks, Ozarks
 - Peaks: McKinley, Rainier, Whitney
 - Main water features: Gulf of Mexico, Chesapeake Bay, San Francisco Bay, Puget Sound, Great Salt Lake, Great Lakes (freshwater)—Erie, Huron, Michigan, Ontario, Superior
 - Rivers: Mississippi, Missouri, Ohio, Colorado, Hudson, Columbia, Potomac, Rio Grande, Tennessee
 - Niagara Falls, Grand Canyon, Mojave Desert, Death Valley
- Political, economic, and social features
 - The fifty states and their capitals (review), Washington, D. C., Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, Virgin Islands, Guam
- Cities: Atlanta, Baltimore, Birmingham, Boston, Charlotte, Chicago, Cincinnati, Cleveland, Dallas, Denver, Detroit, Houston, Kansas City, Los Angeles, Memphis, Miami, Milwaukee, Minneapolis, New Orleans, Norfolk, Philadelphia, Phoenix, Pittsburgh, Portland, St. Louis, San Antonio, San Diego, San Francisco, Seattle, Tampa
- Population
 - Expansion of settlement
 - Population density

- Regions
 - New England
 - Mid-Atlantic
 - South: “Dixie,” Mason-Dixon Line, Bible Belt
 - Middle West: Rust Belt, Corn Belt
 - Southwest: Sun Belt
 - Mountain States
 - West Coast: San Andreas fault, California aqueduct (water supply) system
 - Coal, oil, and natural gas deposits
 - Agricultural crop regions
- New York City
 - Bronx, Brooklyn, Manhattan, Queens, Staten Island
 - Broadway, Fifth Avenue, Madison Avenue, Park Avenue, Times Square, Wall Street
 - Central Park, Harlem, Greenwich Village

Visual Arts: Grade 7

SEE INTRODUCTION, "The Arts in the Curriculum."

Teachers: In schools, lessons on the visual arts should illustrate important elements of making and appreciating art, and emphasize important artists, works of art, and artistic concepts. When appropriate, topics in the visual arts may be linked to topics in other disciplines. While the following guidelines specify a variety of artworks in different media and from various cultures, they are not intended to be comprehensive. Teachers are encouraged to build upon the core content and expose children to a wide range of art and artists.

In studying the works of art specified below, and in creating their own art, students should review, develop, and apply concepts introduced in previous grades, such as line, shape, form, space, texture, color, light, design, and symmetry.

I. Art History: Periods and Schools

Teachers: The guidelines here continue the organizational scheme established in sixth grade, which combined art history with analysis of specific illustrative works. Timelines may help students situate the artists, periods, and schools. Note that the periods and characteristics are not absolute distinctions but generally helpful categories (to which there are always exceptions) often used in discussions of art.

A. IMPRESSIONISM

- Examine characteristics of Impressionism in
 - Claude Monet: *Impression: Sunrise, Bridge Over a Pool of Lilies*
 - Pierre Auguste Renoir, *Luncheon of the Boating Party*
 - Edgar Degas, a ballet painting such as *Dancing Class*
 - Mary Cassatt, *The Boating Party*

B. POST-IMPRESSIONISM

- Examine characteristics of Post-Impressionism in
 - Paul Cezanne: a still life such as *Apples and Oranges*, a version of *Mont Sainte-Victoire*, *The Card Players*
 - Georges Seurat and pointillism: *Sunday Afternoon on the Island of the Grande Jatte*
 - Vincent van Gogh: *The Starry Night*, one of his *Sunflowers*, a self-portrait such as *Self-Portrait* [1889]
 - Paul Gauguin: *Vision After the Sermon, Hail Mary (la Orana Maria)*
 - Henri Toulouse-Lautrec, *At the Moulin Rouge*
 - Art Nouveau as a pervasive style of decoration

C. EXPRESSIONISM AND ABSTRACTION

- Examine representative artists and works, including
 - Henri Matisse: *Madame Matisse, The Red Room*, cutouts such as *Beasts of the Sea*
 - Edvard Munch, *The Scream*
 - Marc Chagall, *I and the Village*
 - Pablo Picasso's early works, including *Family of Saltimbanques*
- Cubism
 - Pablo Picasso, *Les Femmes d'Alger (O. J. R. M.)*
 - Marcel Duchamp, *Nude Descending a Staircase*
- Picasso after Cubism: *Girl Before a Mirror, Guernica*

- Other developers of abstraction:
 - Vassily Kandinsky, *Improvisation 31 (Sea Battle)*
 - Paul Klee, *Senecio* (also known as *Head of a Man*)
 - Piet Mondrian, *Broadway Boogie Woogie*
 - Salvador Dali and surrealism: *The Persistence of Memory*












D. MODERN AMERICAN PAINTING

- Examine representative artists and works, including
 - Edward Hopper, *Nighthawks*
 - Andrew Wyeth, *Christina's World*
 - Georgia O'Keeffe, *Red Poppies*
- Regionalists, social realists, and genre painters
 - Grant Wood, *American Gothic*
 - Diego Rivera [Mexican], *Detroit Industry*
 - Norman Rockwell, *Triple Self-Portrait*

SEE INTRODUCTION, "The Arts in the Curriculum."

I. Elements of Music

Teachers: The Music guidelines for grades 6-8 share a basic vocabulary of the elements of music that can inform the discussion, appreciation, and study of selected musical works. Following these guidelines are recommendations in each grade for a core of musical content, broadly organized as a history of music from early to modern times, with attention to specific periods, composers, and genres. While these guidelines focus on musical vocabulary, appreciation, and history, musical performance should be encouraged and emphasized as local resources allow.

- Review as necessary from earlier grades:
 - The orchestra and families of instruments (strings, wind, brass, percussion); keyboard instruments
 - Vocal ranges: soprano, mezzo-soprano, alto; tenor, baritone, bass
- Recognize frequently used Italian terms:
 - grave* (very very slow)
 - largo* (very slow)
 - adagio* (slow)
 - andante* (moderate; "walking")
 - moderato* (medium)
 - allegro* (fast)
 - presto* (very fast)
 - prestissimo* (as fast as you can go)
 - ritardando* and *accelerando* (gradually slowing down and getting faster)
 - crescendo* and *decrescendo* (gradually increasing and decreasing volume)
 - legato* (smoothly flowing progression of notes), *staccato* (crisp, distinct notes)
- Recognize introduction, interlude, and coda in musical selections.
- Recognize theme and variations.
- Identify chords [such as I (tonic), IV (subdominant), V (dominant); V7]; major and minor chords; chord changes; intervals (third, fourth, fifth).
- Understand what an octave is.
- Understand the following notation and terms:
 - names of lines and spaces in the treble clef; middle C
 -  treble clef  bass clef  staff, bar line, double bar line, measure, repeat signs
 -  whole note  half note  quarter note  eighth note
 - whole rest, half rest, quarter rest, eighth rest
 -  grouped sixteenth notes
 - tied notes and dotted notes
 -  sharps  flats  naturals
 - Da capo* [*Da Capo*] *al fine*
 - meter signature: $\frac{4}{4}$ or common time $\frac{2}{4}$ $\frac{3}{4}$ $\frac{6}{8}$
 - soft *pp* *p* *mp* loud *mf* *f* *ff*

II. Classical Music: Romantics and Nationalists

Teachers: While these guidelines focus on musical vocabulary, appreciation, and history, musical performance should be encouraged and emphasized as resources allow. The focus here combines music history with appreciation of illustrative works, and continues from grade 6 the idea of classifying Western music by periods, with examples of specific composers and works, as well as some associated musical terms. Timelines may help students situate the periods. The periods and their characteristics are not absolute distinctions but generally helpful categories often used in discussions of music. In sixth grade students studied music and composers from the Baroque to the Romantic.

Note: In sixth grade, students were introduced to works by Beethoven, Brahms, Chopin, and Schumann.

A. ROMANTIC COMPOSERS AND WORKS

- Composers and works:
 - Johannes Brahms, *Symphony No. 1* (fourth movement)
 - Hector Berlioz, *Symphonie Fantastique*
 - Franz Liszt, *Hungarian Rhapsody No. 2* for piano
 - Richard Wagner, Overture to *Die Meistersinger von Nürnberg*

B. MUSIC AND NATIONAL IDENTITY

- Composers and works:
 - Antonín Dvořák, *Symphony No. 9 (“From the New World”)*
 - Edvard Grieg, *Peer Gynt Suites Nos. 1 and 2*
 - Peter Ilich Tchaikovsky, *1812 Overture*

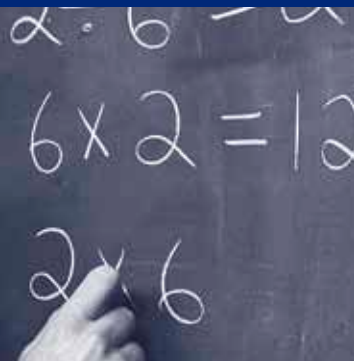
III. American Musical Traditions

- Blues
 - Evolved from African-American work songs and spirituals
 - Twelve bar blues form
- Jazz
 - African-American origins
 - Terms: improvisation, syncopation, solo and soloist
 - Ragtime: works of Scott Joplin (such as “The Entertainer” and “Maple Leaf Rag”)
 - Louis Armstrong: early recordings such as “Potato Head Blues,” “West End Blues,” or “St. Louis Blues”
 - Duke Ellington: “Caravan,” “Take the ‘A’ Train” [by Billy Strayhorn]
 - Miles Davis: “So What”
 - Influence of jazz on other music: George Gershwin’s *Rhapsody in Blue*

Teachers: In learning the new concepts and procedures, students should use previously acquired mathematics to ensure that the procedures become automatic and habitual. Students should continue to master the use of measuring and drawing instruments, develop their mental arithmetic and their approximating abilities, become more familiar with deductive reasoning, and use calculators and computers in a thoughtful way.

These guidelines are representative of the mathematics typically learned in grade 7 in countries that have strong math traditions and whose students score well in international comparisons. In the United States, most teachers of middle-school mathematics follow commercial math textbooks which vary in quality. Because teachers are often selective about the parts of the textbooks they teach, the following guidelines may prove useful as an outline by which the teacher can, regardless of the textbook adopted, make sure the competencies taught in their programs are comparable to the competencies of students in the best-achieving systems.

While teaching methods may vary, it is worth keeping in mind the psychological principle that the most effective method for learning mathematics emphasizes frequent, varied practice, and encourages multiple approaches to solving varied types of problems.



I. Pre-Algebra

A. PROPERTIES OF THE REAL NUMBERS

- Know and use the associative, commutative, and distributive properties by name and in simplifying expressions involving numbers and variables.
- Understand absolute value and evaluate expressions such as $|2x - 3| + 3x$.

B. LINEAR APPLICATIONS AND PROPORTIONALITY

- Know the concept of slope.
- Translate situations of proportionality into equations of the form $y = mx$, where m is the constant of proportionality or slope; specifically know and understand $d = rt$ and $i = prt$.
- Show situations of constant proportionality as a line on the coordinate plane.
- Introduce the concept of a function and determine the equation of a linear function given its slope and intercepts in the form $y = mx + b$.
- Estimate the values of b and m from a given linear graph.

C. POLYNOMIAL ARITHMETIC

- Add, subtract, multiply, and divide monomials and polynomials (divide polynomials by monomials only).
- Factor binomials that have a common monomial factor.

D. EQUIVALENT EQUATIONS AND INEQUALITIES

- Review equality properties for equations.
- Know that addition or subtraction of the same value from both sides of an inequality maintains the inequality.
- Know that multiplying or dividing both sides of an inequality by a positive number maintains the inequality, but multiplying or dividing by a negative number reverses the inequality; be able to show why using a number line.
- Simplify and solve linear equations in one variable such as $3(2x - 5) + 4x = 12(x + 5)$.
- Simplify and graph solutions to linear inequalities in one variable such as $3(2x - 5) + 4x \leq 12(x + 5)$.

E. INTEGER EXPONENTS

- Know the meaning of an exponent n when n is positive or negative.
- Know that a non-zero number to the zero power is one.

- Understand why a negative number to an even power is positive and a negative number to odd power is negative.
- Know the multiplication properties of exponents:
Product of powers: $(a^m)(a^n) = a^{(m+n)}$
Power of a power: $(a^m)^n = a^{mn}$
Power of a product: $(ab)^m = (a^m)(b^m)$.
- Convert decimal numbers to and from scientific notation.
- Know the proper order of operations with exponents.

II. Geometry

A. THREE-DIMENSIONAL OBJECTS

- Describe and construct simple right prisms, cylinders, cones, and spheres using the concepts of parallel and perpendicular; calculate the surface areas and volumes of these objects.
- Know that the section created by the intersection of a plane and a sphere is a circle.
- Calculate the surface area of a sphere using the equation $SA = 4 \pi r^2$.
- Calculate the volume of a sphere using the equation $V = (4/3) \pi r^3$.

B. ANGLE PAIRS

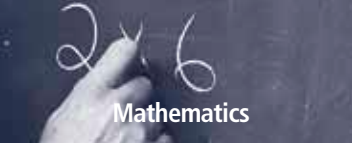
- Construct parallel lines and a transversal using a compass and straight edge.
- Understand congruent angles, vertical angles, complementary angles, supplementary angles, adjacent angles, corresponding angles, and alternate interior and alternate exterior angles.

C. TRIANGLES

- Know that a triangle is determined by its three sides or by two sides and the included angle (SSS and SAS triangle congruence) and solve problems.
- Use SSS to prove that the construction of the bisector of an angle is valid.
- Use SSS to prove that the construction of the perpendicular bisector of a segment is valid.
- Prove that the base angles of an isosceles triangle are congruent.
- Demonstrate that the sum of the interior angles of a triangle equals 180 degrees.
- Know that the shape of a triangle is determined by two (hence all three) of its angles (AA(A) triangle similarity) and solve related problems.
- Construct a circle that circumscribes a triangle using compass and straight edge.
- Know and understand the Pythagorean Theorem and its converse and use it to find the length of the missing side of a right triangle and lengths of other line segments and, in some situations, empirically verify the Pythagorean theorem by direct measurement and a calculator.
- Use the Pythagorean Theorem to determine the exact ratios of the sides in 30-60-right triangles and isosceles right triangles.
- Determine the image of a triangle under translations, rotations, and reflections.

D. MEASUREMENT

- Choose appropriate units of measure and use ratios to convert within and between measurement systems to solve problems.
- Compare weights, capacities, geometric measures, times, and temperatures within and between measurement systems (for example, miles per hour and feet per second, cubic inches to cubic centimeters).
- Use measures expressed as rates (for example, speed, density) and measures expressed as products (for example, person-days) to solve problems; check the units of the solutions; and use dimensional analysis to check the reasonableness of the answer.
- Compute the perimeter, area, and volume of common geometric objects and use the results to find measures of less common objects.
- Know how perimeter, area, and volume are affected by changes of scale.



- Estimate and compute the area of more complex or irregular two- and three-dimensional figures by breaking the figures down into more basic geometric objects.
- Relate the changes in measurement with a change of scale to the units used (for example, square inches, cubic feet) and to conversions between units (1 square foot = 144 square inches or $[1 \text{ ft}^2 = 144 \text{ in}^2]$, 1 cubic inch is approximately 16.38 cubic centimeters $[1 \text{ in}^3 = [16.36 \text{ cm}^3]$).

III. Probability and Statistics

- Show the relationship between two variables using a scatter-plot and describe the apparent relationship informally.
- Find the upper and lower quartiles for a data set.
- Understand that if p is the probability of an event occurring, $1 - p$ is the probability of the event not occurring.
- Understand the difference between independent and dependent events.

Teachers: Effective instruction in science requires not only direct experience and observation but also book learning, which helps bring coherence and order to a student's scientific knowledge. Only when topics are presented systematically and clearly can students make steady and secure progress in their scientific learning. The Science sequence for the middle school grades aims for more intensive and selective study of topics, a number of which were introduced in earlier grades. The Sequence continues the practice of studying topics from each of the major realms of science (physical, life, and earth science). Students are expected to do experiments and write reports on their findings.



I. Atomic Structure

- Review (from grade 5): Structure of atoms: protons, neutron, electrons
Molecules
Compounds are formed by combining two or more elements and have properties different from the constituent elements.
- Early theories of matter
The early Greek theory of four elements: earth, air, fire, and water
Later theories of Democritus: everything is made of atoms and nothing else (“atom” in Greek means that which can't be cut or divided); atoms of the same kind form a pure “element”
Alchemy in middle ages
- Start of modern chemistry
Lavoisier and oxygen: the idea that matter is not gained or lost in chemical reactions
John Dalton revives the theory of the atom.
Mendeleev develops the Periodic Table, showing that the properties of atoms of elements come in repeating (periodic) groups.
Niels Bohr develops a model of the atom in shells that hold a certain number of electrons. Bohr's model, plus the discovery of neutrons, helped explain the Periodic Table: atomic number, atomic weight, and isotopes.

See below, Science Biographies, Lavoisier and Mendeleev.

II. Chemical Bonds and Reactions

- To get a stable outer shell of electrons, atoms either give away, take on, or share electrons.
- Chemical reactions rearrange the atoms and the electrons in elements and compounds to form chemical bonds.
- When single atoms combine with themselves or with other atoms, the result is a molecule.
 O_2 is a molecule of oxygen. $NaCl$ is a molecule of salt, and because it has more than one element is called a compound.
- Ionic bond
Atoms like sodium that have just one or two extra electrons are very energetic in giving them away. Elements with the same number of extra or few electrons can join with each other to make an ionic bond. Example: $NaCl$, table salt.
- Metallic bond
In the metallic bond, electrons are not given away between elements, but are arranged so that they are shared between atoms. Pure metals show this sharing, and the atoms can rearrange themselves in different ways, which explains why you can pound metals into different shapes.



Note: A useful mnemonic device is "OIL RIG" — "oxidation is loss, reduction is gain."

- **Covalent bond**
Some atoms share electrons in a definite way, making them very stable and unreactive. Examples are H_2 and O_2 . Carbon, which can take up or give away 4 electrons in covalent bonds, can help make molecules that can adopt almost any shape. It is the basis of life.
- **Kinds of reactions**
Oxidation: a chemical reaction that commonly involves oxygen. More generally, oxidation is a reaction in which an atom accepts electrons while combining with other elements. The atom that gives away electrons is said to be oxidized.
Examples: rusting of iron, burning of paper. Heat is given off.
Reduction: the opposite of oxidation. Reduction involves the gaining of electrons. An oxidized material gives them away and heat is taken up.
Acids: for example, vinegar, HCl , H_2SO_4 ; sour; turn litmus red
Bases: for example, baking soda; bitter; turn litmus blue
pH: ranges from 0-14; neutral = 7, acid = below 7, base = above 7
Reactions with acids and bases
In water solution, an acid compound has an H ion (a proton lacking an electron), and the base compound has an OH ion (with an extra electron).
When the two come together, they form HOH (water) plus a stable compound called a "salt."
- How chemists describe reactions by equations, for example: $HCl + NaOH = NaCl + H_2O$
- A catalyst helps a reaction, but is not used up.

III. Cell Division and Genetics

Note: Review from grade 5: Cell Structures and Processes.

- **Cell division, the basic process for growth and reproduction**
Two types of cell division: mitosis (growth and asexual reproduction), meiosis (sexual reproduction)
Asexual reproduction: mitosis; diploid cells (as in amoeba)
Sexual reproduction: meiosis; haploid cells; combinations of traits
How change occurs from one generation to another: either mutation or mixing of traits through sexual reproduction
Why acquired characteristics are not transmitted
- **Gregor Mendel's experiments with purebred and hybrid peas**
Dominant and recessive genes
Mendel's statistical analysis led to understanding that inherited traits are controlled by genes (now known to be DNA).
- **Modern understanding of chromosomes and genes**
Double helix (twisted ladder) of DNA coding; how DNA makes new DNA
How DNA sequence makes proteins
Genetic engineering
Modern researchers in genetics: Francis Crick, James Watson, Severo Ochoa, Barbara McClintock

IV. History of the Earth and Life Forms

A. PALEONTOLOGY

- Fossils as a record of the Earth's history and past life forms
- How fossils are formed, and types of fossils (mold, cast, trace, true-form)

B. GEOLOGIC TIME

- The age of the earth is about 4.6 billion years, based on geologic evidence and radioactive dating. Life has existed on earth for more than 3 billion years.
How movements of the earth's plates have affected the distribution of organisms

- Organizing geologic time: Scientists have organized the earth's history into four major eras:
 - Precambrian Era (earliest forms of life, such as bacteria and blue-green algae; later in the period, invertebrates such as jellyfish)
 - Paleozoic Era (Pangaea; invertebrate life, such as trilobites, early in this era, followed by development of vertebrates later in the era, including fish; development of insects, amphibians, and the beginnings of reptiles; development of simple plants, such as mosses and ferns)
 - Mesozoic Era (Pangaea separates into continents; "Age of Reptiles"; dinosaurs, flowering plants, small mammals and birds)
 - Cenozoic (Present) Era (Ice Age; mammoths; gradual development of mammals, birds and other animals recognizable today; humans; flowering plants, forests, grasslands)

V. Evolution

A. EVOLUTION

- Evolution is the change in a population of organisms over time caused by both genetic change and environmental factors.
 - Adaptation and mutation
- Charles Darwin: voyages of the *Beagle*; *Origin of Species* (1859)

B. NATURAL SELECTION

- Natural selection as the mechanism of evolution: Darwin's theory that life forms better adapted to their current environment have a better chance of surviving and will pass on their traits to their offspring
 - Trait variation and change from generation to generation
- Evidence for the theory of evolution includes comparative anatomy, geology, fossils, and DNA research.

C. EXTINCTION AND SPECIATION

- Extinction occurs when an environment changes and a species is no longer adapted to it.
- New species can develop when part of the population becomes separated and evolves in isolation.
- Life forms have evolved from simple organisms in oceans through amphibians to higher forms such as primates.

VI. Science Biographies

Charles Darwin (scientist known for theory of natural selection)
 Antoine Lavoisier (chemist who discovered the process of oxidation)
 Lise Meitner (physicist who helped discover nuclear fission)
 Dmitri Mendeleev (scientist who devised the periodic table)

See below, Science Biographies, Charles Darwin.

See above, Evolution re Darwin; Atomic Structure: Start of modern chemistry, re Lavoisier and Mendeleev.

Grade 8



Overview of Topics

Grade 8

English

- I. Writing, Grammar, and Usage
 - A. Writing and Research
 - B. Speaking and Listening
 - C. Grammar
 - D. Spelling
 - E. Vocabulary
- II. Poetry
 - A. Poems
 - B. Elements of Poetry
- III. Fiction, Nonfiction, and Drama
 - A. Short Stories
 - B. Novels
 - C. Elements of Fiction
 - D. Essays and Speeches
 - E. Autobiography
 - F. Drama
 - G. Literary Terms
- IV. Foreign Phrases Commonly Used in English

History and Geography

- I. The Decline of European Colonialism
 - A. Breakup of the British Empire
 - B. Creation of the People's Republic of China
- II. The Cold War
 - A. Origins of the Cold War
 - B. The Korean War
 - C. America in the Cold War
- III. The Civil Rights Movement
- IV. The Vietnam War and the Rise of Social Activism
 - A. The Vietnam War
 - B. Social and Environmental Activism
- V. The Middle East and Oil Politics
 - A. History
 - B. Geography of the Middle East
- VI. The End of the Cold War: The Expansion of Democracy and Continuing Challenges
 - A. The American Policy of Detente
 - B. Breakup of the USSR
 - C. China under Communism
 - D. Contemporary Europe
 - E. The End of Apartheid in South Africa

- VII. Civics: The Constitution—Principles and Structure of American Democracy
- VIII. Geography of Canada and Mexico

Visual Arts

- I. Art History: Periods and Schools
 - A. Painting Since World War II
 - B. Photography
 - C. 20th-Century Sculpture
- II. Architecture Since the Industrial Revolution

Music

- I. Elements of Music
- II. Non-Western Music
- III. Classical Music: Nationalists and Moderns
 - A. Music and National Identity
 - B. Modern Music
- IV. Vocal Music
 - A. Opera
 - B. American Musical Theater

Mathematics

- I. Algebra
 - A. Properties of the Real Numbers
 - B. Relations, Functions, and Graphs (Two Variables)
 - C. Linear Equations and Functions (Two Variables)
 - D. Arithmetic of Rational Expression
 - E. Quadratic Equations and Functions
- II. Geometry
 - A. Analytic Geometry
 - B. Introduction to Trigonometry
 - C. Triangles and Proofs

Science

- I. Physics
 - A. Motion
 - B. Forces
 - C. Density and Buoyancy
 - D. Work
 - E. Energy
 - F. Power
- II. Electricity and Magnetism
- III. Electromagnetic Radiation and Light
- IV. Sound Waves
- V. Chemistry of Food and Respiration
- VI. Science Biographies

I. Writing, Grammar, and Usage

Teachers: Students should be given opportunities to write fiction, poetry, or drama, but instruction should emphasize repeated expository writing. Students should examine their work with attention to unity, coherence, and emphasis. Expository essays should have a main point and stick to it, and have a coherent structure, typically following the pattern of introduction, body, and conclusion. Paragraphs should have a unified focus, be developed with evidence and examples, and have transitions between them. Essays should have appropriate tone and diction, as well as correct spelling and grammar in their final form. Standards for writing apply across the disciplines.

A. WRITING AND RESEARCH

- Expository writing: Write essays that describe, narrate, persuade, and compare and contrast.
- Write research essays, with attention to
 - asking open-ended questions
 - gathering relevant data through library and field research
 - summarizing, paraphrasing, and quoting accurately when taking notes
 - defining a thesis (that is, a central proposition, a main idea)
 - organizing with an outline
 - integrating quotations from sources
 - acknowledging sources and avoiding plagiarism
 - preparing a bibliography

B. SPEAKING AND LISTENING

- Participate civilly and productively in group discussions.
- Give a short speech to the class that is well-organized and well-supported.
- Demonstrate an ability to use standard pronunciation when speaking to large groups and in formal circumstances, such as a job interview.

C. GRAMMAR

Teachers: Students should have a working understanding of the following terms and be able to use them to discuss and analyze writing.

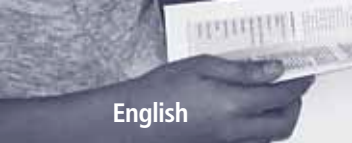
Punctuation

- Review punctuation based on sentence structure, including
 - semi-colons
 - commas with phrases and clauses
- Review other punctuation, including
 - punctuation of quotations, dialogue
 - use of parentheses
 - hyphens
 - dashes
 - colons
 - italics
 - apostrophes

Misplaced modifiers

- Phrases and clauses go as near as possible to the word(s) they modify.
 - Dangling modifiers
 - Two-way modifiers

See also English 6 for more guidelines on writing persuasive essays.



Parallelism

- Parallelism is expressing ideas of equal importance using the same grammatical constructions.
- Kinds of parallelism
 - coordinate (using coordinating conjunctions *and, but, or, nor, yet*)
 - compared/contrasted
 - correlative (both . . . and, either . . . or, neither . . . nor, not only . . . but also)
- Correcting faulty parallelism
 - repeating words (articles, prepositions, pronouns) to maintain parallelism
 - completing parallel construction
 - revising sentences using parallel structure (for example, using all gerund phrases, or all noun clauses)

Sentence variety

- Review sentences classified by structure: simple, compound, complex, compound-complex.
- Varying sentence length and structure to avoid monotony
- Varying sentence openings

D. SPELLING

- Continue work with spelling, with special attention to commonly misspelled words, including:

absence	counterfeit	guarantee	permanence
accommodate	courageous	hygiene	physician
analysis	curiosity	independence	prairie
attendance	defendant	laboratory	sergeant
believe	dessert	library	souvenir
bureau	desperate	lightning	straight
capitol	dissatisfied	maintenance	technique
colonel	extraordinary	mileage	temporary
committee	fascinating	necessary	vacuum
correspondence	foreign	occurrence	whether

E. VOCABULARY

Teachers: Students should know the meaning of these Latin and Greek words and be able to give examples of English words that are based on them.

Note: More commonly misspelled words are listed in grades 6 and 7.

Note: More Latin and Greek words and roots are listed in grades 6 and 7. In the listings here, L = Latin, G = Greek. No single form of the Latin or Greek words is consistently used here, but rather the form that is most similar to related English words.

<u>Latin /Greek Word</u>	<u>Meaning</u>	<u>Examples</u>
aequus [L]	equal	equal, equation
ago, acta [L]	do, things done	agent, enact, transact
anthropos [G]	man, human being	anthropology, misanthrope
ars [L]	art	artist, artifact
brevis [L]	short	brevity, abbreviate
canto [L]	sing	chant, cantor
caput [L]	head	captain, decapitate
clino [L]	to lean, bend	incline, decline
cognito [L]	know	cognizant, recognize
copia [L]	plenty	copy, copious
credo [L]	believe	credible, incredulous
culpa [L]	blame	culpable, culprit
dominus [L]	a lord, master	dominate, dominion
duco [L]	lead	abduct, introduce
fido [L]	to trust, believe	confide, infidel
fundo, fustum [L]	pour, thing poured	effusive, transfusion
genus [L]	kind, origin	generic, congenital

holos [G]	whole	holistic, catholic
jungo [L]	join	junction, conjugal
lego, lectum [L]	read, thing read	intellect, legible
locus [L]	a place	local, dislocate
loquor [L]	speak	eloquent, loquacious
medius [L]	middle	mediate, mediocrity
missio [L]	a sending	emissary, mission
morior [L]	die	mortal
nego [L]	deny	negate
nihil [L]	nothing	nihilism, annihilate
occido [L]	kill	homicide, suicide
pathos[G]	suffering, feeling	sympathy, apathy
pendo [L]	weigh, hang	depend, pendant
per [L]	through	perceive, persist, persevere
phobos [G]	fear	phobia, claustrophobia
plenus [L]	full	plenty, plenary
positum [L]	placed	position, opposite
porto [L]	carry	transport, export
possum [L]	be able	possible, potent
pugno [L]	to fight	impugn, pugnacious
punctum [L]	point	punctual, punctuation
rego [L]	to rule	regular, regency
sanguis [L]	blood	sanguine
satis [L]	enough	satisfy
scio [L]	know	science, conscious
solus [L]	alone	solo, desolate
sonus [L]	a sound	unison, consonant
sophos [G]	wise	philosophy, sophomore
spiritus [L]	breath	inspire, spirit
totus [L]	whole	totalitarianism
tractum [L]	drawn, pulled	distract, tractor
usus [L]	use	abuse, utensil
vacuus [L]	empty	evacuate, vacuum
verbum [L]	word	verbal
verto [L]	turn	avert, convert, anniversary
via [L]	way, road	deviate, viaduct

II. Poetry

A. POEMS

Buffalo Bill's (e.e. cummings)

Chicago (Carl Sandburg)

Do Not Go Gentle into That Good Night (Dylan Thomas)

How do I love thee? (Elizabeth Barrett Browning)

How They Brought the Good News From Ghent to Aix (Robert Browning)

I dwell in possibility; Apparently with no surprise (Emily Dickinson)

The Lake Isle of Innisfree (William B. Yeats)

Lucy Gray (or Solitude); My Heart Leaps Up (William Wordsworth)

Mending Wall; The Gift Outright (Robert Frost)

Mr. Flood's Party (Edward Arlington Robinson)

Polonius's speech from *Hamlet*, "Neither a borrower nor a lender be . . ."

(William Shakespeare)

Ozymandias (Percy Bysshe Shelley)

Sonnet 18, "Shall I compare thee. . ." (William Shakespeare)

Spring and Fall (Gerald Manley Hopkins)

Note: The poems listed here constitute a selected core of poetry for this grade. You are encouraged to expose students to more poetry, old and new, and to have students write their own poems. Students should examine some poems in detail, discussing what the poems mean as well as asking questions about the poet's use of language.

A Supermarket in California (Allen Ginsberg)
 Theme for English B (Langston Hughes)
 We Real Cool (Gwendolyn Brooks)

B. ELEMENTS OF POETRY

- Review: meter, iamb, rhyme scheme, free verse, couplet, onomatopoeia, alliteration, assonance
- Review:
 - forms: ballad, sonnet, lyric, narrative, limerick, haiku
 - stanzas and refrains
 - types of rhyme: end, internal, slant, eye
 - metaphor and simile
 - extended and mixed metaphors
 - imagery, symbol, personification
 - allusion

III. Fiction, Nonfiction, and Drama

A. SHORT STORIES

“The Bet” (Anton Chekov)
 “Dr. Heidegger’s Experiment” (Nathaniel Hawthorne)
 “God Sees the Truth But Waits” (Leo Tolstoy)
 “An Honest Thief” (Fyodor Dostoyevsky)
 “The Open Boat” (Stephen Crane)

B. NOVELS

Animal Farm (George Orwell)
The Good Earth (Pearl S. Buck)

C. ELEMENTS OF FICTION

- Review:
 - plot and setting
 - theme
 - point of view in narration: omniscient narrator, unreliable narrator, third person limited, first person
 - conflict: external and internal
 - suspense and climax
- Characterization
 - as delineated through a character’s thoughts, words, and deeds; through the narrator’s description; and through what other characters say
 - flat and round; static and dynamic
 - motivation
 - protagonist and antagonist
- Tone and diction

D. ESSAYS AND SPEECHES

“Ask not what your country can do for you” (John F. Kennedy’s Inaugural Address)
 “I have a dream”; “Letter from Birmingham Jail” (Martin Luther King, Jr.)
 “Death of a Pig” (E. B. White)
 “The Marginal World” (Rachel Carson)

E. AUTOBIOGRAPHY

Selections (such as chapters 2 and 16) from *I Know Why the Caged Bird Sings* (Maya Angelou)

Note: See also History 8: The Kennedy Years, re J. F. Kennedy; The Civil Rights Movement, re M. L. King, Jr.; and, Emergence of Environmentalism, re Rachel Carson.

F. DRAMA

- *Twelfth Night* (William Shakespeare)
- Elements of Drama
 - Review:
 - tragedy and comedy
 - aspects of conflict, suspense, and characterization
 - soliloquies and asides
 - Farce and satire
 - Aspects of performance and staging
 - actors and directors
 - sets, costumes, props, lighting, music
 - presence of an audience

G. LITERARY TERMS

- Irony: verbal, situational, dramatic
- Flashbacks and foreshadowing
- Hyperbole, oxymoron, parody

IV. Foreign Phrases Commonly Used in English

Teachers: Students should learn the meaning of the following French words and phrases that are commonly used in English speech and writing.

- au revoir - goodbye, until we see each other again
- avant-garde - a group developing new or experimental concepts, a vanguard
- bête noire - a person or thing especially dreaded and avoided [literally, “black beast”]
- c’est la vie - that’s life, that’s how things happen
- carte blanche - full discretionary power [literally, “blank page”]
- cause célèbre - a very controversial issue that generates fervent public debate [literally, a “celebrated case”]
- coup de grâce - a decisive finishing blow
- coup d’état - overthrow of a government by a group
- déjà vu - something overly familiar [literally, “already seen”]
- enfant terrible - one whose remarks or actions cause embarrassment, or someone strikingly unconventional [literally, “terrible child”]
- fait accompli - an accomplished fact, presumably irreversible
- faux pas - a social blunder [literally, “false step”]
- Madame, Mademoiselle, Monsieur - Mrs., Miss, Mr.
- merci - thank you
- pièce de résistance - the principal part of the meal, a showpiece item
- raison d’être - reason for being
- savoir-faire - the ability to say or do the right thing in any situation, polished sureness in society [literally, “to know (how) to do”]
- tête-à-tête - private conversation between two people [literally, “head to head”]



Note: You are encouraged to use timelines to help students place these events in chronological context relative to their prior study in grade 7 of World Wars I and II.

History and Geography: Grade 8

Teachers: In grades K–6, the history guidelines in the *Core Knowledge Sequence* were organized into separate strands on World History and American History. Because the World and American History strands merged chronologically in sixth grade, the *Sequence* presents a unified section on History and Geography in grades seven and eight. Central themes of the history guidelines in grades seven and eight are growth and change in American democracy, and interactions with world forces, particularly nationalism and totalitarianism. Fundamental principles and structure of American government are reviewed in a civics unit in this grade.

The study of geography aims at understanding the spatial relationship between nature and human culture and processes that change environments. Following the main outline of the history curriculum, eighth graders study the Middle East, South Asia, China, Canada, Mexico, and post-Cold War changes. Students should learn locations as well as the relationships between physical and human systems.

I. The Decline of European Colonialism

A. BREAKUP OF THE BRITISH EMPIRE

- Creation of British Commonwealth, independence for colonial territories
- Troubled Ireland: Easter Rebellion, Irish Free State
- Indian nationalism and independence
 - Sepoy Rebellion
 - Mahatma Gandhi, Salt March
 - Partition of India into Hindu and Muslim states
- Geography of India and South Asia
 - Overview
 - Legacy of British colonial rule: English language, rail system
 - Himalayas, Mt. Everest, K-2
 - Very high population densities and growth rates, food shortages
 - Monsoons
 - Rivers: Ganges, Indus, Brahmaputra
 - Arabian Sea, Bay of Bengal
 - Pakistan, Karachi
 - Bangladesh
 - Sri Lanka
 - India
 - Second most populous country after China
 - Subsistence agriculture
 - Caste system, “untouchables”
 - Delhi, Bombay, Calcutta, Madras
 - Longstanding tension between Hindus and Moslems

B. CREATION OF PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC OF CHINA

- China under European domination
 - Opium Wars, Boxer Rebellion
 - Sun Yat Sen
- Communists take power
 - Mao Zedong: The Long March
 - Defeat of nationalists led by Chiang Kai-Shek
 - Soviet-Communist Chinese 30-Year Friendship Treaty

- Geography of China
 - Overview
 - One-fifth of world population
 - 4,000-year-old culture
 - Third largest national territory, regional climates
 - Physical features
 - Huang He (Yellow) River, Chang Jiang (Yangtze) River
 - Tibetan Plateau, Gobi Desert
 - Yellow Sea, East China Sea, South China Sea
 - Great Wall, Grand Canal
 - Social and economic characteristics
 - Major cities: Beijing, Shanghai, Guangzhou (formerly Canton), Shenyang
 - World's largest producer of coal and agricultural products, major mineral producer
 - Off-shore oil reserves
 - Multi-dialectal, including Mandarin, Cantonese
 - Hong Kong, special coastal economic zones
 - Taiwan, Taipei

II. The Cold War

A. ORIGINS OF THE COLD WAR

- Post-WWII devastation in Europe, Marshall Plan, Bretton Woods Conference
- Western fear of communist expansion, Soviet fear of capitalist influences
- Truman Doctrine, policy of containment of communism
 - Formation of NATO, Warsaw Pact
 - The “Iron Curtain” (Churchill)
 - Berlin Airlift
 - Eastern European resistance, Hungarian Revolution, Berlin Wall, Prague Spring

B. THE KOREAN WAR

- Inchon, Chinese entry, removal of MacArthur
- Partition of Korea, truce line near the 38th Parallel

C. AMERICA IN THE COLD WAR

- McCarthyism, House Un-American Activities Committee, “witch hunts”
 - Hollywood Blacklist
 - Spy cases: Alger Hiss, Julius and Ethel Rosenberg
- The Eisenhower Years
 - Secret operations, CIA, FBI counterespionage, J. Edgar Hoover, U-2 incident
 - Soviet Sputnik satellite, “Missile Gap”, Yuri Gagarin
 - Eisenhower’s farewell speech, the “military-industrial complex”
- The Kennedy Years, “Ask not what your country can do for you . . .”
 - Attack on organized crime, Robert F. Kennedy
 - Cuban Missile Crisis, Fidel Castro, Bay of Pigs invasion
 - Nuclear deterrence, “mutual assured destruction,” Nuclear Test Ban Treaty
 - Kennedy assassination in 1963, Lee Harvey Oswald, Warren Commission
- Space exploration, U.S. moon landing, Neil Armstrong
- American culture in the '50s and '60s
 - Levittown and the rise of the suburban lifestyle, automobile-centered city planning
 - Influence of television
 - Baby Boom generation, rock and roll, Woodstock festival, 26th Amendment

See also English 8: III.D, JFK’s Inaugural Address.

III. The Civil Rights Movement

- Segregation
 - Plessy v. Ferguson*, doctrine of “separate but equal”
 - “Jim Crow” laws
- Post-war steps toward desegregation
 - Jackie Robinson breaks color barrier in baseball
 - Truman desegregates Armed Forces
 - Adam Clayton Powell, Harlem congressman
 - Integration of public schools: *Brown v. Board of Education* (1954), Thurgood Marshall
- Montgomery Bus Boycott, Rosa Parks
- Southern “massive resistance”
 - Federal troops open schools in Little Rock, Arkansas
 - Murder of Medgar Evers
 - Alabama Governor George Wallace “stands in schoolhouse door”
- Nonviolent challenges to segregation: “We shall overcome”
 - Woolworth lunch counter sit-ins
 - Freedom riders, CORE
 - Black voter registration drives
 - Martin Luther King, Jr.
 - Southern Christian Leadership Conference
 - March on Washington, “I have a dream” speech
 - “Letter from Birmingham Jail”
 - Selma to Montgomery March
- President Johnson and the civil rights movement
 - The Great Society, War on Poverty, Medicare
 - Civil Rights Act of 1964, Voting Rights Act of 1965, affirmative action
- African American militance
 - Malcolm X
 - Black Power, Black Panthers
 - Watts and Newark riots
- Assassinations of Martin Luther King, Jr., and Robert F. Kennedy

See also English 8: III.D, Essays and Speeches, King’s “I have a dream” speech and “Letter from Birmingham Jail.”

IV. The Vietnam War and the Rise of Social Activism

A. THE VIETNAM WAR

- French Indochina War: Dien Bien Phu, Ho Chi Minh, Viet Cong
- Domino Theory
- U.S. takes charge of the war, Special Forces, Tonkin Gulf Resolution
- Tet Offensive, My Lai Massacre
- Antiwar protests, Kent State, The Pentagon Papers, “hawks” and “doves”
- American disengagement, Nixon’s “Vietnamization” policy, Kissinger, War Powers Act
- Watergate scandal, resignation of Nixon
- Vietnam, Hanoi, Ho Chi Minh City (formerly Saigon)

B. SOCIAL AND ENVIRONMENTAL ACTIVISM

- Feminist movement, “women’s liberation”
 - Betty Friedan, National Organization for Women
 - Roe v. Wade*
 - Failure of the Equal Rights Amendment
- Cesar Chavez, United Farm Workers
- American Indian Movement
 - Second Wounded Knee
 - Federal recognition of Indian right to self-determination
- Emergence of environmentalism
 - Rachel Carson, *Silent Spring*
 - Environmental Protection Agency, Endangered Species Act, Clean Air and Water Acts
 - Disasters such as Love Canal, Three Mile Island, Chernobyl, Exxon Valdez

See also Visual Arts 8: 20th Century Sculpture, Vietnam Veterans Memorial.

V. The Middle East and Oil Politics

A. HISTORY

- League of Nations' territorial mandates in Middle East
- Creation of Israel in 1948, David Ben-Gurion
- Suez Crisis, Gamal Abal Nasser
- Palestine Liberation Organization, Yasser Arafat
- Arab-Israeli Wars
 - Six-Day War, Israel occupies West Bank, Gaza Strip, Golan Heights
 - Yom Kippur War, OPEC oil embargo
- Camp David Peace Treaty
- Islamic fundamentalism, Iranian hostage crisis, Iran-Iraq War
- Persian Gulf War
- September 11, 2001 attacks
- Iraq war

B. GEOGRAPHY OF THE MIDDLE EAST

- Overview
 - Heartland of great early civilizations, Nile River, Mesopotamia, "Fertile Crescent"
 - Generally hot, arid conditions with thin, poor soils
 - Generally speak Arabic, except in Turkey (Turkish), Israel (Hebrew), Iran (Persian)
 - Predominant religion is Islam
 - Sunni and Shiite sects
 - Principal holy places: Makkah (also spelled Mecca) and Medina in Saudi Arabia
- Oil: world's most valuable commodity
 - Greatest known oil reserves concentrated around the Persian Gulf
 - Strait of Hormuz, shipping routes and national imports
 - Extraction of Arab oil required Western technology, which introduced competing cultural influences to Islam
- Egypt
 - Most populous Arab country
 - Nile River and delta, surrounded by inhospitable deserts
 - Aswan Dam, Lake Nasser
 - Cairo (largest city in Africa), Alexandria
 - Suez Canal, Sinai Peninsula, Red Sea
- Israel
 - Formed by the United Nations in 1948 as homeland for Jewish people
 - Jerusalem: Holy city for Judaism (Wailing Wall, Temple Mount), Christianity (Church of the Holy Sepulcher), and Islam (Dome of the Rock)
 - Tel Aviv, West Bank, Gaza Strip, Golan Heights
 - Jordan River, Sea of Galilee, Dead Sea (lowest point on earth), Gulf of Aqaba
- Middle East states and cities
 - Lebanon: Beirut
 - Jordan: Amman
 - Syria: Damascus
 - Iraq: Baghdad
 - Kurdish minority population (also in Turkey and Iran)
 - Iran: Tehran
 - Kuwait
 - Saudi Arabia: Riyadh, Makkah
- Turkey
 - Istanbul (formerly Constantinople)
 - Bosphorus, Dardanelles
 - Ataturk Dam controls upper Euphrates River

Note: Review from grade 4, World History III.A, Islam.

Note: It is recommended that you examine with students a map of the world's oil reserves.

VI. The End of the Cold War: The Expansion of Democracy and Continuing Challenges

A. THE AMERICAN POLICY OF DÉTENTE

- Diplomatic opening to China
- Strategic Arms Limitation Talks
- Jimmy Carter's human rights basis for diplomacy

B. BREAKUP OF THE USSR

- History
 - Arms race exhausts USSR economy, Afghanistan War
 - Helsinki Accord on human rights, Andrei Sakharov
 - Mikhail Gorbachev
 - Solidarity labor movement, Lech Walesa
 - Reunification of Germany, demolition of the Berlin Wall
- Geography
 - Consequences of the breakup of the Soviet Union
 - New European states from former Soviet Union:
 - Belarus, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Ukraine
 - Newly independent Muslim states in Asia (with ethnic Russian minorities):
 - Kazakstan, Kyrgyzstan, Turkmenistan, Uzbekistan
 - Caucasus, mountainous region where Western and Islamic cultures meet:
 - Armenia, Azerbaijan, Georgia
- Legacies of Soviet policies
 - Numerous internal republics, many language distinctions
 - Forced relocation of large numbers of ethnic minorities
 - Environmental poisoning from industrial and farm practices

C. CHINA UNDER COMMUNISM

- The Cultural Revolution
- Tiananmen Square

D. CONTEMPORARY EUROPE

- Toward European unity
 - European Economic Community, "Common Market"
 - European Parliament, Brussels, Maastricht Treaty on European Union
 - France linked to Britain by the Channel Tunnel ("Chunnel")
 - European Union; the Euro
- Conflict and change in Central Europe
 - Geography of the Balkan region
 - Ethnically fragmented, mixture of languages and religions
 - Mountainous region, Danube River
 - Seas: Adriatic, Ionian, Black, Aegean, Mediterranean
 - Romania, Bulgaria, Greece, Albania
 - Countries that emerged from the breakup of Yugoslavia: Slovenia, Croatia, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Macedonia
 - Bosnian conflict
 - "Balkanization"

E. THE END OF APARTHEID IN SOUTH AFRICA

- Background
 - British and Dutch colonialism in South Africa, Cecil Rhodes, Afrikaners
 - African resistance, Zulu wars, Shaka
 - Boer Wars
 - Union of South Africa, majority nonwhite population but white minority rule
 - Apartheid laws
- African National Congress
 - Nelson Mandela

- Internal unrest and external pressures (such as economic sanctions) force South Africa to end apartheid, Mandela released

VII. Civics: The Constitution—Principles and Structure of American Democracy

- Overview of the U.S. Constitution
 - James Madison
 - Founders' view of human nature
 - Concept of popular sovereignty, the Preamble
 - Rule of law
 - Separation of powers
 - Checks and balances
 - Enumeration of powers
 - Separation of church and state
 - Civilian control of the military
- Bill of Rights
 - Amendments protecting individual rights from infringement (1-3)
 - Amendments protecting those accused of crimes (5-8), Miranda ruling
 - Amendments reserving powers to the people and states (9 and 10)
 - Amendment process
 - Amendments 13 and 19
- Legislative branch: role and powers of Congress
 - Legislative and representative duties
 - Structure of the Congress, committee system, how a bill is passed
 - Budget authority, “power of the purse”
 - Power to impeach the president or federal judge
- Executive branch: role and powers of the presidency
 - Chief executive, cabinet departments, executive orders
 - Chief diplomat, commander-in-chief of the armed forces
 - Chief legislator, sign laws into effect, recommend laws, veto power
 - Appointment power, cabinet officers, federal judges
- Judiciary: Supreme Court as Constitutional interpreter
 - Loose construction (interpretation) vs. strict construction of U.S. Constitution
 - Concepts of due process of law, equal protection
 - Marbury v. Madison*, principle of judicial review of federal law, Chief Justice John Marshall

VIII. Geography of Canada and Mexico

- Canada
 - The ten provinces and two territories, Nunavut (self-governing American Indian homeland), Ottawa
 - St. Lawrence River, Gulf of St. Lawrence, Grand Banks, Hudson Bay, McKenzie River, Mt. Logan
 - Two official languages: English and French, separatist movement in Quebec
 - Montreal, Toronto, Vancouver, most Canadians live within 100 miles of U.S.
 - Rich mineral deposits in Canadian Shield, grain exporter
 - U.S. and Canada share longest open international boundary, affinities between neighboring U.S. and Canadian regions
 - North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA)
- Mexico
 - Mexico City: home of nearly one-quarter of population, vulnerable to earthquakes
 - Guadalajara, Monterrey
 - Sierra Madre mountains, Gulf of California, Yucatan Peninsula
 - Oil and gas fields
 - Rapid population growth rate
 - North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA), Maquiladoras

Visual Arts: Grade 8

SEE INTRODUCTION, "The Arts in the Curriculum."

Teachers: In schools, lessons on the visual arts should illustrate important elements of making and appreciating art, and emphasize important artists, works of art, and artistic concepts. When appropriate, topics in the visual arts may be linked to topics in other disciplines. While the following guidelines specify a variety of artworks in different media and from various cultures, they are not intended to be comprehensive. Teachers are encouraged to build upon the core content and expose children to a wide range of art and artists.

In studying the works of art specified below, and in creating their own art, students should review, develop, and apply concepts introduced in previous grades, such as line, shape, form, space, texture, color, light, design, and symmetry.

I. Art History: Periods and Schools

Teachers: The guidelines here continue the organizational scheme established in sixth and seventh grades, which combined art history with analysis of specific illustrative works. Timelines may help students situate the artists, periods, and schools. Note that the periods and characteristics are not absolute distinctions but generally helpful categories (to which there are always exceptions) often used in discussions of art.

A. PAINTING SINCE WORLD WAR II

- Examine representative artists and works, including
 - Jackson Pollock and Abstract Expressionism: *Painting, 1948*
 - Willem de Kooning, *Woman and Bicycle*
 - Mark Rothko, *Orange and Yellow*
 - Helen Frankenthaler, *Wales*
 - Andy Warhol and Pop Art: *Campbell's Soup Can, Marilyn*
 - Roy Lichtenstein, *Whaam*
 - Romare Bearden, *She-Ba*
 - Jacob Lawrence, a work from his *Builder* series or *Migration of Negroes* series

B. PHOTOGRAPHY

- Examine representative artists and works, including
 - Edward Steichen, *Rodin with His Sculptures "Victor Hugo" and "The Thinker"*
 - Alfred Steiglitz, *The Steerage*
 - Dorothea Lange, *Migrant Mother, California*
 - Margaret Bourke-White, *Fort Peck Dam*
 - Ansel Adams, *Moonrise, Hernandez, New Mexico*
 - Henri Cartier-Bresson, *The Berlin Wall*

C. 20TH-CENTURY SCULPTURE

- Examine representative artists and works, including
 - Auguste Rodin: *The Thinker, Monument to Balzac*
 - Constantin Brancusi, *Bird in Space*
 - Pablo Picasso, *Bull's Head*
 - Henry Moore, *Two Forms*
 - Alexander Calder, *Lobster Trap and Fish Tail*
 - Louise Nevelson, *Black Wall*
 - Claes Oldenburg, *Clothespin*
 - Maya Lin, *Vietnam Veterans Memorial*









II. Architecture Since the Industrial Revolution

- Demonstrations of metal structure: Crystal Palace, Eiffel Tower
- First skyscrapers: “Form follows function”
 - Louis Sullivan: Wainwright Building
 - Famous skyscrapers: Chrysler Building, Empire State Building
- Frank Lloyd Wright: Fallingwater, Guggenheim Museum
- The International Style
 - Walter Gropius, Bauhaus Shop Block
 - Le Corbusier: Villa Savoye, Unite d’Habitation, Notre Dame du Haut
 - Ludwig Mies van der Rohe and Philip Johnson: Seagram Building

SEE INTRODUCTION, "The Arts in the Curriculum."

I. Elements of Music

Teachers: The Music guidelines for grades 6–8 share a basic vocabulary of the elements of music that can inform the discussion, appreciation, and study of selected musical works. Following these guidelines are recommendations in each grade for a core of musical content, broadly organized as a history of music from early to modern times, with attention to specific periods, composers, and genres. While these guidelines focus on musical vocabulary, appreciation, and history, musical performance should be encouraged and emphasized as local resources allow.

- Review as necessary from earlier grades:
 - The orchestra and families of instruments (strings, wind, brass, percussion); keyboard instruments
 - Vocal ranges: soprano, mezzo-soprano, alto; tenor, baritone, bass
- Recognize frequently used Italian terms:
 - grave* (very very slow)
 - largo* (very slow)
 - adagio* (slow)
 - andante* (moderate; "walking")
 - moderato* (medium)
 - allegro* (fast)
 - presto* (very fast)
 - prestissimo* (as fast as you can go)
 - ritardando* and *accelerando* (gradually slowing down and getting faster)
 - crescendo* and *decrescendo* (gradually increasing and decreasing volume)
 - legato* (smoothly flowing progression of notes), *staccato* (crisp, distinct notes)
- Recognize introduction, interlude, and coda in musical selections.
- Recognize theme and variations.
- Identify chords [such as I (tonic), IV (subdominant), V (dominant); V7]; major and minor chords; chord changes; intervals (third, fourth, fifth).
- Understand what an octave is.
- Understand the following notation and terms:
 - names of lines and spaces in the treble clef; middle C
 -  treble clef  bass clef  staff, bar line, double bar line, measure, repeat signs
 -  whole note  half note  quarter note  eighth note
 - whole rest, half rest, quarter rest, eighth rest
 -  grouped sixteenth notes
 - tied notes and dotted notes
 - # sharps ♭ flats ♮ naturals
 - Da capo* [*D.C.*] *al fine*
 - meter signature: $\frac{4}{4}$ or common time $\frac{2}{4}$ $\frac{3}{4}$ $\frac{6}{8}$
 - soft *pp* *p* *mp* loud *mf* *f* *ff*

II. Non-Western Music

- Become familiar with scales, instruments, and works from various lands, for example: 12-tone scale, sitar from India, Caribbean steel drums, Japanese koto.

III. Classical Music: Nationalists and Moderns

Teachers: While these guidelines focus on musical vocabulary, appreciation, and history, musical performance should be encouraged and emphasized as resources allow. The focus here combines music history with appreciation of illustrative works, and continues from grades 6 and 7 the idea of classifying Western music by periods, with examples of specific composers and works, as well as some associated musical terms. Timelines may help students situate the periods. The periods and their characteristics are not absolute distinctions but generally helpful categories often used in discussions of music.

Note: In seventh grade, students were introduced to works by Dvořák, Grieg, and Tchaikovsky.

A. MUSIC AND NATIONAL IDENTITY

- Composers and works:
Jean Sibelius, *Finlandia*
Bela Bartók, folk-influenced piano music such as *Allegro barbaro*, selections from *Mikrokosmos* or *For Children*
Joaquin Rodrigo, *Concierto de Aranjuez*
Aaron Copland, *Appalachian Spring (Suite)*

B. MODERN MUSIC

- Composers and works:
Claude Debussy, *La Mer*, first movement, “De l’aube à midi sur la mer”
Igor Stravinsky, *The Rite of Spring*, first performed in Paris, 1913

IV. Vocal Music

A. OPERA

- Terms: overture, solo, duet, trio, quartet, chorus, aria, recitative
- Composers and works:
Gioacchino Rossini, from *The Barber of Seville*: Overture and “Largo al factotum”
Giuseppe Verdi, from *Rigoletto*: aria, “Questa o quella”; duet, “Figlia! . . . Mio padre!”; aria, “La donna è mobile”; quartet, “Bella figlia dell’amore”

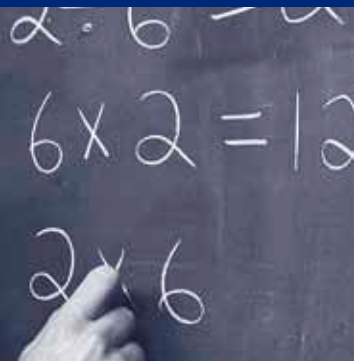
B. AMERICAN MUSICAL THEATER

- Composers and popular songs:
Irving Berlin, “There’s No Business Like Show Business,” “Blue Skies”
George M. Cohan, “Give My Regards to Broadway,” “Yankee Doodle Dandy”
Cole Porter, “Don’t Fence Me In,” “You’re the Top”
- Broadway musicals: selections including
Jerome Kern, *Showboat*: “Ole Man River”
Rodgers and Hammerstein, *Oklahoma!*: “Oh What a Beautiful Mornin’,” “Oklahoma”
Leonard Bernstein and Stephen Sondheim, *West Side Story*: “Maria,” “I Feel Pretty”

Teachers: These guidelines are representative of the mathematics typically learned at this grade level in countries that have strong math traditions and whose students score well in international comparisons. Concepts that were in the Grade 7 specifications are generally not repeated here but they are assumed.

In learning the new concepts and procedures, students should use previously acquired mathematics to ensure that the procedures become automatic and habitual. Students should continue to master the use of measuring and drawing instruments, develop their mental arithmetic and their approximating abilities, become more familiar with deductive reasoning, and use calculators and computers in a thoughtful way. The work in eighth grade requires some minimal use of a scientific calculator.

Appropriate preparation for algebra is critical for success in that subject and some students, particularly students who have not been in a Core Knowledge school, may simply not be ready for the content described herein. Most schools will need to spend a limited time reviewing prerequisite concepts, but those students for whom that is insufficient may well require a year in a program that is closer to the Grade 7 specifications.



I. Algebra

A. PROPERTIES OF THE REAL NUMBERS

- Be able to raise a positive number to a fractional power and simplify appropriately, including rationalizing the denominator of a simple radical expression.
- Know and use of the rules of exponents extended to fractional exponents.
- Use the definition of absolute value to solve equations such as $|2x - 3| + 3x = 4x - 2$ and understand why “extraneous solutions” are not solutions at all.

B. RELATIONS, FUNCTIONS, AND GRAPHS (TWO VARIABLES)

- Be able to plot a set of ordered pairs and surmise a reasonable graph of which the points are a part.
- Be able to make a reasonable table of ordered pairs from a given function rule, plot the points, and surmise its graph.
- Know that the points of intersections of two graphs are simultaneous solutions of the relations that define them and indicate approximate numerical solutions.

C. LINEAR EQUATIONS AND FUNCTIONS (TWO VARIABLES)

- Graph linear equations by finding the x- and y-intercepts; for example, know that $2x + 3y = 4$ is linear and graph it using its intercepts.
- Be able to convert between slope-intercept form ($y = mx + b$) and standard form ($ax + by = c$).
- Write an equation for a line given two points or one point and its slope.
- Know lines are parallel or perpendicular from their slopes.
- Find the equation of a line perpendicular to a given line that passes through a given point.
- Understand and be able to graph the solution set of a linear inequality.
- Solve a system of two linear equations in two variables algebraically and interpret the answer graphically.
- Solve a system of two linear inequalities in two variables and sketch the solution set.
- Solve word problems (including mixture, digit, and age problems) that involve linear equations.

D. ARITHMETIC OF RATIONAL EXPRESSION

- Factor second- and higher-degree polynomials when standard techniques apply, such as factoring the GCF out of all terms of a polynomial, the difference of two squares, and perfect squares trinomials.
- Add, subtract, multiply, and divide rational expressions and express in simplest form.

E. QUADRATIC EQUATIONS AND FUNCTIONS

- Solve quadratic equations in one variable by factoring or by completing the square.
- Complete the square to write a quadratic expression as the difference of two squares.
- Graph quadratic functions by completing the square to find the vertex and know that their zeros (roots) are the x-intercepts.
- Know the quadratic formula and be familiar with its proof by completing the square.
- Know how to clear fractions to solve equations that lead to linear or quadratic equations.
- Know how to use squaring to solve problems that lead to linear or quadratic equations.
- Solve word problems, including physical problems such as the motion of an object under the force of gravity, and combined rate (work) problems.

II. Geometry**A. ANALYTIC GEOMETRY**

- Reinforce the knowledge of algebra with geometry and vice versa.
- Know that the midpoint of a line segment of any slope, projected perpendicularly onto the horizontal x-axis or vertical y-axis, will be the midpoint of its projection.
- Know the similar triangles connection (AA Similarity) with slope and that this is the tangent of the angle the line makes with the x-axis.

B. INTRODUCTION TO TRIGONOMETRY

- Know that in a right triangle the cosine of an angle is the ratio of the adjacent side to the hypotenuse and the sine is the ratio of the opposite side to the hypotenuse.
- Know the values of the sine, cosine, and tangent of 0, 30, 45, 60, and 90 degrees and use a scientific calculator to determine the approximate value of any acute angle.
- Use a scientific calculator to determine the approximate value of an acute angle of a given sine, cosine, or tangent.

C. TRIANGLES AND PROOFS

- Prove that the bisector of an angle is the set of all points equidistant from both sides.
- Prove that any triangle inscribed in a circle with one side as the diameter is a right triangle.
- Prove the Pythagorean Theorem.
- Know that a line tangent to a circle is perpendicular to the radius at the point of tangency.
- Taking geometry as a model, understand the concept of a mathematical proof, as distinct from an opinion, an approximation, or a conjecture based on specific cases.
- In geometry and elsewhere, understand that a single-counter example suffices to disprove a general assertion.

Teachers: Effective instruction in science requires not only direct experience and observation but also book learning, which helps bring coherence and order to a student's scientific knowledge. Only when topics are presented systematically and clearly can students make steady and secure progress in their scientific learning. The Science sequence for the middle school grades aims for more intensive and selective study of topics, a number of which were introduced in earlier grades. The *Sequence* continues the practice of studying topics from each of the major realms of science (physical, life, and earth science). Students are expected to do experiments and write reports on their findings.



I. Physics

A. MOTION

- Velocity and speed

The velocity of an object is the rate of change of its position in a particular direction.

Speed is the magnitude of velocity expressed in distance covered per unit of time.

Changes in velocity can involve changes in speed or direction or both.

- Average speed = total distance traveled divided by the total time elapsed

Formula: Speed = Distance/Time ($S = D/T$)

Familiar units for measuring speed: miles or kilometers per hour

B. FORCES

- The concept of force: force as a push or pull on an object

Examples of familiar forces (such as gravity, magnetic force)

A force has both direction and magnitude.

Measuring force: expressed in units of mass, pounds in English system, newtons in metric system

- Unbalanced forces cause changes in velocity.

If an object is subject to two or more forces at once, the effect is the net effect of all forces.

The motion of an object does not change if all the forces on it are in balance, having net effect of zero.

The motion of an object changes in speed or direction if the forces on it are unbalanced, having net effect other than zero.

To achieve a given change in the motion of an object, the greater the mass of the object, the greater the force required.

C. DENSITY AND BUOYANCY

- When immersed in a fluid (i.e. liquid or gas), all objects experience a buoyant force.

The buoyant force on an object is an upward (counter-gravity) force equal to the weight of the fluid displaced by the object.

Density = mass per unit volume

Relation between mass and weight (equal masses at same location have equal weights)

- How to calculate density of regular and irregular solids from measurements of mass and volume

The experiment of Archimedes

- How to predict whether an object will float or sink

D. WORK

- In physics, work is a relation between force and distance: work is done when force is exerted over a distance.

Equation: Work equals Force x Distance ($W = F \times D$)

Common units for measuring work: foot-pounds (in English system), joules (in metric system; 1 joule = 1 newton of force x 1 meter of distance)

E. ENERGY

- In physics, energy is defined as the ability to do work.
- Energy as distinguished from work
To have energy, a thing does not have to move.
Work is the transfer of energy.
- Two main types of energy: kinetic and potential
Some types of potential energy: gravitational, chemical, elastic, electromagnetic
Some types of kinetic energy: moving objects, heat, sound and other waves
- Energy is conserved in a system.

F. POWER

- In physics, power is a relation between work and time: a measure of work done (or energy expended) and the time it takes to do it.

Equation: Power equals Work divided by Time ($P = W/T$), or Power = Energy/Time

Common units of measuring power: foot-pounds per second, horsepower (in English system); watts, kilowatts (in metric system)

II. Electricity and Magnetism**A. ELECTRICITY**

- Basic terms and concepts (review from grade 4):
Electricity is the charge of electrons in a conductor.
Opposite charges attract, like charges repel.
Conductors and insulators
Open and closed circuits
Short circuit: sudden surge of amperage due to the reduction of resistance in a circuit;
protection from short circuits is achieved by fuses and circuit breakers
Electrical safety
- Electricity as the charge of electrons
Electrons carry negative charge; protons carry positive charge
Conductors: materials like metals that easily give up electrons
Insulators: materials like glass that do not easily give up electrons
- Static electricity
A static charge (excess or deficiency) creates an electric field.
Electric energy can be stored in capacitors (typically two metal plates, one charged positive and one charged negative, separated by an insulating barrier). Capacitor discharges can release fatal levels of energy.
Grounding drains an excess or makes up a deficiency of electrons, because the earth is a huge reservoir of electrons. Your body is a ground when you get a shock of static electricity.
Lightning is a grounding of static electricity from clouds.
- Flowing electricity
Electric potential is measured in volts.
Electric flow or current is measured in amperes: 1 ampere = flow of 1 coulomb of charge per second (1 coulomb = the charge of 6.25 billion billion electrons).
The total power of an electric flow over time is measured in watts. Watts = amps x volts;
amps = watts/volts; volts = watts/amps.
The unit of electrical resistance is the ohm.



B. MAGNETISM AND ELECTRICITY

- Earth's magnetism
 - Earth's magnetism is believed to be caused by movements of charged atoms in the molten interior of the planet.
 - Navigation by magnetic compass is made possible because the earth is a magnet with north and south magnetic poles.
- Connection between electricity and magnetism
 - Example: move a magnet back and forth in front of wire connected to a meter, and electricity flows in the wire. The reverse: electric current flowing through a wire exerts magnetic attraction.
 - Spinning electrons in an atom create a magnetic field around the atom.
 - Unlike magnetic poles attract, like magnetic poles repel.
 - Practical applications of the connection between electricity and magnetism, for example:
 - An electric generator creates alternating current by turning a magnet and a coil of wire in relation to each other; an electric motor works on the reverse principle.
 - A step-up transformer sends alternating current through a smaller coil of wire with just a few turns next to a larger coil with many turns. This induces a higher voltage in the larger coil. A step-down transformer does the reverse, sending current through the larger coil and creating a lower voltage in the smaller one.

III. Electromagnetic Radiation and Light

- Waves and electromagnetic radiation
 - Most waves, such as sound and water waves, transfer energy through matter, but light belongs to a special kind of radiation that can transfer energy through empty space.
- The electromagnetic spectrum
 - From long waves, to radio waves, to light waves, to x-rays, to gamma rays
 - Called "electromagnetic" because the radiation is created by an oscillating electric field which creates an oscillating magnetic field at right angles to it, which in turn creates an oscillating electric field at right angles, and so on, with both fields perpendicular to each other and the direction the wave is moving.
 - The light spectrum: from infrared (longest) to red, orange, yellow, green, blue, violet (shortest)
 - Speed in a vacuum of all electromagnetic waves including light: 300,000 km per second, or 186,000 miles per second; a universal constant, called c
- Refraction and reflection
 - Refraction: the slowing down of light in glass causes it to bend, which enables lenses to work for television, photography, and astronomy
 - How Isaac Newton used the refraction of a prism to discover that white light was made up of rays of different energies (or colors)
 - Reflection: concave and convex reflectors; focal point

IV. Sound Waves

- General properties of waves
 - Waves transfer energy by oscillation without transferring matter; matter disturbed by a wave returns to its original place.
 - Wave properties: wavelength, frequency, speed, crest, trough, amplitude
 - Two kinds of waves: transverse (for example, light) and longitudinal (for example, sound)
 - Common features of both kinds of waves:
 - Speed and frequency of wave determine wavelength.
 - Wave interference occurs in both light and sound.
 - Doppler effect occurs in both light and sound.

- Sound waves: longitudinal, compression waves, made by vibrating matter, for example, strings, wood, air
While light and radio waves can travel through a vacuum, sound waves cannot. Sound waves need a medium through which to travel.
- Speed
Sound goes faster through denser mediums, that is, faster through solids and liquids than through air (gases).
At room temperature, sound travels through air at about 340 meters per second (1,130 feet per second).
Speed of sound = Mach number
Supersonic booms; breaking the sound barrier
- Frequency
Frequency of sound waves measured in “cycles per second” or Hertz (Hz)
Audible frequencies roughly between 20 and 20,000 Hz
The higher the frequency, the higher the subjective “pitch”
- Amplitude
Amplitude or loudness is measured in decibels (dB).
Very loud sounds can impair hearing or cause deafness.
Resonance, for example, the sound board of a piano, or plates of a violin

V. Chemistry of Food and Respiration

- Energy for most life on earth comes from the sun, typically from sun, to plants, to animals, back to plants.
- Living cells get most of their energy through chemical reactions.
All living cells make and use carbohydrates (carbon and water), the simplest of these being sugars.
All living cells make and use proteins, often very complex compounds containing carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, and many other elements.
Making these compounds involves chemical reactions which need water, and take place in and between cells, across cell walls. The reactions also need catalysts called “enzymes.”
Many cells also make fats, which store energy and food.
- Energy in plants: photosynthesis
Plants do not need to eat other living things for energy.
Main nutrients of plants: the chemical elements nitrogen, phosphorus, potassium, calcium, carbon, oxygen, hydrogen (some from soil or the sea, others from the air)
Photosynthesis, using chlorophyll, converts these elements into more plant cells and stored food using energy from sunlight.
Leafy plants mainly get their oxygen dissolved in water from their roots, and their carbon mainly from the gas CO_2 .
Plant photosynthesis uses up CO_2 and releases oxygen.
- Energy in animals: respiration
Animal chemical reactions do the opposite of plants—they use up oxygen and release CO_2 .
In animals the chief process is not photosynthesis but respiration, that is, the creation of new compounds through oxidation.
Animals cannot make carbohydrates, proteins, and fats from elements. They must eat these organic compounds from plants or other animals, and create them through respiration.
Respiration uses oxygen and releases CO_2 , creating an interdependence and balance between plant and animal life.



- Human nutrition and respiration
 - Humans are omnivores and can eat both plant and animal food.
 - Human respiration, through breathing, gets oxygen to the cells through the lungs and the blood.
 - The importance of hemoglobin in the blood
- Human health
 - While many other animals can make their own vitamins, humans must get them from outside.
 - A balanced diet: the food pyramid or “MyPlate” for humans (review); identification of the food groups in terms of fats, carbohydrates, proteins, vitamins, and trace elements

VI. Science Biographies

Albert Einstein (physicist whose theories of relativity allowed great advancements in the study of space, matter, energy, time, and gravity)

Dorothy Hodgkin (chemist who determined the structure of vitamin B12)

James Maxwell (scientist who created mathematical equations that expressed the basic laws of light, electricity, and magnetism)

Charles Steinmetz (scientist who made key advances in electric power)

appendices

Overview of Topics

Appendices

Appendix A

Why Listening and Learning are Critical
to Reading Comprehension

Appendix B

Using Trade Books to Achieve College and Career
Readiness: The Principles of Democracy

Appendix C

Domains and Core Content Objectives for the
Core Knowledge Language Arts Program, K–2

Appendix D

Core Knowledge Grade-by-Grade Resource
Recommendations

Appendix A: Why Listening and Learning are Critical to Reading Comprehension

Those who follow education know all too well that concern about poor student achievement in literacy has reached levels that border on desperation. By every standard measure, it is clear that large numbers of students are leaving American schools ill-prepared to pursue higher education or careers due to poor literacy skills. On international comparisons of reading achievement, the United States ranks below nearly all other countries, surpassed by the likes of Finland, Korea, Japan, and even Hungary and Poland. Longitudinal test results from the National Assessment of Education Progress (NAEP) show little or no growth over a period of decades.

Some progress has been made in recent years in the early elementary grades, thanks to both the Reading First initiative and the No Child Left Behind (NCLB) legislation which have underscored the importance of explicitly and systematically teaching decoding skills. Since the inception of these programs, test scores in the very early grades (K–2) have risen. This improvement reflects the benefits of explicit instruction in phonemic awareness, systematic phonics, and the development of fluency.

Unfortunately, however, these initial improvements have proven unsustainable. As these very same students moved into the upper elementary grades, their test scores have dropped or flatlined. The conclusion is inescapable: the explicit teaching of decoding skills is necessary, but not sufficient to achieve the goal of full literacy. While systematically teaching decoding leads to improved performance on early reading evaluations, which focus on decoding skills, American educators have yet to find an analogous remedy that leads to improved test scores in the latter grades, when the focus shifts to assessing whether students understand what they read. The approach currently favored by most language arts programs, hours of instructional time to teaching and practicing an ever expanding collection of reading comprehension strategies, has proven ineffective. Current research suggests that teaching reading strategies has value in helping students recognize the purpose for reading and may lead to a slight boost in reading comprehension scores, but not the sustained improvement that would be indicative of true literacy. Something is still missing.

What’s missing is background knowledge. “Most of us think about reading in a way that is fundamentally incorrect,” observes University of Virginia cognitive scientist Daniel T. Willingham. “We think of it as transferable, meaning that once you acquire the ability to read, you can read anything. But being able to decode letter strings fluently is only half of reading. In order to understand what you’re reading, you need to know something about the subject matter. And that doesn’t just mean that you need to know the vocabulary—you need to have the right knowledge of the world,” he says.

The successful experience of schools using Core Knowledge during the past 20 years demonstrates the importance of background knowledge to reading comprehension. Time and again, schools implementing the content-specific Core Knowledge curriculum have noted that even though state and standardized tests are not tied to the *Core Knowledge Sequence*, student performance on such tests improves at statistically significant levels when students are exposed to Core Knowledge over several years. Instead of scores dropping or flatlining at the upper grade levels, Core Knowledge students’ test scores actually rise! “General reading comprehension ability is much more than comprehension strategies,” wrote Core Knowledge founder E.D. Hirsch, Jr. in his 2006 book *The Knowledge Deficit*; “it requires a definite range of general knowledge.”

In order to understand what is read, it is absolutely necessary to have knowledge of relevant things that are not explicitly stated. Reading is a two-lock box, and opening that box requires not only adequate decoding skills but also language, vocabulary and background knowledge that provide a foundation and underlying context for students to understand what they are reading.

There is “truly a mountain of data that students must have content knowledge to read effectively,” says Willingham. Unfortunately, existing language arts programs have not been designed to build this foundation of language, vocabulary and background knowledge. This is why the Core Knowledge Foundation is creating the *Core Knowledge Language Arts* program.

LANGUAGE—LISTENING, SPEAKING, READING, AND WRITING

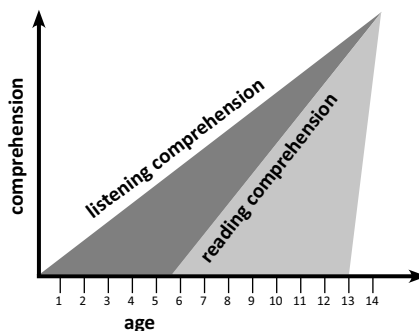
Traditional language arts instruction has typically paid little attention to listening and speaking. This failure to focus on the development of oral language in language arts instruction is a serious oversight. The ability to read and write written language, is highly correlated with students’ oral language proficiency, and the ability to understand a text read aloud is a prerequisite for making sense of the same text in printed form. It is essential that children build listening and speaking competency while also developing reading and writing skills.

Linguists distinguish between receptive and expressive language. Receptive language is language that we take in, process and understand. Expressive language is language we generate and produce. Oral language is spoken language or speech. Written language is print. Oral language is primary. Written language builds upon it.

	Receptive Language	Expressive Language
Oral Language	Listening	Speaking
Written Language	Reading (<i>two keys: decoding + comprehension</i>)	Writing (<i>handwriting, spelling, written composition</i>)

Researchers who study the development of language in young children point out that oral language development precedes and is the foundation for written language development. Children’s oral language competence is strongly predictive of their facility in learning to read and write. A child’s listening and speaking vocabulary, and even mastery of syntax, set boundaries as to what they can read and understand no matter how well they can decode.

It is important to note that for young children in preschool and the early grades, *receptive and expressive abilities do not develop simultaneously or at the same pace; receptive language generally precedes expressive language*. Science confirms what common sense suggests: children need to be able to understand words before they can produce and use them. The groundbreaking work of Hart and Risley (1995), who studied young children in the context of their early family life, found the number of words they heard before they arrived in kindergarten predicted how many words they understood and how fast they could learn new words in kindergarten. Even more significantly, five years later, in third grade, early language competence still predicted language and reading comprehension. The preschoolers who had heard more words, and subsequently learned more words orally, became better readers.



Source: T. G. Sticht and J. James, “Listening and reading,” in P. Pearson, ed., *Handbook of Research on Reading*. New York: Longmans, 1984. (1984)

This finding offers a profoundly important lesson for educators. *Early language disadvantage persists and manifests itself as illiteracy when educational practices fail to recognize the importance of oral language.* A meta-analysis of research by Thomas Sticht (1984) reinforces the importance and primacy of oral language, suggesting that it endures well past the time during which most children have started reading independently. Sticht's analysis strongly suggests that children's listening comprehension outpaces reading comprehension until the middle school years (grades 6–8).

The takeaway message is clear and obvious: we must devote at least as much time during the language arts block to reading *aloud* to young children as we currently devote to providing children with the skills they will need to decode and encode language. This is one of the fundamental premises of the Listening and Learning Strand of the *Core Knowledge Language Arts* program.

BUILDING LISTENING COMPREHENSION AND CONTENT KNOWLEDGE BY READING ALOUD

Written text makes use of richer vocabulary and more complex syntax than conversational language. It is important that young children be exposed not only to the language of everyday conversation but also to the richer and more formal language of books. This is best done through frequent reading aloud. Children's ability to understand what they hear far outpaces their ability to independently read and understand written text. By listening to stories or nonfiction selections read aloud, children can experience the complexities of written language without expending cognitive energy on decoding. Helping young children develop the ability to listen to and understand written texts read aloud must be an integral part of any initiative designed to build literacy.

CHOOSING READ-ALOUDS

Not just any read-aloud(s), however, will do. First, careful consideration should be given to the selection of text read aloud to ensure that the vocabulary and syntax presented is rich and complex.

Furthermore, to make efficient use of instructional time, read-alouds must also be selected that build a broad knowledge base, while simultaneously building listening comprehension and language skills. To do this, the selection of *read-alouds within a given grade level and across grade levels must be guided by a coherent, sequenced approach to building knowledge.* This can be achieved by selecting fiction and nonfiction read-alouds from grade level topics identified in the *Core Knowledge Sequence*. The topics for read-alouds in the Listening and Learning Strand of the *Core Knowledge Language Arts* program have been chosen on this basis.

By reading a story or nonfiction selection aloud, we allow children to experience written language without the burden of decoding, granting them access to content they may not be able to read and understand by themselves. They are then free to focus their mental energy on the words and ideas presented in the text, gaining the language and background knowledge that will be needed to tackle rich, written content on their own.

DOMAINS AND STAYING ON A TOPIC

Building knowledge systematically in language arts is like giving children various pieces of a puzzle in each grade that, over time, will form the big picture. As noted above, read-alouds—within and across grade levels—need to be selected around topics or domains that systematically build knowledge. A domain is an area of knowledge, such as the human body, plants, astronomy, Native Americans, civil rights, and so on. It is strongly recommended that daily read-alouds focus on a single domain over a sustained period of time—about two weeks—rather than intermingling randomly selected read-alouds on a variety of topics. The *Tell It Again! Read-Aloud Anthologies* for the Listening and Learning Strand are organized by domain.

Staying on a topic or domain increases the chances that students will receive multiple exposures to key vocabulary words. For example, in the kindergarten Plants domain, students get multiple

exposures to key words from this domain, such as *nutrients*, *photosynthesis*, *crop*, and *harvest*. Hearing these kinds of words used in meaningful contexts over the course of a domain efficiently and exponentially increases the rate at which children acquire new vocabulary.

Acquisition of both language and knowledge will also be enhanced if, following each read-aloud, children participate in rich, structured conversations with an adult in response to the written text that has been read aloud. In this way, they can begin to orally practice comparing, analyzing, and synthesizing ideas in written text in much the same way as they will be expected to do as independent readers in the later grades.

ENSURING COHERENCE

The knowledge children have learned about particular topics in early grade levels should then be expanded and developed in subsequent grade levels to ensure an increasingly deeper understanding of these topics.

The *Core Knowledge Sequence* is designed to provide schools with a coherent, cumulative and content-specific curriculum. In Core Knowledge schools, teaching and learning are more effective as teachers help students build upon prior knowledge and make more efficient progress from one year to the next. All students enjoy more equal educational opportunities as they are motivated by consistently challenging content. And all children are prepared to become members of the wider national community, respectful of diversity while strengthened by the shared knowledge that helps unite us on common ground.

To learn more, visit the Core Knowledge Reading Room on our website at www.coreknowledge.org.

You can also find the following articles and video online:

Building Knowledge

The Case for Bringing Content into the Language Arts Block and for a Knowledge-Rich Curriculum Core for All Children

By E.D. Hirsch, Jr.

American Educator, Spring 2006

http://archive.aft.org/pubs-reports/american_educator/issues/spring06/hirsch.htm

How Knowledge Helps

It Speeds and Strengthens Reading Comprehension, Learning—and Thinking

By Daniel T. Willingham

American Educator, Spring 2006

http://archive.aft.org/pubs-reports/american_educator/issues/spring06/willingham.htm

Teaching Content Is Teaching Reading

<http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=RiP-ijdxqEc>

The Importance of Oral Language

The Early Catastrophe: The 30 Million Word Gap by Age 3

By Betty Hart and Todd Risley

American Educator, Spring 2003

http://archive.aft.org/pubs-reports/american_educator/spring2003/catastrophe.html

Appendix B:

Using Trade Books
to Achieve
College and
Career Readiness:

The Principles of
Democracy

Appendix B: Using Trade Books to Achieve College and Career Readiness: The Principles of Democracy

To be able to read and understand the Declaration of Independence, the Preamble to the Constitution, or Dr. Martin Luther King Jr.'s "I Have a Dream" speech, all texts identified in the newly released Common Core State Standards, literate adults must have a firm grasp of both the language and historical context of these texts. Building this foundation starts in the early elementary grades.

While all American history topics are relevant in some way to the formation of the United States and to the understanding of how the principles of American democracy came about, the listing on the next page represents a grade-appropriate mini-sequence of American history topics that directly relate to the ideas and freedoms embodied in the Declaration of Independence and the Constitution. Age-appropriate trade book titles that could be used as read-alouds are also identified for each domain to illustrate how carefully selected read-alouds can be used to coherently build domain knowledge within and across grade levels.

Study of American history and geography can begin in grades K–2 with a brief overview of major events and figures, from the earliest days to recent times. (The term "American" here generally refers to the lands that became the United States.) A more in-depth, chronological study of American history can then begin again in grade 3 and continue onward.

Exemplar Texts on a Topic Across Grades

Principles of Democracy

To be able to read and understand the Declaration of Independence, the Preamble to the Constitution, or King's "I Have a Dream" speech, literate adults must have a firm grasp of both the language and historical context of these texts. Building this foundation starts in the early elementary grades. All American history topics are relevant in some way to the formation of the United States and to the understanding of how the principles of American democracy came about. This listing represents a grade-appropriate mini-sequence of American history topics that directly relate to the ideas and freedoms embodied in the Declaration of Independence and the Constitution.

Study of American history and geography can begin in grades K-2 with a brief overview of major events and figures, from the earliest days to recent times. (The term "American" here generally refers to the lands that became the United States.) A more in-depth, chronological study of American history can then begin again in grade 3 and continue onward.

Reference the rest of this listing for more detail about specific age-appropriate subtopics as well as additional titles.

K

Early Exploration and Settlement

- The Voyage of Columbus in 1492
- The Pilgrims
- A Picture Book of Christopher Columbus* by David A. Adler (1991)
- Christopher Columbus* by Mary Dodson Wade (2003)
- The Pilgrims' First Thanksgiving* by Anne McGovern (1973)
- Pilgrims of Plymouth* by Susan E. Goodman (1999)
- § *The Pilgrims' Thanksgiving from A-Z* by Laura Crawford (2005)

Presidents and American Symbols

- Introduction to famous presidents
 - George Washington
 - Thomas Jefferson
 - Abraham Lincoln
 - Theodore Roosevelt
 - Current United States president
- American Symbols and Figures
- My Teacher for President* by Kay Winters (2004)
- George Washington* by Philip Abraham (2002)
- A Picture Book of Thomas Jefferson* by David A. Adler (1990)
- Abraham Lincoln's Hat* by Martha Brenner (1994)
- I pledge allegiance* by Bill Martin Jr. and Michael Sampson (2002)

1

The Birth of Our Nation

- Introduction to the American Revolution (emphasizing the story of how we went from colonies to an independent nation)
- American Symbols and Figures
- The 4th of July Story* by Alice Dalgleish (1995)
- American Revolution (Research Guide)* by Mary Pope Osborne (2004)
- Boston Tea Party* by Pamela Duncan Edwards (2001)
- A Picture Book of Paul Revere* by David A. Adler (1995)
- Red, White, and Blue: The Story of the American Flag* by John Herman (1998)

2–3

The Thirteen Colonies Life before the Revolution

- Life in a Colonial Town* by Sally Senzell Isaacs (2000)
- Colonial Life* by Brendan January (2000)
- If You Lived in Williamsburg In Colonial Days* by Barbara Brenner (2000)
- Immigration and Citizenship**
- Coming to America* by Betsy Maestro (1996)
- Miss Bridie Chose a Shovel* by Leslie Connor (2004)
- Watch the Stars Come Out* by Riki Levinson (1985)
- We the Kids* by David Catrow (2002)
- The Story of the Statue of Liberty* by Betsy and Giulio Maestro (1986)

Reformers

- A Picture Book of Eleanor Roosevelt* by David A. Adler (1991)
- A Picture Book of Martin Luther King, Jr.* by David A. Adler (1989)
- Teammates* by Peter Golenbock (1990)
- Susan B. Anthony: Fighter for Freedom and Equality* by Suzanne Slade (2007)
- Harvesting Hope: The Story of Cesar Chavez* by Kathleen Krull (2003)

The Civil War

- If You Lived at the Time of the Civil War* by Kay Moore (1994)
- A Picture Book of Harriet Tubman* by David A. Adler (1992)
- Nettie's Trip South* by Ann Turner (1987)
- A Picture Book of Abraham Lincoln* by David A. Adler (1989)
- Just a Few Words, Mr. Lincoln: The Story of the Gettysburg Address* by Jean Fritz (1993)

4–5

The American Revolution

Undertake a more detailed study.

- Events Leading to the American Revolution* by Linda R. Wade (2001)
- The Revolutionary War* by Brendan January (2000)
- Paul Revere's Ride* by Henry Wadsworth Longfellow (1990)
- The Battles of Lexington and Concord* by Judith Peacock (2002)
- Can't You Make Them Behave, King George?* by Jean Fritz (1977)
- Making a Constitutional Government**
- A More Perfect Union: The Story of our Constitution* by Betsy and Giulio Maestro (1987)
- The Constitution* by Warren Colman (1987)
- The United States Constitution* by Karen Price Hossell (2004)
- If You Were There When They Signed the Constitution* by Elizabeth Levy (1987)
- Shh! We're Writing the Constitution* by Jean Fritz (1987)
- Reformers**
- Dorothea Dix: Social Reformer* by Barbara Wittman (2003)
- The Abolitionist Movement* by Elaine Landau (2004)
- If You Lived When Women Won Their Rights* by Anne Kamma (2006)
- Created Equal* by Ann Rossi (2005)
- Only Passing Through: The Story of Sojourner Truth* by Anne Rockwell (2000)
- The Civil War: Causes, Conflicts, Consequences**
- Undertake a more detailed study.
- A Slave Family* by Bobbie Kalman (2003)
- Sisters Against Slavery: A Story about Sarah and Angelina Grimké* by Stephanie Sammartino McPherson (1999)
- Abraham Lincoln Goes to Washington* by Cheryl Harness (1997)
- The Emancipation Proclamation* by Ann Heinrichs (2002)
- The Gettysburg Address* by Abraham Lincoln (1995)

KINDERGARTEN

Domain: Early Exploration and Settlement

The Voyage of Columbus in 1492

- Queen Isabella and King Ferdinand of Spain
- The Niña, Pinta, and Santa Maria
- Columbus's mistaken identification of "Indies" and "Indians"
- The idea of what was, for Europeans, a "New World"

The Pilgrims

- The Mayflower
- Plymouth Rock
- Thanksgiving Day celebration

July 4, "Independence Day"

- The "birthday" of our nation
- Democracy (rule of the people): Americans wanted to rule themselves instead of being ruled by a faraway king.
- Some people were not free: slavery in early America

- *A Picture Book of Christopher Columbus* by David A. Adler (1991)
- *Christopher Columbus* by Mary Dodson Wade (2003)
- *Follow the Dream: The Story of Christopher Columbus* by Peter Sis (1991)
- *The Pilgrims' First Thanksgiving* by Anne McGovern (1973)
- *Pilgrims of Plymouth* by Susan E. Goodman (1999)
- *The Pilgrims' Thanksgiving from A-Z* by Laura Crawford (2005)
- *Sarah Morton's Day: A Day in the Life of a Pilgrim Girl* by Kate Waters (1989)

Domain: Presidents and American Symbols

Introduction to famous presidents (as well as a discussion at a basic level of questions such as: What is the president? How does a person become president? Who are some of our most famous presidents, and why?)

- George Washington
The "Father of Our Country"
Legend of George Washington and the cherry tree
- Thomas Jefferson, author of Declaration of Independence
- Abraham Lincoln
Humble origins
"Honest Abe"
- Theodore Roosevelt
- Current United States president

American Symbols and Figures

- Recognize and become familiar with the significance of
American flag
Statue of Liberty
Mount Rushmore
The White House

- *My Teacher for President* by Kay Winters (2004)
- *George Washington* by Philip Abraham (2002)
- *A Picture Book of Thomas Jefferson* by David A. Adler (1990)
- *Abe Lincoln's Hat* by Martha Brenner (1994)
- *I pledge allegiance* by Bill Martin Jr. and Michael Sampson (2002)
- *The White House* by Lloyd G. Douglas (2003)
- *Woodrow, the White House Mouse* by Peter W. Barnes and Cheryl Shaw Barnes (1998)
- *The Star-Spangled Banner* illustrated by Peter Spier (1973)
- *The Legend of the Teddy Bear* by Frank Murphy (2001)

GRADE 1

Domain: The Birth of Our Nation

Introduction to the American Revolution (emphasizing the story of how we went from colonies to an independent nation)

- Locate the original thirteen colonies.
- The Boston Tea Party
- Paul Revere’s ride, “One if by land, two if by sea”
- Minutemen and Redcoats, the “shot heard round the world”
- Thomas Jefferson and the Declaration of Independence, “We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal . . .”
- Fourth of July
- Benjamin Franklin: patriot, inventor, writer
- George Washington: from military commander to our first president
Martha Washington
Our national capital city named Washington
- Legend of Betsy Ross and the flag

American Symbols and Figures

- Recognize and become familiar with the significance of
Liberty Bell
American flag
Bald Eagle
Current United States president
- *The 4th of July Story* by Alice Dalgliesh (1995)
- *American Revolution* (Research Guide) by Mary Pope Osborne (2004)
- *Boston Tea Party* by Pamela Duncan Edwards (2001)
- *A Picture Book of Paul Revere* by David A. Adler (1995)
- *Red, White, and Blue: The Story of the American Flag* by John Herman (1998)
- *A Picture Book of George Washington* by David A. Adler (1989)
- *George Washington* by Ingri and Edgar Parin D’Aulaire (1963)
- *Now & Ben: The Modern Inventions of Benjamin Franklin* by Gene Barretta (2006)
- *A Picture Book of Benjamin Franklin* by David A. Adler (1990)
- *Betsy Ross* by Alexandra Wallner (1994)
- *Yankee Doodle* by Gary Chalk (1993)
- *The Bald Eagle* by Tristan Boyer Binns (2001)
- *The Bald Eagle* by Norman Pearl (2007)
- *Saving the Liberty Bell* by Megan McDonald (2005)
- *The Liberty Bell* by Mary Firestone (2007)

GRADE 2

Domain: The Civil War

Introduction to the Civil War

- Controversy over slavery
- Harriet Tubman, the “underground railroad”
- Northern v. Southern states: Yankees and Rebels
- Ulysses S. Grant and Robert E. Lee
- Clara Barton, “Angel of the Battlefield,” founder of American Red Cross
- President Abraham Lincoln: keeping the Union together
- Emancipation Proclamation and the end of slavery

American Symbols and Figures

- Recognize and become familiar with the significance of
 - U. S. flag: current and earlier versions
 - Lincoln Memorial
- *If You Lived at the Time of the Civil War* by Kay Moore (1994)
- *A Picture Book of Harriet Tubman* by David A. Adler (1992)
- *Nettie's Trip South* by Ann Turner (1987)
- *A Picture Book of Abraham Lincoln* by David A. Adler (1989)
- *Just a Few Words, Mr. Lincoln: The Story of the Gettysburg Address* by Jean Fritz (1993)
- *If you Lived When There Was Slavery in America* by Anne Kamma (2004)
- *Civil War on Sunday* by Mary Pope Osborne (2000)
- *Abe Lincoln: The boy who loved books* by Kay Winters (2003)
- *Mr. Lincoln's Whiskers* by Karen B. Winnick (1996)
- *The Lincoln Memorial* by Kathleen W. Deady (2002)
- *Escape North! The Story of Harriet Tubman* by Monica Kulling (2000)
- *If You Traveled on the Underground Railroad* by Ellen Levine (1988)
- *Escape! A Story of the Underground Railroad* by Sharon Shavers Gayle (1999)
- *Harriet and the Promised Land* by Jacob Lawrence (1997)
- *Aunt Harriet's Underground Railroad in the Sky* by Faith Ringgold (1992)
- *Follow the Drinking Gourd* by Jeanette Winter (1988)
- *A Picture Book of Robert E. Lee* by David A. Adler (1994)
- *Clara Barton* by Wil Mara (2002)

Domain: Immigration and Citizenship

Introduction to Immigration and Citizenship

Using narrative, biography, and other accessible means to introduce children to the idea that many people have come to America (and continue to come here) from all around the world, for many reasons: to find freedom, to seek a better life, to leave behind bad conditions in their native lands, etc. Discuss: What is an immigrant? Why do people leave their home countries to make a new home in America? What is it like to be a newcomer in America? What hardships have immigrants faced? What opportunities have they found?

- America perceived as a “land of opportunity”
- The meaning of “e pluribus unum” (a national motto you can see on the back of coins)
- Ellis Island and the significance of the Statue of Liberty
- Millions of newcomers to America
 - Large populations of immigrants settle in major cities (such as New York, Chicago, Philadelphia, Detroit, Cleveland, Boston, San Francisco)
- The idea of citizenship
 - What it means to be a citizen of a nation
 - American citizens have certain rights and responsibilities (for example, voting, eligible to hold public office, paying taxes)
 - Becoming an American citizen (by birth, naturalization)

Introduction to American Government: The Constitution

Through analogies to familiar settings—the family, the school, the community—discuss some basic questions regarding American government, such as: What is government? What are some basic functions of American government? (Making and enforcing laws; settling disputes; protecting rights and liberties, etc.) Only basic questions need to be addressed at this grade level. Specific issues and institutions of American government, including, for example, the separation of powers, and the relation between state and federal government should be discussed in later grades.

- American government is based on the Constitution, the highest law of our land.
- James Madison, the “Father of the Constitution”
- Government by the consent of the governed: “We the People”

American Symbols and Figures

- Recognize and become familiar with the significance of U. S. flag; current and earlier versions
Statue of Liberty
- *Coming to America* by Betsy Maestro (1996)
- *Miss Bridie Chose a Shovel* by Leslie Connor (2004)
- *Watch the Stars Come Out* by Riki Levinson (1985)
- *We the Kids* by David Catrow (2002)
- *The Story of the Statue of Liberty* by Betsy and Giulio Maestro (1986)
- *A Very Important Day* by Maggie Rugg Herold (1995)
- *A Picnic in October* by Eve Bunting (2004)
- *One Green Apple* by Eve Bunting (2006)
- *The Keeping Quilt* by Patricia Polacco (1998)
- *Molly's Pilgrim* by Barbara Cohen (1983)

Domain: Reformers

Through narrative, biography, and other accessible means, introduce students to the idea that while America is a country founded upon “the proposition that all men are created equal, equality has not always been granted to all Americans. Many people, however, have dedicated themselves to the struggle to extend equal rights to all Americans. Specific figures and issues to study can include:

- Susan B. Anthony and the right to vote
 - Eleanor Roosevelt and civil rights and human rights
 - Mary McLeod Bethune and educational opportunity
 - Jackie Robinson and the integration of major league baseball
 - Rosa Parks and the bus boycott in Montgomery, Alabama
 - Martin Luther King, Jr. and the dream of equal rights for all
 - Cesar Chavez and the rights of migrant workers
- *A Picture Book of Eleanor Roosevelt* by David A. Adler (1991)
 - *A Picture Book of Martin Luther King, Jr.* by David A. Adler (1989)
 - *Teammates* by Peter Golenbock (1990)
 - *Susan B. Anthony: Fighter for Freedom and Equality* by Suzanne Slade (2007)
 - *Harvesting Hope: The Story of Cesar Chavez* by Kathleen Krull (2003)
 - *If a Bus Could Talk: The Story of Rosa Parks* by Faith Ringold (1999)
 - *I Am Rosa Parks* by Rosa Parks with Jim Haskins (1997)
 - *Eleanor* by Barbara Cooney (1996)
 - *Mary McLeod Bethune: A Great Teacher* by Patricia and Fredrick McKissack (2001)
 - *Martin Luther King, Jr. and His Birthday* by Jacqueline Woodson (1990)
 - *Martin's Big Words: The Life of Martin Luther King, Jr.* by Doreen Rappaport (2001)
 - *March On! The Day My Brother Martin Changed the World* by Christine King Farris (2008)
 - *Learning About Justice from the Life of César Chávez* by Jeanne Strazzabosco (1996)

GRADE 3

Domain: The Thirteen Colonies: Life before the Revolution

Focus on the definition of “colony” and why countries establish colonies. Help children see that the thirteen English colonies were not alike. Different groups of people came to America with different motivations (hoping to get rich, looking for religious freedom, etc.), and the thirteen colonies developed in different ways.

Geography

- The thirteen colonies by region: New England, Middle Atlantic, Southern
- Differences in climate from north to south: corresponding differences in agriculture (subsistence farming in New England, gradual development of large plantations in the South)
- Important cities in the development of trade and government: Philadelphia, Boston, New York, Charleston

Southern Colonies

- Southern colonies: Virginia, Maryland, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia
- Virginia
 - Chesapeake Bay, James River
 - 1607: three ships of the London Company (later called the Virginia Company) arrive in Virginia, seeking gold and other riches
 - Establishment of Jamestown, first continuous English colony in the New World
 - Trade with Powhatan Indians (see also Eastern Woodland Indians, above)
 - John Smith
 - Pocahontas, marriage to John Rolfe
 - Diseases kill many people, both colonists and Indians
 - The Starving Time
 - Clashes between American Indians and English colonists
 - Development of tobacco as a cash crop, development of plantations
 - 1619: first African laborers brought to Virginia
- Maryland
 - A colony established mainly for Catholics
 - Lord Baltimore
- South Carolina
 - Charleston
 - Plantations (rice, indigo) and slave labor
- Georgia
 - James Oglethorpe’s plan to establish a colony for English debtors
- Slavery in the Southern colonies
 - Economic reasons that the Southern colonies came to rely on slavery (for example, slave labor on large plantations)
 - The difference between indentured servants and slaves: slaves as property
 - The Middle Passage

New England Colonies

- New England colonies: Massachusetts, New Hampshire, Connecticut, Rhode Island
- Gradual development of maritime economy: fishing and shipbuilding
- Massachusetts
 - Colonists seeking religious freedom: in England, an official “established” church (the Church of England), which did not allow people to worship as they chose
 - The Pilgrims
 - From England to Holland to Massachusetts
 - 1620: Voyage of the Mayflower
 - Significance of the Mayflower Compact

Plymouth, William Bradford

Helped by Wampanoag Indians: Massasoit, Tisquantum (Squanto)

The Puritans

Massachusetts Bay Colony, Governor John Winthrop: “We shall be as a city upon a hill.”

Emphasis on reading and education, the New England Primer

- Rhode Island
 - Roger Williams: belief in religious toleration
 - Anne Hutchinson

Middle Atlantic Colonies

- Middle Atlantic colonies: New York, New Jersey, Delaware, Pennsylvania
 - New York
 - Dutch settlements and trading posts in “New Netherland”
 - Dutch West India Company acquires Manhattan Island and Long Island through a (probably misunderstood) purchase from the Indians; Dutch establish New Amsterdam (today, New York City)
 - English take over from the Dutch, and rename the colony New York
 - Pennsylvania
 - William Penn
 - Society of Friends, “Quakers”
 - Philadelphia
- *Life in a Colonial Town* by Sally Senzell Isaacs (2000)
 - *Colonial Life* by Brendan January (2000)
 - *If You Lived in Williamsburg In Colonial Days* by Barbara Brenner (2000)
 - *The Pilgrims of Plimoth* by Marcia Sewall (1986)
 - *A Horse’s Tale* by Susan Lubner (2008)
 - *A Day in the Life of a Colonial Indigo Planter* by Laurie Krebs (2004)
 - *Life in Colonial Boston* by Jennifer Blizin Gillis (2003)
 - *James Towne: Struggle for Survival* by Marcia Sewall (2001)
 - *Anne Hutchinson’s Way* by Jeannine Atkins (2007)

GRADE 4

Domain: The American Revolution

Undertake a more detailed study of the causes, major figures, and consequences of the American Revolution, with a focus on main events and figures, as well as these questions: What caused the colonists to break away and become an independent nation? What significant ideas and values are at the heart of the American Revolution?

Background: The French and Indian War

- Also known as the Seven Years’ War, part of an ongoing struggle between Britain and France for control of colonies in various regions around the world (in this case, in North America)
- Alliances with Native Americans
- The Battle of Quebec
- British victory gains territory but leaves Britain financially weakened.

Causes and Provocations

- British taxes, “No taxation without representation”
- Boston Massacre, Crispus Attucks
- Boston Tea Party

- The Intolerable Acts close the port of Boston and require Americans to provide quarters for British troops
- First Continental Congress protests to King George III
- Thomas Paine’s Common Sense

The Revolution

- Paul Revere’s ride, “One if by land, two if by sea”
- Lexington and Concord
 - The “shot heard ’round the world”
 - Redcoats and Minute Men
- Bunker Hill
- Second Continental Congress: George Washington appointed commander in chief of Continental Army
- Declaration of Independence
 - Primarily written by Thomas Jefferson
 - Adopted July 4, 1776
 - “We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal, that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable Rights, that among these are Life, Liberty, and the pursuit of Happiness.”
- Women in the Revolution: Elizabeth Freeman, Deborah Sampson, Phillis Wheatley, Molly Pitcher
- Loyalists (Tories)
- Victory at Saratoga, alliance with France
- European helpers (Lafayette, the French fleet, Bernardo de Galvez, Kosciusko, von Steuben)
- Valley Forge
- Benedict Arnold
- John Paul Jones: “I have not yet begun to fight.”
- Nathan Hale: “I only regret that I have but one life to lose for my country.”
- Cornwallis: surrender at Yorktown

American Symbols and Figures

- Recognize and become familiar with the significance of *Spirit of ’76* (painting)
- Events Leading to the American Revolution by Linda R. Wade (2001)
- The Revolutionary War by Brendan January (2000)
- Paul Revere’s Ride by Henry Wadsworth Longfellow (1990)
- The Battles of Lexington and Concord by Judith Peacock (2002)
- Can’t You Make Them Behave, King George? by Jean Fritz (1977)
- Lexington and Concord by Deborah Kent (1997)
- Sleds on Boston Common: A Story From the American Revolution by Louise Borden (2000)
- Give Me Liberty! The Story of the Declaration of Independence by Russell Freedman (2000)
- Final Years of the American Revolution by Linda R. Wade (2001)

Domain: Making a Constitutional Government

Examine some of the basic values and principles of American democracy, in both theory and practice, as defined in the Declaration of Independence and the U. S. Constitution, both in historical context and in terms of present-day practice. In examining the significance of the U. S. Constitution, introduce students to the unique nature of the American experiment, the difficult task of establishing a democratic government, the compromises the framers of the Constitution were willing to make, and the persistent threats to success. In order to appreciate the boldness and fragility of the American attempt to establish a republican government based on a constitution, students should know that republican governments were rare at this time. Discuss with students basic questions and issues about government, such as: Why do

societies need government? Why does a society need laws? Who makes the laws in the United States? What might happen in the absence of government and laws?

Main ideas behind the Declaration of Independence

- The proposition that “All men are created equal”
- The responsibility of government to protect the “unalienable rights” of the people
- Natural rights: “Life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness”
- The “right of the people ... to institute new government”

Making a New Government: From the Declaration to the Constitution

- Definition of “republican” government: republican = government by elected representatives of the people
- Articles of Confederation: weak central government
- “Founding Fathers”: James Madison as “Father of the Constitution”
- Constitutional Convention
 - Arguments between small and large states
 - The divisive issue of slavery, “three-fifths” compromise

The Constitution of the United States

- Preamble to the Constitution: “We the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquility, provide for the common defense, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.”
- The separation and sharing of powers in American government: three branches of government
 - Legislative branch: Congress = House of Representatives and Senate, makes laws
 - Executive branch: headed by the president, carries out laws
 - Judicial branch: a court system headed by the Supreme Court (itself headed by the Chief Justice), deals with those who break laws and with disagreements about laws
- Checks and balances, limits on government power, veto
- The Bill of Rights: first ten amendments to the Constitution, including:
 - Freedom of religion, speech, and the press (First Amendment)
 - Protection against “unreasonable searches and seizures”
 - The right to “due process of law”
 - The right to trial by jury
 - Protection against “cruel and unusual punishments”

Levels and functions of government (national, state, local)

- Identify current government officials, including
 - President and vice-president of the U.S.
 - State governor
- State governments: established by state constitutions (which are subordinate to the U.S. Constitution, the highest law in the land), like the national government, each state government has its legislative, executive, and judicial branches
- Local governments: purposes, functions, and officials
- How government services are paid for (taxes on individuals and businesses, fees, tolls, etc.)
- How people can participate in government

American Symbols and Figures

- Recognize and become familiar with the significance of
 - White House and Capitol Building
 - Great Seal of the United States

- *A More Perfect Union: The Story of our Constitution* by Betsy and Giulio Maestro (1987)
- *The Constitution* by Warren Colman (1987)
- *The United States Constitution* by Karen Price Hossell (2004)
- *If You Were There When They Signed the Constitution* by Elizabeth Levy (1987)
- *Shh! We're Writing the Constitution* by Jean Fritz (1987)
- *Designing America: The Constitutional Convention* by Sean Price (2008)
- *The Declaration of Independence* by Elaine Landau (2008)
- *The U.S. Constitution and You* by Syl Sobel (2001)
- *What Are the Parts of Government?* by William David Thomas (2008)
- *The Congress of the United States* by Christine Taylor-Butler (2008)
- *The Bill of Rights* by Michael Burgan (2002)
- *The Bill of Rights* by Christine Taylor-Butler (2008)
- *The Great Seal of the United States* by Terri DeGezelle (2004)
- *James Madison and Dolley Madison and Their Times* by Robert Quackenbush (1992)

Domain: Reformers

Introduce some prominent people and movements in the ferment of social change in America prior to the Civil War.

- Abolitionists
- Dorothea Dix and the treatment of the insane
- Horace Mann and public schools
- Women's rights
 - Seneca Falls convention
 - Elizabeth Cady Stanton
 - Lucretia Mott
 - Amelia Bloomer
 - Sojourner Truth
- *Dorothea Dix: Social Reformer* by Barbara Witteman (2003)
- *The Abolitionist Movement* by Elaine Landau (2004)
- *If You Lived When Women Won Their Rights* by Anne Kamma (2006)
- *Created Equal* by Ann Rossi (2005)
- *Only Passing Through: The Story of Sojourner Truth* by Anne Rockwell (2000)
- *In Their Own Words: Sojourner Truth* by Peter and Connie Roop (2002)
- *The Road to Seneca Falls: A Story about Elizabeth Cady Stanton* by Gwennyth Swain (1996)
- *The Seneca Falls Women's Rights Convention* by Sabrina Crewe and Dale Anderson (2005)
- *Elizabeth Cady Stanton* by Lucile Davis (1998)
- *Lucretia Mott* by Lucile Davis (1998)
- *Working for Change: The Struggle for Women's Right to Vote* by Leni Donlan (2008)
- *A Timeline of the Abolitionist Movement* by Judy Levine (2004)

GRADE 5

Domain: The Civil War: Causes, Conflicts, Consequences

Undertake a more detailed study of the causes, major figures, and consequences of the Civil War.

Toward the Civil War

- Abolitionists: William Lloyd Garrison and *The Liberator*, Frederick Douglass
- Slave life and rebellions
- Industrial North versus agricultural South
- Mason-Dixon Line
- Controversy over whether to allow slavery in territories and new states
 - Missouri Compromise of 1820
 - Dred Scott decision allows slavery in the territories
- Importance of Harriet Beecher Stowe's *Uncle Tom's Cabin*
- John Brown, Harper's Ferry
- Lincoln: "A house divided against itself cannot stand."
 - Lincoln-Douglas debates
 - Lincoln elected president, Southern states secede

The Civil War

- Fort Sumter
- Confederacy, Jefferson Davis
- Yankees and Rebels, Blue and Gray
- First Battle of Bull Run
- Robert E. Lee and Ulysses S. Grant
- General Stonewall Jackson
- Ironclad ships, battle of the USS Monitor and the CSS Virginia (formerly the USS Merrimack)
- Battle of Antietam Creek
- The Emancipation Proclamation
- Gettysburg and the Gettysburg Address
- African-American troops, Massachusetts Regiment led by Colonel Shaw
- Sherman's march to the sea, burning of Atlanta
- Lincoln re-elected, concluding words of the Second Inaugural Address ("With malice toward none, with charity for all. . .")
- Richmond (Confederate capital) falls to Union forces
- Surrender at Appomattox
- Assassination of Lincoln by John Wilkes Booth

Reconstruction

- The South in ruins
- Struggle for control of the South, Radical Republicans vs. Andrew Johnson, impeachment
- Carpetbaggers and scalawags
- Freedmen's Bureau, "40 acres and a mule"
- 13th, 14th, and 15th Amendments to the Constitution
- Black Codes, the Ku Klux Klan and "vigilante justice"
- End of Reconstruction, Compromise of 1877, all federal troops removed from the South

- *A Slave Family* by Bobbie Kalman (2003)
- *Sisters Against Slavery: A Story about Sarah and Angelina Grimke* by Stephanie Sammartino McPherson (1999)
- *Abe Lincoln Goes to Washington* by Cheryl Harness (1997)
- *The Emancipation Proclamation* by Ann Heinrichs (2002)
- *The Gettysburg Address* by Abraham Lincoln (1995)
- *Bull Run* by Paul Fleischman (1993)
- *The Home Fronts in the Civil War* by Dale Anderson (2004)
- *Life on a Plantation* by Bobbie Kalman (1997)
- *John Brown: His Fight for Freedom* by John Hendrix (2009)
- *Seven Miles to Freedom: The Robert Smalls Story* by Janet Halfman (2008)
- *The Reconstruction Amendments* by Michael Burgan (2006)
- *The Carpetbaggers* by Lucia Raatma (2005)

Appendix C:

Domains and Core Content Objectives for the *Core Knowledge Language Arts* Program, K–2

Appendix C: Domains and Core Content Objectives for the *Core Knowledge Language Arts* Program, K–2

When using read-alouds to build content knowledge within a domain, it is important to start by identifying the specific knowledge that students are expected to learn over the course of the read-aloud domain. We offer the objectives below, taken from the Listening and Learning Strand of the *Core Knowledge Language Arts* program, as examples of what we call “Core Content Objectives.” Every read-aloud lesson should have both content objectives, as well as language arts objectives, identified as learning goals within the lesson.

Note: In the *Core Knowledge Language Arts* program, all domains are modular within a grade level, so that individual classrooms teachers may determine the teaching sequence of each domain. However, we highly recommend that, whenever possible, teachers using the *Core Knowledge Language Arts* materials follow the recommended sequence below, as many factors, including the length of individual read-alouds within the domain, overall number of lessons in the domains, vocabulary density and level of abstraction and complexity, have been used to come up with the recommended sequence.

Kindergarten

1. Nursery Rhymes and Fables
2. The Five Senses
3. Stories
4. Plants
5. Farms
6. Native Americans
7. Kings and Queens
8. Seasons and Weather
9. Columbus and the Pilgrims
10. Colonial Towns and Townspeople
11. Taking Care of the Earth
12. Presidents and American Symbols

Grade 1

1. Fables and Stories
2. The Human Body
3. Different Lands, Similar Stories
4. Early World Civilizations
5. Early American Civilizations
6. Mozart and Music
7. Astronomy
8. The History of the Earth
9. Animals and Habitats
10. Fairy Tales
11. The Birth of Our Nation
12. Frontier Explorers

Grade 2

1. Stories and Poetry
2. Early Asian Civilizations
3. Cycles in Nature
4. The Ancient Greek Civilization
5. Greek Myths
6. Insects
7. Westward Expansion
8. The U.S. Civil War
9. Charlotte’s Web I
10. Charlotte’s Web II
11. Immigration
12. Fighting for a Cause

Kindergarten

Nursery Rhymes and Fables

- Demonstrate familiarity with nursery rhymes and fables
- Recite some nursery rhymes
- Identify rhyming words in nursery rhymes
- Identify lines that repeat, and/or dialogue in nursery rhymes
- Describe the characters and events in nursery rhymes and fables
- Explain that fables teach a lesson that is stated as the moral of the story
- Identify the moral of fables
- Explain how animals often act as people in fables (personification)

The Five Senses

- Identify and demonstrate understanding of the five senses: sight, hearing, smell, taste, and touch
- Identify each of the body parts associated with the five senses
- Provide simple explanations about how the eyes, ears, nose, tongue, and skin work and their function
- Describe how the five senses help humans learn about their world
- Explain the contributions of Ray Charles
- Explain the contributions of Helen Keller
- Describe the challenges of someone who is blind or deaf
- Understand the impact of small sensations on our experiences
- Understand how we can enhance the sense of sight and sense of hearing
- Become familiar with instruments invented to aid the senses of sight and hearing

Stories

- Listen to and then demonstrate familiarity with stories, including the ideas they express
- Understand that fiction can be in many different forms, including folktales, trickster tales, and tall tales
- Identify the setting of a given story
- Identify the characters of a given story
- Identify the plot of a given story

Plants

- Understand that there are many different kinds and sizes of plants
- Understand that different kinds of plants grow in different environments
- Understand that plants are living things
- Describe what plants need to live and grow: food, water, air, and sunlight
- Identify the root, stem, branch, leaf, flower, fruit, and seed of a plant
- Explain that roots anchor the plant and take in water and nutrients
- Explain that stems support the plant and carry water and nutrients to the various parts of the plant
- Explain that the plant makes its food in the leaves
- Explain that seeds are the beginning of new plants
- Describe how bees collect nectar and pollen
- Understand how bees make and use honey
- Describe the important role bees play in plant pollination
- Understand that some plants produce fruit to hold seeds
- Demonstrate familiarity with the tall tale “Johnny Appleseed”
- Compare and contrast fruits and seeds of different plants
- Understand the basic life cycle of plants
- Identify the part of specific plants that are eaten by people
- Compare and contrast deciduous and evergreen plants
- Identify things that plants provide us: oxygen, food, and important products
- Understand the life and scientific achievements of George Washington Carver

Farms

- Explain what a farm is
- Describe a farmer's and shepherd's job
- Identify animals found on farms and the sounds they make
- Identify needs of farm animals: food, water, and space to live and grow
- Match pictures and/or names of farm animal babies to their adult parents
- Describe how farm animal babies need to be fed and cared for by their parents or people
- Explain why farmers raise animals and grow crops
- Identify foods that come from animals
- Identify crops as plants grown on farms for use as food
- Describe how farmers protect their crops from drought, weeds, and pests
- Sequence the seasonal rhythm of planting, growing, and harvesting
- Describe how some food comes from farms as crops
- Sequence events of crops from farm to store (planted, harvested, transported, packaged)
- Identify buildings found on farms
- Identify machines and tools of farming
- Describe how farming has changed through the years

Native Americans

- Explain that there are many tribes of Native Americans
- Identify the environment in which the Sioux lived
- Identify the Sioux as a nomadic tribe
- Describe the food, clothing, and shelter of the Sioux
- Understand the importance of the buffalo to the Sioux
- Identify the environment in which the Wampanoag lived
- Understand how the Wampanoag tribe lived
- Identify the Wampanoag as a settled tribe
- Describe the food, clothing, and shelter of the Wampanoag
- Understand that Native Americans still live in the U.S. today

Kings and Queens

- Describe what a king or queen does
- Identify and describe royal objects associated with a king or queen
- Indicate that kings and queens still exist today, but that there were many more kings and queens long ago
- Describe a royal family
- Identify important factors (children, partnerships, arranged marriages) that ensured a royal family's success
- Describe appropriate dress and manners used in meeting and/or talking with kings and queens
- Explain that proper dress and manners in the presence of a member of the royal family is a sign of respect for the importance of this person
- Demonstrate familiarity with the poem "Happy Thought"
- Understand that kings usually possess gold and other treasures
- Discuss the difference between valuing relationships with people and valuing wealth
- Understand contemporary references to someone having *the Golden Touch* or *the Midas Touch*
- Describe the behaviors that reinforce that kings and queens are royal
- Recite "Old King Cole"
- Recite "Sing a Song of Sixpence"
- Describe the characters, settings, and plots in the stories
- Discuss the lessons in *Cinderella* and in *Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs* that show goodness prevails and is rewarded

Seasons and Weather

- Demonstrate understanding of the following units of time and their relationship to one another: day, week, month, year
- Name the four seasons in cyclical order, as experienced in the United States, and correctly name a few characteristics of each season
- Characterize winter as generally the coldest season, summer as generally the warmest season, and spring and autumn as transitional seasons
- Characterize the North and South Poles as always cold in temperature, the middle section of the earth as usually warm, and the United States as having four seasons
- Identify the following characteristics of thunderstorms: heavy rain, thunder, lightning, and strong wind
- Name at least one month in a specific season while referring to a calendar
- Name at least one holiday in a specific season
- Describe any unique seasonal differences that are characteristic of their own locality (change of color and dropping of leaves in autumn; snow or ice in winter; increased rain and/or flooding in spring, etc.)
- Identify ways in which weather affects daily routines, such as dress, activities, etc.
- Describe daily weather conditions of their own locality in terms of temperature (hot, warm, cool, cold); cloud cover (sunny, cloudy); and precipitation (rain, snow, or sleet)
- Demonstrate familiarity with the poem “I Do Not Mind You, Winter Wind”
- Draw pictures that show an understanding of each season
- Describe safe and unsafe behaviors during severe weather
- Identify and describe different types of severe weather
- Identify a thermometer as an instrument used to measure temperature and describe how it works, i.e., when the liquid in the thermometer rises, it is hotter outside; when the liquid descends, it is cooler
- Explain the lesson the grasshopper learns at the end of the fable, “The Grasshopper and the Ants”
- Identify the four seasons and name activities that are associated with those seasons
- Understand why weather prediction is important in their daily lives

Columbus and the Pilgrims

- Identify the continents of North America, South America, Europe, Africa, and Asia
- Understand why Europeans wanted to travel to Asia
- Describe the accomplishments of Christopher Columbus
- Identify King Ferdinand and Queen Isabella of Spain
- Recall the year of Columbus’s first voyage to America: 1492
- Recall the names of Columbus’ three ships: Niña, Pinta, Santa Maria
- Explain why Columbus called the land “India” and the inhabitants “Indians”
- Explain why Europeans eventually thought Columbus had discovered a “New World”
- Identify reasons why the Pilgrims left England
- Describe the Pilgrims’ voyage on the Mayflower
- Explain the significance of Plymouth Rock
- Describe the Pilgrims’ first year in America
- Describe the first Thanksgiving Day celebration

Colonial Towns and Townspeople

- Identify the key characteristics and differences between “towns,” and “the country” or “countryside” during the colonial period of American history
- Understand that long ago, during the colonial period, families who lived in the country on farms were largely self-sufficient, and that this meant all family members had many daily responsibilities and chores
- List similarities and differences between modern family life and colonial farm life
- Describe some features of colonial towns, such as a town square, shops, and adjacent buildings
- Understand that tradespeople had an occupation and expertise in a particular job
- Name different tradespeople found in a colonial town

- Identify reasons why people who lived in the country traveled to town
- Describe how a watermill works
- Identify corn and wheat as the original plant products needed for the production of flour
- Describe a miller as a tradesperson who grinds wheat and corn into flour using a mill
- Describe a baker as a tradesperson who bakes bread using flour
- Explain how the tradespeople in colonial towns saved farming families time and effort
- Describe what working in a watermill was like
- Compare the life of a miller to the life of a king
- Identify cotton, wool, and flax as the original plant or animal products needed for making cloth
- Describe a spinner as a tradesperson who made thread or yarn from cotton, wool, or flax by spinning it on a spinning wheel
- Identify, and associate with the appropriate trade, the tools used by tradespeople
- Describe a weaver as a tradesperson who used thread or yarn on a loom to make cloth
- Describe the process of making cloth from cotton or wool
- Describe the steps involved in running a spinning wheel: licking the fingers to smooth down the fibers, twisting the thread, and stepping on the treadle
- Describe dressmakers and tailors as tradespeople who made clothing by sewing
- Describe a hatter as a tradesperson who made men's hats
- Describe a cobbler as a tradesperson who made and fixed shoes
- Understand that ready-made clothing was not available for sale in colonial shops; clothing was made to order according to the exact measurements of each person
- Describe a bricklayer as a tradesperson who built with bricks
- Describe a mason as a tradesperson who built with stones
- Describe a carpenter as a tradesperson who built with wood
- Identify some tools tradespeople used
- Describe a blacksmith as a tradesperson who heated iron and formed it into metal objects
- Identify the essential role of the blacksmith in making tools for other tradespeople
- Recognize the necessity of heating objects before the blacksmith could shape them
- Describe a teacher as a townsperson responsible for educating young children
- Identify some characteristics of colonial common schools (multiple grade levels, one-room schoolhouse, mostly boys)
- Compare and contrast common schools with today's schools
- Understand the purpose of laws
- Describe a sheriff as a townsperson who arrested criminals
- Describe a judge as a townsperson who decided who was innocent and guilty, and what punishment guilty people should receive
- Review tradespeople and their roles

Taking Care of the Earth

- Understand that Earth is composed of land, water, and air
- Identify examples of land, water, and air from their own environments
- Understand that humans, plants, and animals depend on Earth's land, water, and air to live
- Explain why people have a special responsibility to take care of the earth
- Understand that humans generate large amounts of garbage, which must be disposed of
- Sequence what happens to garbage from its creation to being dumped in the landfill
- Explain what a landfill is and why it is a dangerous place
- Evaluate whether landfills are an adequate solution to the problem of garbage
- Understand that natural resources are things found in nature that are valuable and of great importance to people
- Identify key natural resources and describe how people use them
- Recognize the phrase "Reduce, reuse, recycle!" and explain how doing these three things can help to conserve natural resources
- Understand that people can conserve natural resources by reducing their use of them
- Understand that people can conserve natural resources by reusing materials

- Identify the recycling symbol and understand that recycled materials are made from reused garbage
- Identify common recyclable materials, including glass, plastic, aluminum, cardboard, and paper
- Understand that recyclable materials go from people's homes and businesses to a recycling center, where the materials are sorted according to different types of recyclables, and then they are taken to a recycling factory to be made into something new
- Understand that composting is a type of recycling in which discarded food scraps decay in an outdoor pile or bin for that purpose and eventually become garden soil
- Sequence what happens to a piece of discarded food from table to compost pile to garden
- Identify foods that can be composted
- Discuss garbage as being a problem and various means of garbage disposal in terms of a solution
- Understand that people cause pollution when they make the earth dirty or dangerous with their garbage
- Understand that land, air, and water all suffer from different types of pollution, and all types of pollution are caused by human activities
- Understand that if people are careful and creative, they can help reduce pollution
- Understand that air pollution from one location can make even the air that is far away in other places around the world dirty
- Identify sources of air pollution, including cars and electricity produced by coal-fired power plants
- Understand the effect of air pollution on human health
- Explain how to reduce air pollution by conserving natural resources
- Compare and contrast fresh water, salt water, and wastewater
- Understand that many living things, including humans, need fresh water to survive, and that there is a limited supply of fresh water on Earth
- Identify sources of water pollution, including factory waste and garbage
- Explain that a water treatment plant can remove unhealthy chemicals and pollutants from water to make it usable again
- Understand what a conservationist does
- Understand that John Muir was one of the first conservationists
- Identify possible solutions to the problems discussed throughout the domain
- Understand the importance of individual actions to take care of the earth

Presidents and American Symbols

- Name the current president of the United States
- Recognize the White House as the president's home
- Describe Washington, D.C., as the city where the current president lives and where monuments of past presidents can be found
- Identify the American flag
- Describe the differences between a president and a king
- Name George Washington as someone admired for his honesty
- Understand that the cherry tree story is a legend
- Describe George Washington as a general who fought for American independence
- Recognize that General Washington led his army to victory even though his army was smaller than the English army
- Recognize George Washington as the first president of the United States
- Recognize the sacrifices George Washington made for the country
- Recognize Thomas Jefferson as the third president of the United States
- Identify Thomas Jefferson as the primary author of the Declaration of Independence
- Describe the purpose of the Declaration of Independence as a statement of America's liberty
- Identify the Statue of Liberty
- Recognize Abraham Lincoln as an important president of the United States

- Identify that Abraham Lincoln was known as “Honest Abe”
- Recognize Theodore Roosevelt as an important president of the United States
- Know that Theodore Roosevelt overcame childhood health problems
- Know that Theodore Roosevelt loved the outdoors
- Know that Theodore Roosevelt worked for nature conservation
- Identify the Mount Rushmore presidents
- Describe Mount Rushmore as a monument

First Grade

Fables and Stories

- Demonstrate familiarity with particular fables and stories
- Identify characteristics of fables: short, moral, personification
- Explain in their own words the moral of a particular fable
- Identify character, plot, and setting as basic story elements
- Describe the characters, plot, and setting of a given fable or story
- Understand that fables and folktales are two types of fiction

Builds on the following objectives targeted in kindergarten:

- Nursery Rhymes and Fables
 - Demonstrate familiarity with nursery rhymes and fables
 - Describe the characters and events in nursery rhymes and fables
 - Explain that fables teach a lesson that is stated as the moral of the story
 - Identify the moral of fables
 - Explain how animals often act as people in fables (personification)
- Stories
 - Listen to and then demonstrate familiarity with stories, including the ideas they express
 - Understand that fiction can be in many different forms, including folktales, trickster tales, and tall tales
 - Identify the setting of a given story
 - Identify the characters of a given story
 - Identify the plot of a given story

The Human Body

- Understand that the human body is a network of systems
- Identify each of the five body systems: skeletal, muscular, digestive, circulatory, and nervous
- Recall basic facts about the skeletal system
- Recall basic facts about the muscular system
- Define the heart as a muscle that never stops working
- Recall basic facts about the digestive system
- Recall basic facts about the circulatory system
- Recall basic facts about the nervous system
- Identify the brain as the body's control center
- Understand that germs may cause disease in the body
- Explain the importance of vaccination in preventing disease
- Identify Edward Jenner as the man who developed the first vaccine
- Identify Louis Pasteur as the man who discovered pasteurization
- Explain the importance of exercise, cleanliness, a balanced diet, and rest for bodily health
- Explain the importance of regular checkups
- Explain the importance of vaccinations
- Identify the food pyramid and its component food groups

Builds on the following objectives targeted in kindergarten:

- The Five Senses
 - Identify and demonstrate understanding of the five senses: sight, hearing, smell, taste, and touch
 - Identify each of the body parts associated with the five senses
 - Provide simple explanations about how the eyes, ears, nose, tongue, and skin work and their function
 - Describe how the five senses help humans learn about their world

Different Lands, Similar Stories

- Understand that fictional stories come from the author’s imagination
- Identify folktales as a type of fiction
- Understand that stories have a beginning, middle, and end
- Describe the characters, plot, and setting of *Little Red Riding Hood*
- Describe the characters, plot, and setting of *Lon Po Po*
- Describe the characters, plot, and setting of *Pretty Salma*
- Describe the characters, plot, and setting of *Tom Thumb*
- Describe the characters, plot, and setting of *Thumbelina*
- Describe the characters, plot, and setting of *Issun Boshi*
- Describe the characters, plot, and setting of *Mufaro’s Beautiful Daughters*
- Describe the characters, plot, and setting of *The Irish Cinderlad*
- Understand that people from different lands tell similar stories

Builds on the following objectives targeted in kindergarten:

- Stories
 - Listen to and then demonstrate familiarity with stories, including the ideas they express
 - Understand that fiction can be in many different forms, including folktales, trickster tales, and tall tales
 - Identify the setting of a given story
 - Identify the characters of a given story
 - Identify the plot of a given story
- Kings and Queens
 - Describe what a king or queen does
 - Identify and describe royal objects associated with a king or queen
 - Indicate that kings and queens still exist today, but that there were many more kings and queens long ago
 - Describe a royal family
 - Describe the behaviors that reinforce that kings and queens are royal
 - Discuss the lessons in *Cinderella* and in *Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs*, which show that goodness prevails and is rewarded

Early World Civilizations

- Locate the area known as Mesopotamia on a world map or globe, and identify it as a part of Asia
- Explain the importance of rivers, canals, and flooding to support farming in Mesopotamia and ancient Egypt
- Describe the city of Babylon
- Identify and describe the significance of structures built in Mesopotamia and ancient Egypt
- Identify the way of writing in Mesopotamia and ancient Egypt
- Explain why writing is important to a civilization
- Describe the Code of Hammurabi
- Explain why rules and laws are important to the development of a civilization
- Recognize how a leader is important to the development of a civilization
- Describe aspects of religion in Mesopotamia and ancient Egypt
- Identify Mesopotamia as the “Cradle of Civilization”
- Understand that a civilization evolves and changes over time
- Locate Egypt on a world map or globe, and identify it as a part of Africa
- Explain that much of Egypt is the Sahara Desert
- Identify and explain the significance of Hatshepsut and Tutankhamun as pharaohs of ancient Egypt
- Describe key components of a civilization
- Understand that much of what we know about ancient Egypt is because of the work of archaeologists

Three World Religions (Optional)

- Identify Judaism, Christianity, and Islam as major monotheistic world religions
- Locate Jerusalem and the area known as the Middle East on a map
- Define monotheism as the belief in one God
- Identify the Western Wall (or the Wailing Wall) as associated with Judaism, the church of the Holy Sepulchre with Christianity, and the Dome of the Rock with Islam
- Identify the Hebrews as the ancient people who were descendants of Abraham
- Identify the names for followers of Judaism, Christianity, and Islam
- Identify Moses, Jesus Christ, and Muhammad and their significance
- Demonstrate familiarity with holidays associated with Judaism, Christianity, and Islam
- Recognize symbols for Judaism, Christianity, and Islam
- Identify the holy book of Judaism, Christianity, and Islam
- Identify places of worship for Judaism, Christianity, and Islam
- Understand that the religion of Christianity developed after Judaism
- Recognize that both Christians and Jews follow the Ten Commandments
- Understand that Islam originated in Arabia

Does not build on any objectives targeted in kindergarten

Early American Civilizations

- Locate the continents of Asia and North America on a world map or globe
- Understand that prehistoric nomads followed the animals they hunted
- Explain the importance of hunting among early peoples
- Understand that the first people in North America arrived by crossing a “land bridge” between Asia and North America
- Understand that a shift occurred from hunting and gathering to farming among early peoples
- Compare and contrast hunter-gatherer societies and Mayan society
- Understand the importance of extended family to the Maya
- Identify the area in which the Maya, Aztec, and Inca each lived
- Understand that the Maya developed large cities or population centers in the rainforests of Mexico and Central America many, many years ago
- Understand that the Maya, Aztec, and Inca had a religion, leaders, towns, and farming
- Understand that much of what we know about the Maya and the Inca is because of the work of archaeologists
- Understand that the Aztecs established a vast empire in central Mexico many, many years ago
- Identify the Aztec capital as Tenochtitlan
- Recognize by name the emperor of the Aztec, Moctezuma
- Understand that the Inca established a far-ranging empire in the Andes Mountains of Peru and Chile many, many years ago
- Recall that Machu Picchu is an Incan city

Does not build on any objectives targeted in kindergarten

Mozart and Music

- Identify Mozart as a famous musician and composer who lived over two hundred years ago
- Describe Mozart as a prodigy, talented at a very young age
- Describe an instrument as an object designed to make musical sounds
- Identify a composer as a person who writes music by recording musical notes
- Describe instrumental music as a type of music that is produced by musical instruments only and does not include singing
- Retell the major events of Mozart’s life

- Recognize, sing, and play simple rhythms and melodies
- Understand the role of a patron in Mozart's time in as someone who helped a musician succeed
- Describe keyboard instruments, and name at least one example of a keyboard instrument
- Describe the woodwinds section of the orchestra, and name at least two woodwind instruments
- Describe opera as a performance in which singers tell a story with the help of the orchestra
- Describe a symphony as a composition, which uses many different instruments
- Identify the conductor as the leader of the orchestra
- Describe the brass section of the orchestra, and name at least two brass instruments
- Identify the conductor as the leader of the orchestra
- Recognize and begin to describe the mood of a piece of music

Builds on the following objectives targeted in kindergarten:

- Kings and Queens
 - Describe what a king or queen does
 - Identify and describe royal objects associated with a king or queen
 - Indicate that kings and queens still exist today, but that there were many more kings and queens long ago
 - Describe a royal family
 - Describe the behaviors that reinforce that kings and queens are royal
- Identify the beat in music, and increase his/her ability to keep a steady beat
- Describe the percussion section of the orchestra, and name at least two percussion instruments
- Describe the strings section of the orchestra, and name at least two stringed instruments
- Identify the four sections of the orchestra: woodwinds, brass, percussion, and strings

Astronomy

- Recognize the sun in the sky
- Understand that the sun, moon, and stars are located in outer space
- Understand that the sun is a source of energy, light, and heat
- Classify the sun as a star
- Identify Earth as a planet and our home
- Identify the Earth's rotation or spin as the cause of day and night
- Understand that other parts of the world experience nighttime while we have daytime
- Explain sunrise and sunset
- Understand that Earth orbits the sun
- Understand that stars are large, although they appear small in the night sky
- Describe stars as hot, distant, and made of gas
- Understand that astronomers study the moon and stars using telescopes
- Understand that people sometimes tell stories about the moon and stars
- Explain what a constellation is
- Identify the Big Dipper and the North Star
- Identify the four phases of the moon—new, crescent, half, full
- Understand that astronauts travel to outer space
- Describe the landing on the moon by American astronauts
- Explain the importance of the first trip to the moon
- State that the moon orbits the earth
- Explain that our solar system includes the sun and the planets that orbit around it
- Indicate that there are eight planets (Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune)
- Classify Pluto as a dwarf planet

Builds on the following objectives targeted in kindergarten:

- Seasons and Weather
 - Demonstrate understanding of the following units of time and their relationship to one another: day, week, month, year
 - Name the four seasons in cyclical order, as experienced in the United States, and correctly name a few characteristics of each season
 - Characterize winter as generally the coldest season, summer as generally the warmest season, and spring and autumn as transitional seasons
 - Characterize the North and South Poles as always cold in temperature, the middle section of the earth as usually warm, and the United States as having four seasons
 - Describe any unique seasonal differences that are characteristic of their own locality (change of color and dropping of leaves in autumn; snow or ice in winter; increased rain and/or flooding in spring, etc.)
 - Identify a thermometer as an instrument used to measure temperature and describe how it works, i.e., when the liquid in the thermometer rises, it is hotter outside; when the liquid descends, it is cooler
- Taking Care of the Earth
 - Understand that Earth is composed of land, water, and air
 - Understand that humans, plants, and animals depend on Earth's land, water, and air to live
 - Understand that natural resources are things found in nature that are valuable and of great importance to people
 - Understand that land, air, and water all suffer from different types of pollution, and all types of pollution are caused by human activities
 - Understand that air pollution from one location can make even the air that is far away in other places around the world dirty
 - Compare and contrast fresh water, salt water, and wastewater
 - Understand that many living things, including humans, need fresh water to survive, and that there is a limited supply of fresh water on Earth

The History of the Earth

- Identify geographical features of the earth's surface: oceans and continents
- Locate the North Pole, the South Pole, and the equator on a globe
- Describe the shape of the earth
- Understand that much of our knowledge of the earth and its history is the result of the work of many scientists
- Identify the layers of the earth: crust, mantle, core (outer and inner)
- Describe the crust
- Describe each of the layers inside the earth
- Describe volcanoes and geysers
- Identify common minerals in the earth
- Explain how minerals are used by people
- Identify the three types of rocks: metamorphic, sedimentary, and igneous
- Describe how heat, pressure, and time cause many changes inside the earth
- Describe how rocks and minerals are taken from the earth
- Describe fossils
- Explain how fossils provide information about the history of the earth
- Explain how we know about dinosaurs
- Describe various dinosaurs
- Explain the significance of the La Brea Tar Pits

Builds on the following objectives targeted in kindergarten:

- Plants
 - Understand that there are many different kinds and sizes of plants

Understand that different kinds of plants grow in different environments
 Describe what plants need to live and grow: food, water, air, and sunlight
 Identify the root, stem, branch, leaf, flower, fruit, and seed of a plant

- Taking Care of the Earth

Understand that Earth is composed of land, water, and air

Identify examples of land, water, and air from their own environments

Understand that humans, plants, and animals depend on Earth's land, water, and air to live

Understand that natural resources are things found in nature that are valuable and of great importance to people

Identify key natural resources and describe how people use them

Animals and Habitats

- Describe what a habitat is
- Understand that living things live in habitats to which they are particularly suited
- Identify the characteristics of the Arctic tundra habitat
- Explain how Arctic animals have adapted to the Arctic tundra habitat
- Identify the characteristics of the Arctic Ocean habitat
- Explain how Arctic animals have adapted to the Arctic Ocean habitat
- Identify the characteristics of the desert habitat
- Explain how desert animals have adapted to the desert habitat
- Identify the characteristics of the grassland habitat
- Explain how grassland animals have adapted to the grassland habitat
- Identify the characteristics of the temperate deciduous forest habitat
- Explain how temperate deciduous forest animals have adapted to the temperate deciduous forest habitat
- Identify the characteristics of the tropical rainforest habitat
- Explain how tropical rainforest animals have adapted to the tropical rainforest habitat
- Identify the characteristics of the freshwater habitat
- Understand that saltwater covers most of Earth and is found in several oceans
- Match specific plants and animals to their habitats
- Classify animals on the basis of the types of food they eat (herbivore, carnivore, omnivore)
- Describe the landscape of the ocean floor
- Understand that ocean life is very diverse
- Understand that water covers most of Earth and is found in several oceans
- Classify water habitats as either freshwater or saltwater habitats
- Understand why and how habitat destruction can cause extinction
- Identify the characteristics of the bald eagles' habitat
- Identify and locate the oceans of the world on a globe: Arctic, Pacific, Atlantic, Indian, Southern

Builds on the following objectives targeted in kindergarten:

- Plants

Understand that plants are living things

Describe what plants need to live and grow: food, water, air, and sunlight

Understand that there are many different kinds and sizes of plants

Understand that different kinds of plants grow in different environments

Identify the root, stem, leaf, flower, and seed of a plant

Explain that roots anchor the plant and take in water and nutrients

Explain that stems support the plant and carry water and nutrients to the various parts of the plant

Explain that the plant makes its food in the leaves

- Understand the basic life cycle of plants
- Compare and contrast deciduous and evergreen plants
- Farms
 - Identify needs of farm animals: food; water; and space to live and grow
 - Describe how farm animal babies need to be fed and cared for by their parents or people
 - Match pictures and/or names of farm animal babies to their adult parents
- Seasons and Weather
 - Characterize the North and South Poles as always cold in temperature, the middle section of the earth as usually warm, and the United States as having four seasons
 - Name the four seasons in cyclical order, as experienced in the United States, and correctly name a few characteristics of each season
 - Characterize winter as generally the coldest season, summer as generally the warmest season, and spring and autumn as transitional seasons
 - Describe any unique seasonal differences that are characteristic of their own locality (change of color and dropping of leaves in autumn; snow or ice in winter; increased rain and/or flooding in spring, etc.)
 - Describe the daily weather conditions of their own locality in terms of temperature (hot, warm, cool, cold), cloud cover (sunny or cloudy), and precipitation (rain, snow, or sleet)
- Taking Care of the Earth
 - Understand that humans, plants, and animals depend on Earth's land, water, and air to live.
 - Explain why people have a special responsibility to take care of the earth
 - Understand that humans generate large amounts of garbage which must be disposed of
 - Sequence what happens to garbage from its creation to being dumped in the landfill
 - Understand that natural resources are things found in nature that are valuable and of great importance to people
 - Recognize the phrase, "Reduce, reuse, recycle!" and explain how doing these three things can help to conserve natural resources
 - Understand that land, air, and water all suffer from different kinds of pollution, and all types of pollution are caused by human activities
 - Identify sources of air pollution, including cars and electricity produced by coal-fired power plants
 - Understand the effect of air pollution on human health
 - Compare and contrast fresh water, salt water, and waste water
 - Understand that many living things, including humans, need fresh water to survive, and that there is a limited supply of fresh water on Earth
 - Identify sources of water pollution, including factory waste and garbage

Fairy Tales

- Demonstrate familiarity with the fairy tale *Sleeping Beauty*
- Recognize what makes fairy tales different from other types of stories
- Identify common characteristics of fairy tales, such as "once upon a time" beginnings, royal characters, elements of fantasy, problems and solutions, and happy endings
- Identify the fairy tale elements of *Sleeping Beauty*
- Demonstrate familiarity with the fairy tale *Rumpelstiltskin*
- Identify the fairy tale elements of *Rumpelstiltskin*
- Identify the fairy tale elements of *Rapunzel*
- Demonstrate familiarity with the fairy tale *Rapunzel*
- Identify the fairy tale elements of *The Princess and the Pea*
- Compare and contrast different adaptations of fairy tales
- Demonstrate familiarity with the fairy tale *The Princess and the Pea*
- Demonstrate familiarity with the fairy tale *The Frog Prince*

- Identify the fairy tale elements of *The Frog Prince*
- Demonstrate familiarity with the fairy tale *Puss-in-Boots*
- Identify the fairy tale elements of *Puss-in-Boots*
- Identify the fairy tale elements of *Hansel and Gretel*
- Demonstrate familiarity with the fairy tale *Hansel and Gretel*
- Identify the fairy tale elements of *Jack and the Beanstalk*
- Demonstrate familiarity with the fairy tale *Jack and the Beanstalk*

Builds on the following objectives targeted in kindergarten:

- Stories
 - Listen to and then demonstrate familiarity with stories, including the ideas they express
 - Understand that fiction can be in many different forms, including folktales, trickster tales, and tall tales
 - Identify the setting of a given story
 - Identify the characters of a given story
 - Identify the plot of a given story
- Kings and Queens
 - Describe what a king or queen does
 - Identify and describe royal objects associated with a king or queen
 - Describe a royal family
 - Describe appropriate dress and manners used in meeting and/or talking with kings and queens

The Birth of Our Nation

- Identify the early English settlements on Roanoke Island and at Jamestown as colonies that were established before the Pilgrims landed at Plymouth Rock
- Understand that the first Africans in the English colonies came to Jamestown as indentured servants, not slaves
- Describe how the thirteen English colonies in America evolved from dependence on Great Britain to independence as a nation
- Locate the thirteen original colonies
- Describe the contributions of George Washington as Patriot, military commander, and first president
- Identify Washington, D.C., as the nation’s capital
- Explain that the nation’s capital, Washington, D.C., was named after George Washington
- Identify Martha Washington as the wife of George Washington
- Describe the contributions of Benjamin Franklin as Patriot, inventor, and writer
- Identify Thomas Jefferson as the author of the Declaration of Independence and the third president of the U.S.
- Explain the significance of the Declaration of Independence
- Identify “We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal . . .” as a part of the Declaration of Independence
- Describe the Boston Tea Party
- Explain the significance of Paul Revere’s ride
- Identify “One if by land, two if by sea”
- Identify Minutemen, Redcoats, and “the shot heard round the world”
- Explain the significance of The Fourth of July
- Retell the legend of Betsy Ross and the flag
- Describe the roles of African Americans, Native Americans, and women during the evolution from thirteen English colonies in America to independence as a nation
- Identify the U.S. flag, the Liberty Bell, and the bald eagle
- Explain the significance of the flag, the Liberty Bell, and the bald eagle as U.S. symbols

Builds on the following objectives targeted in kindergarten:

- Native Americans

- Explain that there are many tribes of Native Americans
- Identify the environment in which the Sioux lived
- Identify the Sioux as a nomadic tribe
- Describe the food, clothing, and shelter of the Sioux
- Understand the importance of the buffalo to the Sioux
- Identify the environment in which the Wampanoag lived
- Understand how the Wampanoag tribe lived
- Identify the Wampanoag as a settled tribe
- Describe the food, clothing, and shelter of the Wampanoag
- Understand that Native Americans still live in the U.S. today
- Kings and Queens
 - Describe what a king or queen does
- Columbus and The Pilgrims
 - Identify the continents of North America, South America, Europe, Africa, and Asia
 - Understand why Europeans wanted to travel to Asia
 - Describe the accomplishments of Christopher Columbus
 - Recall the year of Columbus's first voyage to America: 1492
 - Explain why Columbus called the land "India" and the inhabitants "Indians"
 - Explain why Europeans eventually thought Columbus had discovered a "New World"
 - Identify reasons why the Pilgrims left England
 - Describe the Pilgrims' voyage on the Mayflower
 - Explain the significance of Plymouth Rock
 - Describe the Pilgrims' first year in America
 - Describe the first Thanksgiving Day celebration
- Colonial Towns and Townspeople
 - Describe some features of colonial towns, such as a town square, shops, and adjacent buildings
- Presidents and American Symbols
 - Describe George Washington as a general who fought for American independence
 - Recognize that general Washington led his army to victory even though it was smaller than the English army
 - Recognize George Washington as the first President of the United States
 - Describe the differences between a president and a king
 - Identify the American flag
 - Recognize Thomas Jefferson as the third President of the United States
 - Identify Thomas Jefferson as the primary author of the Declaration of Independence
 - Describe the purpose of the Declaration of Independence as a statement of America's liberty

Frontier Explorers

- Locate the Appalachian Mountains on a map
- Recall basic facts about Daniel Boone
- Understand that Daniel Boone was a trailblazer
- Understand what the term "Wilderness Road" refers to
- Locate the Mississippi River on a map
- Locate the Rocky Mountains on a map
- Identify and locate the Louisiana Territory on a map
- Understand the significance of the Louisiana Purchase
- Explain the reasons that Lewis and Clark went on their expedition
- Understand that while the territory acquired in the Louisiana Purchase had not been explored or settled by people who lived in other parts of the United States until Lewis and Clark went on their expedition, there were many, many Native American tribes already living there
- Recall basic facts about Lewis and Clark's encounters with Native Americans

- Explain why and how Sacagawea helped Lewis and Clark

Builds on the following objectives targeted in kindergarten:

- Native Americans
 - Explain that there are many tribes of Native Americans
 - Identify the environment in which the Sioux lived
 - Identify the Sioux as a nomadic tribe
 - Describe the food, clothing, and shelter of the Sioux
 - Understand the importance of the buffalo to the Sioux
 - Identify the environment in which the Wampanoag lived
 - Understand how the Wampanoag tribe lived
 - Identify the Wampanoag as a settled tribe
 - Describe the food, clothing, and shelter of the Wampanoag
 - Understand that Native Americans still live in the U.S. today
- Columbus and The Pilgrims
 - Identify the continents of North America, South America, Europe, Africa, and Asia
 - Understand why Europeans wanted to travel to Asia
 - Describe the accomplishments of Christopher Columbus
 - Recall the year of Columbus's first voyage to America: 1492
 - Explain why Columbus called the land "India" and the inhabitants "Indians"
 - Explain why Europeans eventually thought Columbus had discovered a "New World"
 - Identify reasons why the Pilgrims left England
 - Describe the Pilgrims' voyage on the Mayflower
 - Explain the significance of Plymouth Rock
 - Describe the Pilgrims' first year in America
 - Describe the first Thanksgiving Day celebration
- Kings and Queens
 - Describe what a king or queen does
- Colonial Towns and Townspeople
 - Describe some features of colonial towns, such as a town square, shops, and adjacent buildings
- American Presidents and Symbols
 - Describe the differences between a president and a king
 - Recognize Thomas Jefferson as the third President of the United States
 - Identify Thomas Jefferson as the primary author of the Declaration of Independence
 - Describe the purpose of the Declaration of Independence as a statement of America's liberty

Second Grade*

*This listing is incomplete. The materials development of Grade 2 CKLA was in progress at the time of this listing.

Stories and Poetry

- Demonstrate familiarity with a particular fairy tale *Beauty and the Beast*
- Describe the characters, plot, and setting of a particular fairy tale
- Identify common characteristics of fairy tales such as “once upon a time” beginnings, royal characters, magical characters or events, and happy endings
- Identify the fairy tale elements of a particular fairy tale
- Identify fairy tales as a type of fiction
- Understand a particular poem or poems
- Recall some of the ideas expressed and some of the memorable words or phrases in these poems
- Understand the difference between lyric and narrative poems
- Recognize that narrative poems have characters, settings, plot, and dialogue
- Identify lyric poems as short, musical works that express ideas and feelings of one speaker
- Recognize that some poems contain rhyme that is not exact
- Identify words or phrases that appeal to the senses of sight, sound, taste, smell or touch
- Understand that poems often include similes or metaphors that compare two or more things
- Demonstrate familiarity with specific tall tales
- Identify the characters, plot, and setting of specific tall tales
- Identify tall tales as a type of fiction
- Identify exaggerations as a characteristic of tall tales
- Identify the exaggerations in specific tall tales

Builds on the following objectives targeted in Kindergarten and Grade 1:

- Nursery Rhymes and Fables (Kindergarten)
 - Describe the characters and events in nursery rhymes and fables
 - Explain how animals often act as people in fables (personification)
 - Recite some nursery rhymes
 - Identify rhyming words in nursery rhymes
 - Identify lines that repeat, and/or dialogue in nursery rhymes
- Stories (Kindergarten)
 - Listen to and then demonstrate familiarity with stories, including the ideas they express
 - Understand that fiction can be in many different forms, including folktales, trickster tales, and tall tales
 - Identify the setting of a given story
 - Identify the characters of a given story
 - Identify the plot of a given story
- Fables and Stories (Grade 1)
 - Demonstrate familiarity with particular fables and stories
 - Identify character, plot, and setting as basic story elements
 - Describe the characters, plot, and setting of a given fable or story
 - Understand that fables and folktales are two types of fiction

Cycles in Nature

- Define the term *cycle*
- Define the term *seasonal cycle*
- Recognize that Earth orbits the sun and the sun does not move
- Understand that it takes one year for Earth’s orbit of the sun
- Explain the cause for seasons

- Identify four seasons in the U.S.: spring, summer, autumn (fall), winter
- Explain effects of seasonal changes on plants and animals
- Describe plant and animal processes in spring
- Describe plant and animal processes in summer
- Describe plant and animal processes in autumn
- Describe plant and animal processes in winter
- Define the term *life cycle*
- Identify four stages of the life cycle: birth, growth, reproduction, and death
- Describe the life cycle of a flowering plant (seed to seed)
- Describe the life cycle of a chicken (egg to egg)
- Describe the life cycle of a frog (egg to egg)
- Describe the life cycle of a butterfly (egg to egg)
- Define the term *metamorphosis*
- Recognize that most of Earth's surface is covered by water
- Identify the three states of matter in which water exists: solid, liquid, and gas
- Define the term *water cycle*
- Understand that there is a limited amount of water on Earth
- Describe evaporation and condensation
- Identify forms of precipitation
- Define humidity as the amount of moisture in the air
- Describe the formation of clouds
- Identify three types of clouds: cirrus, cumulus, and stratus
- Understand that not all water cycles back into the air
- Identify groundwater as a water resource for humans

Builds on the following objectives targeted in Kindergarten and Grade 1:

- Plants (Kindergarten)
 - Understand that plants are living things
 - Describe what plants need to live and grow: food, water, air, and sunlight
 - Understand that there are many different kinds and sizes of plants
 - Understand that different kinds of plants grow in different environments
 - Identify the root, stem, leaf, flower, and seed of a plant
 - Explain that roots anchor the plant and take in water and nutrients
 - Explain that stems support the plant and carry water and nutrients to the various parts of the plant
 - Explain that the plant makes its food in the leaves
 - Understand the basic life cycle of plants
- Farms (Kindergarten)
 - Identify needs of farm animals: food; water; and space to live and grow
 - Describe how farm animal babies need to be fed and cared for by their parents or people
 - Match pictures and/or names of farm animal babies to their adult parents
- Seasons and Weather (Kindergarten)
 - Demonstrate understanding of the following units of time and their relationship to one another: day, week, month, year
 - Identify a thermometer as an instrument used to measure temperature and describe how it works, i.e., when the liquid in the thermometer rises, it is hotter outside; when the liquid descends, it is cooler
 - Name the four seasons in cyclical order, as experienced in the United States, and correctly name a few characteristics of each season
 - Characterize winter as generally the coldest season, summer as generally the warmest season, and spring and autumn as transitional seasons
 - Describe any unique seasonal differences that are characteristic of their own locality (change of color and dropping of leaves in autumn; snow or ice in winter; increased rain and/or flooding in spring, etc.)

Describe the daily weather conditions of their own locality in terms of temperature (hot, warm, cool, cold), cloud cover (sunny or cloudy), and precipitation (rain, snow, or sleet)

- Taking Care of the Earth (Kindergarten)
 - Understand that Earth is composed of land, water, and air
 - Understand that humans, plants, and animals depend on Earth's land, water, and air to live
 - Compare and contrast fresh water, salt water, and wastewater
 - Understand that many living things, including humans, need fresh water to survive, and that there is a limited supply of fresh water on Earth
 - Explain why people have a special responsibility to take care of the earth
- Astronomy (Grade 1)
 - Recognize the sun in the sky
 - Understand that the sun, moon, and stars are located in outer space
 - Understand that the sun is a source of energy, light, and heat
 - Classify the sun as a star
 - Identify Earth as a planet and our home
 - Identify the Earth's rotation or spin as the cause of day and night
 - Understand that other parts of the world experience nighttime while we have daytime
 - Explain sunrise and sunset
 - Understand that Earth orbits the sun
- Animals and Habitats (Grade 1)
 - Describe what a habitat is
 - Understand that living things live in habitats to which they are particularly suited
 - Identify the characteristics of specific habitats
 - Match specific plants and animals to their habitat
 - Explain how certain animals have adapted to their habitat
 - Understand that water covers most of Earth and is found in several oceans
 - Classify bodies of water as saltwater or freshwater habitats

Insects

- Classify insects as small six-legged animals
- Identify body parts of insects: head, thorax, abdomen (wings—optional)
- Describe composition and purpose of an insect's exoskeleton
- Define metamorphosis
- Recognize that most insects undergo a complete metamorphosis
- Describe four stages of the life cycle of insects that metamorphose
- Recognize that some newborn insects resemble the adults of their species
- Describe the molting process of some insects
- Distinguish between social and solitary insects
- Identify groups of social insects
- Describe the social behavior of an ant colony
- Describe the roles of honeybee workers, drones, and queens
- Cite ways in which insects may be helpful to people
- Cite ways in which insects may be harmful to people

Builds on the following objectives targeted in Kindergarten and Grade 1:

- Plants (Kindergarten)
 - Understand that plants are living things
 - Describe what plants need to live and grow: food, water, air, and light
 - Understand that there are many different kinds and sizes of plants
 - Understand that different kinds of plants grow in different environments
 - Identify the root, stem, leaf, flower, and seed of a plant

- Explain that roots anchor the plant and take in water and nutrients
- Explain that stems support the plant and carry water and nutrients to the various parts of the plant
- Explain that the plant makes its food in the leaves
- Understand the basic life cycle of plants
- Farms (Kindergarten)
 - Identify needs of farm animals: food; water; and space to live and grow
 - Describe how farm animal babies need to be fed and cared for by their parents or people
 - Match pictures and/or names of farm animal babies to their adult parents
- Seasons and Weather (Kindergarten)
 - Name the four seasons in cyclical order, as experienced in the United States, and correctly name a few characteristics of each season
 - Describe any unique seasonal differences that are characteristic of their own locality (change of color and dropping of leaves in autumn; snow or ice in winter; increased rain and/or flooding in spring, etc.)
- Taking Care of the Earth (Kindergarten)
 - Understand that humans, plants, and animals depend on Earth's land, water, and air to live
 - Explain why people have a special responsibility to take care of the earth
- Animals and Habitats (Grade 1)
 - Describe what a habitat is
 - Understand that living things live in habitats to which they are particularly suited
 - Identify the characteristics of specific habitats
 - Match specific plants and animals to their habitat
 - Explain how certain animals have adapted to their habitat

Westward Expansion

- Learn that the frontier shifted west and southwest as the country grew
- Describe what life was like for pioneers who headed west
- Identify boats, canals, and trains as new forms of transportation that increased the movement of people west
- Identify Robert Fulton as the developer of the steamboat
- Describe the importance of the steamboat
- Describe the importance of canals
- Identify the Erie Canal as the most famous of canals built during the 'Canal Era'
- Explain the advantages of rail travel
- Identify "iron horse" as the nickname given to the first trains in America
- Identify the Transcontinental Railroad as a link between East and West
- Identify the Oregon Trail as an arduous trail traversed by wagon trains
- Identify the Pony Express as a horseback mail delivery system
- Explain that western expansion meant displacement of Native Americans
- Recognize that the development of the railroad ushered in a new era of mass exodus of the Native Americans from their land
- Describe effect of diminishing buffalo on life of Plains Native Americans
- Explain that U.S. government forced Native Americans from their lands
- Identify the Trail of Tears as forced march of the Cherokee
- Identify Sequoyah as the developer of a writing system for the Cherokee language

Builds on the following objectives targeted in Kindergarten and Grade 1:

- Native Americans (Kindergarten)
 - Explain that there are many tribes of Native Americans
 - Identify the environment in which the Sioux lived
 - Identify the Sioux as a nomadic tribe

- Describe the food, clothing, and shelter of the Sioux
- Understand the importance of the buffalo to the Sioux
- Identify the environment in which the Wampanoag lived
- Understand how the Wampanoag tribe lived
- Identify the Wampanoag as a settled tribe
- Describe the food, clothing, and shelter of the Wampanoag
- Understand that Native Americans still live in the U.S. today
- Columbus and The Pilgrims (Kindergarten)
 - Recall the year of Columbus’s first voyage to America: 1492
 - Explain why Columbus called the land “India” and the inhabitants “Indians”
 - Identify why Europeans eventually thought Columbus had discovered a “New World”
 - Identify reasons why Pilgrims left England
 - Explain the significance of Plymouth Rock
- Colonial Towns and Townspeople (Kindergarten)
 - Describe some features of colonial towns, such as a town square, shops, and adjacent buildings
- Presidents and American Symbols (Kindergarten)
 - Describe the differences between a president and a king
 - Identify the American flag
 - Recognize Thomas Jefferson as the third President of the United States
- The Birth of Our Nation (Grade 1)
 - Identify the early English settlements on Roanoke Island and at Jamestown as colonies that were established before the Pilgrims landed at Plymouth Rock
 - Describe how the thirteen English colonies in America evolved from dependence on Great Britain to independence as a nation
 - Locate the thirteen original colonies
 - Describe the contributions of George Washington as Patriot, military commander, and first president
 - Identify Washington, D.C., as the nation’s capital
 - Explain that the nation’s capital, Washington, D.C., was named after George Washington
 - Explain the significance of The Fourth of July
 - Describe the roles of African Americans, Native Americans, and women during the evolution from thirteen English colonies in America to independence as a nation
- Frontier Explorers (Grade 1)
 - Locate the Appalachian Mountains on a map
 - Locate the Mississippi River on a map
 - Locate the Rocky Mountains on a map
 - Identify and locate the Louisiana Territory on a map
 - Understand the significance of the Louisiana Purchase
 - Explain the reasons that Lewis and Clark went on their expedition
 - Understand that while the territory acquired in the Louisiana Purchase had not been explored or settled by people who lived in other parts of the United States until Lewis and Clark went on their expedition, there were many, many Native American tribes already living there
 - Recall basic facts about Lewis and Clark’s encounters with Native Americans
 - Explain why and how Sacagawea helped Lewis and Clark

The U.S. Civil War

- Describe slavery and the controversy over slavery in the United States
- Identify the Underground Railroad as a system of escape for slaves in the United States
- Describe the life and contributions of Harriet Tubman
- Differentiate between the North and South

- Differentiate between the Union and the Confederacy and the states associated with each
- Identify the people of the South as “Rebels” and those of the North as “Yankees”
- Describe why the Southern states seceded from the United States
- Define the difference between the Union and the Confederacy
- Describe the life and contributions of Abraham Lincoln
- Explain Abraham Lincoln’s role in keeping the Union together during the Civil War
- Identify Clara Barton as the “Angel of the Battlefield” and the founder of the American Red Cross
- Describe the work of the American Red Cross
- Recall that Robert E. Lee was the commander of the Confederate army
- Understand Lee’s reluctance to command the Union or the Confederate Army
- Recall that Ulysses S. Grant was the commander of the Union army
- Identify Abraham Lincoln as the author of the Emancipation Proclamation
- Explain the significance of the Emancipation Proclamation
- Identify the Civil War or the War Between the States as a war waged because of differences between the North and South
- Explain that the North’s victory united the North and South as one country and ended slavery
- Describe the life and contributions of Elijah McCoy
- Demonstrate familiarity with the poem “Harriet Tubman”
- Demonstrate familiarity with the poem “Lincoln”
- Demonstrate familiarity with the songs “Follow the Drinking Gourd” and “Swing Low, Sweet Chariot”
- Demonstrate familiarity with the song “Dixie”
- Demonstrate familiarity with the song “When Johnny Comes Marching Home”

Builds on the following objectives targeted in Kindergarten and Grade 1:

- Presidents and American Symbols (Kindergarten)
Recognize Abraham Lincoln as an important President of the United States
Identify that Abraham Lincoln was known as “Honest Abe”
- The Birth of Our Nation (Grade 1)
Describe how the thirteen English colonies in America evolved from dependence on Great Britain to independence as a nation

Charlotte’s Web I

- Understand that stories are one type of fiction
- Understand that fiction comes from the author’s imagination
- Understand why some stories are called *classics*
- Identify character, plot, and setting as basic story elements
- Describe the characters, plot, and setting of *Charlotte’s Web*
- Describe some aspects of life on a farm
- Define and identify the elements of narration and dialogue
- Define and identify the element of description
- Define and identify the element of personification
- Identify words or phrases that appeal to the senses of sight, sound, taste, smell, or touch
- Understand that an author sometimes gives the reader hints of things to come
- Recall that spiders are not insects
- Recall the seasons and the order in which they occur
- Understand how seasons affect life on a farm
- Have a general understanding of spiders and their anatomy

Builds on the following objectives targeted in Kindergarten and Grade 1:

- Stories (Kindergarten)
Listen to and then demonstrate familiarity with stories, including the ideas they express

- Farms (Kindergarten)
 - Sequence the seasonal rhythm of planting, growing, and harvesting
 - Identify buildings found on farms
 - Identify machines and tools of farming
 - Identify animals found on farms and the sounds they make
 - Identify needs of farm animals: food, water, and space to live and grow
- Seasons and Weather (Kindergarten)
 - Name the four seasons in cyclical order, as experienced in the United States, and correctly name a few characteristics of each season
- Fables and Stories (Grade 1)
 - Identify and describe the characters, plot, and setting of a particular story

Charlotte's Web II

- Understand that stories are one type of fiction
- Understand that fiction comes from the author's imagination
- Describe the characters, plot (problems and solutions), and setting of *Charlotte's Web*
- Have a general understanding of orb spiders and their webs
- Have a general understanding of how crickets make a chirping sound
- Describe some aspects of life on a farm
- Understand how seasons affect life on a farm
- Define and identify the elements of narration and dialogue
- Define and identify the element of description
- Define and identify the element of personification
- Describe some aspects of a fair
- Identify words or phrases that appeal to the senses of sight, sound, taste, smell, or touch
- Describe changes in characters
- Understand that an author sometimes gives the reader hints of things to come

Builds on the following objectives targeted in Kindergarten and Grade 1:

- Stories (Kindergarten)
 - Listen to and then demonstrate familiarity with stories, including the ideas they express
- Farms (Kindergarten)
 - Sequence the seasonal rhythm of planting, growing, and harvesting
 - Identify buildings found on farms
 - Identify machines and tools of farming
 - Identify animals found on farms and the sounds they make
 - Identify needs of farm animals: food, water, and space to live and grow
- Seasons and Weather (Kindergarten)
 - Name the four seasons in cyclical order, as experienced in the United States, and correctly name a few characteristics of each season
- Fables and Stories (Grade 1)
 - Identify and describe the characters, plot, and setting of a particular story

Immigration

- Explain the term immigrant
- Describe reasons immigrants leave their home countries to make a new home in the United States
- Explain why the United States was and is called the "land of opportunity"
- Identify the meaning of *e pluribus unum*
- Explain the significance of Ellis Island and the Statue of Liberty
- Describe how immigration has brought millions of newcomers to the United States
- Describe why large populations of immigrants settled in major cities such as New York, Chicago, Philadelphia, Detroit, Cleveland, Boston, and San Francisco
- Describe why some immigrants settled in the Midwest

- Understand that their ancestors may have been immigrants who helped make America the country that it is today
- Explain what it means to be a citizen of a country
- Identify ways that a person becomes an American citizen
- Identify that the government of the United States is based on the Constitution, the highest law of our land
- Identify James Madison, the “Father of the Constitution”
- Understand that government by the consent of the governed, American citizens: “We the People”
- Explain the basic functions of government (making and enforcing laws; settling disputes; protecting rights and liberties, etc.) by making analogies to familiar settings such as the family, the school, and the community
- Identify the Bill of Rights as a document amending the Constitution
- Describe the rights and responsibilities of an American citizen
- Demonstrate familiarity with the songs, “This Land is Your Land” and “The Star-Spangled Banner”

Builds on the following objectives targeted in Kindergarten and Grade 1:

- Columbus and the Pilgrims (Kindergarten)
 - Identify the continents of North America, South America, Europe, Africa, and Asia
 - Describe the accomplishments of Christopher Columbus
 - Explain why Europeans eventually thought Columbus had discovered a “New World”
 - Identify reasons why Pilgrims left England
 - Describe the Pilgrims’ voyage on the Mayflower
- Presidents and American Symbols (Kindergarten)
 - Describe the differences between a president and a king
 - Identify Thomas Jefferson as the primary author of the Declaration of Independence
 - Describe the purpose of the Declaration of Independence as a statement of America’s liberty
 - Identify the Statue of Liberty
- Early American Civilizations (Grade 1)
 - Locate the continents of Asia and North America on a world map or globe
 - Understand that the first people in North America arrived by crossing a “land bridge” between Asia and North America
 - Understand that the Maya developed large cities or population centers in the rainforests of Mexico and Central America many, many years ago
- The Birth of Our Nation (Grade 1)
 - Identify “We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal . . .” as a part of the Declaration of Independence
 - Explain the significance of The Fourth of July
 - Identify the U.S. flag, the Liberty Bell, and the bald eagle
 - Explain the significance of the flag, the Liberty Bell, and the bald eagle as U.S. symbols

Fighting for a Cause

- Explain that members of one (most powerful) group have tended to exclude members of other groups from certain rights
- Identify the causes that Susan B. Anthony fought for during her lifetime
- Describe the life and contributions of Susan B. Anthony
- Understand that fighting for the right to vote was an important cause for many women throughout the United States
- Understand that organizations and movements were created as women protested their inequality and unfair treatment
- Describe the life and contributions of Eleanor Roosevelt

- Identify the causes that Eleanor Roosevelt fought for during her lifetime
- Describe the early life of Marian Anderson
- Identify the causes Marian Anderson fought for during her lifetime
- Describe the later life of Marian Anderson
- Identify one cause that Eleanor Roosevelt fought for during her lifetime
- Describe the life and contributions of Mary McLeod Bethune
- Identify the causes that Mary McLeod Bethune fought for during her lifetime
- Identify the cause that Ruby Bridges fought for in her early life
- Describe the life and contributions of Jackie Robinson
- Identify the cause that Jackie Robinson fought for during his lifetime
- Describe the life and contributions of Rosa Parks
- Identify the causes that Rosa Parks fought for during her lifetime
- Understand that fighting for the rights of African Americans has been an important cause for many people throughout the United States
- Describe the life and contributions of Martin Luther King, Jr.
- Identify the causes that Martin Luther King, Jr. fought for during his lifetime
- Describe the life and contributions of Cesar Chavez
- Identify the causes that Cesar Chavez fought for during his lifetime

Builds on the following objectives targeted in Kindergarten and Grade 1:

- Presidents and American Symbols (Kindergarten)
 - Recognize the White House as the president’s home
 - Describe Washington, D.C., as the city where the current president lives and where monuments of past presidents can be found
 - Describe the purpose of the Declaration of Independence as a statement of America’s liberty
- The Birth of Our Nation (Grade 1)
 - Explain the significance of the Declaration of Independence
 - Identify “We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal...” as part of the Declaration of Independence

Appendix D:

Core Knowledge Grade-by-Grade Resource Recommendations

RECOMMENDED ORDER AMOUNTS:

- **Titles for teachers:** one for each teacher, including resource teachers and librarians
- **Titles for students:** one for each student
- **Classroom resources:** one per classroom as noted

General

DVD: What Is Core Knowledge?

Cultural Literacy
The Schools We Need
The Knowledge Deficit
The Making of Americans
Reading Instruction: The Two Keys
Books to Build On
Dictionary of Cultural Literacy
First Dictionary of Cultural Literacy

Preschool

For Teachers

The Core Knowledge Sequence for Preschool–Grade 8
Core Knowledge Preschool Sequence and Teacher Handbook
What Your Preschooler Needs to Know (for parents)
Preschool Snapshot: Implementation & Observation Checklists
Core Knowledge Preschool Assessment Tool
Core Knowledge Preschool Assessment Kit
Core Knowledge Preschool Video
Core Knowledge Stop and Think Songbook CD
Preschool & K Music CD
A Joyful Noise
Preschool Daily Schedule Cards
The Knowledge Tree Preschool Kits*
Social Skills Posters
The Stop & Think Social Skills Program:
 Teacher’s Manual for Pre K–1
Stop and Think Parenting Book, with DVD (for parents)

For Students

What Your Preschooler Needs to Know:
 Activity Book 1 for Ages 3–4
What Your Preschooler Needs to Know:
 Activity Book 2 for Ages 4–5
Scholastic Preschool Classroom Library (one per classroom)*

Kindergarten

For Teachers

The Core Knowledge Sequence for Preschool–Grade 8
First Dictionary of Cultural Literacy
Core Knowledge Teacher Handbook, Grade K
Text Resources, Grade K
Art Prints, Grade K
Core Knowledge Day-by-Day Planner and Workbook, Grade K
What Your Kindergartner Needs to Know (for parents)
Teacher Edition of Pearson Learning
 Core Knowledge History and Geography Resources*
Preschool & K Music CD
A Joyful Noise
Stop and Think Parenting Book, with DVD
Social Skills Electronic Books*

For Students

Listen My Children, Grade K
Pearson Learning Core Knowledge History
 and Geography Resources*
Scholastic Grade K Classroom Library (one per classroom)*

Grade 1

For Teachers

The Core Knowledge Sequence for Preschool–Grade 8
First Dictionary of Cultural Literacy
Core Knowledge Teacher Handbook, Grade 1
Text Resources, Grade 1
Art Prints, Grade 1
Core Knowledge Day-by-Day Planner and Workbook, Grade 1
What Your First Grader Needs to Know (for parents)
Teacher Edition of Pearson Learning
 Core Knowledge History and Geography Resources*
Grades 1 & 2 Music CD set
A Joyful Noise
Stop and Think Parenting Book, with DVD
Social Skills Electronic Books*
Questar Curriculum-Referenced Tests*

For Students

Listen My Children, Grade 1
Pearson Learning Core Knowledge History
 and Geography Resources*
Scholastic Grade 1 Classroom Library (one per classroom)*

Grade 2

For Teachers

The Core Knowledge Sequence for Preschool–Grade 8
First Dictionary of Cultural Literacy
Core Knowledge Teacher Handbook, Grade 2
Text Resources, Grade 2
Art Prints, Grade 2
Core Knowledge Day-by-Day Planner and Workbook, Grade 2
What Your Second Grader Needs to Know (for parents)
Teacher Edition of Pearson Learning
 Core Knowledge History and Geography Resources*
Grades 1 & 2 Music CD set
A Joyful Noise
Stop and Think Parenting Book, with DVD
Social Skills Electronic Books*
Questar Curriculum-Referenced Tests*

For Students

Listen My Children, Grade 2
Pearson Learning Core Knowledge History
 and Geography Resources*
Scholastic Grade 2 Classroom Library (one per classroom)*

Grade 3

For Teachers

The Core Knowledge Sequence for
Preschool–Grade 8
First Dictionary of Cultural Literacy
Core Knowledge Teacher Handbook, Grade 3
Text Resources, Grade 3
Art Prints, Grade 3
Core Knowledge Day-by-Day Planner and
Workbook, Grade 3
What Your Third Grader Needs to Know (for parents)
Teacher Edition of Pearson Learning
Core Knowledge History and Geography Resources*
Grades 3–5 Music CD set
A Joyful Noise
Stop and Think Parenting Book, with DVD
Social Skills Electronic Books*
Questar Curriculum-Referenced Tests*

For Students

Listen, My Children, Grade 3
Pearson Learning Core Knowledge History
and Geography Resources*
Scholastic Grade 3 Classroom Library
(one per classroom)*

Grade 4

For Teachers

The Core Knowledge Sequence for
Preschool–Grade 8
First Dictionary of Cultural Literacy
Core Knowledge Teacher Handbook, Grade 4
Text Resources, Grade 4
Art Prints, Grade 4
Core Knowledge Day-by-Day Planner and
Workbook, Grade 4
What Your Fourth Grader Needs to Know
(for parents)
Core Classics: Robinson Crusoe, Sleepy
Hollow, Gulliver's Travels, Robin Hood,
King Arthur, and Treasure Island +
Teacher's Guides
Teacher Edition of Pearson Learning
Core Knowledge History and
Geography Resources*
Grades 3–5 Music CD Set
A Joyful Noise
Social Skills Electronic Books*
Questar Curriculum-Referenced Tests*

For Students

Listen, My Children, Grade 4
Core Classics: Robinson Crusoe, Sleepy Hollow,
Gulliver's Travels, Pollyanna, Robin Hood,
King Arthur, and Treasure Island
Pearson Learning Core Knowledge History
and Geography Resources*
Scholastic Grade 4 Classroom Library
(one per classroom)*

Grade 5

For Teachers

The Core Knowledge Sequence for
Preschool–Grade 8
First Dictionary of Cultural Literacy
Dictionary of Cultural Literacy
Core Knowledge Teacher Handbook, Grade 5
Text Resources, Grade 5
Art Prints, Grade 5
Core Knowledge Day-by-Day Planner and
Workbook, Grade 5
What Your Fifth Grader Needs to Know (for parents)
Rats, Bulls, and Flying Machines + Teacher's Guide
Grace Abounding + Teacher's Kits
Core Classics: Sherlock Holmes, Don Quixote
+ Teacher's Guides
Core Classics Plus: Frederick Douglass +
Teacher's Guide
Teacher Edition of Pearson Learning
Core Knowledge History and Geography Resources*
Grades 3–5 Music CD Set
A Joyful Noise
Social Skills Electronic Books*
Questar Curriculum-Referenced Tests*

For Students

Listen My Children, Grade 5
Grace Abounding
Rats, Bulls, and Flying Machines
Core Classics: Sherlock Holmes, Don Quixote
Core Classics Plus: Frederick Douglass, Little Women
Pearson Learning Core Knowledge History
and Geography Resources*
Scholastic Grade 5 Classroom Library
(one per classroom)*

Grade 6

For Teachers

The Core Knowledge Sequence for
Preschool–Grade 8
Dictionary of Cultural Literacy
Core Knowledge Day-by-Day Planner and
Workbook, Grade 6
What Your Sixth Grader Needs to Know (for parents)
Grace Abounding + Teacher's Kits
Teacher Edition of Pearson Learning
Core Knowledge History and
Geography Resources*
Grades 6 Music CD Set
A Joyful Noise
Mackin Middle School Resource Set*
Social Skills Electronic Books*

For Students

Realms of Gold, Volume I
Grace Abounding
Pearson Learning Core Knowledge History
and Geography Resources*
Scholastic Combined Grade 6–8 Classroom
Library (one per classroom)*

Grade 7

For Teachers

The Core Knowledge Sequence for
Preschool–Grade 8
Dictionary of Cultural Literacy
Core Knowledge Day-by-Day Planner and
Workbook, Grade 7
Grace Abounding + Teacher's Kits
Grade 7 Music CD Set
A Joyful Noise
Mackin Middle School Resource Set*
Social Skills Electronic Books*

For Students

Realms of Gold, Volume II
Grace Abounding
Scholastic Combined Grade 6–8 Classroom
Library (one per classroom)*

Grade 8

For Teachers

The Core Knowledge Sequence for
Preschool–Grade 8
Dictionary of Cultural Literacy
Core Knowledge Day-by-Day Planner and
Workbook, Grade 8
Grace Abounding + Teacher's Kits
Grade 8 Classical CD Set and Set A
Blues and Jazz CD Set and Set A
Musical Theater CD Set
Mozart Essential Works CD
A Joyful Noise
Mackin Middle School Resource Set*
Social Skills Electronic Books*

For Students

Realms of Gold, Volume III
Grace Abounding
Scholastic Combined Grade 6–8 Classroom
Library (one per classroom)

*Resources not sold by Core Knowledge.
You can find information about these resources
on our website, www.coreknowledge.org

Core Knowledge at a Glance

	Preschool	Kindergarten	First Grade	Second Grade	Third Grade
Language Arts/English	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Oral Language II. Nursery Rhymes, Poems, Finger-Plays, and Songs III. Storybook Reading and Storytelling IV. Emerging Literacy Skills 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Listening and Speaking II. Reading III. Writing IV. Language Conventions V. Poetry VI. Fiction VII. Sayings and Phrases 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Listening and Speaking II. Reading III. Writing IV. Language Conventions V. Poetry VI. Fiction VII. Sayings and Phrases 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Listening and Speaking II. Reading III. Writing IV. Language Conventions V. Poetry VI. Fiction VII. Sayings and Phrases 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Reading and Writing II. Poetry III. Fiction IV. Sayings and Phrases
History and Geography	<p>Time:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Vocabulary II. Measures of Time III. Passage of Time (Past, Present, Future) <p>Space:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Vocabulary II. Actual and Representational Space III. Simple Maps IV. Basic Geographic Concepts 	<p>World:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Geography: Spatial Sense II. Overview of the Seven Continents <p>American</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Geography II. Native American Peoples, Past and Present III. Early Exploration and Settlement IV. Presidents, Past and Present V. Symbols and Figures 	<p>World:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Geography II. Early World Civilizations III. Modern Civilization and Culture: Mexico <p>American</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Early People and Civilizations II. Early Exploration and Settlement III. From Colonies to Independence: The American Revolution IV. Early Exploration of American West V. Symbols and Figures 	<p>World:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Geography II. Early Asian Civilizations III. Modern Japanese Civilization IV. The Ancient Greek Civilization <p>American</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. American Government: The Constitution II. The War of 1812 III. Westward Expansion IV. The Civil War V. Immigration and Citizenship VI. Fighting for a Cause VII. Geography of the Americas VIII. Symbols and Figures 	<p>World:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. World Geography II. The Ancient Roman Civilization III. The Vikings <p>American</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. The Earliest Americans II. Early Exploration of North America III. The Thirteen Colonies: Life and Times Before the Revolution
Visual Arts	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Attention to visual detail II. Creating Art III. Looking and Talking about Art 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Elements of Art II. Sculpture III. Looking at and Talking About Art 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Art from Long Ago II. Elements of Art III. Kinds of Pictures: Portrait and Still Life 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Elements of Art II. Sculpture III. Kinds of Pictures: Landscapes IV. Abstract Art V. Architecture 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Elements of Art II. American Indian Art III. Art of Ancient Rome and Byzantine Civilization
Music	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Attention to Differences in Sound II. Imitate and Produce Sounds III. Listen and Sing IV. Listen and Move 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Elements of Music II. Listening and Understanding III. Songs 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Elements of Music II. Listening and Understanding (Composers; Orchestra; Opera; Ballet; Jazz) III. Songs 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Elements of Music II. Listening and Understanding (Orchestra; Keyboards; Composers) III. Songs 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Elements of Music II. Listening and Understanding (Orchestra; Composers) III. Songs
Mathematics	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Patterns and Classification II. Geometry III. Measurement IV. Numbers and Number Sense V. Addition and Subtraction with Concrete Objects VI. Money 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Patterns and Classification II. Numbers and Number Sense III. Money IV. Computation V. Measurement VI. Geometry 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Patterns and Classification II. Numbers and Number Sense III. Money IV. Computation V. Measurement VI. Geometry 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Numbers and Number Sense II. Fractions III. Money IV. Computation V. Measurement VI. Geometry 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Numbers and Number Sense II. Fractions and Decimals III. Money IV. Computation V. Measurement VI. Geometry
Science	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Human Characteristics, Needs and Development II. Animal Characteristics, Needs and Development III. Plant Characteristics, Needs and Growth IV. Physical Elements (Water, Air, Light) V. Introduction to Magnetism VI. Seasons and Weather VII. Taking Care of the Earth VIII. Tools 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Plants and Plant Growth II. Animals and Their Needs III. Human Body (Five Senses) IV. Introduction to Magnetism V. Seasons and Weather VI. Taking Care of the Earth VII. Science Biographies 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Living Things and Their Environments II. Human Body (Body Systems) III. Matter IV. Properties of Matter: Measurement V. Introduction to Electricity VI. Astronomy VII. The Earth VIII. Science Biographies 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Cycles in Nature (Seasonal Cycles; Life Cycles; Water Cycle) II. Insects III. Human Body (Cells; Digestive and Excretory Systems) IV. Magnetism V. Simple Machines VI. Science Biographies 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Introduction to Classification of Animals II. Human Body (Muscular, Skeletal, and Nervous Systems; Vision and Hearing) III. Light and Optics IV. Sound V. Ecology VI. Astronomy VII. Science Biographies

	Fourth Grade	Fifth Grade	Sixth Grade	Seventh Grade	Eighth Grade
Language Arts/English	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Writing, Grammar, and Usage II. Poetry III. Fiction IV. Speeches V. Sayings and Phrases 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Writing, Grammar, and Usage II. Poetry III. Fiction and Drama IV. Speeches V. Sayings and Phrases 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Writing, Grammar, and Usage II. Poetry III. Fiction and Drama IV. Sayings and Phrases 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Writing, Grammar, and Usage II. Poetry III. Fiction, Nonfiction, and Drama IV. Foreign Phrases Commonly Used in English 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Writing, Grammar, and Usage II. Poetry III. Fiction, Nonfiction, and Drama IV. Foreign Phrases Commonly Used in English
History and Geography	<p>World:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. World Geography (Spatial Sense; Mountains) II. Europe in Middle Ages III. The Spread of Islam and the "Holy Wars" IV. Early and Medieval African Kingdoms V. China: Dynasties and Conquerors <p>American</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. The American Revolution II. Making a Constitutional Government III. Early Presidents and Politics IV. Reformers V. Symbols and Figures 	<p>World:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. World Geography (Spatial Sense; Lakes) II. Early American Civilizations III. European Exploration, Trade, and the Clash of Cultures IV. The Renaissance and the Reformation V. England from the Golden Age to the Glorious Revolution VI. Russia: Early Growth and Expansion VII. Feudal Japan <p>American</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Westward Expansion II. The Civil War: Causes, Conflicts, Consequences III. Native Americans: Cultures and Conflicts IV. U.S. Geography 	<p>World:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. World Geography (Spatial Sense; Deserts) II. Lasting Ideas from Ancient Civilizations III. The Enlightenment IV. The French Revolution V. Romanticism VI. Industrialism, Capitalism, and Socialism VII. Latin American Independence Movements <p>American</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Immigration, Industrialization, and Urbanization II. Reform 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. America Becomes a World Power II. World War I: "The Great War," 1914–1918 III. Russian Revolution IV. America from the Twenties to the New Deal V. World War II VI. Geography of United States 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. The Decline of European Colonialism II. The Cold War III. The Civil Rights Movement IV. The Vietnam War and the Rise of Social Activism V. The Middle East and Oil Politics VI. The End of the Cold War: The Expansion of Democracy and Continuing Challenges VII. Civics: The Constitution—Principles and Structure of American Democracy VIII. Geography of Canada and Mexico
Visual Arts	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Art of the Middle Ages in Europe II. Islamic Art and Architecture III. Art of Africa IV. Art of China V. Art of a New Nation: The United States 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Art of the Renaissance II. American Art: Nineteenth-Century United States III. Art of Japan 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Art History: Periods and Schools (Classical; Gothic; Renaissance; Baroque; Rococo; Neoclassical; Romantic; Realistic) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Art History: Period and Schools (Impressionism; Post-Impressionism; Expressionism and Abstraction; Modern American Painting) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Art History: Periods and Schools (Painting Since World War II; Photography; 20th-Century Sculpture) II. Architecture Since the Industrial Revolution
Music	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Elements of Music II. Listening and Understanding (Orchestra; Vocal Ranges; Composers) III. Songs 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Elements of Music II. Listening and Understanding (Composers; Connections) III. American Musical Traditions (Spirituals) IV. Songs 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Elements of Music II. Classical Music: From Baroque to Romantic (Bach, Handel, Haydn, Mozart, Beethoven, Schubert, Chopin, Schumann) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Elements of Music II. Classical Music: Romantics and Nationalists (Brahms, Berlioz, Liszt, Wagner, Dvorak, Grieg, Tchaikovsky) III. American Musical Traditions (Blues and Jazz) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Elements of Music II. Non-Western Music III. Classical Music: Nationalists and Moderns IV. Vocal Music (Opera; American Musical Theater)
Mathematics	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Numbers and Number Sense II. Fractions and Decimals III. Money IV. Computation V. Measurement VI. Geometry 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Numbers and Number Sense II. Ratio and Percent III. Fractions and Decimals IV. Computation V. Measurement VI. Geometry VII. Probability and Statistics VIII. Pre-Algebra 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Numbers and Number Sense II. Ratio, Percent, and Proportion III. Computation IV. Measurement V. Geometry VI. Probability and Statistics VII. Pre-Algebra 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Pre-Algebra (Properties of the Real Numbers; Polynomial Arithmetic; Equivalent Equations and Inequalities; Integer Exponents) II. Geometry (Three-Dimensional Objects; Angle Pairs; Triangles; Measurement) III. Probability and Statistics 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Algebra (Properties of the Real Numbers; Relations, Functions, and Graphs; Linear Equations and Functions; Arithmetic of Rational Expression; Quadratic Equations and Functions) II. Geometry (Analytic Geometry; Introduction to Trigonometry; Triangles and proofs)
Science	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Human Body (Circulatory and Respiratory Systems) II. Chemistry: Basic Terms and Concepts III. Electricity IV. Geology: The Earth and Its Changes V. Meteorology VI. Science Biographies 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Classifying Living Things II. Cells: Structures and Processes III. Plant Structures and Processes IV. Life Cycles and Reproduction V. Human Body (Endocrine and Reproductive Systems) VI. Chemistry: Matter and Change VII. Science Biographies 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Plate Tectonics II. Oceans III. Astronomy: Gravity, Stars, and Galaxies IV. Energy, Heat, and Energy Transfer V. The Human Body: Lymphatic and Immune Systems VI. Science Biographies 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Atomic Structure II. Chemical Bonds and Reactions III. Cell Division and Genetics IV. History of the Earth and Life Forms V. Evolution VI. Science Biographies 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I. Physics II. Electricity and Magnetism III. Electromagnetic Radiation and Light IV. Sound Waves V. Chemistry of Food and Respiration VI. Science Biographies

WHAT IS THE RIGGS READING PROGRAM...

Beginning in kindergarten and continuing through sixth grade, Chicago Classical Academy will use the Riggs Institute's *The Writing & Spelling Road to Reading & Thinking*, a comprehensive language curriculum that teaches reading (through phonics), grammar and composition.

- **Phonics approach:** Reading & writing are taught thorough phonics, a method that emphasizes sound over sight. Instruction begins with phonograms, letter or combination of letters that represent a sound, not the alphabet letters names & symbols; 55 of the total 71 phonograms in the English language are taught within the first 3 weeks of instruction.
- **Explicit & direct instruction:** Students are exposed to just the sound/symbol relationships without keywords, key pictures, letter names or capital letter formation at this initial stages. No worksheets in the first nine weeks of this method; this direct instruction engages all students simultaneously, commands attention, and focuses on lesson objectives
- **Socratic method:** Teaches through questioning vs. telling; requires student responses (keeping them actively engaged); teaches analytical thinking
- **Multi-sensory:** Addresses all "learning styles" by teaching through seeing, hearing, saying and writing.
- **Comprehensive** study of the English language, grammar & composition. Students study language through roots, prefixes, suffixes, homophones and homographs, antonyms, synonyms and graphic organizers (charts). Grammar & composition study is reinforced with a well-written reading selection
- **Cursive** introduced in 2nd grade and required going forward
- **2400 vocabulary** words introduced by the end of 3rd grade
- Grades 4-6 continue to use the phonetic foundation the students possess, to add vocabulary drawn from the rich Core Knowledge literature and content areas focusing on morphology. This will include heavy emphasis on **Greek and Latin roots**.
- Formal **Latin** will be introduced in sixth of seventh grade.

Lesson structure for K-3:

Letter formation:	1 hour (first 2 weeks)
Phonetics:	1 hour daily, first 12 weeks; 15 minutes after that
Reading to students:	45 minutes daily
Making/using charts:	20 minutes daily
Spelling/vocabulary:	45 minutes daily, 4 th week on
Grammar/composition:	30 minutes daily after 12 th week
Homework	15 – 50 minutes daily

Daily: 2.5 hours of instruction for K-3

CHICAGO CLASSICAL ACADEMY

KEY FACTS

**Tuition free & open enrollment
K-12 program
South Loop location
Opening in the fall of 2018**

CLASSICAL CURRICULUM

**Liberal arts focus
Emphasis on logic & rhetoric
Structured & rich curriculum
Language-based approach
Strong civics component
Character development**

CONTACT INFORMATION

www.chiclassical.org

info@chiclassical.org

773.492.1202

[facebook.com/chiclassical](https://www.facebook.com/chiclassical)



FIRST GRADE LANGUAGE ARTS STANDARDS AND COURSE OF STUDY

Sensory Cognition [ability to use four sensory pathways to the mind]	Listening, Letter Formation Phonetics, Spelling	Speaking, Speech Vocabulary	Grammar/Syntax Composition	Reading/Comprehension Literature Resources
<p>AUDITORY SKILLS</p> <p><u>ATTENTION & DISCRIMINATION</u></p> <p><u>Master Auditory Sub-skills in Attention and Discrimination:</u> Loud / soft sounds High / low sounds Beginning (onset) sounds Medial Vowel sounds Ending consonant cluster sounds Riming sounds (vowels ending consonants) 42 elementary English sounds (phonemes) in isolation Recognize 42 sounds in words Distinguish 42 phonemes in syllables and words for oral encoding Recognize open syllable sounds Recognize closed syllable sounds</p> <p><u>AUDITORY MEMORY</u></p> <p>Recall 42 phonemes represented by 118 graphemes Recall sounds in sequence Recall words in spoken poetry and nursery rhymes Recall melodies and words from songs</p> <p><u>AUDITORY IMAGERY</u></p> <p>Recall phonemes related to mental images of the form and shape of corresponding letters (graphemes) Connect spoken sentences with mental images of meaning Connect spoken words with mental images related to meaning</p>	<p>ORTHOGRAPHY</p> <p><u>LISTENING, LETTERS, PHONETICS SPELLING</u></p> <p><u>Master Letter Formation & Phonetics</u> Listen to 42 spoken phonemes and write 71 associated graphemes (phonograms) by dictation Form 26 letters of the alphabet Write 71 English graphemes (correct spelling patterns) Adhere to margin lines Top Base line Base line Two dotted middle lines 2, 10, 8, and 4 on a clock face Space between individual letters Practice for spacing between words in a sentence Use sequencing for letter formation Recognize and use: Vowels / Consonants 2, 3, 4-letter spelling patterns Diphthongs / Digraphs Schwa vowel sounds vs. correct spelling Silent letters 118 spelling patterns to write K-3 vocabulary Written letters to represent speech sounds for thoughts Phonemes and graphemes for encoding, recoding, and decoding 850 words Phonemes & graphemes to spell, sound, and read 6 spelling words per day (30 per week / 850 per year) to achieve automaticity</p>	<p>SPEAKING-SPEECH-VOCABULARY</p> <p><u>Master Speaking to:</u> Say 71 common phonograms Sequence and pronounce 42 sounds in explicit (in isolation) phonics instruction dictation Sequence and pronounce 42 sounds in spelling dictation Respond to Socratic instruction saying phonemes & graphemes to encode: 1-3 syllable words w/71 phonograms Articulate rules of spelling, plurals, and syllabication Recode (chorally) dictate words phoneme by phoneme, grapheme by grapheme) Pronounce schwa vowels as well as think to spell correct spelling sounds Pronounce words in isolation Speak to read original sentences to class Use various voice inflections Use rhythm Use accented syllables Be able to pronounce and use 4,000 to 24,000 words in sentences Use accurate pronunciation in oral reading Practice oral spelling with sounds only</p> <p><u>Practice Speech Skills:</u> Speak, individually, in front of class in full sentences with correct grammar and syntax Answer questions in full sentences Give oral responses to questions Give oral directions Dramatize (tell) stories and plays</p>	<p>SYNTAX - COMPOSITION</p> <p><u>Master Syntax and Composition Skills:</u> Write imaginatively from provocative pictures Write from ideas advanced by others Write original simple sentences using spelling / vocabulary words Learn the definition of a simple sentence Write sentences from dictated sentences which can be spelled correctly Write 3-4 sentence paragraphs: with topic sentence with 2 - 3 sentences about topic sentence Define, write, punctuate, and capitalize four kinds of sentences: Declarative Interrogative Imperative Exclamatory Classify four types of sentences: Subject - Intransitive Verb Subject - Transitive Verb - Object Subject - Linking Verb - Pred. Nom. Subject - Linking Verb - Pred. Adj. Recognize types of sentences in literature or other course work</p> <p><u>Practice capitalization in composition</u> First word in sentence Names, initials, and titles Days of the week Months of the year Geographical names Names referring to Deity Names of holidays</p>	<p>READING</p> <p><u>Master Phonetics-Decoding</u> Recode (read) 71 phoneme/grapheme relationships in dictated spelling lessons (<i>English spelling patterns</i>) Recognize and read letter names Read and comprehend 850 spelling words Read original sentences using spelling words (first in-context, decodable text) Blend and read spelling words in isolation with phonetics and rules Sound, read, and comprehend six spelling words per day Read classmates' written sentences Read open and closed syllables in words Read consonant clusters which are 2 or more elementary sounds Understand the alphabetic principle - that written or printed letters represent speech sounds Understand that words must be decoded / encoded accurately to permit the fluency required for comprehension</p> <p><u>LITERATURE / COMPREHENSION</u></p> <p>Beginning in the 10th week, read from books for knowledge and entertainment Attain fluency with printed words to <i>free the mind</i> for comprehension</p>

Sensory Cognition [ability to use four sensory pathways to the mind]	Listening, Letter Formation Phonetics, Spelling	Speaking, Speech Vocabulary	Grammar/Syntax Composition	Reading/Comprehension Literature Resources
<p>LISTENING Recognize pronunciation with dialects and regionalisms Attend to stories read aloud Recognize various voice tones Recognize differences in voiced expressions Recognize accented syllables Recognize voiced inflections Recognize rhythm Listen to and follow oral instructions</p> <p>VISUAL MOTOR SKILLS: COORDINATION / DIRECTIONALITY</p> <p><u>Master Coordination & Directionality in:</u> Accurate sense of directionality (up/down, left/right, top/bottom, under/over/on, around, middle, back/front, far/near, open/closed, inside/outside, above/below, ahead/behind) Form 26 letters of alphabet from oral instructions and visual checkpoints without a visual aid Adher to margin lines Space between letters Use lined paper and posture Hold pencil properly to reduce stress Use lined paper correctly Recognizing difference between manuscript and book print Form graphemes (letters) to learn phonemes (sounds) Write letters while saying sounds</p>	<p>Use a mnemonics marking system to aid visual memory and auditory memory of spelling patterns Encode one, two, and three-syllable words from dictation Practice oral spelling, but with sounds Recognize syllable breaks <u>Practice</u> Make visual comparisons between dictation taken and given Note teacher corrections Recognize phonetic variations in irregularly spelled words Recognize dictionary pronunciation vs. correct spelling Learn exceptions to spelling rules where applicable Recognize and use accented syllables Spell words in literature, composition, or vocabulary</p> <p><u>RULES OF ORTHOGRAPHY</u> <u>PLURALS - SYLLABICATION,</u> <u>CAPITALIZATION - PUNCTUATION</u></p> <p><u>Master Spelling Rules</u> -not fully stated q always followed by u (qu) c before e, i, or y says 's.' g before e, i, or y may say 'j.' Often double l, f, s, after a single vowel at end of one syllable word ck used after short vowel dge used after short vowel z used to say 'z' at beginning s never follows x Double consonants are both sounded for spelling s-h used at beginning of word and at end of a syllable</p>	<p>Read or recite poetry using proper cadence and rhythm Speak in appropriate cadence in choral readings Ask questions by addressing by name, the person spoken to, and raising the voice at the end Make oral announcements Talk about current news events Give oral book reports Eliminate incorrect or annoying "habits of speech" Participate in group singing: Accompanied Unaccompanied Hum melodies while listening to music</p> <p><u>VOCABULARY</u></p> <p><u>Master Vocabulary Necessary to:</u> Sound, read, understand, and use 6 spelling words per day (30 per week / 850 per year) Understand and use words which are in the vocabulary of literature and other course work Identify, understand, chart, and use a variety of : Synonyms Antonyms Homonyms Homographs Homophones Paronyms Compound words Plurals Use common prefixes and suffixes Practice meaning and use of suffixes s, ed, ing, es, y, er, est, ness, less, ly, ful</p>	<p><u>Master Punctuation:</u> Period at end of sentence after initials after numerals Question mark Apostrophe in contractions in possessive nouns Comma in dates in direct quotations between city and state after greeting in friendly letter after closing in friendly letter Exclamation mark Quotation marks exact words of speaker direct quotations</p> <p><u>Practice Subject and Predicate:</u> Record S/ P on wall charts Write S/P sentences Diagram S/P sentences Identify complete subject / complete predicate Identify simple subject / simple predicate Discover simple subject and predicate in literature</p> <p><u>Practice Etymology (Parts of Speech)</u> Write and diagram sentences using eight parts of speech: Nouns, classified as: Common / Proper Singular / Plural Nouns, used as Subjects</p>	<p>Read for fluency and comprehension: Literature Other "across the curriculum" assignments</p> <p><u>Find and Read:</u> Synonyms and Antonyms Homonyms, Homophones, and Homographs Comma Plurals Compound words Common suffixes: s, es, ed, ing, y, er, est</p> <p><u>Practice Comprehension:</u> Understand that the purpose of reading is to discover the author's message and intent while also: Distinguishing fact from fantasy Recalling sequences in a story Anticipating outcomes Interpreting inferences and implied meanings Determining main idea Recognizing important ideas and details</p> <p><u>Introduce comprehension exercises to:</u> Understand relevant facts Determine time, place, cause, and effect Summarize or retell fact or fiction, orally and in writing Recognize that reading takes the reader into art, culture, and intellect not accessible from spoken language only Follow written instructions</p>

Sensory Cognition [ability to use four sensory pathways to the mind]	Listening, Letter Formation Phonetics, Spelling	Speaking, Speech Vocabulary	Grammar/Syntax Composition	Reading/Comprehension Literature Resources
<p>Practice Coordination - Directionality to: Develop hand-eye coordination Refine motor coordination for letter formation, spacing, margins, etc. Acquire ability to estimate distances Acquire sense of spatial relationships Maintain natural, comfortable position while speaking</p> <p>VISUAL ATTENTION DISCRIMINATION / COORDINATION <u>Master Visual Attention, Discrimination and Coordination to:</u> Recognize differences between foreground and background Notice likenesses and differences Relate parts to whole</p> <p>VISUAL / VISUAL MOTOR SEQUENCING / MEMORY ASSOCIATION Recognize and recall proper sequencing Recognize and recall directions Make visual comparisons Use left to right print flow Recall spatial relationships Develop accurate linear eye movements Recognize differences in patterns Recognize different colors</p> <p>VERBAL SKILLS: <u>Master speech abilities to:</u> Pronounce words with proper: Voice inflection Tone Rhythm Enunciation Articulation</p>	<p>a, e, o, u say long sound at end of "open" syllable i and o may say long sound before two consonants i and y may say short 'i' but usually say long e or i y, not i, is used at the end of a word a-y is used to say long a to end a word o-r may say er after w (works) Four Silent Final e rules: To let vowel say its name English words do not end with v or u Let c and g say soft sounds Every syllable needs a vowel (a ble) All, till, & full written with one L if added to another syllable <u>Master Plural Rules:</u> Add s to form most plurals Add es to nouns ending with the sounds of s, z, ch sh, or j Nouns ending in a vowel and y add s (monkeys) Nouns ending in a consonant and y change the y to i and add es (puppy / puppies) <u>Master Syllabication Rules:</u> A one-syllable word is never divided Compound words are divided between the single words (in to) Divide between two consonants unless they make one sound (per haps, ma chine) Divide between the root and the affix (re run, soft ness) Divide after a closed syllable if the first vowel is short (lem on) Divide after the open syllable if the first vowel or owel sound is long (pa per) <u>Master Capital Letter Rules:</u> Capitalize names or titles of people, places, books, days, and months</p>	<p><u>Introduce</u> Prefixes bi, pre, un, re, mis, dis Learn meaning of all words in the: <i>Language of instruction</i> Basic words used in questions Terms used in word classifications Oral instructions from teacher dictation and Socratic questioning Grammar and syntax instructions Terms used in counting and measuring</p>	<p>Direct Objects Predicate Noun Object of Preposition Pronouns, used as: Subject Pronouns Object Pronouns Possessive Pronouns Classified as: Personal Pronouns Singular / Plural Verbs, classified as: Regular / Irregular Auxiliary (helping) Verbs Verbs, used as: Intransitive Verbs Transitive Verbs Present / Past /Future Tense Linking Verbs Singular (She writes) Plural (They write) Articles: a, an, the Adjectives used to answer: What kind? Which one? Whose? How many? Adverbs used to answer: When? Where? Why? How? How much? Conjunctions: and, but, or, nor, because Prepositions, used to show relationships Prepositional Phrase Interjections</p> <p>COMPOSITION <u>Introduce the Writing Process:</u> Pre-write</p>	<p>COMPREHENSION ASSESSMENT Test comprehension with normed tests 2-3 times a week</p> <p>RESOURCES: Use and read Spelling and Usage Dictionary (4,832 words) Help prepare, use, and read wall charts for definitions, rules, and illustrations Use classroom library Use encyclopedias</p> <p>LITERATURE: Selections left to discretion of district or state We recommend classic literature such as Core Knowledge Foundation recommendations; anything with an expanding vocabulary</p>

Sensory Cognition [ability to use four sensory pathways to the mind]	Listening, Letter Formation Phonetics, Spelling	Speaking, Speech Vocabulary	Grammar/Syntax Composition	Reading/Comprehension Literature Resources
<p>Accent Pronounce and use 4,000 - 24,000 words in sentences [beginning comprehensible vocabulary] Pronounce, in isolation, 42 elementary English sounds</p> <p>Use accurate pronunciation in oral reading Apply phonemes in words for oral encoding Use precise articulation of 42 elementary sounds Use various voice tones and rhythm Participate in choral readings Follow multiple oral instructions Use accented syllables</p>	<p><u>Practice Orthography Rules:</u> Final y is changed to i if suffix does not begin with i Double final consonant before vowel suffix in a <i>closed</i> one- syllable word Double final consonant before vowel suffix in two-syllable word if accent is on last syllable except when suffix throws accent to first syllable Add past tense ending suffix e-d to words with various endings Silent e is dropped for most vowel suffixes Silent e is usually kept for consonant suffixes Use ei after c, if we say long a, and in some exceptions t-i, s-i, c-i used at beginning of a syllable after first one s-i says <i>sh</i> when previous syllable ends in s s-i can say <i>zh</i> with suffixes</p> <p><u>Practice Syllable Rules</u> Divide between two vowels when sounded separately (di et) Vowels sounded alone form their own syllable (dis o bey) When a word ends in a consonant and le, divide before that syllable if it is sounded separately (ca ble)</p> <p><u>Practice Apostrophe Rules:</u> An apostrophe takes the place of missing letters in a contraction An apostrophe shows ownership in singular or plural nouns An apostrophe is not used in possessive pronouns</p> <p><u>Master Daily Spelling Tests</u> Take 30-word test daily, adding six new words and dropping six oldest Take normed spelling pattern diagnostic test once a month</p>		<p>Gather Information Find ideas about subject Sort ideas into groups Be observant of surroundings Draft - Put ideas on paper Revise Rearrange ideas Revise and refine ideas Conference with teacher Conference with peers Offer constructive suggestions in writing and revising Proofread Use proofreader marks Conference with teacher Conference with peers Correct spelling errors Correct errors in syntax Correct errors in capitalization Final copy Illustrate Neat final copy with correct letter formations, margins, and spacing Writing projects Sentences Topic Sentences Paragraphs Book Reports Friendly Letters Address Envelopes Autobiographies Use in composition: Homonyms Homographs Homophones</p> <p><u>Introduce Composition of Poetry:</u> Basic knowledge of definitions and structure Rhyming Verse Begin writing poetry</p>	

Table of Contents: the Sequence of Instruction

CHAPTER ONE: INTRODUCTION AND OVERVIEW - TEACHER PREPARATION

TAB SHEET: Introduction and Overview/Six Objects of Primary Education

Introduction, Rationale, Concepts, Organization	1
About the Author – Blueprint for Reform	8
History, Orton, Mosse, Harvey, Bishop, Riggs and other Researchers	10
Overview, Talking “Scripts” and Transparency Masters	
Integrating the Language “Strands”	12
The English Alphabet: Phonetics for Precise Speech and Correct Spelling	14
The Revised “Orton” Phonograms: The Phonemes and Graphemes of English	16
Phonics Taught “Explicitly” Follows Research of <i>Becoming a Nation of Readers</i>	18
Methodologies Used: Multi-Sensory, Direct, Socratic with Charts/Notebooks	20
Neuroscience: How the Human Brain Functions	22
Chapter Bibliography	24

CHAPTER TWO: STANDARDS AND ASSESSMENTS - TEACHER PREPARATION

TAB SHEET: Standards and Assessment Objectives/Most Frequently Asked In-Service Questions

Course of Study, Grade 1 Language Arts Standards	25, 28
A. Riggs Monthly Spelling Scale, K - 12	29
B. Riggs Spelling-Vocabulary List Review Test	43
C. Comprehension, <i>McCall-Crabbs Standard Test Lessons in Reading</i> , K - 12	43
Sample Test Only	44
D. Special Education, Reading Acts Test	44
Background, Dr. Hilde L. Mosse	45
E. Miscellaneous, Grade 2 Test of Phonetics and Spelling Patterns	48

CHAPTER THREE: MANAGING THE CLASSROOM, MOTIVATING THE STUDENT

TAB SHEET: Lessons 1 - 8 Student Objectives/First Half Year Learning Activities

I. RATIONALE, CONCEPTS - TEACHER PREPARATION

Article, “Kids’ Brainpower; Early Years Shape Basic Architecture”	49
Pie Chart, Teaching the “Strands” of English with Full Integration	50
General Student Objectives, Cognitive Development - Lessons 1 - 160	51, 52
A. Reaching all Teachers	53
B. Challenging the Student	53
C. Time-Saving Methodologies	53
D. Efficient Sequencing and the Concepts of Direct Instruction	53, 54

II. PREPARING THE CLASSROOM - TEACHER PREPARATION

A-B. Atmosphere for Learning ; Visually and Verbally Quiet Atmosphere	54
C-E. Desk Arrangement, Bulletin boards and Student Portfolios, Students’ Name Cards	55
Chart, Student Supplies, Classroom Supplies	56
F-H. Classroom Library; Overhead Projector vs. Chalkboard	57
Transparency Masters	58, 59

III. EXPECTATION AND MOTIVATION - TEACHER PREPARATION

A-B. Student Goal Setting; Motivating with Praise	60
---	----

Graphics, Writing Samples	61, 62
C-D. Great Expectations, “From Beginning Speech to Reading - A Narrative”	63, 64
IV. LESSON 1, DAY 1 – TEACHER PREPARATION	
A. Preparing to Teach	65
B. Review Prior to Teaching on the First Day – Concepts of the Method for Children	65
C. For Older or Remedial Children	66
V. STUDENT SELF DISCIPLINE AND PERSONAL RESPONSIBILITY	
TEACHER PREPARATION	
A-C. Posture, Allowing Choice in Seating, Renting Pencils	66,67
D-F. Compete With Own Past Performance, Thinking, Not Guessing; Best Performance	67
G-H. Maintaining Own Portfolio; Classroom Discipline	67, 68
VI. ATTENTION - HOW TO GET AND KEEP IT – TEACHER PREPARATION	
A. Listening, Paying Attention, Concentration, the Silence Game	68, 69
B. Handling Individual Inappropriate Behavior	69
VII. THE METHODOLOGY, THE ORDER OF INSTRUCTION AND COGNITIVE DEVELOPMENT – TEACHER PREPARATION	
A. Phonetics, Letter Formation. Spelling, Reading - the Order of Instruction	69
B. The Methodologies: Multi-Sensory, Direct, Socratic Instruction, Sequencing, Dictation	69, 70, 71
C. Footnotes for Cognitive Development in Auditory, Visual, Verbal and Motor	71
D. Vertical Manuscript Printing - Turns Into Connected Writing - Best of Both Approaches	71, 72
E-F. Quality Control; More on Student Attention	72
G. Posture, Pencil Holding, Hand and Arm Positions	72
VIII. PHONOGRAM CARDS, TAPE AND STUDENT CD – TEACHER PREPARATION	
A. The Phonemes and Graphemes of Correct English Spelling, Phonogram Cards	72, 73
B. Teacher’s Companion Tape for Teacher Preparation, Correct Pronunciations	73, 74
C. 47 Voiced Spelling Rules on Digital Tape	75
D. Student Audio Practice CD with Worksheet Black line Masters	75
E-F. Clock Face and Letter Stroke Charts, Optimal Results	75
IX. “COMFORT” POSTURE, WRITING AND PENCIL-HOLDING POSITIONS – TEACHER PREPARATION	
A. Ergonomically Correct Seating, Posture, Rationale	75, 76
B. Preparing to Teach Letter Formation, Paper, Body/Seated Posture, Graphics of Proper Pencil Holding Positions	76, 77, 78
C. Circle Hand 78	
X. PRACTICING THE BASIC LETTER STROKES – TEACHER PREPARATION	
A-B. Basic Letter Strokes; Use of Clock-Face Paper, Clockface, Letter Stroke Chart	78, 79
C. Stroke 1 - the Circle, Dictation of 7 Letter Strokes	79, 80
D-F. Use of ‘2 on the Clock’ Dots, Margin Lines on the Board, Paper	80, 81

XI. PROCEDURES TO TEACH LETTER FORMATION & THE FIRST 26 PHONOGRAMS–**TEACHER PREPARATION**

- A. Detailed Use of the Phonogram Cards to Teach Letter Formation and the “Explicit”
Sound/Symbol Relationships, Full Instructions and Graphic Illustrations 81-86
- B. General Instructions, Rationale, Concepts and Cautions 86, 87

XII. TESTING THE PHONOGRAMS, ASSESSING LETTER FORMATION, SPACING,**NEATNESS AND ACCURACY – TEACHER PREPARATION**

- A. Daily Testing of the Phonograms Until Mastery 87
- B. Testing Dictation, Pacing, Automaticity of Response, Proof-reading, Recoding,
Neatness and Accuracy, Model Phonogram Test, Cognitive Development 88-91
- C. What Content & Cognition Has Been Taught -What Is Its Significance? 91

XIII. INSTRUCTIONS FOR TEACHING REMEDIAL STUDENTS –TEACHER PREPARATION

- A. General - For Students Receiving This Instruction for the First Time Beyond Grade 1 91
- B. Teaching Letter Formation to Older Students - Why? 91
- C. Spelling Dictation to Older Students *Before* 55 Phonograms Have Been Learned 91
- D. Begin With Spelling List 1 to Learn Process & Marking System 92
- E. Correcting Severe Penmanship Deficiencies in Older Children 92
- F. “Childish Scrawl” Eradicated with Palmer Ovals and Push-Pulls 92, 93
- G. Remedial Students Teaching Themselves 93

XIV. TEACH PHONOGRAMS AND HANDWRITING

Student Lesson Day 1 & 2 Checklists – Teacher Preparation and Organization

[STUDENT LESSONS BEGIN NOW]

- A. **Student Lesson 1 - Day 1:** Organize Students - Teach Clock Face & Letter Strokes 93
- Student Lesson 2 - Day 2:** Review, Teach and Test /a/ /c/ d and f 93
- B. Objectives of Letter Formation with “Explicit” Phonics Instruction 93, 94
- C. “Language of Instruction” for Vocabulary and Oral Comprehension 94
- Lessons 3 - 8,** Detailed Instructions for Dictating Letter Formation and Phonetics for
Remaining 22 Letters of the Alphabet 94
- D. Reference to Testing Section 95
- E-F. Homework, Testing and Practice 95
- G-H. First In-service Question, Advice for Parents of Preschoolers 95, 96
- Assessment: Skills & Performance Checklist, Lessons 1 - 8.** 97-99
- Chapter Bibliography 100

CHAPTER FOUR: WALL CHARTS (REFERENCE NOTEBOOKS) SPELLING NOTEBOOKS

TAB SHEET: Lesson Objectives/Chart, Phonemes and Graphemes of English Spelling Patterns

I. WALL CHARTS/REFERENCE NOTEBOOKS- TEACHER PREPARATION

- Reference Notebook Facts, **Model, Reference Notebook** Table of Contents 101
- Supplies Needed for Various Grade Levels 101, 102
- A. Chart, Tools Needed for Various Grades and Teaching Situations 102
- B. Wall Chart/Reference Notebook Objectives 102, 103
- C-E. Teaching Tool and Time Saver, Different Levels and Teaching Needs 103
- F. Production of Both Parts of the Notebook, Rationale, Concepts, Procedures 104-106
- Student Lesson 9** 106
- G. Dictating Title Page, *My English Notebook*, the Table of Contents Title and

	Entry Numbers for Pages on the Table of Contents	106-108
H.	K - 1 Dictation of Consonants and Vowels, Model , Chart/Page 1a	108-109
I.	Grades 2 - Up Dictation of Consonants and Vowels, Notebook Page 1a	109-110
J.	All Levels - Dictating Vowels	110-111
K-M.	Continue Phonograms and Handwriting, Review, Time Requirement	111-112
II. ORAL PHONEMIC AWARENESS PRACTICE - TEACHER PREPARATION		
A.	Objectives	112
	Lesson 10 – Teach ‘er’ Phonograms and Two Nonsense Sentences	112
B.	“Rime” versus Rhyme, Phonemic-Graphemic Awareness, Nursery Rhymes	113, 114
C.	Teaching and Testing Phonograms 32 through 55, Objectives, Vocabulary of Instruction	114
	Lessons 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17.	114
D-F.	Continue Phonograms; Add Numeral Formation with Oval Clock Face, Dictation Scripts, Review	115, 116
III. RECORD MULTIPLE-LETTER PHONOGRAMS 32 - 55		
	Lesson 18	117
A-B.	Dictate and List Phonograms 32 through 55 , Model Chart/Page 2a	117, 119
C.	Congratulations! You’ve Reached a Milestone, Chart 2a	120
	Lesson 19 - Review all Concepts to Date.	120
	Skills & Performance Checklist - Lessons 9 - 19.	121-123
	Chapter Bibliography	124
CHAPTER FIVE, LESSONS 20-160: SPELLING DICTATION, CHARTS VOCABULARY DEVELOPMENT, COMPOSITION, GRAMMAR, SYNTAX, ANALYTICAL AND INFERENTIAL THINKING LESSONS - TEACHER PREPARATION		
TAB SHEET: Teacher and Student Objectives/Mnemonic Marking System for Spelling		
	47 Spelling, Plural, Syllabication, Capitalization Rules	125, 126
I. INTRODUCING THE 14 SPELLING-VOCABULARY LISTS – TEACHER PREPARATION		
A.	Four-Year Objectives for Dictated Spelling Instruction	127
B.	The Spelling-Vocabulary List, General	128
C.	Pre Study Needed Before Proceeding	128
II. IMPORTANT DISTINCTIONS OF DICTATED SPELLING – TEACHER PREPARATION		
A.	Teaches Writing & Spelling First to Teach Reading and Thinking	128
B.	Acknowledges, but Teaches Around <i>Schwa</i> Pronunciations for Correct Spelling	128
C.	Distinguishes <i>Phonetics</i> for Precise Speech and Correct Spelling From <i>Phonics</i> for Pronunciation and Reading	129
D.	Offers Time Effectiveness in Starting with the Known (Speech) to the Unknown (Print)	129
E.	Offers Possibilities of Restoring More Uniform Pronunciations Worldwide	129
F.	Offers Best Option to Teach English Worldwide Using Relatively Uniform Spellings	129
G.	Overcomes Various Regional Pronunciation Variances	129
H.	Eliminates Teaching Letter Names in Beginning Instruction	129
I.	Teaches How to Read by Thinking Through the Writing and Spelling Process First	129
J.	Provides Students’ First In-Context Reading from Their Own Writing (Encodable Text)	130
K.	Empowers Students to Read at Their Oral and Interest Vocabularies	130

L.	Utilizes a Body of Scientific Research in How the Brain Functions in Learning Language	130
M.	Provides Viable Option for Bilingual and ESL Students	130
III. TEACHING PHILOSOPHIES AND PROCEDURES – TEACHER PREPARATION		
A-C.	No Erasers; Teachers Must Correct at the Outset; No Copying	131
D.	Students Do Not See Spelling List Before They Write it From Dictation	131
E-F.	Teachers Use Model Oral Sentences with Each Spelling Word; Six Words Per Day	131
G.	Encoding, Recoding and Decoding – In That Order	132
H-I.	Students Dictate Back to Teacher; Use of Simplified Mnemonic Marking System	132
J.	Sounding and Reading the Words	132
IV. PRE-DICTATION CHECKLIST – TEACHER PREPARATION		
A-B.	Begin with Folded Hands, Full View of the Board	133
C-D.	There are 14 Spelling Lists, Study the Important Spelling Dictation Procedure	133
V. PRELIMINARY TO DICTATION PROCEDURE – TEACHER PREPARATION		
A-B.	Practice Sheet is Used First, The Value of “The Spelling Notebook”	134
VI. SPELLING DICTATION BEGINS - TEACHER PREPARATION		
A.	Using the Model Script	134
B.	Teacher First Pronounces Word, Then Uses it in a Model Sentence	134
C.	Spelling Rules Are Taught by Application – Teachers Teach, Students Repeat Aloud	134
D.	Begin Spelling List 1	134
	Lesson 20, Student Instruction me, do, and, go, at, on - Encoding, Recoding and Decoding Dictation Script for the First Word <i>me</i>	135-138
E.	Sounding, Blending and Reading Words “in Isolation”	138
VII. PRACTICING READING OF SPELLING WORDS / THE MARKING SYSTEM – TEACHER PREPARATION		
A.	Spelling Words are Mixed and Practiced Until Automaticity is Acquired	140
B.	Students Must See Words in Sound Bytes; Blending Can Be Difficult	140
C-D.	Sounding, Blending, Reading Routine First Led by Teacher, Then Student Led	140
E.	Distinguish What is “Heard and Said” from What We Must Sometimes “Think to Spell”	140
F.	All Students Read Aloud	141
VIII. TESTING OF SPELLING WORDS – TEACHER PREPARATION		
A.	Six Words Are Tested, Another Six Are Added Until 30 Are Tested Daily	141
B.	Tests Collected Immediately (with Student Notebooks); Words Missed Are Marked in Notebook.. with a Pencil Check Mark and Returned to Student for Study	141
C.	Students Do Not Check Each Other’s Spelling Tests	141
D.	Note and Follow General 160 Lesson Objectives and Those on Each Tab Sheet	141, 142
	Lesson 21 a - see Lesson 22 run - now	142
IX. DISTINCTIONS OF THE METHOD, HISTORY - TEACHER PREPARATION		
A.	Spelling Patterns Stable Since Webster-Oxford Collaboration of the Early 1860’s	143
B-D.	More on the “Schwa,” Regionalisms, The Syllable, Phonemic/Graphemic Awareness	143-146
E.	The Rules of Orthography - Spelling, Syllabication, Plurals, Etymology, Roots, Affixes	146
F.	Importance of Differences Between Phonemic and Graphemic Awareness	146

G.	Returning to Past Orthography (Spelling) Instruction	147
	Student Lesson 23 act - ton Lesson 24 top - an Lesson 25 my - good	147
H.	Establishing a “Sight Vocabulary” Through Phonetic Analysis and Application of Rules	148
I.	Oral Sentences Begin	148
X.	DICTATION SCRIPT FOR TWO-SYLLABLE WORDS - TEACHER PREPARATION	
A.	Script for Two-Syllable Words	148, 149
B.	After Two-Syllable Words	149
	Model , Spelling List 1	149
	Lesson 26 good - cost Lesson 27 radio - bush	150
C-D.	Record C and G Rules; Illustrate Vowels, Entitle Consonant Section, Chart/Page 1a	151-155
	Model , Chart/Page 1a	155
	Lesson 28 today - out	156
E.	Book Print and “Phonemic Awareness” Practice	156, 157
XI.	CAPITAL LETTER FORMATION	
A.	Begin Teaching First Five Capital Letters: C, G, O, Q, S, Dictation Script	157
	Lesson 29 be - you	158
B.	Capital Letters: A, B, D, E, F, P, Dictation Script	158
	Lesson 30 can - type	159
C.	Capital Letters: H, I, J, K, L, Dictation Script	159, 160
D.	Begin Illustration of Silent Final e, Job 1, Chart/Page 1a; Start Chart/Page 1b, First of Three Ways a Single Vowel Usually Says Its Name, Model Chart/Page 1b	160-162
	Skills & Performance Checklists, Lessons 20 - 30	163, 165
	Bibliography	166



CHAPTER FIVE (Continues organized by list number and lesson numbers within the list)

LESSONS 31 - 40: SPELLING-VOCABULARY DICTATION CONTINUES,

**BLENDING AND READING OF ISOLATED WORDS, USING SILENT FINAL E’S,
ORAL SENTENCES, HHH CHART**

A.	Spelling-Vocabulary List 2 Begins	167
	Lesson 31 ago - did	167
B.	Capital Letters: M, N, R, T, U, Dictation Script	167, 168
C-D.	Language of Instruction; Vocabulary Charts: Homonyms, Homophones, Homographs	168, 169
	Model , Chart/Page 4a	168
	Lesson 32 change - have	169
E.	Capital Letters: V, W, X, Y, Z, Dictation Script	169, 170
F.	Post Capital Letter Chart	170, 171
	Model , Chart/Page 4a	171
G.	Add Second and Third Silent Final e’s to Chart/Page 1a, continued	172-175
	Lesson 33 chance - are	175
H.	Complete Fourth and Fifth Silent Final e Rule Illustrations	175-178
	Lesson 34 had - lace Lesson 35 school - rings	179
	Lesson 36 live - big	180

WRITING ORIGINAL SENTENCES - TEACHER PREPARATION

- A-I. Written Composition, Kinds of Sentences, Using Spelling Words
 Make/Post Chart/Page 5a, Kinds of Sentences, Definitions, Declarative
 Use of Capital Letters, Periods, Dictation to Get Creative Juices Flowing, Graphics 181-183
- J-K. Building Independence, First In Context Reading (*Individually* Decodable Text) 184, 185
Lesson 37 mother - hats 185
 Phonemic/Graphemic Awareness and Book Print Practice 185

THE FIVE SPELLINGS OF 'ER'

- A. The Five Spellings of 'Er' Chart/Page 3 186-189
Model, Chart/Page 3 189
Lesson 38 ice - beat 190

VOCABULARY BUILDERS

- A. Synonyms and Antonyms, Chart/Page 5b 190
- B. *Reading Teacher's Book of Lists*. 190
Lesson 39 sit - floor **Lesson 40** yes - bring 191
Skills & Performance Checklists, Lessons 31 - 40 192-195

LESSONS 41 - 50: (List 3) SPELLING, PHONOGRAMS, VOCABULARY, READING**TABSHEET: Learning Objectives/Marva Collins Literature List**

- A-B. Teach Last 16 Phonograms, Practice Book Print, Onsets and Rimes 197
Lesson 41 tell - taxes **Lesson 42** just - beaches 197, 198
- C. Continue, Three Ways a Single Vowel Says Its Name Chart/Page 1b, Dictation Script 198-202
Model, Chart/Page 1b 202
Lesson 43 much - when 203
- D-E. Begin Interrogative Sentences, Speaking, Oral Q & A 203
 Use of Commas, to set off Names 203, 204
Model, Chart/Page 7 204
Lesson 44 house - month 205
- F. List Phonograms 56 - 71, Chart/Page 2b (word illustrations added later) 205
Model, Page 2b 205
Lesson 45: Teacher Preparation for Paronyms + won - none 206
- G. Teaching Paronyms once, one, lone, alone, only, none, Dictation Script 206-208

RED LETTER DAY: BEGIN READING FROM BOOKS - TEACHER PREPARATION

- Lesson 46** any - if 208
- H-J. **Teacher Preparation:** Literature, Reading, Recommendations on General Selection,
 Importance of Classroom Library, Primary Factors in Decoding, Fluency and
 Comprehension (McCall Harby), *Books Children Love*, Reading Across-the-Curriculum,
 Oral, Choral / Silent Reading, Reading, K - 2 and ESL, Spelling and Usage Dictionary 209-212
Lesson 47 them - bridge **Lesson 48** man - judge 212, 213
Lesson 49 was - ledge **Lesson 50** apple - check 213
- K-L. Preview McCall-Harby; Adding Imperative Sentences 213, 214
Transparency Master, Phonemic/Graphemic Awareness and Book Print Practice 215
Skills & Performance Checklist 41 - 50. 216, 217

**LESSONS 51 - 60: (List 4) PHONETICS/HANDWRITING REVIEW; SPELLING, READING
VOCABULARY, COMPOSITION, COMPREHENSION, GRAMMAR**

TABSHEET: Teacher-Student Objectives/Continual Practice Reminders

	Lesson 51 nine - giant Lesson 52 sick - spend	219
A-B.	Practice Reminder	219
	Lesson 53 foot - bow Lesson 54 plant - turn	220
C.	Transparency Master , First Use of <i>McCall-Harby Primary Test Lessons in Reading</i>	220, 221
	Lesson 55 who - voice Lesson 56 song - Sunday	222
D.	Begin Common and Proper Nouns, Plurals, Regular/Irregular Chart/Page 6a	222-225
	Model , Chart/Page 6a	223
	Lesson 57 mouse - geese Lesson 58 perfect - away Lesson 59 put - each	225, 226
E.	Pronouns, Person, Case and Number, Subject Object Chart/Page 6b, Dictation Script	226-228
	Model , Chart/Page 6b	227
	Lesson 60 moon - missed	228
	Phonemic Awareness/Book Print Practice Transparency Master	229
	Skills & Performance Checklist 51 - 60	230-232

**LESSONS 61 - 70: (List 5) SPELLING, VOCABULARY, COMPOSITION, GRAMMAR,
PUNCTUATION TABSHEET: Teacher-Student Objectives/Grammar “Map”**

A.	Abbreviations - Teacher Preparation	233
	Lesson 61 letter - Ms.	233
B-C.	Begin Silent Final e Words with Vowel Suffixes Chart/Page 8a, Objectives, Dictation Script	233-236
	Model , Chart/Page 8a	236
	Lesson 62 thing - west	236
D-E.	Continue Silent Final e Vowel Suffixes Word Dictation, Roots, Exceptions to Rule	236, 237
	Lesson 63 told - for Lesson 64 make - wheat	237, 238
	Lesson 65 dance - yours Lesson 66 very - Tom’s	238
F.	Use of Apostrophes in Possessive Nouns, Pronouns and Contractions	238, 239
	Model , Chart/Page 9a	239
G.	Teach Letter Names; teachers review Spelling & Usage Dictionary	239, 240
	Lesson 67 zoo - ate	240
H.	Teach Verbs, Their Tenses and Helpers, Begin Chart/Page 8b, Dictation Script	240-242
	Model , Chart/Page 8b	241
	Lesson 68 inform - brother Lesson 69 cast - reason Lesson 70 post - gold	243
I.	Introduce Dictionary Work, K - 2 Spelling & Usage Dictionary	244, 245
	Transparency Master , Phonemic/Graphemic Awareness, Book Print Practice	246
	Skills & Performance Checklists 61 - 70	247, 248

LESSONS 71-80: (List 6) SPELLING, READING, VOCABULARY, COMPOSITION, GRAMMAR

TABSHEET: Teacher-Student Objectives/Irregular and Regular Verbs

	Lesson 71 few - above Lesson 72 rest - color	249
A.	Teaching Syntax with Diagramming: One Noun, One Verb Sentences	249, 250
	Lesson 73 sharp - say Lesson 74 tire - made	252
B.	<i>The Complete Book of Diagrams</i> , Student/teacher dialogue	250, 251
	Model , Chart/Page 15	252
	Transparency Master , Diagram Subject/Verb	253

C.	K - 1 Grammar Complete in This Publication, Reference to Harvey's Grammar	254
	Lesson 75 read - roast Lesson 76 left - train Lesson 77 pay - edge	254
D-I.	Composition Objectives, Topic Sentences and Organization, Student/Teacher, Dear Uncle Jack Letter, Collaboration, Brainstorming, Imagination	255, 258
	Model , Chart/Page	256
J-K.	Introducing <i>McCall-Crabbs Standard Test Lessons in Reading</i> (Comprehension)	x
	Proofreader's Marks and Checklist for Spelling, Content, Syntax, Punctuation, Introducing Inferential Thinking Exercises - <i>Reading and Thinking</i>	258, 259
	Lesson 78 out - set Lesson 79 report - hour Lesson 80 line - more	
L.	HALF-WAY POINT [Kindergarten students reach this point by year's end] Skills & Performance Checklists Lessons 71 - 80.	262, 263
 LESSONS 81 - 90: (List 7) SPELLING, VOCABULARY, GRAMMAR, SYNTAX, COMPOSITION		
TAB SHEET: Learning Activities Overview/Goals, Second Half of the Year		
	Lesson 81 wind - roam Lesson 82 along - stop	265
A-B.	Introducing One Syllable Vowel Suffix Words, with Rule 26, Script	265, 267
	Model , Chart/Page 10a	267
	Lesson 83 rough - black	267
C-E.	Adjectives and Articles, Chart/Page 11a	268, 269
	Model , Chart/Page 11a	269
F.	Diagramming with Adjectives and Articles	269
G.	Punctuation, Commas in a Series	269
	Model , Chart/Page 7b	269
	Lesson 84 mine - seated	269
H.	Continue Charts 8a and 8b ; Enter Irregular Verbs, with Past Tense Endings on	270
	Lesson 85 course - became Lesson 86 December - biting	271
I.	Teaching Syntax with Four Sentence Patterns; Post Chart/Page 12	271, 274
	Model , Chart/Page 12a	272
J-L.	Intransitive and Transitive Verbs, Direct Objects	273, 274
	Lesson 87 mail - aye Lesson 88 glass - upon Lesson 89 two - twelve	275
	Lesson 90 will - should	276
	Skills & Performance Checklists.	277, 278
 LESSONS 91 - 100: (List 8) SPELLING, VOCABULARY, GRAMMAR, SYNTAX, COMPOSITION		
TAB SHEET: Teach-Student Objectives/"An English Speaking World"		
	Lesson 91 week - sense Lesson 92 seem - badge	279
A.	Classes of Verbs: Transitive, Intransitive, and Linking	279, 280
	Transparency Master , Transitive, Intransitive and Linking Verbs	281
	Lesson 93 even - wives Lesson 94 weigh - great	282
	Lesson 95 story - guide Lesson 96 father - prices	282
B.	Friendly Letters, Envelope Making and Addressing	282, 283
	Lesson 97 money - copies Lesson 98 move - fifth	284
	Lesson 99 return - fare Lesson 100 clean - poor	284
	Skills & Performance Checklists 91 - 100.	285, 286

LESSONS 101-110: (List 9) SPELLING, VOCABULARY, GRAMMAR, SYNTAX, COMPOSITION

TABSHEET: Teacher-Student Objectives

Lesson 101 hurt - tenth **Lesson 102** sir - them **Lesson 103** shut - pail 287

A-B. Comparative Adjectives, Definitions, Script, Chart/Page 11a 288, 289
Model, Chart/Page 11b 289

Lesson 104 itself - passing **Lesson 105** ease - zoning **Lesson 106** garden - contain 289, 290

Lesson 107 oak-mouth **Lesson 108** light - becoming **Lesson 109** slow - wreck 290, 291

C-D. Introducing Adverbs, Objectives, Definitions, Adverbs Answer What Questions,
 Facts, Jingle, Exercises in Harvey’s Elementary Grammar 291, 292
Model, Chart/Page 13a 292

Lesson 110 season - standing 292

Skills & Performance Checklist 101 - 110 294, 295

LESSONS 111-120: (List 10) SPELLING, VOCABULARY, GRAMMAR, SYNTAX, COMPOSITION

TABSHEET: Teacher-Student Objectives/22 Rules of Syntax

Lesson 111 catch - kitchen 297

A. Possessive Nouns, Add to Apostrophe Chart 9a - **Teacher Preparation** 297

Lesson 112 warm - cloth 297

B-C. Teaching Outlining With Chart/Page 12b; First Book Report - **Teacher Preparation** 297, 298

Lesson 113 begin - disabled 298

D-E. Prefixes, Teaching Language Skills Across-the-Curriculum;
 Introducing Instant Vocabulary for Older Students - **Teacher Preparation** 298, 299

Lesson 114 pack - luck **Lesson 115** track - direction **Lesson 116** built - boat 299, 300

F-G. An Exercise in Parsing Nouns, Gender, Person, Number, Case, Objectives,
 Order of Parsing, Student/Teacher Script 300, 303

H. 22 Rules of Syntax (Sentence Construction) 303

Lesson 117 push - back **Lesson 118** dew - Saturday 303

Lesson 119 lesson - highest **Lesson 120** June - date 304

I. Punctuation for Dates 304

J. Composition - Descriptive Paragraphs - **Teacher Preparation** 305

Skills & Performance Checklist, Lessons 111-120 306, 307

LESSONS 121-130: (List 11) SPELLING, VOCABULARY, GRAMMAR, SYNTAX, COMPOSITION

TABSHEET: Teacher-Student Objectives

Lesson 121 right - April **Lesson 122** ride - beneath 309, 310

A. Introducing Prepositions, Syntax Rules 7 and 18, Definition 309, 310

B. Adverb and Adjective Prepositions Answer What Questions? 309, 310
Model, Chart/Page 13b 310

Lesson 123 indeed - herself **Lesson 124** world - whole 311

C. Diagramming with Prepositions - **Teacher Preparation** 311, 312

Lesson 125 trip - chef **Lesson 126** church - machine 313

D-E. Two Syllable Words with Vowel Suffixes, Rule 27, Exceptions, Two, One, One, 313
 If and Except Rule, Accent Marks 313, 314
Model, Chart/Page 10b 313

Lesson 127 know - oyster **Lesson 128** were - their **Lesson 129** close - ache 314, 315

F. Parsing of Pronouns, Syntax Rules, Diagramming with Pronouns, **Teacher Preparation** 315, 316

Lesson 130 pair - Chevrolet 316

Skills & Performance Checklist 121 - 130 317, 318

LESSONS 131 - 140: (List 11) SPELLING, VOCABULARY, GRAMMAR, SYNTAX, COMPOSITION**TABSHEET: Teacher-Student Objectives**

	Lesson 131 however - remain Lesson 132 body - turn	319
A.	Subject-Verb Number Agreement	319, 320
	Lesson 133 cheese - honey Lesson 134 earth - traded Lesson 135 pocket - omit	320, 321
B-C.	Syntax - Parsing Verbs, Order of Parsing, Transparency Master, Exercises, Syntax Rule .	320, 321
	Lesson 136 almost - spring Lesson 137 provide - struck	322
	Lesson 138 go - royal Lesson 139 born - sizes Lesson 140 blew - income	323
D.	Punctuation, Using Quotation Marks with a Comma, Add to Chart/Page 7a, Intro “Flippers” ..	323, 324
	Skills & Performance Checklist 131-140.	325, 326

LESSONS 141 - 150: (List 12) SPELLING, VOCABULARY, GRAMMAR, SYNTAX

	Lesson 141 bought - discount	327
A.	Etymology, Past Tense and Plural Forms of die, dies and died	327
	Lesson 142 driven - spoke Lesson 143 past - truly Lesson 144 child - lunch	328
	Lesson 145 object - faintly	329
B.	‘Sh’ and ‘Zh’ Spellings and Exceptions or Unusual Spellings of ‘Sh’	329, 330
	Model , Chart/Page 14a	330
	Lesson 146 angle - tripod Lesson 147 freeze - climb Lesson 148 try - ready	330, 331
	Lesson 149 quite - through Lesson 150 chief - least	331
	Skills & Performance Checklist 141 - 150.	332, 333

LESSONS 151 - 160: (List 13) SPELLING, VOCABULARY, GRAMMAR, SYNTAX, COMPOSITION**TABSHEET: Teacher-Student Objectives**

	Lesson 151 their - friends	335
A-B.	Use of ‘Ei’ and ‘Ie’ Phonograms, Spelling Rule 19 and Model , Chart/Page 14b	335, 336
	Lesson 152 race - station Lesson 153 wonder - green Lesson 154 neither - iron	336, 337
C-E.	Syntax - Diagramming Compound Sentences, Adding to Syntax Chart/Page 15	337, 338
	Lesson 155 pencil - so Lesson 156 sure - always Lesson 157 forest - carry	340
	Lesson 158 accept - sorry Lesson 159 cheerful - achieve Lesson 160 bough -Thursday	341
	Skills & Performance Checklist 151 - 160.	342, 343

CHAPTER SIX: APPENDIX

A.	Glossary of Terms	345, 349
B.	Four-Page Parent Information and Report Form	350, 353
C.	Table of Contents, <i>Reading Teacher’s Book of Lists</i>	354, 355
D.	Alphabetized Spelling-Vocabulary List	356, 361
E.	Chronological Spelling-Vocabulary List	362, 367
F.	Index.....	368, 373

TEACHER PREPARATION

The **TABBED DIVIDER FRONTS** list all the teacher preparation necessary to accomplish the learning objectives within each chapter. Please use these lists for an overview of what is to be taught within each chapter--usually consisting of ten lessons.

IMPORTANT INFORMATION ON TABBED DIVIDER BACKS

Six Objects of Primary Education <i>by Thomas Jefferson</i>	Chapter I
The Most Asked In-service Questions	Chapter II
Concepts and Teaching Activities for First Half Year	Chapter III
Common Spelling Patterns of 42 Elementary English Speech Sounds	Chapter IV
Mnemonic Marking System for Spelling	Chapter V - Lessons 20-30
Spelling Dictation Overview	Chapter V - Lessons 31-40
Literature Selection for Primary Students	Chapter V - Lessons 41-50
Practice Reminder List	Chapter V - Lessons 51-60
Grammar Map	Chapter V - Lessons 61-70
Principal Parts of Regular and Irregular Verbs	Chapter V - Lessons 71-80
Concepts and Teaching Activities for Second Half Year	Chapter V - Lessons 81-90
<u>An English Speaking World</u> Article	Chapter V - Lessons 91-100
The 22 Rules of Syntax	Chapter V - Lessons 111-120

ICONS LEGEND



Practice Reminders



Student Lessons



Teacher Training



**Teacher's Tips or
Myrna's Tips**



Assessment



Well-Ordered Language Scope and Sequence

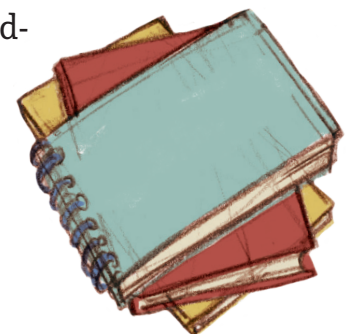
Well-Ordered Language (WOL) is a comprehensive and sequential approach to teaching English grammar using analytical tools in a delightful way. WOL's innovative oral analysis, unique marking system, and classical diagramming teach students to identify not only the parts of a sentence but also the function of each part and its relationships within a sentence.

Well-Ordered Language presents grammar in a clear, orderly way, simultaneously cultivating a child's wonder. In each level, a captivating narrative emerges in the lesson exercises. Instruction is presented with attractive illustrations and samples taken from classic children's literature and poetry.

The following chart is divided into four grade levels (Levels 1–4), demonstrating the coverage of the essential principles of grammar. Each level builds on the understanding and skills students gain in previous levels, thereby providing them with a full understanding of each grammatical principle by the time they have completed all four levels of the curriculum.

The objectives for each level is as follows:

- **Level 1 (Grades 3–4):** Students will memorize grammatical terms using songs in order to understand, to analyze, and to mark sentences.
- **Level 2 (Grades 4–5):** Students will master grammar songs and continue sentence analysis and marking. Students will also diagram in order to understand increasingly complicated sentences. *(Level 2 projected release: 2017)*
- **Level 3/Level 4 (Grades 5–6/6–7+):** Students will learn more advanced grammatical concepts and apply them to sophisticated sentences using the tools of analysis and diagramming. *(Level 3 projected release: 2018; Level 4 projected release: 2019)*



Level

Understanding Grammatical Relationships

	1	2	3	4
Oral Sentence Analysis	x	x	x	x
Visual Sentence Analysis	x	x	x	x
Literary Applications	x	x	x	x
Sentence Diagramming		x	x	x

Sentence Analysis

	1	2	3	4
Principal Elements	x	x	x	x
Modifiers: Adjectives	x	x	x	x
Article Adjectives	x	x	x	x
Modifiers: Adverbs	x	x	x	x
Predicate Verbs	x	x	x	x
Helping Verbs	x	x	x	x
Direct Objects	x	x	x	x
Prepositional Phrases: Adverbial	x	x	x	x
Introductory Prepositional Phrases	x	x	x	x
Conjunctions	x	x	x	x
Compound Subjects	x	x	x	x
Compound Verbs	x	x	x	x
Compound Direct Objects	x	x	x	x
Predicate Nominatives		x	x	x
Predicate Adjectives		x	x	x
Linking Verbs		x	x	x
Prepositional Phrases: Adjectival		x	x	x
Possessive Nouns		x	x	x
Interrogative Pronouns		x	x	x
Relative Pronouns		x	x	x
Interjections		x	x	x

Level

Compound Sentences
 Complex Sentences
 Adjectival Clauses
 Compound-Complex Sentences
 Indirect Objects
 Participles
 Gerunds
 Infinitives
 Participial Phrases
 Gerund Phrases
 Infinitive Phrases
 Reflexive Pronouns
 Intensive Pronouns
 Appositives

	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
Compound Sentences		X	X	X
Complex Sentences		X	X	X
Adjectival Clauses		X	X	X
Compound-Complex Sentences			X	X
Indirect Objects			X	X
Participles			X	X
Gerunds			X	X
Infinitives			X	X
Participial Phrases				X
Gerund Phrases				X
Infinitive Phrases				X
Reflexive Pronouns				X
Intensive Pronouns				X
Appositives				X

Sentence Diagramming

Principal Elements
 Modifiers: Adjectives
 Modifiers: Adverbs
 Compound Sentences
 Prepositional Phrases: Adverbial
 Direct Objects
 Predicate Nominatives
 Predicate Adjectives
 Linking Verbs
 Relative Pronouns
 Interjections
 Compound Sentences

	1	2	3	4
Principal Elements		X	X	X
Modifiers: Adjectives		X	X	X
Modifiers: Adverbs		X	X	X
Compound Sentences		X	X	X
Prepositional Phrases: Adverbial		X	X	X
Direct Objects		X	X	X
Predicate Nominatives		X	X	X
Predicate Adjectives		X	X	X
Linking Verbs		X	X	X
Relative Pronouns		X	X	X
Interjections		X	X	X
Compound Sentences		X	X	X



Level

Complex Sentences
 Prepositional Phrases: Adjectival
 Adjectival Clauses
 Indirect Objects
 Participles
 Gerunds
 Infinitives
 Compound-Complex Sentences
 Participial Phrases
 Gerund Phrases
 Infinitive Phrases
 Appositives

	1	2	3	4
Complex Sentences		X	X	X
Prepositional Phrases: Adjectival		X	X	X
Adjectival Clauses		X	X	X
Indirect Objects			X	X
Participles			X	X
Gerunds			X	X
Infinitives			X	X
Compound-Complex Sentences			X	X
Participial Phrases				X
Gerund Phrases				X
Infinitive Phrases				X
Appositives				X



Definitions

Eight Parts of Speech
 Sentences
 Principal Elements
 Subjects and Predicates
 Nouns
 Verbs and Helping Verbs
 Adverbs
 Adjectives
 Direct Objects
 Four Classes of Verbs
 Pronouns
 Subject Pronouns
 Antecedents
 Object Pronouns

	1	2	3	4
Eight Parts of Speech	X	X	X	X
Sentences	X	X	X	X
Principal Elements	X	X	X	X
Subjects and Predicates	X	X	X	X
Nouns	X	X	X	X
Verbs and Helping Verbs	X	X	X	X
Adverbs	X	X	X	X
Adjectives	X	X	X	X
Direct Objects	X	X	X	X
Four Classes of Verbs	X	X	X	X
Pronouns	X	X	X	X
Subject Pronouns	X	X	X	X
Antecedents	X	X	X	X
Object Pronouns	X	X	X	X

Level

Prepositions	X	X	X	X
List of Prepositions	X	X	X	X
Phrases	X	X	X	X
Object of the Preposition	X	X	X	X
Conjunctions	X	X	X	X
Synonyms, Antonyms, and Homonyms	X	X	X	X
Relative Clauses		X	X	X
Possessive Pronouns		X	X	X
Subordinate Clauses		X	X	X
Be Verbs		X	X	X
Predicate Nominatives		X	X	X
Predicate Adjectives		X	X	X
Possessive Nouns		X	X	X
Interrogative Pronouns		X	X	X
Relative Pronouns		X	X	X
Subordinate Conjunctions			X	X
Verbals			X	X
Adverbial Clauses			X	X
Indirect Objects			X	X

Eight Parts of Speech

	1	2	3	4
Nouns	X	X	X	X
Verbs	X	X	X	X
Adverbs	X	X	X	X
Adjectives	X	X	X	X
Prepositions	X	X	X	X
Pronouns	X	X	X	X
Conjunctions	X	X	X	X

Level

Interjections

	x	x	x
--	---	---	---

Nouns

Definition

1	2	3	4
----------	----------	----------	----------

Principal Elements

x	x	x	x
---	---	---	---

Subjects

x	x	x	x
---	---	---	---

Singular Nouns

x	x	x	x
---	---	---	---

Plural Nouns

x	x	x	x
---	---	---	---

Common Nouns

x	x	x	x
---	---	---	---

Proper Nouns

x	x	x	x
---	---	---	---

Object Nouns: Direct Object

x	x	x	x
---	---	---	---

Object Nouns: Object of the Preposition

x	x	x	x
---	---	---	---

Possessive Nouns

	x	x	x
--	---	---	---

Predicate Nominatives

	x	x	x
--	---	---	---

Object Nouns: Indirect Objects

		x	x
--	--	---	---

Gerunds

		x	x
--	--	---	---

Gerund Phrases

			x
--	--	--	---

Appositives

			x
--	--	--	---

Collective Nouns

			x
--	--	--	---

Noun Clauses

			x
--	--	--	---

Verbs

Definition

1	2	3	4
----------	----------	----------	----------

Principal Elements

x	x	x	x
---	---	---	---

Four Classes of Verbs

x	x	x	x
---	---	---	---

Predicate Verbs: Action Verbs

x	x	x	x
---	---	---	---

Helping Verbs

x	x	x	x
---	---	---	---

Transitive Verbs

x	x	x	x
---	---	---	---

Level

Intransitive Verbs

x

x

x

x

Contractions

x

x

x

x

Use of Have/Has

x

x

x

x

Use of Is/Are

x

x

x

x

Linking Verbs

x

x

x

Being Verbs

x

x

x

Sensory Linking Verbs

x

x

Verbals

x

x

Adverbs

1

2

3

4

Definition

x

x

x

x

Adverbs

x

x

x

x

Use of Not and Never

x

x

x

x

Prepositional Phrases: Adverbial

x

x

x

x

Introductory Prepositional Phrases

x

x

x

x

Classes of Adverbs

x

x

Adverbs of Time

x

x

Adverbs of Manner

x

x

Adverbs of Cause

x

x

Adverbs of Place

x

x

Adverbs of Degree

x

x

Infinitives

x

x

Adverbial Infinitive Phrases

x

Adverbial Phrases

x

Adjectives

1

2

3

4

Definition

x

x

x

x

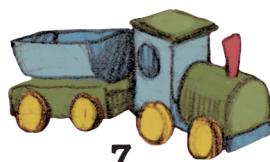
Adjectives

x

x

x

x



Level

Article Adjectives	x	x	x	x
Descriptive Adjectives		x	x	x
Definitive Adjectives		x	x	x
Predicate Adjectives		x	x	x
Prepositional Phrases: Adjectival		x	x	x
Adjectival Clauses		x	x	x
Proper Adjectives			x	x
Participles			x	x
Infinitives			x	x
Adjectival Participial Phrases				x
Adjectival Infinitive Phrases				x
Simple Form				x
Comparative Form				x
Superlative Form				x

Prepositions

	1	2	3	4
Definition	x	x	x	x
Prepositions	x	x	x	x
Object of the Prepositions	x	x	x	x
Prepositional Phrases	x	x	x	x
Introductory Prepositional Phrases	x	x	x	x
Adverbial Prepositional Phrases	x	x	x	x
Adjectival Participial Phrases		x	x	x

Pronouns

	1	2	3	4
Definition	x	x	x	x
Pronouns	x	x	x	x

Agreement in Number
 Subject Pronouns
 Object Pronouns: Direct Object
 Object Pronouns: Object of the Preposition
 Possessive Pronouns
 Interrogative Pronouns
 Relative Pronouns
 Object Pronouns: Indirect Objects
 Reflexive Pronouns
 Intensive Pronouns
 Indefinite Pronouns

Level

x	x	x	x
x	x	x	x
x	x	x	x
x	x	x	x
	x	x	x
	x	x	x
	x	x	x
		x	x
			x
			x
			x

Conjunctions

Definition
 Conjunctions: Simple—and, but, or
 Conjunctions: Coordinating—for, and, nor, but, or, yet, so
 Compound Sentences
 Subordinate Conjunctions
 Adverbial Clauses

1	2	3	4
x	x	x	x
x	x	x	x
	x	x	x
	x	x	x
		x	x
		x	x

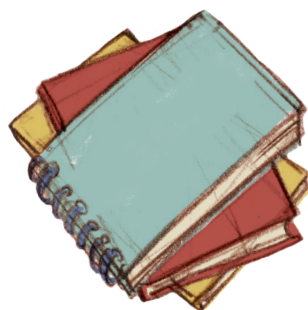
Interjections

Definition

1	2	3	4
	x	x	x

Kinds of Sentences

Declarative
 Interrogative
 Imperative



1	2	3	4
x	x	x	x
x	x	x	x
x	x	x	x

Level

Exclamatory

x

x

x

x

Parts of a Sentence

1

2

3

4

Principal Elements

x

x

x

x

Subjects: Simple

x

x

x

x

Predicates: Simple—Action Verb

x

x

x

x

Compound Subjects

x

x

x

x

Compound Verbs

x

x

x

x

Compound Direct Objects

x

x

x

x

Prepositions

x

x

x

x

Objects of the Prepositions

x

x

x

x

Phrases

x

x

x

x

Prepositional Phrases: Adverbial

x

x

x

x

Subjects: Complete

x

x

x

Predicates: Simple—Predicate Nominative

x

x

x

Predicates: Simple—Predicate Adjective

x

x

x

Compound Predicate Nominatives

x

x

x

Compound Predicate Adjectives

x

x

x

Prepositional Phrases: Adjectival

x

x

x

Predicate Nominatives

x

x

x

Predicate Adjectives

x

x

x

Subordinate Clauses

x

x

x

Adjectival Clauses: Relative Clauses

x

x

x

Understood Subjects

x

x

Indirect Objects

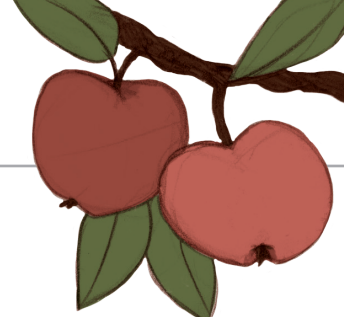
x

x

Adverbial Clauses

x

x



Structure of a Sentence

- Word Order in Sentences
- Fragments
- Natural Order
- Simple Sentences
- Subject-Verb Agreement
- Compound Sentences
- Complex Sentences
- Compound-Complex Sentences
- Run-On Sentences

Level			
1	2	3	4
x	x	x	x
x	x	x	x
x	x	x	x
x	x	x	x
x	x	x	x
	x	x	x
	x	x	x
		x	x
		x	x

Verbals

- Definition
- Participles
- Gerunds
- Infinitives
- Participial Phrases
- Gerund Phrases
- Infinitive Phrases

1	2	3	4
		x	x
		x	x
		x	x
		x	x
			x
			x
			x

Mechanics: Capitalization

- First Word of Sentence
- Proper Nouns: Names of People
- Proper Nouns: Names of Weekdays, Months
- Proper Nouns: Names of Cities, States, Countries
- Proper Adjectives
- First Word of a Direct Quotation

1	2	3	4
x	x	x	x
x	x	x	x
x	x	x	x
x	x	x	x
	x	x	x
	x	x	x

Level

Deities

Abbreviations

	x	x	x
	x	x	x

Punctuation: Periods

End of Declarative Sentences

End of Imperative Sentences

Within Quotation Marks: End of Sentence

After Abbreviations

1	2	3	4
x	x	x	x
x	x	x	x
	x	x	x
		x	x

Punctuation: Question Marks

End of Interrogative Sentences

Within Quotation Marks: Direct Quote of Question

1	2	3	4
x	x	x	x
	x	x	x

Punctuation: Exclamation Points

End of Exclamatory Sentences

Within Quotation Marks: Direct Quote

With an Interjection

1	2	3	4
x	x	x	x
	x	x	x
	x	x	x

Punctuation: Commas

After Introductory Prepositional Phrases

Within City and State

In Dates

In Addresses

With Direct Quotations

Sequencing: Oxford Comma

Between Adjectives

Comma and Conjunction: Compound Sentences

1	2	3	4
x	x	x	x
	x	x	x
	x	x	x
	x	x	x
	x	x	x
	x	x	x
	x	x	x
	x	x	x
	x	x	x

Level

Non-Essential Elements

		x	x
			x

With Appositives

Punctuation: Apostrophes

Contractions

1	2	3	4
x	x	x	x
	x	x	x

Possessive Nouns

Punctuation: Quotation Marks

With Tag Phrase

1	2	3	4
	x	x	x
	x	x	x
			x

With Other Punctuation

Single/Double Quotation Marks

Punctuation: Other

Semicolon

1	2	3	4
	x	x	x
		x	x

Colon



Classical Subjects *Creatively* Taught™

Well- Ordered Language

TEACHER'S EDITION

Level 1A

The Curious Child's Guide to Grammar

Tammy Peters and Daniel Coupland, PhD





Well-Ordered Language:
The Curious Child's Guide to Grammar
Level 1A Teacher's Edition
© Classical Academic Press, 2016
Version 1.0

ISBN: 978-1-60051-286-5

All rights reserved. This publication may not be reproduced,
stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means,
without the prior written permission of Classical Academic Press.

Classical Academic Press
2151 Market Street
Camp Hill, PA 17011

www.ClassicalAcademicPress.com

Content editor: Marie Kramb Campbell
Illustrator: Katharina Drees
Series editor and book designer: Lauraine Gustafson

Acknowledgments

Tammy Peters

I am deeply indebted to Mars Hill Academy in Cincinnati, Ohio. I give a sincere thanks to the students, families, and teachers who have supported me and contributed to this work over the last fifteen years. A special thanks to Sharon Peterson, Ellen Liebing, and Traci DeBra for their constant encouragement and insights, as well as to Alicia Weber, Natalie Walls, and Molly Milligan.

With a grateful heart, I thank Dr. Dan Coupland for his insights and love of language. It has been a privilege to coauthor *Well-Ordered Language* with him. I also thank Dr. Marie Campbell, our content editor, for her expertise and precision in the English language. She is a joy and a friend. I greatly appreciate Dr. Chris Perrin, Laurie Gustafson, and the whole Classical Academic Press staff for their vision and professionalism.

There are not enough words to express my gratitude to my family for their constant support. My heartfelt appreciation is to the love of my life, Hud Peters, who has prayerfully supported me through it all.

Daniel Coupland, PhD

I am grateful for the *grammarphiles* in my life: Mrs. Linda Tiarks, my elementary school teacher who showed me how to study and love the English language; Dr. Bryan Coupland, my father, who appreciates a well-crafted sentence; and Mrs. Tammy Peters, my coauthor, who is the most talented (and most energetic) grammar teacher I have ever seen. I am also thankful for Marie, our talented content editor, who has helped to make the *Well-Ordered Language* program even better. And of course, I appreciate Chris, Laurie, and the entire Classical Academic Press team for their tireless effort to get this program in print.

At a Glance

Book A

Chapter	Main Topic	Supplemental Topics
1	Four Kinds of Sentences	
2	Principal Elements, Part 1— Subject and Predicate	
3	Principal Elements, Part 2— Subject and Predicate Verb	Singular and plural subjects with the helping verbs <i>is</i> and <i>are</i>
4	Adverbs	<i>Not</i> and <i>never</i> as adverbs; placement of adverbs in sentence order
5	Adjectives	Correct usage of articles <i>a</i> and <i>an</i>
6	Direct Objects	Word order in sentences
7	Subject Pronouns	Agreement in number: subject pronouns and antecedents; subject pronouns and verbs
8	Interrogative Sentences— Subject Pronouns and Helping Verbs	Contractions: subject pronouns and helping verbs

Book B

Chapter	Main Topic	Supplemental Topics
1	Object Pronouns	Contractions with <i>not</i>
2	Pronoun Review	Subject/verb agreement in number and person
3	Prepositional Phrases—Adverbial	Abbreviations for months; capitalization and periods; proper and common nouns
4	Introductory Prepositional Phrases	Revising fragments
5	Compound Subjects	Subject/verb agreement with conjunctions <i>and</i> , <i>or</i>
6	Compound Verbs	Synonyms; conjunctions <i>and</i> , <i>or</i> .
7	Compound Direct Objects	Word order in sentences; proper and common nouns

Table of Contents

Well-Ordered Language: A Classical Approach to English Grammar Instruction	vi
Lesson-Planning Options	viii
Introduction to Students	ix
Introduction to Teachers	xi
Chapter 1 Four Kinds of Sentences	3
Chapter 2 Principal Elements, Part 1—Subject and Predicate	27
Chapter 3 Principal Elements, Part 2—Subject and Predicate Verb	47
Chapter 4 Adverbs	71
Chapter 5 Adjectives	99
Chapter 6 Direct Objects	127
Chapter 7 Subject Pronouns	157
Chapter 8 Interrogative Sentences—Subject Pronouns and Helping Verbs	187
The Curious Child’s Literary Appendix	217
Biographies: Meet the Authors	229
Bibliography: Seek the Sources	239
Glossary of Terms	241
Song Lyrics	247
About the Title	251

Well-Ordered Language

A Classical Approach to English Grammar Instruction

Why Study Grammar?

We study grammar because we wish to master language, and language cannot be easily mastered without grammar. Grammar is the study of what makes language work—the way letters form words, the way words form sentences, the way sentences express human thought.

An educated person wants to understand the rich variety of human thought enshrined in language of all sorts—books from yesterday and the last millennium, books in English and books in other languages as well. An educated person also yearns to express himself clearly, accurately, and completely. It is the study of grammar that yields the capacity to do this, and the student who sees the connection between the study of grammar and the mastery of language will study grammar with zeal.

Learning Grammar, Teaching Grammar

We have designed Well-Ordered Language (WOL) with the understanding that many teachers who will use this book don't know grammar as well as they would like. As a result, we have created a rich teacher's edition that will enable teachers to review and deepen their own understanding of grammar even as they teach students.

We have also worked to provide a clear, incremental presentation of grammar in this series that includes plenty of illustrations, practice, and review. For example, in each chapter, students will memorize through song clear definitions of relevant grammatical concepts. Helpful analogies and attractive graphical illustrations at the beginning of each chapter introduce and complement the concepts in the chapter. Students also will discover emerging from the sentence exercises a story that features characters who appear throughout the text and in the graphical illustrations.

Effective Teaching Methods

The series employs an innovative choral analysis method that makes learning enjoyable and permanent. With clear guidance from the teacher's edition, instructors will

easily be able to lead students through the choral analysis of grammar, and through this analysis, students will see grammar embodied in the sentences they study. The program has been layered concept on concept, an approach that aids students in seeing and experiencing how a well-ordered language works and how it increases their understanding and enjoyment of literature, stories, and poetry.

Learning with Delight

We think that the right study of grammar should lead to delight. The traditional study of grammar should be more than mere rote memorization of rules; it must also include opportunities for students to engage language in works of literature and human expression. As students acquire a greater capacity to understand language and use it effectively themselves, they will experience joy and delight. This is one reason we have included for grammatical study beautiful poetry and excerpts from great literature. Students will see that their ongoing study of grammar will open up a deeper understanding of beautiful literature that both instructs and delights.

Compelling Need

In this cultural moment, there is a desperate need for language that is well ordered. Today's discourse is often filled with ambiguity, equivocation, and crudeness. Those who have mastered a well-ordered language not only will stand out as eloquent and clear but also will be able to say well what they mean and to say what others will heed. It will be those with a command of language who will be able to mine the wisdom of the past and to produce eloquence in the future.

Ongoing Support

We have created not only a series of texts but a constellation of products that will help teachers to use WOL effectively. Visit our website at ClassicalAcademicPress.com for additional support for using WOL, including video training (featuring author Tammy Peters), downloadable PDF documents, and other resources.

Thank you for joining us in this most important work of restoring a well-ordered language for the next generation!

Lesson-Planning Options

The Well-Ordered Language series is designed to be flexible, adaptable, and practical. Depending on the needs of the teacher, lessons can be modified to meet particular classroom expectations. The following options for teaching each chapter assume a 30–40 minute period.

	Option A (4 times per week)	Option B (3 times per week)	Option C (5 times, one week)
Week One	Day One ◇ Chapter Introduction ◇ Introductory Lesson ◇ Introductory Practice	Day One ◇ Chapter Introduction ◇ Introductory Lesson ◇ Introductory Practice	Day One ◇ Chapter Introduction ◇ Introductory Lesson ◇ Introductory Practice
	Day Two ◇ Lessons to Learn A ◇ Lessons to Practice A	Day Two ◇ Lessons to Learn A ◇ Lessons to Practice A	Day Two ◇ Lessons to Learn A ◇ Lessons to Practice A
	Day Three ◇ Lessons to Learn B ◇ Lessons to Practice B	Day Three ◇ Lessons to Learn B ◇ Lessons to Practice B	Day Three ◇ Lessons to Learn B ◇ Lessons to Practice B
	Day Four ◇ Fable* ◇ Fable Sentences (PDF)		Day Four ◇ Lessons to Learn C ◇ Lessons to Practice C
			Day Five ◇ Quiz (PDF)
Week Two	Day Five ◇ Lessons to Learn C ◇ Lessons to Practice C	Day Four ◇ Lessons to Learn C ◇ Lessons to Practice C <i>or</i> ◇ Lessons to Learn—Review ◇ Lessons to Practice—Review	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>From the Sideline: Option C is an accelerated plan for teachers who want to finish both <i>WOL1A</i> and <i>WOL1B</i> in one semester. A teacher using Option A or B might find it useful to switch to Option C for a single chapter that is mastered quickly.</p> <p>*The fables for chapters 1, 3, 5, 6, 7, and 8 can be found in the downloadable PDF. The poems for chapters 2 and 4 can be found in the PDF.</p> </div>
	Day Six ◇ Lessons to Learn—Review ◇ Lessons to Practice—Review	Day Five ◇ Lessons to Learn—Review ◇ Lessons to Practice—Review <i>or</i> ◇ Fable*/Fable Sentences (PDF)	
	Day Seven ◇ Poem*/Poem Activity <i>or</i> ◇ Practice Sheet (PDF)	Day Six ◇ Quiz (PDF)	
	Day Eight ◇ Quiz (PDF)		

Introduction to Students

Do you have a favorite word? Most people have favorite words just as they have favorite numbers or colors. So, what is yours?

Maybe it is an exceedingly (very) long word that your friends don't know. Maybe you just like the way its sound rolls off your tongue. Maybe you use it as often as you can, or maybe you save it for special occasions.

We want to share one of our favorite words with you. You probably know what it means already, but you may not have thought of it as an exceptional word. Probably few people would name it as a favorite because it seems so ordinary. It is far from ordinary though. The word is . . . *analyze*.

One reason we love the word *analyze* is because it has interesting grandparents. Its roots are Greek: *ana* meaning “up, throughout” and *lisis* meaning “unloose, release, set free.” When you *analyze* something, you break it up into its parts and set them free!

Great thinkers are great analyzers.

Scientists who study bugs are called entomologists. They analyze insects by dissecting them. Sports analysts watch freeze frames of each motion of a single play in football to make sure the referee applied the rules correctly. Detectives analyze every inch of a crime scene, inspecting it for clues. These great thinkers are curious about what is inside an insect, a play, or even a crime.

Great thinkers are always curious. For them, analysis is an adventure.

You are a curious child, and your adventure in this book will be learning how to *analyze* sentences. You will take them apart, unloose their knots, and dissect them. Step by step you will learn the special function of each part of language.

Understanding the parts of something—whether you are a student, scientist, sports analyst, or detective—leads to appreciating the whole thing even more. Once you break something apart, it is natural and right that you should put it back together again. If you take apart a clock to see how it works, you will want to reassemble it so you don't miss dinnertime. Learning how to *analyze* sentences makes you more skilled at *constructing* them too, both in your writing and in your speaking.

The parts of language are words, and words are wonderful.



Introduction to Teachers

In the Well-Ordered Language (WOL) series, grammar instruction is focused, practical, and lively. The curriculum is designed so that teachers and students actively engage with each other and with the grammatical concepts in each lesson, using language skills—reading, writing, speaking, and listening—along with physical movement and song. You and your students will find that the thirty to forty minutes devoted to grammar instruction are among the most dynamic of the school day.

The WOL Marking System—Analyze, Analyze, Analyze

Analysis is the heart and soul of the WOL method. Each chapter includes multiple sentences for students to analyze aloud and on paper, as a class and individually. Students are encouraged from the beginning, as the student introduction illustrates, to consider analysis as the stimulating activity of a curious mind. Just as children naturally enjoy taking things apart and putting them back together, your students will learn that understanding how words in a sentence work together to convey meaning is intriguing and enjoyable.

The unique WOL marking system will help students identify the function of words and the relationship between words in a sentence. In Level 2 and above, WOL teaches classical diagramming alongside this analysis, but the analytic approach in all the levels is extraordinary:

- ◇ The teacher explains the concept to students through active engagement with specific, carefully selected sentences.
- ◇ The teacher models the structural analysis on the board while the students participate by speaking the analysis in chorus. Scripts are provided for you in the teachers' pages that follow each chapter.
- ◇ The structural analysis uses an innovative marking system that builds incrementally, chapter by chapter, preparing the students for sentence diagramming.

ger passages from the fiction has been provided as well as appendices containing brief biographical sketches of the authors and bibliographic information for the sources.)

- ◇ **Terms to Remember:** After learning the basic ideas, students are ready to begin memorizing grammatical definitions. Students learn important terms by singing or chanting short, inviting songs or chants that keep this portion of the lesson light-hearted and captivating. Adding movement and hand gestures helps. Each chapter introduces new terms and reviews pertinent terms that students have encountered previously. The book's glossary includes the lyrics for all the songs as well as other pertinent terms and definitions. The songs and chants are available as a recorded CD or downloadable audio files at ClassicalAcademicPress.com.
- ◇ **Sentences to Analyze:** This section is written for teachers to guide the students through an initial sentence analysis and to explain what happens in each step. At this point in the lesson, students recite together the analysis as the teacher models it on the board, marking the sentence with WOL's unique marking system.

Lessons to Learn (daily, fifteen minutes)

This section includes daily lessons, labeled as Introductory, A, B, C, and Review. They are supported in the teacher's edition by extra pages called Well-Ordered Notes. These fifteen-minute lessons are made up of four parts, representing a variety of methods and often including interactive games:

- ◇ **Review It:** The lesson starts with time for singing or chanting key terms along with the CD/audio files. Students absorb the definitions in an enjoyable and memorable way as they stand while singing, do hand motions, and move their bodies.
- ◇ **Practice It:** Next, the teacher warms up the class for the main task—sentence analysis—with a short activity. This section is provided in the teacher's edition only to give the students the opportunity to use the new concept in an oral exercise. The exercises are designed to be lighthearted and quick.
- ◇ **Learn It:** During this portion, the pace is kept lively while further focusing attention. A five-minute lesson reinforces the concept introduced in the chapter or, in some chapters, explains a correlated grammatical concept that will be presented in the Lessons to Practice worksheet. The lesson could be oral, completed on the board together while students mark their books individually, or it could be written and reviewed orally when completed.
- ◇ **Analyze It:** Finally, the lesson climaxes with the students demonstrating the analysis of the grammatical concept, using WOL's unique marking system. You model the analysis using the two example sentences, for which the markings and an analytic script are provided in the teacher's pages. You should expect full participation from

the students during choral analysis. The class should complete the analysis vigorously, and you should never allow the analysis to become monotone or dull.

Lessons to Practice (daily, fifteen minutes)

This section corresponds to Lessons to Learn, and the pages are interwoven. Fifteen minutes of the lesson should be allotted daily to Lessons to Practice, which include worksheets for *guided* practice to be done primarily as a class. Choral analysis is to be done in unison. The teacher guides the class through the first part of each worksheet while the second part is to be done independently.

Lessons to Practice should not be considered as merely supplemental. They are an important part of the daily lessons immediately following the Analyze It section. If you find that the abundance of material and exercises provided are more than necessary in a particular chapter, you would do better to omit an entire section—for example, both Lessons to Learn C and Lessons to Practice C—than to skip the Lessons to Practice that correspond to a given Lessons to Learn.

The Extra Practice and Assessments PDF (referred to throughout the book as “downloadable PDF” or “PDF”), available at ClassicalAcademicPress.com, contains extra fables, poems, and practice sheets for additional classroom lessons or for homework when needed. Please note that quizzes are also provided in the PDF in the same format.

Lessons to Enjoy (weekly option, 30 minutes plus)

This section provides a poem and a fable to read and to discuss as enrichment activities in addition to the daily lessons. It usually requires thirty minutes or a whole class period to complete. For each chapter, either the poem or the fable is found in the students’ text and the other is included in the downloadable PDF (and in the teacher’s edition). The material that accompanies the literary excerpt not only draws attention to grammar in action, but also provides you with a range of discussion and activity suggestions to help foster the students’ love of language. In addition, a page of sentences for analysis, found in the PDF, accompanies the fables. The characters and situations in the sentences match those of the fable. Students will see that well-ordered language plays an important role in creating passages of great beauty and meaning. In this way, as they master the particular grammatical concepts, students can balance detailed language analysis with time spent delighting in language.

Pedagogical Principles and Guidance

The classical tradition has passed down a rich collection of teaching methods that have been successfully used for generations to teach children well. We encourage teach-

ers of WOL to become familiar with and employ these methods while teaching grammar. Below is a list of some key pedagogical principles that come to us from the classical tradition of education. You can view training videos on each of these principles by going to <http://classicalacademicpress.com/about-dr-christopher-perrin/>.

- ◇ *Festina Lente* (Make Haste Slowly)
- ◇ *Multum Non Multa* (Much Not Many)
- ◇ *Repetitio Mater Memoriae* (Repetition Is the Mother of Memory)
- ◇ Embodied Learning
- ◇ Songs, Chants, and Jingles
- ◇ Wonder and Curiosity
- ◇ Educational Virtues
- ◇ *Scholé*, Contemplation, Leisure
- ◇ *Docendo Discimus* (By Teaching We Learn)

A Side Note about the Side Panels

The *side panels* furnish both the student and the teacher with additional information that stimulates discussion and further learning. There are four types of panels: two for the student (To the Source and Off the Shelf) and two for the teacher that do not appear in the student edition (From the Sideline and Fewer than Five).

- ◇ **To the Source** helps the students understand the etymology of various grammar terms.
- ◇ **Off the Shelf** provides more information to the students about books mentioned in the chapters and is there to pique the interest of the reader.
- ◇ **From the Sideline** provides general pedagogical tips from teachers to teachers. It also gives helpful tips about specific content in each chapter.

In the teacher's edition we have provided brief definitions as a quick reference for some of the more challenging words used in examples and exercises.



From the Sideline: Expect full attention. Teach your students to give full attention to you with both eyes and hands. Don't ever teach without full attention. We use the phrases "eyes this way" and "hands on deck," which means that students' hands are folded on the top of the desk and their pencils are in their desks.

^APlease see p. a of the teacher's pages for a note on this chapter.

Chapter 4 Adverbs^A

A sentence must have its principal elements, the subject (*S*) and the predicate (*P*), but most sentences also have other words, phrases, or clauses. These are called **subordinate**[■] **elements**. Their job in a sentence is to support the principal elements, to explain something about them.

Think of a table. You know the legs hold up the tabletop, but have you ever considered how the tabletop also holds the legs in their places? Well, think of a sentence as being a table. The principal elements (*S* and *P*) form the top of the table. The subordinate elements are like the legs of a table supporting its top. However, the reverse is true too. The legs (or subordinate elements) are able to stand only if the tabletop (or the principal elements) is already in place. The legs are "set in order" (*ordinare*) "under" (*sub*) the tabletop. Without the tabletop, the legs would fall like pick-up sticks. That would make a fine mess!

Subordinate elements are also called **modifiers**[■] because they change or limit the meaning of principal elements. There are many kinds of modifiers, so we will focus on single-word modifiers first, learning in this chapter about **adverbs**[■] that modify verbs, and in the next chapter about adjectives that modify nouns.

Ideas to Understand^B

^BPlease see p. 72 for this note.

Adverbs tell how, when, or where the action takes place in the sentence. Adverbs are *added to* verbs, as the Latin root tells us. That's easy to remember since the word *verb* is in the word *adverb*. If you had a pet cat named Stripes, you could write a simple sentence about her with only a subject and a predicate: "Stripes jumps." Imagine Stripes jumping. What happens

To the Source:

■ subordinate

Subordinate comes from the Latin word *subordinatus* (placed in a lower order), which comes from *sub* meaning "under" and *ordinare* meaning "arrange, set in order."

To the Source:

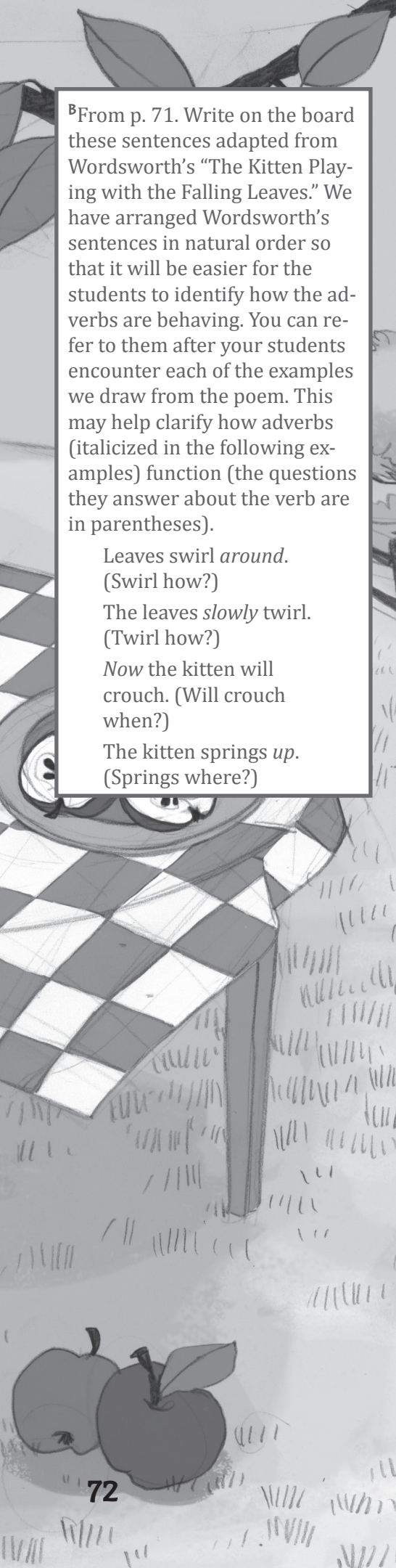
■ modify

The word *modify* comes from the Latin words *modus* for "change" or "limit" and *facio*, which means "make" or "do."

To the Source:

■ adverb

The word *adverb* comes from the Latin words *ad*, which means "to" and *verbum*, which means "word." The Latin word *adverbi-um* means "added to a verb."



^BFrom p. 71. Write on the board these sentences adapted from Wordsworth’s “The Kitten Playing with the Falling Leaves.” We have arranged Wordsworth’s sentences in natural order so that it will be easier for the students to identify how the adverbs are behaving. You can refer to them after your students encounter each of the examples we draw from the poem. This may help clarify how adverbs (italicized in the following examples) function (the questions they answer about the verb are in parentheses).

Leaves swirl *around*.
(Swirl how?)

The leaves *slowly* twirl.
(Twirl how?)

Now the kitten will crouch. (Will crouch when?)

The kitten springs *up*.
(Springs where?)

if you add an adverb to the verb? *How* would she jump? Stripes jumps *playfully*. Stripes jumps *ferociously*. Stripes jumps *sleepily*. Stripes jumps *sneakily*. All these different adverbs support or modify the jumping in different ways, making very different meanings and mental images.

A much-loved British poet named William Wordsworth wrote a poem in 1804 about a cat playing with a perfect cat toy—falling leaves in autumn. You can find the entire poem in *The Curious Child’s Literary Appendix*. Before you look at the poem, can you guess how, when, or where Wordsworth’s kitten plays? Can you guess how, when, or where the leaves fall? Those are questions that adverbs can answer.

In these lines from the poem “The Kitten Playing with the Falling Leaves,” Wordsworth uses the adverbs *softly* and *slowly* to describe how leaves twirl downward on an autumn day. He also uses the adverb *round* to tell how the leaves are moving as they sink:

Through the calm and frosty air
Of this morning bright and fair
Eddying round and round they sink
Softly, slowly.

When Wordsworth describes the kitten playing with the leaves, he chooses the words *first* and *then* to tell when the kitten pounces at them. Those words are adverbs too.

—But the kitten, how she starts!
Crouches, stretches, paws, and darts:
First at one, and then its fellow,
Just as light, and just as yellow:
There are many now—now one—
Now they stop and there are none.¹

The adverb *now* also tells when. You could ask, *When* are the falling leaves many and when is there only one? The answer is *now*. If the poet had also written, “The kitten springs up,” he would have used the adverb *up* to tell *where* the kitten springs.

1. William Wordsworth, “The Kitten Playing with the Falling Leaves,” ed. Louis Untermeyer, *The Golden Treasury of Poetry* (New York: Golden Press, 1998), p. 44.

Notice that Wordsworth uses *softly*, *slowly*, and *round* to describe *how* an action happens. He uses *first*, *then*, and *now* to describe *when* an action happens. He could have used *up* to describe *where* an action happens. Telling how, when, or where is the way adverbs support action verbs—like the way table legs support a tabletop. Notice too that many adverbs (but not all) end with the letters *-ly*. If you find a word that ends in *-ly*, it is probably an adverb that tells you *how* an action happens (such as quickly, easily, stiffly, or carefully). Adverbs often come right after the verbs they modify, though sometimes they can appear before the verb like this: *softly* walks the kitten.

Terms to Remember^c

You have a new term to deposit in your memory bank: *adverbs*. You should practice it along with the other terms you already know. *Where?* Here. *When?* Now, and later too. *How?* Well, cheerfully, actively, tunefully, persistently, and even loudly!

Principal Elements (1–3)

Principal elements are the parts of the sentence that are needed for the sentence to be completed. Subject and predicate are those two parts.

Subject and Predicate (1–4)

A subject, a subject is a noun or a pronoun and is what the sentence is about (*clap, clap*).

A predicate, a predicate tells us something about the subject like what it is doing or being (*clap, clap*).

Nouns (1–5)

A noun is a part of speech.

It names a person, place, or thing.

A noun names a quality or an idea.

A noun is a part of speech.

It names a person, place, or thing.

A noun may be singular (*clap*) or plural (*clap clap clap*). (Repeat.)

^cPlay the appropriate audio tracks and have students sing/chant along. Remind students to commit the songs to memory by listening to these audio tracks at other times as well.

Verbs and Helping Verbs (1–6)

A verb is a part of speech. (*echo*)

A verb shows action or a state of being. (*echo*)

A verb is a part of speech. (*echo*)

A verb shows action or a state of being. (*echo*)

A helping verb helps another verb to express its meaning.

A helping verb stands near the verb.

It is called an auxiliary.

Am, is, are, was, were, be, being, been, has, have, had, do, does, did, may, might, must, should, could, would, shall, will, and can.

A helping verb stands near the verb and is called an auxiliary.

A helping verb stands near the verb. It is called an auxiliary.

NEW! Adverbs (1–7)

An adverb is a part of speech.

It modifies a verb or another adverb.

It can also modify an adjective

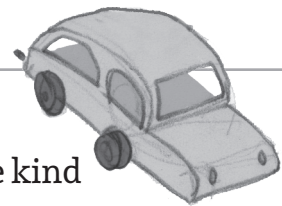
and answers three questions: *how? when? or where?*

It answers three questions: *how? when? or where?*

^DSee p. a of the teacher's pages for this chapter for a note on the A Sentence to Analyze section.

A Sentence to Analyze^D

Remember that when you begin analyzing, you identify the words as a sentence, then you identify the kind of sentence it is, and then you identify the principal elements of the sentence. The next step of analysis is to systematically identify all of the modifiers, beginning at the far right of the sentence and moving from right to left. Later, when you analyze longer sentences, finding the modifiers from right to left helps you pay attention to every grammatical detail without missing anything.



With your teacher's guidance, use the following steps to analyze the sentence. Speak with expression and remember to mark the sentences neatly as you say the analysis.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{S} \quad \text{PV} \\ \underline{\text{Leaves}} \quad \underline{\text{swirl}} \quad \text{around.} \\ \quad \quad \quad \uparrow \text{adv} \end{array}$$

- a. (First, read the sentence aloud.) “Leaves swirl around.”
- b. “This is a sentence because it is a group of words that expresses a complete thought. It is a declarative sentence because it makes a statement.”
- c. “This sentence is about *leaves*. So, *leaves* is the subject because it is what the sentence is about.” (Since *leaves* is the subject, underline it and place a capital letter *S* above it.)
- d. “This sentence tells us that leaves *swirl*. So, *swirl* is the predicate because it is what the sentence tells us about *leaves*.” (Since the predicate *swirl* tells us something about leaves, double underline it and place a capital letter *P* above it.) “It is a predicate verb because it shows action. There is no linking verb because predicate verbs do not need linking verbs.” (Since *swirl* shows action, place a capital letter *V* to the right of the letter *P* above the predicate.)
- e. “These are the principal elements because they are what are needed for the sentence to be completed. All the remaining parts are subordinate elements.”
- f. “*Around* tells us *how* leaves swirl.” (To mark adverbs, carefully draw a straight line down from the adverb, then a horizontal line toward the word that it modifies, and then a straight line with an arrow pointing to the word it modifies.)
- g. “So, *around* is an **adverbial element** because it modifies a verb. It is an adverb.” (Write *adv* in lowercase letters in the elbow opposite the line with the arrow.)

A carefully chosen adverb modifying a verb adds precision and color to your sentences. That is why learning to analyze adverbs is not only an important step in your training but also an enjoyable one. When you write about her, you can make Stripes jump in as many interesting ways as you choose. Stripes jumps inventively!

Introductory Practice

Adverbs

1. Analyze the following sentences (*S* = subject; *PV* = predicate verb; *hv* = helping verb; *adv* = adverb).

a. $\begin{array}{ccc} S & hv & PV \\ \text{Clouds} & \text{are rolling} & \text{gently.} \\ & \uparrow & \text{adv} \end{array}$

b. $\begin{array}{ccc} S & PV \\ \text{Grandpa} & \text{hikes} & \text{slowly.} \\ & \uparrow & \text{adv} \end{array}$

c. $\begin{array}{ccc} S & hv & PV \\ \text{Fritz} & \text{is munching} & \text{noisily.} \\ & \uparrow & \text{adv} \end{array}$

d. $\begin{array}{ccc} S & hv & PV \\ \text{Rex} & \text{should follow} & \text{obediently.} \\ & \uparrow & \text{adv} \end{array}$

Remember that when you see the word *analyze* in instructions throughout this book, we mean both choral analysis and written notations. The two go hand in hand as a prediagramming system.

2. On the lines provided, list the *adverbs* from the above sentences.

a. _____ **gently** _____

b. _____ **slowly** _____

c. _____ **noisily** _____

d. _____ **obediently** _____

3. Rewrite sentence 1b from above by adding an adverb that tells *when* Grandpa hikes. Then, in the space provided below, analyze the new sentence.

Now Grandpa hikes slowly.

$\begin{array}{ccc} S & PV \\ \text{Now Grandpa} & \text{hikes} & \text{slowly.} \\ \text{adv} & \uparrow & \uparrow \text{adv} \end{array}$

Introductory Practice

Adverbs

4. Write a sentence about Rex playing with Fritz. Include an adverb in your sentence.

Rex hides underneath.



Lessons to Learn

Adverbs



The order of the lesson is: **Review It**, **Practice It**, **Learn It**, and **Analyze It**.

Review It: Sing/chant and review definitions as a class.

Review It

Review the twenty-three helping verbs and the definition of a noun. Read over what an adverb is. Can you say the definition by memory?

Practice It: For this warm-up, see Well-Ordered Notes A on p. d of the teacher's pages for this chapter.

Learn It: Write the sentences on the board. Have the students work in pairs to fill in the missing adverbs. Have one of the students from each pair come to the board to write their adverb in the blank.

Learn It

1. Imagine it is a windy Saturday and a storm is coming fast! As the storm rolls in, the Clark family hurries to finish up their yard work. To the following sentences add adverbs that answer the questions *how*, *when*, or *where* the action takes place. Share your answers with the class.

Example: Chimes ring softly.

- a. Clippers cut straight.
- b. Dad mows frantically.
- c. Motors are rumbling noisily.
- d. Clouds gather threateningly.
- e. Rex is barking loudly.
- f. Doors are shutting quickly.

2. Imagine you are preparing for a coming thunderstorm and then write a sentence about it, being sure to include an adverb.

I ran inside quickly.

Lessons to Practice

Adverbs



1. Analyze the following sentences (*S* = subject; *PV* = predicate verb; *hv* = helping verb; *adv* = adverb).

a. $\begin{array}{ccc} S & hv & PV \\ \underline{\text{Mom}} & \underline{\text{was}} & \text{joyfully } \underline{\text{baking}}. \\ & & \boxed{\text{adv}} \uparrow \end{array}$

b. $\begin{array}{cc} S & PV \\ \underline{\text{Aunt Gabby}} & \underline{\text{stopped}} \text{ by.} \\ & \uparrow \boxed{\text{adv}} \end{array}$

c. $\begin{array}{cc} S & PV \\ \text{Suddenly } \underline{\text{Heidi}} & \underline{\text{cried}} \text{ loudly.} \\ \boxed{\text{adv}} \uparrow & \uparrow \boxed{\text{adv}} \end{array}$

d. $\begin{array}{ccc} S & hv & PV \\ \underline{\text{Stripes}} & \underline{\text{was climbing}} & \text{higher.} \\ & & \uparrow \boxed{\text{adv}} \end{array}$

2. On the lines provided, list the *adverbs* from the above sentences.

a. _____ **joyfully** _____

b. _____ **by** _____

c. _____ **suddenly** _____

d. _____ **loudly** _____

e. _____ **higher** _____

3. Rewrite sentence 1a from above using an adverb that tells **when** *Mom was joyfully baking*. Then, in the space provided below, analyze your sentence.

Earlier Mom was joyfully baking.

$\begin{array}{ccc} S & hv & PV \\ \text{Earlier } \underline{\text{Mom}} & \underline{\text{was}} & \text{joyfully } \underline{\text{baking}}. \\ \boxed{\text{adv}} & & \uparrow \boxed{\text{adv}} \end{array}$

A

Lessons to Practice Adverbs

4. Heidi was in the kitchen helping her mom bake. Write a sentence about Heidi baking. Include an adverb in your sentence.

Heidi was baking too.



Lessons to Learn

Adverbs

B

The order of the lesson is: **Review It**, **Practice It**, **Learn It**, and **Analyze It**.

Review It: Sing/chant and review definitions as a class.

Review It

What are the eight parts of speech? What are nouns and verbs? What is an adverb? See if you can recite all the answers by heart.

Practice It: For this warm-up, see Well-Ordered Notes B on p. f of the teacher's pages for this chapter.

Learn It: Write the sentences on the board. Have students come to the board and rewrite the sentences using the adverbs *not* or *never*. You may want to point out to students that *not* and *never* are sometimes referred to as *negative adverbs*.

Learn It

As you know, in a sentence adverbs tell how the verb is behaving. But did you know that some adverbs can be negative? That means they negate the verb, or turn it into its opposite. For example: "Aunt Gabby was *not* watching." *Aunt Gabby* is the subject and *was watching* is the verb phrase (including a helping verb and a predicate verb). *Not* is the adverb that is telling how she was watching. In other words, she was not doing the action of watching. The words *not* and *never* are always adverbs in sentences.

Imagine you are on a trip to the zoo. Now, rewrite the following sentences by including the negative adverbs *not* or *never*.

Example: Aunt Gabby was watching. Aunt Gabby was not watching.

1. Lions sleep. Lions never sleep.

2. Chimps are swinging. Chimps are not swinging.

B

Lessons to Learn Adverbs

3. Parrots can be talking. Parrots can *never* be talking.

4. Antelopes might be grazing. Antelopes might *not* be grazing.

5. Elephants were bathing. Elephants were *not* bathing.

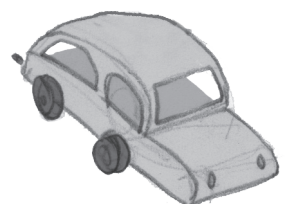
6. Zookeepers are helping. Zookeepers are *not* helping.

Analyze It

1. $\begin{array}{c} S \quad hv \quad PV \\ \underline{\text{Fritz}} \text{ is } \text{not} \underline{\text{swimming}} \text{ today.} \\ \quad \quad \quad \boxed{\text{adv}} \quad \uparrow \uparrow \quad \boxed{\text{adv}} \end{array}$

2. $\begin{array}{c} S \quad hv \quad PV \\ \text{Sadly} \underline{\text{rain}} \text{ is } \underline{\text{pouring}} \text{ outside.} \\ \quad \quad \quad \boxed{\text{adv}} \quad \quad \quad \uparrow \uparrow \quad \boxed{\text{adv}} \end{array}$

Analyze It: This is the essential part of the lesson. See Well-Ordered Notes B on p. f of the teacher's pages.



Lessons to Practice

Adverbs

B

1. Analyze the following sentences (*S* = subject; *PV* = predicate verb; *hv* = helping verb; *adv* = adverb).

a. $\begin{array}{ccc} S & hv & PV \\ \text{Waves} & \text{were crashing} & \text{down.} \\ & \uparrow & | \\ & \text{adv} & \end{array}$

b. $\begin{array}{ccc} & S & PV \\ \text{Quietly} & \text{Theo} & \text{watched.} \\ | & & \uparrow \\ \text{adv} & & \end{array}$

c. $\begin{array}{ccc} S & & PV \\ \text{Seabirds} & & \text{circled} \\ & \uparrow & | \\ & \text{adv} & \end{array}$ around.

d. $\begin{array}{ccc} S & & PV \\ \text{Gulls} & \text{sometimes} & \text{soar} \\ | & \uparrow & \uparrow \\ \text{adv} & & \text{adv} \end{array}$ alone.

^FSee p. g of the teacher's pages for this chapter for the marking of the second version of this sentence.

2. On the lines provided, list the *adverbs* from the above sentences.

a. _____ **down** _____

b. _____ **quietly** _____

c. _____ **around** _____

d. _____ **sometimes** _____

e. _____ **alone** _____

3. Rewrite sentence 1a from above by adding an adverb that tells **how** waves were crashing down. Then, in the space provided below, analyze your sentence.

Majestically waves were crashing down. or Waves were crashing down majestically. ^F

$\begin{array}{ccc} & S & hv & PV \\ \text{Majestically} & \text{waves} & \text{were crashing} & \text{down.} \\ | & & \uparrow & \uparrow \\ \text{adv} & & & \text{adv} \end{array}$

B

Lessons to Practice Adverbs

4. Write a sentence that includes an *adverb* that describes *how* crabs move.

Crabs scurried quickly.



Lessons to Learn

Adverbs



The order of the lesson is: **Review It**, **Practice It**, **Learn It**, and **Analyze It**.

Review It: Sing/chant and review definitions as a class.

Review It

Answer the following questions: What are the eight parts of speech? What is a verb? What are the twenty-three helping verbs? What is an adverb?

Practice It: For this warm-up, see Well-Ordered Notes C on p. h of the teacher's pages for this chapter.

Learn It: This part of the lesson can be an oral exercise completed on the board together while students mark their books individually, or it can be an individual written exercise that is reviewed orally as a class when finished.

Learn It

Remember that adverbs tell how the verb is acting even if it is in the negative, which just means that they negate the verb, or turn it into its opposite. Adding *not* to a sentence changes the meaning.

Rewrite the following sentences including the adverb *not*. Notice how that adverb can change the meaning of sentence!

Example: The kite is flying up. The kite is *not* flying up.

1. The kids are playing outside. The kids are *not* playing outside.

2. Theo will throw high. Theo will *not* throw high.

3. Now Lucy will walk backward. Now Lucy will *not* walk backward.

Lessons to Practice

Adverbs



1. Analyze the following sentences (*S* = subject; *PV* = predicate verb; *hv* = helping verb; *adv* = adverb).

a. Fiercely winds were gusting.
 $\begin{array}{c} \text{S} \quad \text{hv} \quad \text{PV} \\ \text{adv} \quad \quad \quad \uparrow \end{array}$

b. Softly Dad reads aloud.
 $\begin{array}{c} \text{S} \quad \text{PV} \\ \text{adv} \quad \quad \uparrow \uparrow \text{adv} \end{array}$

c. Lucy will not listen today.
 $\begin{array}{c} \text{S} \quad \text{hv} \quad \quad \text{PV} \\ \text{adv} \uparrow \uparrow \text{adv} \end{array}$

d. Dad starts over again.
 $\begin{array}{c} \text{S} \quad \text{PV} \\ \uparrow \text{adv} \quad \text{adv} \end{array}$

2. On the lines provided, list the *adverbs* from the above sentences.

a. _____ **fiercely** _____

b. _____ **softly** _____

c. _____ **aloud** _____

d. _____ **not** _____

e. _____ **today** _____

f. _____ **over** _____

g. _____ **again** _____

3. Rewrite sentence 1a from above using an adverb that tells *where winds were gusting fiercely*. Then, in the space provided at the top of the next page, analyze your sentence.

Fiercely winds were gusting everywhere. or Winds were gusting fiercely everywhere.

C

Lessons to Practice Adverbs

Analyze your sentence here:

Fiercely winds were gusting everywhere. ^G

^S ^{hv} ^{PV}

 | ↑↑ |

 adv adv

See p. i of the teacher's pages for this chapter for the markings for the second version of the sample sentence.

4. Imagine that Lucy's dad is reading to her, then write a sentence that includes an adverb.

Lucy is listening carefully now.



Lessons to Learn—Review

Adverbs

Review It: Sing/chant and review definitions as a class.

Review It

As a review, sing your answers to the following questions. Can you recite each of them without the song?

What is a noun?

What is a verb?

What are principal elements?

What is an adverb?

Learn It: Have students play the game of “Show How It Is Done.” Either brainstorm a list of adverbs before the game or use the list of adverbs on p. 93 as a guide for the students. We recommend that you make a large-sized copy of the chart so that it will be visible to the entire class. Feel free to add more adverbs to the chart if needed. Write the sentences that will be written on the board as guides for the students’ pantomimes. Some adverbs will be hard to pantomime, but still may engage student interest because of the challenge and sometimes the humor.

Learn It

You may know the game charades in which an action is pantomimed (acted out) for others to guess. Today you’re going to play a similar game called “Show How It Is Done” in which adverbs are used to tell you how an action is acted out. Your teacher will divide your class into pairs. Each pair will be given a sentence and then one of you will choose an adverb to add to the sentence and the other will act it out. Be sure to keep the adverb a secret from the rest of the class because they’re going to be trying to guess the adverb that is being acted out.

Here’s an example of how the game works:

The teacher writes on the board the sentence “The cowboy rode the horse.”

Student #1 chooses the adverb *sadly* from the chart and whispers it to the student who will be acting it out.

Student #2 acts out a cowboy riding the horse *in a sad way*.

The class guesses which adverb is being acted out.

Then, it’s the next pair’s turn. Your teacher will either write a new sentence on the board or tell you to choose another adverb and use the same sentence. We’re going to use the same sentence for this next example.

Lessons to Learn—Review

Adverbs

Student #1 chooses the adverb *bravely* and whispers it to his partner.

Student #2 acts out a cowboy riding the horse *in a brave way*.

angrily	forward	sweetly	cautiously
bashfully	gingerly	backward	lately
awkwardly	calmly	hopelessly	woefully
together	heartily	willfully	never
sadly	boldly	joyfully	bravely
patiently	slowly	mournfully	sternly



Lessons to Practice—Review

Adverbs

1. Analyze the following sentences (*S* = subject; *PV* = predicate verb; *hv* = helping verb; *adv* = adverb).

a. $\begin{array}{ccc} S & hv & PV \\ \text{Frisbees} & \text{are} & \text{whirling} \end{array}$ along.
↑ adv

b. $\begin{array}{cc} S & PV \\ \text{Winston} & \text{dashes} \end{array}$ forward.
↑ adv

c. $\begin{array}{cc} S & PV \\ \text{Rex} & \text{sprints} \end{array}$ behind too.
↑ adv | adv

d. Unfortunately $\begin{array}{ccc} S & hv & PV \\ \text{Theo} & \text{will} & \text{not play} \end{array}$.
| adv | adv ↑

2. On the lines provided, list the *adverbs* from the above sentences.

a. _____ **along** _____

b. _____ **forward** _____

c. _____ **behind** _____

d. _____ **too** _____

e. _____ **unfortunately** _____

f. _____ **not** _____

3. Rewrite sentence 1a from above by adding an adverb that tells **how** *Frisbees are whirling along*. Then, in the space provided below, analyze your sentence.

Frisbees are whirling along quickly.

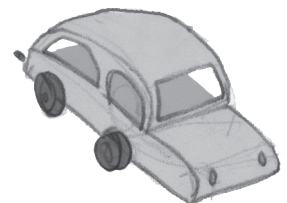
$\begin{array}{ccc} S & hv & PV \\ \text{Frisbees} & \text{are} & \text{whirling} \end{array}$ along quickly.
↑ adv | adv

Lessons to Practice—Review

Adverbs

4. Imagine you're playing with Rex in the yard, and then write a sentence about it using an adverb.

Rex jumped high.



Lessons to Enjoy—Fable

Adverbs

Sometimes we may think that big and strong people are the best at helping other people and solving problems. This fable, however, shows you that even those who are smaller and weaker can be just the kind of friend we need! You'll see that helpfulness and friendship come in all sizes.

The Lion and the Mouse

by Aesop



timid: lacking courage, fearful

roused: awakened from sleep

spare: decide not to harm or punish

A Lion lay asleep in the shady forest, his great head resting on his paws. A timid little Mouse came upon him unexpectedly, and in her fright and haste to get away, she ran across the Lion's nose. Roused from his nap, the Lion laid his huge paw angrily on the tiny creature to kill her.

“Spare me!” begged the poor Mouse. “Please let me go and someday I will surely repay you.”

The Lion was much amused to think that a Mouse could ever help him. He laughed so hard that the whole ground shook. But as he was a generous Lion, he let the poor creature go.

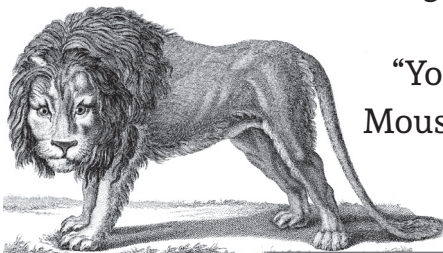
stalking: quietly approaching

toils: the strings or ropes of a net

Some days later, while stalking his prey in the forest, the Lion was caught in the toils of a hunter's net. Unable to free himself, he filled the forest with his angry roaring. The Mouse knew the voice and quickly found the Lion struggling in the net. Running to one of the great ropes that bound him, she gnawed it until it parted, and soon the Lion was free.

“You laughed when I said I would repay you,” said the Mouse. “Now you see that even a Mouse can help a Lion.”

Moral: Little friends may prove great friends.²



2. Aesop, “The Lion and the Mouse,” taken from *Writing & Rhetoric Book 1: Fable*, by Paul Kortepeter (Camp Hill, PA: Classical Academic Press, 2013), pp. 2–3.

Lessons to Enjoy—Fable

Adverbs

Questions to Ponder

1. Where was the Lion sleeping?
2. What happens that makes the Lion angry?
3. What does “Caught in the toils of a hunter’s net” mean?
4. How does the Mouse help the Lion?
5. Is there more than one meaning for the word “great” in the moral of this fable? What about in the first sentence of the story?
6. Can you find the adverbs modifying verbs?

These are underlined for your convenience in the teacher’s edition.

From the

Sideline: For possible answers to these discussion questions, see p. j of the teacher’s pages. For even more suggestions for discussion and for enrichment activities related to the fable, see p. m.

Extras: Please note that the teacher’s pages for this chapter include more material for extra practice, a quiz, and another Lesson to Enjoy with discussion questions and activities. All this material, in reproducible form, is also included in the PDF that accompanies the textbook.

Chapter 4: Adverbs

^AFrom p. 71. Introduce the chapter using a table or a desk as a visual aid to explain subordinate elements or modifiers. Point to the legs and ask the students how they function—as support for the tabletop. Ask what would happen to the legs if the tabletop would suddenly just disappear—they would fall over. We think of the legs as support, but it’s an unusual notion that the tabletop is necessary for the legs to stand. Refer to the text and the illustration, which features a table—supporting Rex the dog!

^DFrom p. 74. Model on the board the steps of the analysis for the students. By now, you and the students are gaining command of the basics: recite the analysis aloud together using the script; do not speak the “stage directions” in parentheses, just the gray words; mark the sentence as you go without interrupting the choral analysis. You’ll note that the analysis script has been adapted slightly from the wording that was used in chapters 1–3. This is because the script is becoming more streamlined as students’ understanding of analysis evolves. You’ll note similar changes as you proceed through both *WOL1A* and *WOL1B*. (See ClassicalAcademicPress.com/WOL for a video demonstration of analysis.)

Starting now, after identifying the subject and predicate, you should establish the habit of marking modifiers from right to left. Later, when sentence structures are more complicated, doing so keeps the notations neat because phrases will be marked after adverbs and adjectives are identified. Also, moving backward through a sentence is a systematic way to make sure each word is addressed.

For A Sentence to Analyze in all the chapters, please note that the students’ books have the notations marked. This encourages their full attention on your modeling the analysis on the board. In the rest of the chapter, they should mark their own notations neatly in their books during the choral analyses.

Marking notations: Note that an adverb is marked in lowercase letters (*adv*) underneath the adverb, and the modifying line is drawn neatly and connects to the word it modifies.

Notation variations:

- a. More than one adverb after the verb: If a sentence has more than one adverb, the modifier lines must not be crossed. For example, in the sentence, “Leaves swirl slowly too,” the modifier lines do not cross one another. In fact, the lines are connected. The lines become one line modifying the same verb: *swirl*.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{S} \quad \text{PV} \\ \text{Leaves } \underline{\text{swirl}} \text{ slowly too.} \\ \quad \quad \quad \uparrow \text{adv} \quad | \quad \text{adv} \end{array}$$

- b. More than one adverb before and after the verb: If a sentence has adverbs both before and after the verb, the modifier lines are distinct and separate. They are *not* to be joined even if they are both modifying the same verb.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{S} \quad \text{PV} \\ \text{Now } \underline{\text{leaves}} \underline{\text{swirl}} \text{ quickly.} \\ \quad | \text{adv} \quad \quad \quad \uparrow \uparrow \text{adv} \end{array}$$

Well-Ordered Notes Introductory

Practice It

This is an oral exercise. Using the following sentences, have the students provide an adverb after you ask them *how*, *when*, or *where*. Write the sentences the students come up with on the board.

Example: Zipper teeth zip.

Teacher: "How do the zipper teeth zip?"

Student #1: "snugly"

Restate: "Zipper teeth zip snugly."

Teacher: "When do the zipper teeth zip?"

Student #2: "sometimes"

Restate: "Zipper teeth zip sometimes."

Teacher: "Where do the zipper teeth zip?"

Student #3: "up"

Restate: "Zipper teeth zip up."

1. Winds are blowing.
2. Pumpkins ripen.
3. Rex eats.
4. Fritz is standing.
5. Sisters are searching.

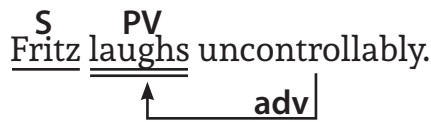
From the Sideline: Remember, you can visit ClassicalAcademicPress.com/WOL for a video demonstration of the analysis of the sentences in each lesson.

Analyze It

Write the following sentences on the board. The analysis is to be recited aloud using the following script. The lines in parentheses are there to guide you, not to be spoken. The lines in gray are for you and the students to say in lively chorus as you mark the sentence on the board (*S* = subject; *PV* = predicate verb; *hv* = helping verb; *adv* = adverb).

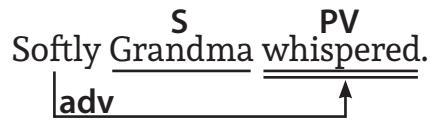
1. Fritz laughs uncontrollably.
 ^S ^{PV}
 ↑ adv

2. Blue jays chatter noisily.
 ^S ^{PV}
 ↑ adv



- a. (First, read the sentence aloud.) “Fritz laughs uncontrollably.”
- b. “This is a sentence because it is a group of words that expresses a complete thought. It is a declarative sentence because it makes a statement.”
- c. “This sentence is about *Fritz*.” (Underline the subject.) “So, *Fritz* is the subject because it is what the sentence is about.” (Place a capital letter *S* above the subject.)
- d. “This sentence tells us that Fritz *laughs*.” (Double underline the predicate.) “So, *laughs* is the predicate because it is what the sentence tells us about *Fritz*.” (Place a capital letter *P* above the predicate.) “It is a predicate verb because it shows action.” (Place a capital letter *V* to the right of the *P*.) “There is no linking verb because predicate verbs do not need linking verbs.”
- e. “These are the principal elements because they are what are needed for the sentence to be completed. All the remaining parts are subordinate elements.”
- f. (Continue the analysis of the sentence, starting at the far right side and moving toward the left.) “*Uncontrollably* tells us how Fritz laughs.” (Draw a straight line down from the adverb, then a horizontal line toward the word that it modifies, and then a straight line with an arrow pointing to the word it modifies.)
- g. “So, *uncontrollably* is an adverbial element because it modifies a verb. It is an adverb.” (Write *adv* in lowercase letters in the elbow opposite the line with the arrow.)

For the analysis of the second sentence, adjust the script accordingly.



- a. (First, read the sentence aloud.) “Softly Grandma whispered.”
- b. “This is a sentence because it is a group of words that expresses a complete thought. It is a declarative sentence because it makes a statement.”
- c. “This sentence is about *Grandma*.” (Underline the subject.) “So, *Grandma* is the subject because it is what the sentence is about.” (Place a capital letter *S* above the subject.)
- d. “This sentence tells us that *Grandma whispered*.” (Double underline the predicate.) “So, *whispered* is the predicate because it is what the sentence tells us about *Grandma*.” (Place a capital letter *P* above the predicate.) “It is a predicate verb because it shows action.” (Place a capital letter *V* to the right of the *P*.) “There is no linking verb because predicate verbs do not need linking verbs.”
- e. “These are the principal elements because they are what are needed for the sentence to be completed. All the remaining parts are subordinate elements.”
- f. (Continue the analysis of the sentence, starting at the far right side and moving toward the left.) “*Softly* tells us how *Grandma whispered*.” (Draw a straight line down from the adverb, then a horizontal line toward the word that it modifies, and then a straight line with an arrow pointing to the word it modifies.)
- g. “So, *softly* is an adverbial element because it modifies a verb. It is an adverb.” (Write *adv* in lowercase letters in the elbow opposite the line with the arrow.)

For the analysis of the second sentence, adjust the script accordingly.

Well-Ordered Notes B

Practice It

This is an oral exercise. Write the following examples on the board. Remind students that the word *not* always behaves as an adverb. Have students complete the sentences by supplying verbs. Then, after writing the verbs student supply, have students analyze the sentences.

Example: Musicians are not rehearsing.

1. Musicians are not playing.
2. Fingers were not bending.
3. Winston is not fdgeting.
4. Ushers are not sleeping.
5. Fritz is not listening.
6. Auntie will not approve.

Analyze It

Write the following sentences on the board. The analysis is to be recited aloud using the following script. The lines in parentheses are there to guide you, not to be spoken. The lines in gray are for you and the students to say in lively chorus as you mark the sentence on the board. While the students recite, you will mark the sentence on the board (*S* = subject; *PV* = predicate verb; *hv* = helping verb; *adv* = adverb).

1. Fritz is not swimming today.
 ^S ^{hv} ^{PV}
 |adv ↑↑ |adv|

2. Sadly rain is pouring outside.
 ^S ^{hv} ^{PV}
 |adv ↑↑ |adv|

Fritz is not swimming today.
 ^S ^{hv} ^{PV}
 |adv ↑↑ |adv|

- a. (First, read the sentence aloud.) “Fritz is not swimming today.”
- b. “This is a sentence because it is a group of words that expresses a complete thought. It is a declarative sentence because it makes a statement.”
- c. “This sentence is about *Fritz*.” (Underline the subject.) “So, *Fritz* is the subject because it is what the sentence is about.” (Place a capital letter *S* above the subject.)
- d. “This sentence tells us that *Fritz is swimming*.” (Double underline the predicate.) “So, *is swimming* is the predicate because it is what the sentence tells us about *Fritz*.” (Place a capital letter *P* above the action verb.) “It is a predicate verb because it shows action.” (Place a capital letter *V* to the right of the *P*.) “There is no linking verb because predicate verbs do not need linking verbs. *Is* is a helping verb because it helps the verb.” (Place a lowercase *hv* above the helping verb.)

- e. "These are the principal elements because they are what are needed for the sentence to be completed. All the remaining parts are subordinate elements."
- f. (Continue the analysis of the sentence, starting at the far right side and moving toward the left.) "Today tells us *when* Fritz is swimming." (Draw a straight line down from the adverb, then a horizontal line toward the word that it modifies, and then a straight line with an arrow pointing to the word it modifies.)
- g. "So, *today* is an adverbial element because it modifies a verb. It is an adverb." (Write *adv* in lowercase letters in the elbow opposite the line with the arrow.)
- h. "*Not* tells us *how* Fritz is swimming." (Draw a straight line down from the adverb, then a horizontal line toward the word that it modifies, and then a straight line with an arrow pointing to the word it modifies.)
- i. "So, *not* is an adverbial element because it modifies a verb. It is an adverb." (Write *adv* in lowercase letters in the elbow opposite the line with the arrow.)

For the analysis of the second sentence, adjust the script accordingly.

†From p. 86. The following are the markings for the second version of the sample sentence:

S
hv
PV
Waves were crashing down majestically.
↑ adv | adv

- d. “This sentence tells us that lightning *is flashing*.” (Double underline the predicate.) “So, *is flashing* is the predicate because it is what the sentence tells us about *lightning*.” (Place a capital letter *P* above the action verb.) “It is a predicate verb because it shows action.” (Place a capital letter *V* to the right of the *P*.) “There is no linking verb because predicate verbs do not need linking verbs. *Is* is a helping verb because it helps the verb.” (Place a lowercase *hv* above the helping verb.)
- e. “These are the principal elements because they are what are needed for the sentence to be completed. All the remaining parts are subordinate elements.”
- f. “*Suddenly* tells us *how* lightning is flashing.” (Draw a straight line down from the adverb, then a horizontal line toward the word that it modifies, and then a straight line with an arrow pointing to the word it modifies.)
- g. “So, *suddenly* is an adverbial element because it modifies a verb. It is an adverb.” (Write *adv* in lowercase letters in the elbow opposite the line with the arrow.)

For the analysis of the second sentence, adjust the script accordingly.

⁶ From p. 91. The following are the markings for the second version of the sample sentence:

S
hv
PV
Winds were gusting fiercely everywhere.
↑
adv
|
adv
|

Continue the analysis of the sentence, starting at the far right side and moving toward the left.

Lessons to Enjoy—Fable

Questions to Ponder

1. Where was the Lion sleeping?

The lion is peacefully sleeping in the shady forest. When the students find this detail, help them to imagine the lion's large size.

2. What happens that makes the Lion angry?

The mouse accidentally runs across the lion's nose and wakes him up. This is a curious detail in the fable. How is it that the mouse ends up on the lion's nose? Ask your students to explain how they imagine it happening. Such a discussion tunes them in to the details of the story and allows for some variety in their interpretations. Ask them, "How are mistakes made when someone gets nervous or panicky? Do you blame the lion for being angry? Would you be angry in his place?"

3. What does "Caught in the toils of a hunter's net" mean?

The lion is tangled up in the net. Help the students recognize that the struggle of this large beast would make the tangle worse. Also, point out that in his predicament, the *great* lion has been reduced.

4. How does the Mouse help the Lion?

The mouse chews through the ropes of the net and frees the lion. It is because her teeth are tiny that she is able to do this kind of detailed work. The big lion was able only to thrash around and roar. Her littleness enables her to do a big thing.

5. Is there more than one meaning for the word "great" in the moral of this fable? What about in the first sentence of the story?

Great has at least two separate meanings: large and important. The whole story turns on the meaning of *great*. At the start, the lion is both large and important. He is the king of the forest, able to kill the mouse or choose to be amused and merciful. When he gets caught in the net, he may still be large, but it is now a disadvantage. His importance is diminished, and he is at the mouse's mercy. The mouse is the opposite of *great* in size—as tiny as she can be. Seemingly, she has no importance, completely at the mercy of the lion. Her nervous, timid actions at the beginning show how *little* she is in both size and importance. But when the lion needs her, she is of utmost importance to him. She saves him. So, *great* also refers to moral character. The lion is *great* in his generous mercy toward the mouse. The mouse is *great* in her quick reaction to the problem and wholehearted assistance of the lion.

6. Can you find the adverbs modifying verbs?

They have been underlined in the teacher's edition. Encourage the students to tell if each adverb answers *how*, *when*, or *where*.

Fable Sentences

Adverbs

ANSWERS

Analyze the following sentences (*S* = subject; *PV* = predicate verb; *hv* = helping verb; *adv* = adverb).

1. Lion stretches out.
 ^S ^{PV}
 ↑
 |
 adv

2. Later Lion sleeps.
 ^S ^{PV}
 | ↑
 | |
 adv

3. Mouse quickly sprints.
 ^S ^{PV}
 | ↑
 | |
 adv

4. Furiously Lion snatches.
 ^S ^{PV}
 | ↑
 | |
 adv

5. Mouse woefully cries.
 ^S ^{PV}
 | ↑
 | |
 adv

6. Lightheartedly Lion releases.
 ^S ^{PV}
 | ↑
 | |
 adv

lightheartedly: without care, cheerfully

Fable Sentences

Adverbs

ANSWERS

7. Later Lion howls.
|adv ↑

8. Mouse eagerly comes.
 |adv ↑

9. Quietly Mouse gnaws.
|adv ↑

10. Lion gratefully smiles.
 |adv ↑



Well–Ordered Notes–Fable

Read

- ◇ Have students enjoy reading the fable aloud while eating your special homemade trail mix. (See recipe below.) Why trail mix? Well, what else would you take with you for a journey into the shady forest while reading a fable about lions?
- ◇ Have students sing the definition of a fable (1–14; see p. 250 for lyrics).

Retell

- ◇ Discuss the fable using the provided questions.
- ◇ Make sock puppets. Have students retell the fable using the puppets and a small net such as one that holds produce. You can make two puppets yourself and allow students to take turns being narrator, mouse, and lion. Or you could have the students make lion and mouse puppets at home. You can find simple instructions for sock puppets at: <http://www.sesamestreet.org/parents/topicsandactivities/crafts/sockpuppet>.
- ◇ Have students analyze the fable sentences (available in the downloadable PDF).

Record

- ◇ Have the students write their own version of the fable using other animals or even humans. Or have them write a story about what happens next for Lion and Mouse.

Lion and Mouse Trail Mix

Ingredients:¹

1 jar of peanuts (salted or unsalted)	1 bag of chocolate chips
1 box golden raisins	1 bag pretzels
1 bag of dried cranberries	1 bag candy corn
1 bag of dried bananas	2 cups of dry cereal, such as Cheerios or Chex

Directions:

In a large bowl, mix all of the ingredients together and serve.

1. Be mindful of children’s allergies. If need be, eliminate or substitute ingredients with other options.

ANSWERS

1. Analyze the following sentences (*S* = subject; *PV* = predicate verb; *hv* = helping verb; *adv* = adverb).

a. $\begin{array}{c} S \quad PV \\ \underline{\text{Eagles}} \quad \underline{\text{soar}} \quad \text{high.} \\ \quad \quad \quad \uparrow \text{adv} \end{array}$

b. $\begin{array}{c} S \quad hv \quad PV \\ \text{Busily} \quad \underline{\text{ants}} \quad \underline{\text{are working.}} \\ \quad \quad \quad \uparrow \text{adv} \end{array}$

c. $\begin{array}{c} S \quad hv \quad PV \\ \underline{\text{Squirrels}} \quad \underline{\text{were}} \quad \text{not} \quad \underline{\text{chasing}} \quad \text{around.} \\ \quad \quad \quad \uparrow \text{adv} \quad \uparrow \text{adv} \end{array}$

d. $\begin{array}{c} S \quad hv \quad hv \quad PV \\ \text{Tonight} \quad \underline{\text{raccoons}} \quad \underline{\text{might be scrounging}} \quad \text{again.} \\ \quad \quad \quad \uparrow \text{adv} \quad \uparrow \text{adv} \end{array}$

scrounging: searching about for food, foraging

2. On the lines provided, list the *adverbs* from the above sentences.

a. _____ **high** _____

b. _____ **busily** _____

c. _____ **not** _____

d. _____ **around** _____

e. _____ **tonight** _____

f. _____ **again** _____

3. Rewrite sentence 1a from the previous page by adding an adverb that tells **how** eagles *soar high*. Then, in the space provided below, analyze your sentence.

Eagles soar high swiftly.

S PV
Eagles soar high swiftly.
 ↑ adv | adv

4. Rewrite sentence 1c from the previous page by adding an adverb that tells **when** ants *are working busily*. Then, in the space provided below, analyze your sentence.

Busily ants are working today.

S hv PV
Busily ants are working today.
|adv ↑↑ adv|

Lessons to Enjoy—Poem Adverbs

Sir Walter Scott was a writer and poet who wrote about the adventures of heroes and villains from Scotland. In the following short poem, Scott draws contrasting mental pictures, or images, for you of the men who are hunting and the animals who are being hunted. Now that you have analyzed how adverbs modify verbs, you will notice how Scott uses them to create those images vividly.

Hunter's Song

by Sir Walter Scott (1771–1832)

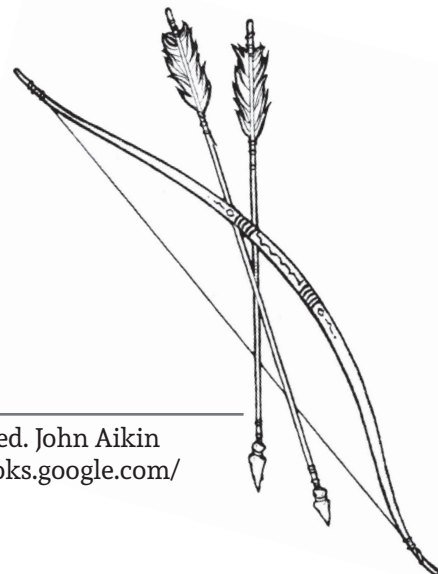
The toils are pitched, and the stakes are set,
Ever sing merrily, merrily;
The bows they bend, and the knives they whet,
Hunters live so cheerily.

It was a stag, a stag of ten,
Bearing its branches sturdily;
He came silently down the glen,
Ever sing hardily, hardily.

It was there he met with a wounded doe,
She was bleeding deathfully;
She warned him of the toils below,
O so faithfully, faithfully!

He had an eye, and he could heed,
Ever sing so warily, warily;
He had a foot, and he could speed—
Hunters watch so narrowly.²

toils: tightly woven nets used by hunters to hide behind; hunting blinds
pitched: set up
stakes: posts
whet: sharpen by grinding
stag: an adult male deer
branches: antlers
sturdily: strongly
glen: small valley
hardily: boldly, courageously
doe: an adult female deer
bleeding deathfully: dying from her wound
heed: give careful attention to
warily: cautiously
narrowly: closely, with great attention



2. Sir Walter Scott, "Hunter's Song," in *Select Works of the British Poets*, ed. John Aikin (Philadelphia: Thomas Wardle, 1838), p. 702. Available at: <https://books.google.com/books?id=PKgcAAAAMAAJ>.

Lessons to Enjoy—Poem

Adverbs

Questions to Ponder

1. In each stanza of the poem there are four lines. In each stanza, which lines rhyme with each other? How does this pattern make the poem like a song?
2. What does “The bows they bend, and the knives are whet” mean?
3. What does the stag look like?
4. What does the stag meet as it comes down into the valley?
5. What happens in the last stanza? What do you think will happen next?
6. Can you find all the adverbs in the poem? (Hint: Look for words ending in *-ly*.)

Lessons to Enjoy—Poem

Questions to Ponder

1. In each stanza of the poem there are four lines. In each stanza, which lines rhyme with each other? How does this pattern make the poem like a song?

In each stanza, lines 1 and 3 rhyme with each other, and lines 2 and 4 rhyme with each other, making for a rhyming pattern of ABAB. Such a rhyming pattern is typical of many songs the students may be familiar with, as varied as “Simple Simon” and “Amazing Grace.” Point out that the rhymes and the title of “Hunter’s Song” suggest that the poem is meant to be sung. Ask for a volunteer to try to sing the words with a made-up melody. Ask them when they think hunters would sing such a song? Hunters might sing it as they prepare for the hunt or as they gather to tell stories of hunting.

2. What does “The bows they bend, and the knives are whet” mean?

This question focuses the students’ attention on the first stanza. The hunters are preparing for the hunt, sharpening their knives and testing their bows by bending them. The first line of this stanza describes the hunting blinds that the hunters have set up. During their preparations, they are cheerful and they sing. But there is another, darker side to the hunt—the rest of the poem lets us see it through the perspective of the deer.

3. What does the stag look like?

This question focuses the students’ attention on the second stanza. The stag is majestic. He is ten years old—mature and experienced. He is strong, sporting a large set of antlers. He moves stealthily but boldly. The last line in this stanza is difficult because it is hard to imagine the stag singing boldly. For a Romantic poet, the majestic bearing of this buck is itself a sort of hardy or bold song.

4. What does the stag meet as it comes down into the valley?

Now, for the third stanza: The stag meets a wounded doe that has been shot by one of the hunters deeper in the valley. The doe has been able to run away, but she is dying. She faithfully or loyally warns the stag of the impending danger.

5. What happens in the last stanza? What do you think will happen next?

In the last stanza, the bold song of the majestic stag turns wary. Witnessing the doe’s trauma, the stag becomes cautious. He is controlled by instinct—he sees, he heeds, he runs. With the dash at the end of the third line of this stanza, the perspective shifts back to the hunters. They watch closely. The poem is open-ended. We don’t know if they are watching closely enough to succeed in their hunt or if the stag escapes. Allow the students to imagine different endings. No matter how it ends, as a hunter’s song, the poem celebrates the hunter’s respect for the hunted and for the difficulty of the hunt.

6. Can you find all the adverbs in the poem? (Hint: Look for words ending in *-ly*.)

The adverbs have been underlined in the teacher’s edition.

Well-Ordered Notes—Poem

Read

- ◇ Read the poem to the students while listening to a classical piece of music, such as “Royal Hunt and Storm” from Berlioz’s *Les Troyens*. The poem is not a lighthearted one, but students can relish it for its drama and its unusual perspective from the animals’ point of view.

Retell

- ◇ Discuss with students the poem using the questions that follow it.
- ◇ Bring in pictures of a hunter’s blind and a majestic-looking stag with a large set of antlers to help the students understand the imagery of the poem.

Record

- ◇ Have students write another stanza to the poem, addressing what they think will happen to the stag after being warned by the wounded doe. Will the stag escape the hunters?
- ◇ Have students draw a picture of what is happening in one of the stanzas in the poem. Or, have them draw a picture of the new stanza that they wrote for the poem.

GET SMART

**INSTRUCTOR
EDITION**

GRAMMAR THROUGH
SENTENCE
DIAGRAMMING

BY ELIZABETH O'BRIEN

EDITED BY DAVID O'BRIEN

www.English-Grammar-Revolution.com

INTRODUCTION

It's time for you to get inspired about grammar and language. It's time for you to write clearly and speak confidently. It's time for you to have some fun while you exercise your brain! Doesn't that sound delightful?

These lessons and exercises teach you the eight parts of speech, phrases, clauses, verbals, and more.

When you're done with this book, you'll possess a powerful tool for using and understanding language. You'll be able to write with clarity, and you'll actually enjoy grammar.



Be sure to stop by the English Grammar Revolution website for fun sentence diagramming puzzles, exercises, and lessons.

I'll see you there.

Have fun!

A handwritten signature in cursive script that reads "Elizabeth".

Elizabeth O'Brien

P.S. Be sure to go to the website and claim your FREE Parts of Speech Quick Guide and grammar newsletter. You'll receive sentence diagramming puzzles and lessons in your inbox every other Tuesday.

www.English-Grammar-Revolution.com

HOW TO USE THIS PROGRAM

I've made this easy on you. If you can turn pages and read sentences, you're going to thrive. Look! You're doing so well already.

Here's the scoop: Go over the lessons with your students and have them do the accompanying exercises. This book contains all of the answers, but the student edition does not. (Wasn't that clever of me?) Use this book to grade students' exercises.

Some lessons contain quizzes, and you'll find all of the quizzes in the back of this book. That way, your students can't peek at them.

You may want to teach a lesson at the beginning of the week and follow it with a sentence diagramming exercise each day of the rest of the week. However, you should feel free to go at whatever pace you wish.

Everything is laid out clearly and in a logical order, so conquering grammar should be simply a matter of turning the pages and working through the material. Take a look at the next few pages to get a better idea of how this book is structured. Enjoy!

37 LESSONS AT A GLANCE

LESSON	TOPICS COVERED	EXAMPLE SENTENCES
1	Subjects, Verbs, & Sentences	<i>Rex barks.</i>
2	Verb Phrases & Helping Verbs	<i>Rex will bark.</i>
3	Questions (Interrogative Sentences)	<i>Will Rex bark?</i>
4	Review: Subjects (Nouns), Verbs, & Parts of Speech	Review Sentences & Quiz 1
5	Pronouns & Commands (Imperative Sentences)	<i>He barks. Go.</i>
6	Adjectives	<i>Crazy Rex barks.</i>
7	Adverbs	<i>He howled loudly.</i>
8	Review: Subjects, Verb Phrases, Adjectives, & Adverbs	Review Sentences & Quiz 2
9	Prepositional Phrases (Adjective)	<i>The girl with the blue shirt smiled.</i>
10	Prepositional Phrases (Adverb)	<i>The boy ran across the field. Walk up the stairs.</i>
11	Review: Prepositional Phrases (Adjective & Adverb)	<i>The dog with the loud bark ran into the house.</i> Review Sentences & Quiz 3
12	Transitive Active Verbs & Direct Objects (Noun Job)	<i>We won the game.</i>
13	Coordinating Conjunctions (Compound Subject & Verb)	<i>Maria and Martha sat. Maria and Martha sat and thought.</i>

LESSON	TOPICS COVERED	EXAMPLE SENTENCES
14	Coordinating Conjunctions (Compound Adjectives & Adverbs)	<i>The black and white dog ran quickly and quietly.</i>
15	Coordinating Conjunctions (Compound Verb & Prepositional Phrases)	<i>Maria will sit and wait. I ran across the field and over the hill.</i>
16	Coordinating Conjunctions (Compound Sentences)	<i>I will teach, and you will learn.</i>
17	Review: Subjects, Verbs, Adjectives, Adverbs, Prepositions, Coordinating Conjunctions, & Correlative Conjunctions	Review Sentences & Quiz 4
18	Transitive Active Verbs & Indirect Objects (Noun Job)	<i>Mrs. Jacobson taught the class history.</i>
19	Interjections & Nouns of Direct Address	<i>Wow, we won! Elizabeth, we won.</i>
20	Review: Intransitive Complete Verbs vs. Transitive Active Verbs, Subjects, Verbs, Adjectives, & More	Review Sentences & Quiz 5
21	Transitive Passive Verbs	<i>The ball was kicked by Jack.</i>
22	Linking Verbs (Predicate Adjectives & Predicate Nouns)	<i>The soup tastes salty. Mr. Black became a teacher.</i>
23	Linking Verb or Action Verb?	<i>Maria tasted the soup. The soup tasted salty.</i>
24	Review: Verb Types & More	Review Sentences & Quiz 6
25	Review of Noun Jobs: Subject, Direct Object, Indirect Object, Object of the Preposition, & Predicate Noun	<i>John baked Gerry and Tom a cake. Tom ate the cake with glee. John is a baker.</i>

LESSON	TOPICS COVERED	EXAMPLE SENTENCES
26	Independent Clauses vs. Dependent Clauses (Adverb Clauses)	<i>The kittens ran home after they lost their mittens.</i>
27	Dependent Clauses (Noun Clauses)	<i>I knew the students would learn.</i>
28	Review: Subordinating Conjunctions, Dependent Clauses (Noun & Adverb), Verb Types & More	Review Sentences & Quiz 7
29	Dependent Clauses (Adjective Clauses)	<i>The scarf that I want is black.</i>
30	Review: Dependent Clauses (Adverb, Noun, & Adjective), Verb Types & More	Review Sentences & Quiz 8
31	Gerunds	<i>Painting is fun.</i>
32	Gerund Phrases	<i>Painting pictures is fun.</i>
33	Participles	<i>He ate the burnt toast.</i>
34	Participial Phrases	<i>The shoe filled with mud was heavy.</i>
35	Infinitive	<i>I want to run.</i>
36	Infinitive Phrases	<i>I want to run the race.</i>
37	Review: Everything!	Review Sentences & Quiz 9
38	Bonus! Excerpts from <u>Stay Smart : 188 Advanced Sentence Diagramming Exercises</u>	Everything!

WHAT IS THE SINGAPORE MATH PROGRAM...

Chicago Classical Academy will follow the Singapore Math curriculum for grades K-7. Singapore Math emphasizes the development of strong number sense, excellent mental-math skills, and a deep understanding of concepts.

- Concepts are arranged in a logical progression and are taught to mastery. In general, the curriculum proceeds from the **concrete** (using manipulatives: e.g. counting bears and stacking cubes) to the **pictorial** (using printed materials, pictorial representation of the manipulatives) to the **abstract** (using algorithms, mathematical statements on their own)
- This emphasis is reflected in Singapore Math's strong emphasis on **model drawing**, a visual approach to solving word problems that helps students organize information and solve problems in a step-by-step manner
- **Problem solving** is at the heart of the program, as a result, more of our students will see the beauty and order of mathematics, and they will have developed **the habit of thinking logically** to solve problems
- A great deal of instructional time is saved by **focusing on essential math skills**, and by not re-teaching what has been taught before. In fact, some teachers report that Singapore Math feels slower paced than what they're used to. However, the result is that students master essential math skills at a more rapid pace
- Students gain a solid understanding of basic mathematical concepts and relationships before they start working at the abstract level. By the time students get to Algebra I (typically in eighth grade), they already will have learned to think algebraically. The algorithms they use will make sense. They will not just do math, they will understand it

CHICAGO CLASSICAL ACADEMY

KEY FACTS

Applying for charter approval in 2017
Tuition free & open enrollment
K-12 program
South Loop location
Opening in the fall of 2018

CLASSICAL CURRICULUM

Liberal arts focus
Emphasis on logic & rhetoric
Structured & rich curriculum
Language-based approach
Strong civics component
Character development

CONTACT INFORMATION

773.492.1202
www.chiclassical.org
info@chiclassical.org
facebook.com/chiclassical



Scope and Sequence for *Primary Mathematics, U.S. Edition*

Copyright © 2008 [[SingaporeMath.com Inc.](http://SingaporeMath.com)]

The check mark indicates where the topic is first introduced or specifically addressed.

	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	4A	4B	5A	5B	6A	6B
Whole Numbers												
Understand and use ordinal numbers to describe position.	✓											
Count objects in a set, read and write numerals to 10.	✓											
Compare two or more sets of objects up to 10 and identify which set is equal to, more than, or less than the other.	✓											
Compare two sets of objects up to 10 and determine how many more or less are in one set than the other.	✓											
Count and identify 1 more than or 1 less than a number within 10.	✓											
Count and identify 1 more than or 1 less than a number within 30.	✓											
Understand number order and know that larger numbers describe sets with more objects in them than smaller numbers.	✓											
Count, read, and write whole numbers to 20.	✓											
Compare numbers within 20.	✓	✓										
Use place-value models to represent numbers to 100.		✓										
Read, write in words, standard, and expanded notation, and identify place values of digits for numbers within 100.		✓										
Count and identify 1 more than, 1 less than, 10 more than, 10 less than a number within 100.		✓										
Compare numbers within 100 and use the symbols $<$, $+$, $>$.			✓									
Make reasonable estimates when comparing numbers and sets of objects within 100.												
Describe and extend regular number patterns within 100, including counting by 2's and 20's.		✓										
Use place-value models to represent numbers to 1000.			✓									
Read, write in words, standard, and expanded notation, identify place values of digits, and compare and order numbers within 1000.			✓									

	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	4A	4B	5A	5B	6A	6B
Describe and extend regular number patterns within 1000.			✓									
Compare numbers within 1000 and use the symbols $<$, $+$, $>$.			✓									
Use place-value models to represent numbers to 10,000.					✓							
Read, write in words, standard, and expanded notation, identify place values of digits, and compare and order numbers within 10,000.					✓							
Count on and back in steps of 1, 10, 100, and 1000 and complete or extend regular number patterns within 10,000.					✓							
Round numbers within 100,000 to the nearest 10 or 100							✓					
Round numbers within 10,000 to the nearest 10, 100, or 1000.									✓			
Use place-value models to represent numbers to 100,000.							✓					
Read, write in words, standard, and expanded notation, identify place values of digits, and compare and order numbers within 100,000.							✓					
Complete or extend regular number patterns for numbers within 100,000.							✓					
Use place-value models to represent numbers to 1,000,000.									✓			
Addition and Subtraction of Whole Numbers												
Understand number bonds and part-whole concept.	✓											
Understand the meaning of addition (missing whole, putting together, counting on, and simple addition stories).	✓		✓									
Understand the meaning of subtraction (missing part, taking away, counting back, and simple subtraction stories).	✓		✓									
Add/Subtract numbers within 20.	✓											
Use inverse relationship between addition and subtraction.	✓		✓	✓								
Learn addition and subtraction facts within 20.	✓											
Compare numbers by using subtraction to find the difference.		✓	✓									
Add/Subtract numbers within 100.		✓										
Count by 10's within 100.		✓										

	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	4A	4B	5A	5B	6A	6B
Find the sum of three 1-digit numbers.		✓										
Add/Subtract numbers within 1000.			✓									
Add/Subtract numbers within 10,000.					✓		✓					
Use estimation to verify the reasonableness of calculated results in addition and subtraction, check subtraction problems using addition.							✓		✓			
Determine whether an estimate is sufficient for a specific problem situation.							✓					
Multiplication and Division of Whole Numbers												
Use repeated addition and arrays to solve multiplication problems within 40.		✓	✓									
Use sharing and grouping to divide.		✓	✓									
Relate division to multiplication.			✓	✓	✓							
Recognize and extend regular linear patterns.		✓	✓	✓	✓							
Multiply/divide by 2's and 3's.			✓									
Learn multiplication/division facts for 2's and 3's.			✓									
Multiply/divide by 4's, 5's, and 10's.				✓								
Learn multiplication/division facts for 4's, 5's, and 10's.				✓								
Understand quotient and remainder.					✓							
Understand the properties of 0 and 1 in multiplication and division.					✓							
Multiply/Divide by 6's, 7's, 8's, and 9's.					✓							
Learn multiplication/division facts for 6's, 7's, 8's, and 9's.					✓							
Multiply numbers within 1000 by a 1-digit number.					✓							
Multiply numbers within 10,000 by a 1-digit number.							✓					
Divide numbers within 1000 by a 1-digit number, including situations where there is a remainder.					✓							
Divide numbers within 10,000 by a 1-digit number, including situations where there is a remainder.							✓					
Multiply numbers within 10,000 by a 2-digit number.							✓		✓			
Divide numbers within 10,000 by a 2-digit number.									✓			
Use estimation to verify the reasonableness of calculated results in multiplication and division problems.							✓		✓			
Find the factors and common factors of whole numbers within 100.							✓		✓			

	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	4A	4B	5A	5B	6A	6B
Find multiples and common multiples of whole numbers within 100.							✓		✓			
Find the lowest common multiple of up to 3 numbers within 100.												
Use divisibility rules for 2, 3, 5, 6, 9, and 10.							✓					
Use order of operations to solve mathematical expressions with or without parentheses.									✓			
Mental Math Strategies												
Use the commutative and associative properties to perform mental calculations and check results.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓		✓			
Use the distributive property to perform mental calculations and check results.					✓		✓		✓			
Add 1-digit numbers involving renaming (e.g. $7 + 5$) by making a ten.	✓											
Subtract 1-digit numbers involving renaming (e.g. $14 - 8$) by subtracting from a ten.	✓											
Add/Subtract numbers within 100.		✓	✓	✓	✓							
Add/Subtract 1's, 10's, or 100's to numbers within 1000.			✓	✓		✓						
Subtract from 100.				✓								
Subtract from 1000.						✓						
Add/Subtract a number close to 100 (e.g. 98).				✓								
Add and subtract money in compound units (dollars and cents) when the cents are multiples of 5 or close to \$1.00.				✓	✓							
Add/Subtract measurements in compound units.						✓						
Add/Subtract tenths, hundredths, or thousandths to or from decimal numbers.								✓				
Multiply and divide tens, hundreds, and thousands by a 1-digit number.					✓							
Multiply by 99 or by 25.												
Multiply 10's by 10's or 100's.							✓					
Fractions												
Recognize and name halves and fourths.		✓		✓								
Recognize, write, name, and illustrate fractions of a whole (denominators 1-12).				✓								
Find the fraction with the same denominator to make a whole with another fraction.				✓								
Compare and order unit fractions.				✓								
Compare and order fractions with the same denominator or with the same numerator.						✓						

	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	4A	4B	5A	5B	6A	6B
Find equivalent fractions and simplest form of a fraction.						✓						
Compare and order fractions with different denominators.						✓						
Recognize and name the fraction of a set.						✓						
Find the value given the fraction of a set, using objects or drawings.						✓						
Find the fraction of a set where the answer is a whole number.						✓	✓					
Find the fraction of a set where the answer is a whole number or a mixed number.							✓		✓			✓
Find coin amounts as a fraction of a dollar.								✓				
Find fraction of a set for measurements (e.g. 10 minutes as a fraction of one hour).							✓		✓			
Add/Subtract like fractions.							✓					
Add/Subtract related fractions.							✓					
Add/Subtract unlike fractions.									✓			
Understand mixed numbers and improper fractions, convert between them, locate them on a number line.							✓					
Relate division to fractions.									✓			
Add/subtract mixed numbers.									✓			
Multiply a fraction by a whole number.							✓		✓			
Multiply a fraction by a fraction.									✓			
Divide a fraction by a whole number.									✓			✓
Divide a whole number or a fraction by a fraction.												✓
Apply order of operations with or without parentheses to problems involving fractions.												✓
Money												
Identify and know the value of coins and use the cent symbol.		✓										
Identify and know the value of bills and use the dollar symbol.		✓										
Count combinations of coins.		✓										
Count combinations of bills.		✓										
Count combinations of bills and coins to \$10.00.				✓								
Use decimal notation for money.				✓								
Use decimal notation to add and subtract money within \$10.00.				✓								

	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	4A	4B	5A	5B	6A	6B
Use decimal notation to add and subtract money within \$100.00.					✓							
Decimals												
Understand tenths, hundredths, thousandths, locate decimal numbers on a number line, compare decimal numbers.								✓		✓		
Convert a decimal to a fraction and simplify.								✓		✓		
Convert a fraction to a decimal number (denominators are a factor of 10, 100, or 1000).								✓		✓		
Compare and order decimal numbers of up to 3 decimal places and fractions.								✓		✓		
Round decimal numbers of up to 2 decimal places to the nearest whole number or to 1-decimal place.								✓				
Round decimal numbers up to 3 decimal places to the nearest whole number, to 1-decimal place, or to 2-decimal places.										✓		
Add/Subtract decimal numbers of up to 2 decimal places.								✓				
Add/Subtract decimal numbers of up to 3 decimal places.										✓		
Multiply/Divide decimal numbers of up to 2 decimal places by a whole number.								✓		✓		
Find the quotient of a division problem correct to 1 decimal place.								✓				
Find the quotient of a division problem correct to 2-decimal places.										✓		
Convert fractions to decimals correct to 2-decimal places.										✓		
Multiply/Divide decimal number by tens, hundreds, or thousands.										✓		
Multiply/divide a decimal number by a 2-digit whole number.										✓		
Use estimation to verify the reasonableness of calculated results in problems involving decimal numbers.								✓		✓		
Time												
Relate time to events.		✓										
Tell time to the half-hour (analog clock face).		✓										
Tell time to the nearest 5-minute mark (analog clock face).				✓								
Tell time to the minute (analog clock face).						✓						

	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	4A	4B	5A	5B	6A	6B
Estimate reasonable time intervals.												
Find the duration of time intervals.				✓		✓						
Find starting or ending times, given a time and the interval.				✓		✓						
Know relationships of time (years, months, days, weeks, hours, and seconds).				✓		✓						
Convert between of units of time.						✓		✓	✓	✓		
Length, Weight, Mass, and Capacity												
Compare and measure length and weight by making direct comparisons with reference objects.	✓											
Compare and measure capacity by making direct comparisons with reference objects.												
Compare and measure length, and weight using nonstandard units.	✓											
Compare and measure capacity using nonstandard units.			✓									
Measure and estimate length of objects in meters and centimeters, yards, feet, and inches.			✓			✓						
Understand and estimate length in kilometers and miles.						✓						
Compare measurements made using different units.			✓									
Measure and estimate weight in kilograms, grams, pounds, and ounces.			✓			✓						
Measure and estimate capacity in liters, cups, pints, quarts, half-gallon, and gallon.				✓		✓						
Measure and estimate capacity in milliliters.						✓						
Convert units within a metric system using multiplication.						✓			✓			
Add/subtract measurements in compound units.						✓						
Multiply/divide measurements in compound units.								✓				
Convert fractional measurements to a different unit or a compound unit, within a measuring system.									✓			
Convert units involving decimals within a measuring system.										✓		
Perimeter, Area, and Volume												
Find the perimeter of polygons.						✓						
Find the area of shapes by covering them with unit squares or by counting squares.				✓		✓	✓					
Understand and use units of area, such as square centimeter and square inch.						✓	✓					

	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	4A	4B	5A	5B	6A	6B
Find the area, perimeter, and unknown sides of rectangles.							✓					
Find the area and perimeter of composite figures made from squares and rectangles.							✓					
Derive the formula for area of a triangle and find the area of triangles.									✓			
Count unit cubes in 2-dimensional representations of 3-dimensional solids.								✓				
Find the volume of solid figures by counting cubic units.								✓				
Understand and use units of volume, such as cubic centimeter and cubic inch.								✓		✓		
Find the volume of rectangular prisms.								✓		✓		
Find the side of a rectangular prism given the volume and two sides or area of one side.										✓		
Understand the relationship between cubic centimeters, milliliters, and liters.								✓		✓		
Solve problems involving the change in height of liquids and volume of liquids in rectangular tanks, including rate problems.										✓		
Find the volume of solids by displacement.										✓		
Solve multistep problems involving the volume of liquids and solids and displacement of liquids.												✓
Identify the radius and diameter of a circle, find one given the other.												✓
Derive the formula for circumference of a circle and find circumference when given the radius or diameter.												✓
Derive the formula for area of a circle and find area when given the radius or diameter.												✓
Find the perimeter and area of compound figures involving squares, rectangles, triangles, and half-circles or quarter circles.												✓
Geometry												
Identify, describe, and categorize common 2-dimensional shapes, including the faces of 3-dimensional objects.	✓			✓								
Identify common 2-dimensional shapes within compound shapes, combine shapes to form common shapes.	✓			✓								

	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	4A	4B	5A	5B	6A	6B
Describe and classify common 3-dimensional shapes according to number and shape of faces, edges, and vertices.				✓							✓	
Describe and extend repeating patterns involving color and shapes.	✓			✓								
Describe and extend repeating patterns involving combination of shapes (compound shapes).				✓								
Identify common 3-dimensional shapes within compound shapes.						✓						
Identify attributes of triangles and quadrilaterals.								✓		✓		
Identify right angles and compare angles to right angles.						✓						
Identify acute, obtuse, and right angles and relate 90° , 180° , 270° , and 360° with quarter, half, three-quarter, and whole turn.							✓					
Measure and construct angles.							✓			✓		
Identify perpendicular and parallel lines.							✓					
Name different types of triangles and quadrilaterals.								✓				
Find unknown angles in figures based on identifying vertical, adjacent, complementary, or supplementary angles.										✓		✓
Know and use angle properties of intersecting lines, triangles, parallelograms, rhombuses, and trapezoids to solve problems involving finding unknown angles.										✓		✓
Construct triangles, parallelograms, and rhombuses with specified angles.										✓		
Visualize, describe, and draw geometric solids.											✓	
Identify nets of solids, or solids of nets.											✓	
Identify congruent figures												
Create tessellations.										✓		
Identify figures that have line symmetry.								✓				
Percentage												
Understand and use percent.										✓		
Find decimal and fraction equivalents for percentages.										✓		
Write fractions as percentages.										✓		
Solve problems involving percentage of a quantity.										✓	✓	
Solve problems involving part of a whole as a percentage.											✓	

	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	4A	4B	5A	5B	6A	6B
Solve problems involving one quantity as a percentage of another.											✓	
Solve percentage problems using a unitary method.											✓	
Calculate given percentages of quantities and solve problems involving discounts at sales, interest earned, percentage increase or decrease.										✓	✓	
Ratio/Average/Rate/Speed												
Use ratios to compare two quantities.									✓			
Use ratios to compare three quantities.									✓		✓	
Find equivalent ratios and simplify ratios									✓		✓	
Use ratios to solve problems.									✓		✓	
Relate ratios to fraction of a quantity.											✓	
Solve problems involving changing ratios.											✓	
Relate ratios to proportions.											✓	
Solve problems involving proportions.											✓	
Understand rate as the measure of one quantity per unit value of another.										✓	✓	
Solve problems involving rate.										✓		
Use a unitary approach to solve rate problems.										✓		
Solve discontinuous rate problems involving time.										✓		
Understand and use speed and average speed to solve problems.											✓	
Word Problems												
Make addition/subtraction stories from problem situations.	✓											
Write equations and solve simple addition/subtraction stories.	✓	✓										
Solve simple multiplication/division problems using objects and pictures.		✓										
Write equations and solve one-step word problems involving addition/subtraction.		✓	✓	✓								
Write equations and solve one-step word problems involving multiplication/division.			✓	✓								
Solve simple word problems involving fraction of a set.				✓								
Solve 2-step word problems which involve the four operations on whole numbers.					✓		✓					
Solve 2-step word problems which involve fraction of a set.							✓					

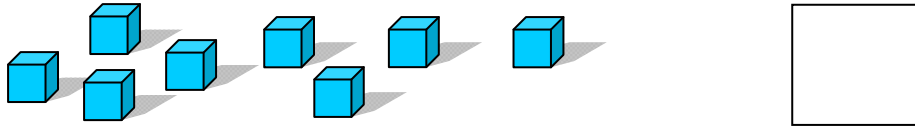
	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	4A	4B	5A	5B	6A	6B
Solve 2-step word problems which involve decimals and fractions.								✓				
Solve multi-step word problems involving all four operations on whole numbers, fractions, decimals, percentage, and ratios.									✓	✓	✓	✓
Solve multi-step word problems involving average, rate, and percentage.										✓	✓	✓
Solve multi-step word problems involving speed and average speed.											✓	✓
Solve challenging word problems.												✓
Data Analysis and Probability												
Sort objects and data by common attributes.	✓	✓										
Represent and compare data using picture graphs		✓										
Represent and compare data bar graphs.					✓		✓					
Represent and compare data using tally charts.												
Collect, organize, and analyze data using tables and bar graphs.							✓					
Ask and solve questions related to data representation, including finding the range and mode.				✓	✓		✓			✓		
Collect, organize, and analyze data using line graphs.										✓		
Collect, organize and display data in pie charts.												✓
Find the average of a set of data.										✓		
Find a data value given the average and the other values.										✓		
Algebra												
Solve problems involving numeric equations or inequalities.	✓	✓	✓		✓							
Select appropriate operational symbol to make an expression true.	✓	✓	✓		✓							
Use boxes and other symbols to stand for unknown numbers in expressions and equations.	✓		✓		✓		✓					
Represent unknown quantities with bar diagrams and solve word problems involving whole numbers using bar diagrams.					✓	✓	✓	✓	✓			✓
Use bar diagrams to solve word problems involving fractions.							✓		✓			✓
Use bar diagrams to solve word problems involving decimals.								✓		✓		✓

	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	4A	4B	5A	5B	6A	6B
Use bar diagrams to solve word problems involving percentage.										✓	✓	✓
Use bar diagrams to solve word problems involving ratio.									✓			✓
Solve word problems involving the functional relationship between two quantities.										✓		
Use and interpret formulas to answer questions about quantities and their relationships.							✓	✓	✓	✓		
Write and evaluate simple algebraic expressions in one variable using substitution.											✓	
Simplify algebraic expressions in one variable.											✓	
Use variables in expressions describing geometric quantities.												✓

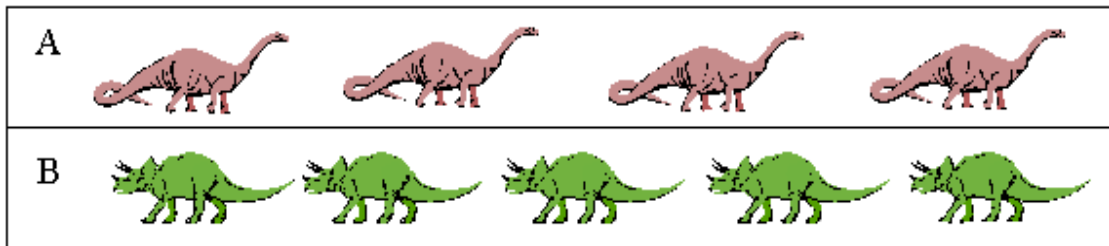
Assessment Test for Singapore Primary Mathematics 1A U.S. Edition

This test covers material taught in Primary Mathematics 1A, U.S. edition
(<http://www.singaporemath.com/>)

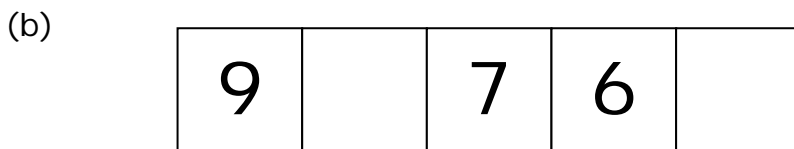
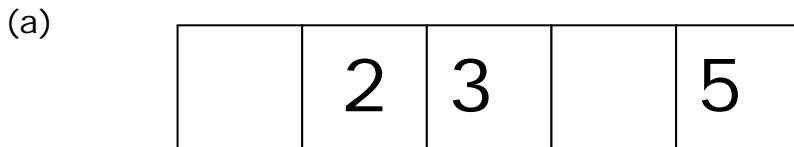
1. Count and write the number in the box. [2]



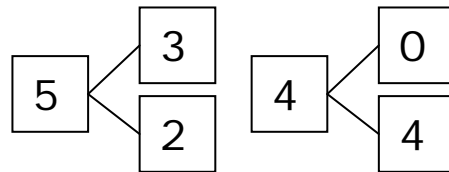
2. Which set has more? Circle A or B. [2]



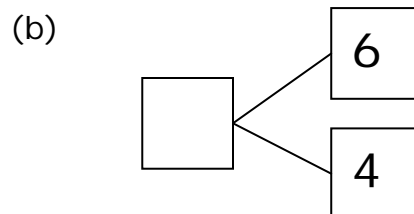
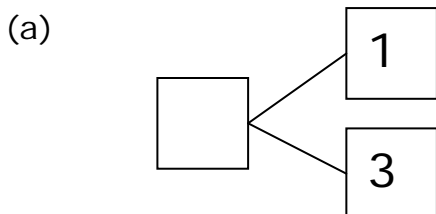
3. Fill in the missing numbers. [2]



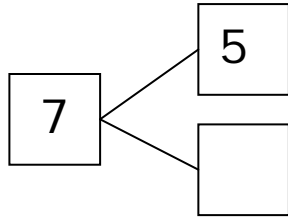
4. 5, 3, and 2 make a number bond.
4, 0, and 4 also make a number bond.



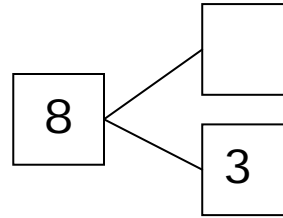
Write the missing number for the number bonds.



(c)




(d)



[4]

5. Write 3 more addition or subtraction sentences.


[6]

$\boxed{4} + \boxed{3} = \boxed{7}$

$\boxed{} - \boxed{} = \boxed{}$

$\boxed{} + \boxed{} = \boxed{}$

$\boxed{} - \boxed{} = \boxed{}$

6. Fill in the blanks.

(a) $0 + 6 = \underline{\hspace{2cm}}$

(b) $7 + 2 = \underline{\hspace{2cm}}$

[4]

(c) $7 + \underline{\hspace{2cm}} = 10$

(d) $8 - 3 = \underline{\hspace{2cm}}$

[4]

(e) $10 - 4 = \underline{\hspace{2cm}}$

(f) $9 - 6 = \underline{\hspace{2cm}}$

[4]

7. Mary used 4 eggs to bake a cake and 2 eggs to bake cookies. How many eggs did she use?

[4]

She used eggs.

8. There are 6 red and blue balls. 3 of them are red. How many are blue? [4]

There are _____ blue balls.

9. Pat lost 3 balloons to the wind. She had 6 balloons left. How many balloons did she have at first? [4]

She had _____ balloons

10. Look at these letters.

A B C D E F G H I J K

(a) Which letter is third? _____ [2]

(b) Which letter is second from the right? _____ [2]

11. Fill in the blanks.

(a) What number comes after 12? _____ [2]

(b) What number comes before 19? _____ [2]

(c) $10 + 5 =$ _____ [2]

(d) $10 +$ _____ $= 17$ [2]

(e) $14 =$ _____ tens and _____ ones [2]

(f) _____ $+ 3 = 13$ [2]

(g) Which is greater, 14 or 17? _____ [2]

12. Fill in the blanks

(a) $13 + 2 = \underline{\quad}$ (b) $7 + 5 = \underline{\quad}$ [4]

(c) $6 + \underline{\quad} = 12$ (d) $13 - 9 = \underline{\quad}$ [4]

(e) $16 - 4 = \underline{\quad}$ (f) $15 - 7 = \underline{\quad}$ [4]

13. John has 8 marbles. Paul gave him 9 more. How many marbles does John have now? [4]

John has marbles.

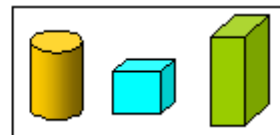
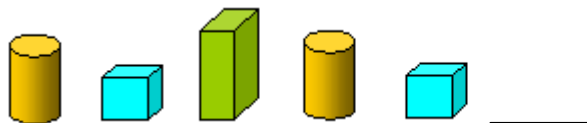
14. Sally needs 15 balloons for a party. She has 11 balloons now. How many more balloons does she need? [4]

She needs more balloons.

15. Mary has 14 stickers. Pam has 8 fewer than Mary. How many stickers does Pam have? [4]

Pam has stickers.

16. Circle the one in the box that comes next. [2]



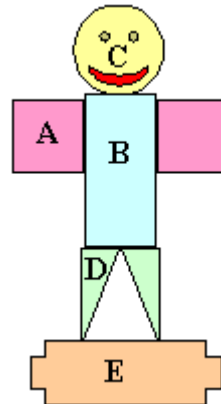
17. The man is made up of shapes labeled with letters. Which shape is a

(a) square? _____

(b) circle? _____

(c) triangle? _____

(d) rectangle? _____



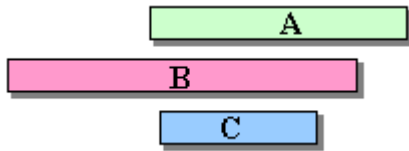
[1]

[1]

[1]

[1]

18. Which is longest, A, B, or C? _____



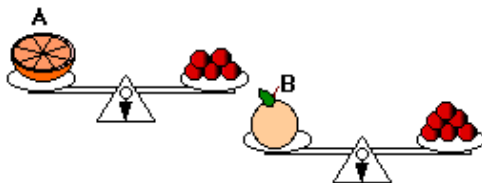
[2]

19. The paper clip is a unit. The pencil is _____ units long.




[2]

20. Which is heavier, A or B? _____



[2]

Answer Key

1. 8
2. B
3. (a) 1, 4 (b) 8, 5
4. (a) 4 (b) 10
(c) 2 (d) 5
5. $3 + 4 = 7$, $7 - 3 = 4$; $7 - 4 = 3$
6. (a) 6 (b) 9
(c) 3 (d) 5
(e) 6 (f) 3
7. 6
8. 3
9. 9
10. (a) C (b) J
11. (a) 13 (b) 18
(c) 15 (d) 7
(e) 1, 4
(f) 10 (g) 17
12. (a) 15 (b) 12
(c) 6 (d) 4
(e) 12 (f) 8
13. 17
14. 4
15. 6
16. 
17. (a) A (b) C
(d) D (d) B
18. B
19. 8
20. B

Copyright © 2001 [SingaporeMath.com Inc.] All rights reserved.

This assessment test and answer key may be printed out and used by individuals at no cost. They may not be copied or incorporated into any other document. Please see legal (<http://www.singaporemath.com/terms.asp>) for more information.



Thanks for downloading this sample packet!

We are glad that you have downloaded this sample product to review. We want you to be able to fully evaluate our products, so that you can purchase with confidence, knowing how accessible, effective, and delightful our materials are.

Free!

Classical Academic Press offers several levels of free help! The **Free Resources** page on the website lists suggested schedules, extra worksheets, audio pronunciation files, coloring pages, handy grammar charts, and flash cards, as well as articles and recorded mp3 talks about teaching. Click here to open the Free Resources page in a web browser.

Be sure to check out the free practice for your student at **HeadventureLand.com!** This free website offers games, videos, stories, and other resources to support students studying Latin, Spanish, and Greek. The activities are geared toward students using curricula from Classical Academic Press, but are useful for any language student. Headventure Land will always be a safe and family-friendly website for students to enjoy and is appropriate and appealing to students of all ages. As teachers and parents, you will find the For Teachers resource page particularly beneficial. It features many downloadable supplements to our curriculum, such as printable flashcards, worksheets, and audio files to aid language pronunciation. Click here to open HeadventureLand.com in a web browser.

Discounts!

We offer **bundle discounts** to make it easier to buy the whole curriculum. When you're ready, you can purchase this curriculum on our website. Click here to open ClassicalAcademicPress.com in a web browser.

Latin Alive!



At Classical Academic Press we do not merely create instructional textbooks, we create complete sets of learning tools designed to make teaching and learning both accessible and delightful. For each subject we start with a core text: the student book. We then provide several support materials to give all the aid that a teacher or student could need to feel confident as they master the subject together. These products are all listed below so that you can see a complete view of the entire curriculum. In addition, we created an entire website, HeadventureLand.com, which offers free educational games, videos, and ebooks where students can practice the subject they are learning.



The Student Text: filled with the lessons and exercises that are the student's primary contact with the material.

The Teacher's Edition: includes the student text, answer keys, teacher's notes, and suggestions for interactive classroom activities. Don't reinvent the wheel, let experienced teachers show you their best approaches and practices to this material.



The DVD & CD Set: we have bodies for a reason and we should take advantage of them in the learning process—the visual and audio component of our curricula is a tremendous application of this truth. Learn from the best tutors, and imprint the material with engaging visuals. Using the intelligence of your ear and eye will make learning vocabulary and other course content natural. Support your student's understanding of the subject material and give yourself time in the week for other children, planning, and other daily responsibilities.

Test Packet: Often requested by customers, this set of comprehensive tests to supplement the student book, is an excellent and helpful resource! The downloadable packet includes a weekly test for each chapter, a complete answer key, and a suggested scoring based on a 100 point system.



Classical Subjects Creatively Taught™

LATIN

Alive!

BOOK 1

E PLURIBUS

UNU



Karen Moore
Gaylan DuBose

Latin Alive! Book 1

© Classical Academic Press, 2008

Version 2.2

ISBN: 978-1-60051-054-0

All rights reserved. This publication may not be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Classical Academic Press.

Classical Academic Press

2151 Market Street

Camp Hill, PA 17011

www.ClassicalAcademicPress.com

Proofreader: Gary Varney

Cover, illustrations, and design by: Rob Baddorf



Latin Alive! Book 1

Table of Contents

Preface

Unit One

Chapter One.....	1
alphabet; pronunciation; sentence structure	
Chapter Two.....	9
verbs; first conjugation, present tense	
Chapter Three	14
present system	
Chapter Four	19
nouns; first declension; nominative case, subject, predicate	
reading: Greece and Troy	
Chapter Five	25
transitive and intransitive verbs; accusative case, direct object	
reading: The Trojan War Begins	
Chapter Six	30
second declension, masculine and neuter; dative case, indirect object, reference	
reading: The Trojan Horse	
Unit 1 Reading	37
historical reading: The Descendants of Aeneas	
Latin reading: The Birth and Early Life of Romulus and Remus	

Unit Two

Chapter Seven.....	42
first and second declension adjectives; agreement; irregular verb: <i>esse</i> , present system	
reading: King Numa Pompilius	
Chapter Eight.....	51
second conjugation; perfect tense; principal part review	
reading: The Horatii and the Curiatii	
Chapter Nine.....	58
ablative case, uses without prepositions	
reading: King Servius Tullius	

Unit 2 Reading	63
historical reading: The Paths to Kingship; The Reign and Death of Servius Tullius	
Latin reading: The Last Tyrant	

Unit Three

Chapter Ten	68
third declension nouns: all genders	
reading: Horatius at the Bridge	
Chapter Eleven.....	74
third conjugation, present tense; prepositional phrases	
reading: Mucius Scaevola	
Chapter Twelve	81
genitive case: possession, origin, material, partitive	
reading: Cloēlia, Roman Heroine	
Chapter Thirteen.....	85
third conjugation, present system	
reading: Cincinnatus	
Unit 3 Reading	91
historical reading: Tour of Rome	
Latin reading: Manlius and the Capitoline Geese	

Unit Four

Chapter Fourteen.....	96
third declension i-stem nouns, all genders	
reading: Diēs Lūstricus	
Chapter Fifteen	102
third declension adjectives	
reading: Education	
Chapter Sixteen	108
third conjugation, -io verbs; imperative mood; vocative case, direct address	
reading: Marriage	
Chapter Seventeen.....	116
dative case: uses with special verbs and adjectives, possession	
reading: Cursus Honōrum	
Unit 4 Reading	123
historical reading: A Family Legacy	
Latin reading: funeral rites	

Unit Five

Chapter Eighteen	129
irregular verbs: <i>īre, ferre, posse</i> ; complementary infinitives	
reading: Rēgulus and Hamilcar	

Chapter Nineteen.....	137
personal pronouns	
reading: Dido's Prophecy in Book IV, <i>Aeneid</i>	
Chapter Twenty.....	144
demonstrative pronouns/adjectives; intensive pronoun	
reading: Hannibal	
Chapter Twenty-One	151
the naughty nine (special adjectives); irregular verbs <i>volō</i> and <i>nōlō</i>	
reading: Hannibal and Scipio Africanus at the Battle of Zama	
Unit 5 Reading	159
historical reading: The Punic Wars	
Latin reading: Cato the Elder: Carthage Must Be Destroyed!	

Unit Six

Chapter Twenty-Two	165
numerals: declension of <i>duo</i> and <i>trēs</i> , cardinal and ordinal numbers	
reading: Cicero	
Chapter Twenty-Three	173
partitive expressions; constructions of price, time, and space	
reading: Catilinarian Conspiracy	
Chapter Twenty-Four.....	181
reflexive pronouns; reflexive possessive adjectives	
reading: Crassus	
Chapter Twenty-Five.....	187
relative and interrogative pronouns	
reading: Spartacus	
Chapter Twenty-Six.....	194
adverbs	
reading: Pompey	
Unit 6 Reading	199
historical reading: The First Triumvirate	
Latin reading: Julius Caesar: The Early Years	

Unit Seven

Chapter Twenty-Seven	203
fourth conjugation; perfect system	
reading: Caesar in Gaul	
Chapter Twenty-Eight.....	210
fourth declension; principal part study	
reading: Caesar in Britain	
Chapter Twenty-Nine	217
fifth declension	
reading: Crossing of the Rubicon	

Unit 7 Reading	222
historical reading: Civil War	
Latin reading: Death of Julius Caesar	

Appendices

Appendix A	227
Vocabulary by Chapter	
Appendix B	241
Reference Charts	
Appendix C	254
Alphabetical Vocabulary	
Appendix D	267
Abbreviations	

Preface

ATTENTION STUDENTS:

We have written this text just for you, the preteen preparing to begin the dialectic stage of learning (the School of Logic). Whether you are beginning to study Latin for the first time or have studied some Latin in the grammar school, we have created this textbook for you. As the fourth Latin text published by Classical Academic Press, this text will review all the grammar you learned in the *Latin for Children* Primer Series. Now that you are older and can read and think better, the text will teach you much more about how to use what you have learned. For beginners, this text will leave no stone unturned. We will teach you all the basics of the language. For all students this text is the first in a series that will prepare you to read, understand, even construe Latin texts, which represent some of the greatest literature ever written.

What you will find inside:

- **Pronunciation** – The first chapter begins with a thorough lesson on classical pronunciation. This includes important rules on syllabication and accent.
- **Glossaries** – Each chapter begins with a vocabulary and English derivatives. There is also a complete alphabetical glossary in the back for all of these vocabulary words.
- **Grammar Lessons** – The sections in each chapter provide clear, concise, and complete grammatical instruction written just as we teach in our classrooms. Grammatical exercises follow each lesson to help you practice what you have just learned.
- **Sentence Translation** – These exercises appear toward the end of each chapter. They will help you apply what you have practiced in the grammatical exercises and prepare you for the chapter reading to follow.
- **Chapter Readings** – Latin stories about the Roman monarchy and republic end each chapter. We based many of these on the stories of Livy.
- **Unit Review Chapters** – Each unit concludes with a review chapter designed to review the previous lessons. The Unit Review Chapters resemble the format of the reading comprehension portion of the National Latin Exam and the multiple choice section of the Advanced Placement Exam. We intentionally designed these unit reviews to increase reading comprehension skills.
- **Reading Helps** – Each reading whether in a regular chapter or a Unit Review Chapter contains the following helps:
 - Character lists describe the characters that will appear in each story.
 - An extra glossary for unfamiliar words in the text. Each word appears in *italics* in the Latin text. This will allow you to see which words you can expect help on.
 - We have provided the translation for some phrases appearing in bold type at the end of the passage. This feature allows us to introduce you to classical idioms and expressions that frequently appear in Latin literature.
 - Reading comprehension questions in both Latin and English follow each reading.
- **Historical Context** – The Latin readings in this text tell of the history and culture of the Roman people from the Trojan War to the death of Julius Caesar. In addition to these Latin passages, each Unit Review Chapter begins with a historical passage written in English. These provide opportunities for us to communicate more about the people, places, and events that surround the stories you are reading. We

are honored to have Christopher Schlect, historian and Academic Dean of New St. Andrew's College, as a contributing writer on several of these pieces.

- **Bonus Material** – In addition to all of the above we have provided a combination of the following segments in each chapter to supplement your lessons.
 - Colloquāmur – Improve your command of Latin by increasing your oral proficiency. These activities appear regularly throughout the text and offer practical and sometimes entertaining ways to apply your Latin skills in and out of the classroom.
 - Derivative Detective – Build your English vocabulary through these activities that demonstrate how we can trace modern words back to an ancient vocabulary.
 - Culture Corner – Learn more about the Romans, their lives, their history, and their traditions using these windows into the past.
 - Latin Americana? – No, this is not an oxymoron. Each chapter features one of the national or state mottoes which regularly appear on official insignia. In addition, we offer several opportunities for the student to see how classical history and civilization have shaped our world.

NOTE TO TEACHERS AND PARENTS:

Like *Latin for Children*, this text includes clear, concise, and complete grammatical instruction, making it user-friendly for the novice Latin teacher. As seen in the list of features above it also incorporates a great number of exercises and additional activities, making a supplemental text quite unnecessary. We have, however, created a teacher's guide for this text in order to aid you in the classroom. This guide includes not only answers and translations, but also teacher tips, tests, and additional classroom projects accumulated from our combined 50+ years of teaching experience.

It is our hope that you will enjoy learning Latin with this textbook as much as we have enjoyed creating it for you.

S.D.G.

Karen Moore and Gaylan DuBose

Introduction for Teachers

ATTENTION TEACHERS:

This manual is intended to provide you with as much support as possible in order to assist you during the course of this text. For that reason this manual supplies you with much more than an answer key. Inside you will find:

- Descriptions of the history and symbolism of the U.S. national and state seals that are featured at the beginning of each chapter.
- Further explanations on some of the more complex grammar lessons
- Teacher tips for conveying ideas or to warn of common student pitfalls
- Additional exercises for further practice
- Supplemental worksheets for declining nouns and adjectives, conjugating verbs, and parsing verbs
- Suggested projects in each unit review chapter based on the history and culture lessons presented
- Unit tests

Should you have any questions for which this manual does not supply an answer, please post them on the Latin tutor forum board on the Classical Academic Website: www.classicalacademicpress.com. There we will provide you with the answers you need. It is our desire to support you in your endeavor to introduce students to the fascinating world of Latin.

Before You Begin: Please do read through the teacher guide before creating your lesson plans. For those students who have studied Latin via *Latin for Children* or another Latin primer, some chapters may contain review material that need not be reviewed. Others may contain material that may appear to be review, but does contain new concepts and important information the students have not yet learned. The scope and sequence of this text is designed to serve students new to Latin, while at the same time to provide further insight and challenges for “veterans” of any grammar school series. The text also contains a great wealth of supplemental material. Not everyone will have time to fit it all in, so pick and choose what you feel will serve your classroom the best. The following are a few teacher tips that will be useful throughout the text:

Great Seals: Each chapter begins with a chapter maxim taken from one of the U.S. national and state mottoes. This guide provides additional insight into the great seals which often display these mottoes. Many seals not only display a Latin motto but also use images that harken back to the ancient civilizations of Greece and Rome. Understanding the influence behind these mottoes and seals demonstrates how relevant Latin still remains to our modern culture. Teachers may want to consider using the “Latin Across America” geography project in the appendix to help integrate a little geography and American history into their Latin classrooms. These mottoes also make great bonus questions on chapter quizzes or unit tests.

Oral Practice: Although Latin is no longer spoken in most cultures, a student has much to gain from oral practice. First and foremost, countless studies have proven that the more senses used to learn something, the better one will retain it. Oral practice provides another creative (and often diverting) means to reinforce the lessons in this text. Second, by training students how to communicate Latin orally (i.e. speak), bypassing the pen and paper, we are training their minds to process other foreign languages in the same manner – by speaking.

This text provides a number of helps and exercises to make this an obtainable goal for any classroom. First, chapter one begins with an in-depth lesson on the pronunciation of the Latin language. Each chapter reinforces this first series of lessons by asking students to mark the appropriate pronunciation for each one of their

vocabulary words. This exercise will also prepare students for the Latin poetry that they will read in later texts. It is highly beneficial for the students and/or teacher to read the Latin in this text aloud at every opportunity.

It is important to not only include scripted Latin for oral practice, but some more natural conversation as well. Get students to think (or speak) on their feet. Many chapters provide a bonus segment called **Colloquāmur** (let's talk). These segments provide a wide variety of ways to practice Latin aloud in a conversational manner. These exercises can include social Latin (polite Roman conversation), grammar practice (how to have a classroom discussion on grammar in Latin), and even a few topics for nature studies. On a more academic note, each chapter reading also concludes with a set of reading comprehension questions in Latin. While the students may complete these in writing, the questions provide another opportunity for great Latin conversation. Such exercises greatly affirm the student's confidence in Latin.

Practice, Practice, Practice: The teacher will notice that each time the text introduces a new noun declension, verb conjugation, or verb tense the following exercise immediately asks students to decline/conjugate a new set of words. Students cannot practice these forms enough – orally or in writing. This text provides a set of reproducible declension, conjugation, and verb parsing worksheets to provide a uniform structure for these exercises. Often the authors of this text have suggested additions to these practices that may help students better imbed new grammar concepts.

Parsing & Labeling Sentences: Most of the sentence translation exercises ask students to “parse and label” sentences. A math teacher would never accept final answers to mathematical problems when the students had failed to show their work. Likewise, Latin students ought to regularly practice analyzing the grammatical structure of a sentence. In the beginning with simple sentences this direction is pretty straight forward. Students can use the same abbreviations and symbols as in their English classes. (If the English teacher is different from the Latin teacher, be sure that the two find common ground on how to label sentences. This will prevent confusion for the students.) As syntax becomes more complex the labeling will begin to differ from what students might use in their English classes. For example, English uses prepositional phrases much more than Latin. So teachers may want to identify a particular ablative word by its construction instead (such as “manner”). Teachers and students can use the labels demonstrated in this text, or come up with another method that better suits their own classroom. Just be consistent.

The text does not ask students to parse the Latin readings featured at the conclusion to each chapter and in the unit reviews. Here students must begin learning to leave the analytical behind, trust in the skills they have learned, and read the Latin.

Latin Passages: Beginning with the fourth chapter, each chapter contains a Latin reading. In chapters 4 through 6 the readings consist of individual numbered sentences that as a group tell a bit about the Trojan War. The text presents these first readings in this manner as a means to prepare students gradually for translating longer passages in paragraph form. Beginning with the first unit review chapter students will begin translating paragraphs about the Romans. Most of these readings are inspired by *Ab Urbe Condita (From the Founding of the City)* by Titus Livius, usually known in English as Livy. By allowing students the opportunity to read about the great exploits and heroes of the Roman Republic, we believe students should gain a great understanding of the people who spoke this ancient language. The best way to learn any language is in the context of the culture and history of those who spoke it. By studying the Roman Republic in this text, students will also gain a deeper understanding of and appreciation for the American Republic.

It is the goal of this text series to begin training students to read original Latin texts, unadapted from the author's pen. There is, however, a great bridge to cross from modern English to ancient Latin texts. So it is worth emphasizing that the majority of the passages in this text are “inspired by” Livy's writings. The authors have studied Livy's records of the events and people mentioned in his text, and based these passages upon those records. Whenever possible, Livy's vocabulary and phrasing have been retained. Often, however, it is necessary to adapt and re-write portions to bring them within the student's capability. As the text progresses the passages will gradually grow closer to what might be considered “real Latin.”

In *Latin Alive! Book 2* the passages will no longer be inspired by Latin authors, but adapted straight from the author's text. The authors will tinker with the original Latin only as much as is necessary to bring the text

within the student's reach. By that time, however, the students will have mastered a great deal more of the language, and will require less adaptation. In *Latin Alive! Book 3* students will reach the goal of reading original Latin texts, just as the original author wrote them.

Reading Aides: In order to assist the students as they begin learning to read Latin, the text provides several reading aides or tips with each passage. Most chapters begin with a list of characters. This will help students distinguish whom or what the proper nouns represent. While each reading will review much of the vocabulary the students have learned, it is necessary to provide additional vocabulary for these stories. Any new words or grammatical structures not introduced in preceding chapters will appear in a glossary that follows the passage. Such words appear in *italics* within the passage itself in order to alert students to the fact that the word is glossed below. Some words in later passages are underlined. An example might be the Latin word *honor*, which means "honor." The underlined "eye" Latin words are not included in the glossary. These words resemble their English counterparts so closely that we ask students to use their "eye" Latin to discern the meaning. Other phrases in the passage may appear in **bold type**. These are usually phrases that contain grammar too difficult for most students to grasp, and the full translation is provided immediately following the passage. They are included for a couple of reasons. First, many are constructions or actual phrases that appear in Latin Literature. Since it is our goal to train students for reading original Latin Literature we feel it best to begin acquainting them with such constructions early in their studies. In some cases, the text will also provide explanations for the grammar exemplified in bold type. Second, these phrases are included in this format because the meaning and translation add a great deal to the story. The authors could simply find no better way to express those thoughts or ideas while remaining true to Latin.

Reading Comprehension: As students increase their translating skills they need to learn to read for comprehension. A series of reading comprehension questions follow each chapter reading. While these can serve as a written assignment, they also provide a tremendous opportunity for class conversation about the passage. Several chapters also provide an additional group discussion question in English. Often this question will prompt a discussion comparing or contrasting the history and culture of America with that of Rome. Encourage students whenever possible to cite a portion of the Latin passage as they make their observations. This skill will serve them well as they prepare for writing assignments in other classes, making speeches, participating in debates, or even preparing for the Latin Advanced Placement Exam.

Unit Reviews: The text includes seven unit review chapters. The focus of each chapter is to build the student's reading skills. Each unit review features a story (also based on the history or culture of Rome) that reviews the vocabulary and grammar concepts learned in the preceding chapters. The story is followed by a series of multiple choice questions. The format of the story and the questions that follow is similar to that one might see on the National Latin Exam or the Advanced Placement Exam. For students who desire to take one of these exams this will prove excellent practice.

Generally, the students should follow these steps to success for reading comprehension exercises.

- Read the English title. (It is often a clue to the theme or content of the reading.)
- Read the Latin text all the way through without any attempt at translation.
- Read the questions in order to know what to look for in the reading.
- Read the selection again.
- Go back and begin answering the questions.

Assessments: The teacher's guide includes seven unit tests. These tests should be taken upon completion of the corresponding unit review chapters. The unit tests not only assess the grammar the student has learned, but also the student's ability to apply that grammar to a reading passage.

This guide does not include chapter quizzes. In some classes, however, a short chapter quiz may be appropriate. Such a quiz should focus on the vocabulary and grammar charts or definitions learned in that chapter. It is advisable to keep these fairly short and simple; the purpose being to ensure that the student is staying on top of the memory work.

Oral quizzes (much like an English spelling quiz) are a good way to continue to develop auditory proficiency. Teachers should give the first form from the vocabulary list (e.g. nominative singular for nouns and

adjectives or first principal part for verbs). The student should then write that word and the necessary forms and meanings that follow. Teachers may want to add a bonus question taken from the chapter maxims or perhaps from the culture corner segments. Such bonus questions are a great way to encourage students to read and learn these items.

Supplemental Lessons: In an appendix at the back of this text the authors have included several projects that have been favorites in their classes. They include the following:

- Latin Across America – incorporate American geography with the state mottoes
- Tempus Fugit – build a timeline for the Roman Republic incorporating the people and events students will read about in this text
- Roman Calendar – learn about the history of the Roman Calendar and how little it differs from the one we use today, then create your own
- Archaeology – create your own archeological dig

Thank you for choosing *Latin Alive!* for your classroom. It is our hope that this series will lead you and your students on a wonderful voyage of discovery into the world of Latin.

Blessings,
Karen Moore and Gaylan DuBose

Here is a handy chart of all the abbreviations used in the parsing and labeling exercises throughout the book.

Abbreviation	Meaning
Sing.	Singular
Pl.	Plural
Pf.	Perfect
Imp.	Imperfect
Fut.	Future
FP	Future Perfect
Pres.	Present
Pluperf.	Pluperfect



Ē pluribus ūnum

One from many

-Motto of the United States of America

This phrase is adapted from Vergil's *Moretum*, 1.104.

“color est ē pluribus ūnus”

Chapter 1

- Latin alphabet
- pronunciation
 - syllabication
 - accent
- sentence structure

Latin has for many years carried with it a sense of foreboding. Many perceive Latin as a difficult course of study, much too difficult for any but the most intelligent and adept of students. However, this is simply not the case. The fact is that many boys and girls of various nationalities and backgrounds have studied this language over the centuries. If you take up the biographies of many men and women of reputation, including the founding fathers of America, you will find that they had quite a bit of training in Latin as youths, some in the small one-room schoolhouses of the backwoods. The truth is that English is actually much harder to learn than Latin. Compared to English, Latin is simple. Before you laugh at this remark, take the Roman point of view. Let us suppose that a young Roman boy named Marcus decided to take up the study of English. How would he, a native speaker of Latin, find this modern language?

SECTION 1. Alphabet

Marcus' first lesson would of course be the alphabet. Here he would be relieved to find great common ground, for our alphabets are very similar. The earliest writings we possess in the Latin alphabet date from the 6th century B.C. The Latin alphabet was adapted primarily from that of the Etruscans, a people who inhabited central Italy prior to the Romans, and consisted initially of only 20 letters:

A B C D E F G H I L M N O P Q R S T V X

The letters K, Y, and Z were added from the Greek alphabet later when Romans wanted to adapt Greek words to the Latin language. The letters J, U, and W were added at a much later stage also for the purposes of adapting other languages. The letter J became the consonant form of I, U is the vowel form of V, and W was introduced as a “double-u” (or double-v) to make a clear distinction between the sounds we know today as ‘v’ and ‘w.’ With these additions, the Latin alphabet, also called the Roman alphabet, has come today to be the most widely used alphabetic writing system in the world. So, Marcus need only learn a couple of new letters in order to obtain a complete understanding of the modern day alphabet. As for you, you needn't learn any, but only learn to live without a few.

SECTION 2. Pronunciation

While the alphabet will pose little or no problem for our Roman friend, Marcus, phonics will be a great obstacle. The twenty-six letters that create the modern English alphabet can make seventy-two different phonetic sounds! Consider the following list of words and read them aloud.

cat	apple	rock
city	ant	rope
chorus	avocado	love
charade	aviator	loose

Can you make one general rule for the sounds produced by each of the letters **c**, **a**, or **o**? There are phonetic rules for each of these letters, but they are numerous and there are many exceptions to almost all of them.

Marcus will most likely feel quite overwhelmed and even a bit frustrated by the numerous phonic rules he must learn. His native Latin is much simpler and very easy to understand. Each consonant produces only one sound when on its own. Most are identical to our modern pronunciation, but there are a few variations that you should learn.

CONSONANT	PHONETIC RULE	LATIN EXAMPLE
c	always hard as in cat , never soft as in cent .	cantō cēna
g	always hard as in goat , never soft as in gentle .	glōria genus
i (j)	as a consonant appearing before a vowel, pronounced as the 'y' in yellow .	iam Iuppiter
r	often rolled as in Spanish or Italian.	rectus
s	always like the 's' in sit , never like the 'z' sound in please .	semper senātus
t	always like the 't' in table , never like the 'sh' sound in nation .	teneō ratio
v	sounds like the 'w' in wine .	vīnum victoria
x	sounds like the 'x' in ox , not the 'gz' in exert .	nox rēx

In English, when two consonants appear together their sound can change in a myriad of different ways. Take for instance the common pairing of 'th.'

then **theatre** **goatherd**

Once again, Marcus will be overwhelmed. He must learn another set of rules in order to know how to pronounce the consonant blend ‘th’ in varying settings. Latin is simple. On most occasions that two consonants appear together, you will pronounce each one with its individual sound as prescribed above. There are a few consonant blends, but unlike English, each blend has one assigned sound that never varies.

CONSONANT BLEND	PHONETIC RULE	LATIN EXAMPLE
bs, bt	b sounds like p	urbs (<i>urps</i>) obtineō (<i>op-TIN-e-ob</i>)
gu, qu	sounds like gw, qw as in penguin and quart (The u is considered a consonant here, not a vowel.)	lingua quod
ch	each sound pronounced individually like chorus , not like bachelor	charta Chaos
th	each sound pronounced individually like goatherd , not like then or theatre	thymum theatrum
ph	pronounced like f as in philosophy	philosophia Orpheus
double consonants	pronounced as two individually distinct sounds with a slight pause between them	ecce (<i>EC-ce</i>) puella (<i>pu-EL-la</i>)

Vowels in Latin consist of the typical **a, e, i, o, u**. They are either long or short by nature. Thus each vowel has two and only two sounds. Unlike English, long vowels are clearly marked by a macron (from the Greek word *makros*, meaning “long”).

SHORT	LATIN EXAMPLE	LONG	LATIN EXAMPLE
a as in alike	casa	ā as in father	stāre
e as in pet	memoria	ē as in they	cēna
i as in pit	inter	ī as in machine	īre
o as in pot	bonus	ō as in hose	errō
u as in put	Marcus	ū as in rude	lūdus

Diphthongs are two vowels blended together to create one sound. Latin has only six diphthongs.

DIPHTHONG	PRONUNCIATION	LATIN EXAMPLE
ac	sounds like the ai in aisle	fēminae, aequus
au	sounds like the ou in out	laudō, auctor
ei	sounds like the eigh in weigh	deinde
eu	pronounced eh-oo	heu
oe	sounds like the oi in coil	proelium
ui	pronounced oo-ee as in tweet	huic, cui

The various sounds produced by the consonants and vowels in Latin total forty different phonetic sounds. Compare this to the seventy-two sounds produced by the English language and you can begin to see why Latin could be considered the easier of the two. However, there is still more to consider in learning how to pronounce words correctly. So, while Marcus continues to learn his seventy-two new sounds, we will turn to syllabication.

SECTION 3. Syllabication

The term syllable is used to refer to a unit of a word that consists of a single uninterrupted sound formed by a vowel, diphthong, or by a consonant-vowel combination. Syllabication is the act of dividing a word in order to reveal its individual syllables. With English this can be tricky as there are often letters that remain silent. However, in Latin there are no silent letters, so any given Latin word will have as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs. The rules of syllabication are as follows:

- between two like consonants:
stel-la **ter-ra**
- between the last of two or more different consonants:
ar-ma **temp-tō**
- between two vowels, or a vowel and a diphthong (never divide a diphthong):
cha-os **pe-cu-ni-ac**
- a single consonant between two vowels will follow the second:
me-mo-ri-a **fē-mi-nac**

It is easy to tell long syllables in Latin, and it will be important to know how to do so in order to properly accent words. Syllables are long when they contain a long vowel (marked by a macron), a diphthong, or a short vowel followed by two consonants. Otherwise, they are usually short. Recognizing the length of a syllable will become particularly important when reading poetry later on.

Caveat Discipulus (Let the Student Beware): The length of the syllable does not change the length of the vowel. You should still pronounce short vowels according to the phonetic rules you have just learned. The length of the syllable will affect how you accent the words, as you will soon learn in Section 4.

Exercise 1. Practice dividing the following Latin words into syllables and mark the length of the syllables.

- | | | | |
|------------|------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. dominus | 2. annus | 3. cōnsilium | 4. theatrum |
| 5. ager | 6. oppidum | 7. victōria | 8. audiō |

SECTION 4. Accent

Accent is the vocal emphasis placed on a particular syllable of a word. As usual English complicates rules for pronunciation. Consider the following examples paying particular attention to the underlined words.

We will present the present to the birthday girl.
They object to the object of the speech.

The underlined homonyms are spelled the same, yet each one is pronounced differently. Why? Certainly Marcus or any other student attempting to learn English would be quite puzzled by this. Latin on the other hand accents words in a uniform manner. The rules for accent are as follows:

1. In words of two syllables always accent the first syllable: **aúc-tōr**
2. In words of more than two syllables accent the next to last syllable when it is long: **for-tū-na**
3. Otherwise, accent the third to last syllable: **fě-mi-na**

Exercise 2. Return to the first exercise and practice accenting the words that you have already broken down into syllables.



SECTION 5. Sentence Structure

There are three common ways to communicate meaning in a language: 1) word order, 2) function words, which express the relationship between words (articles, prepositions, helping verbs, etc.), 3) inflection. English relies mainly on word order and function words to communicate meaning, but Latin relies mainly on inflection. In an English sentence we can distinguish between the subject and the object by the order in which they appear.

Greece attacks Troy.

It is clear in this sentence who is doing the attacking (the subject), and who is receiving the attacking (the object). If we were to reverse the word order, the outcome would be quite different.

Troy attacks Greece.

Greece is now the object of the verb; they are no longer doing the attacking, but are on the receiving end. This makes a big difference to the Greeks! Latin's word order is much looser than English, so it relies on the use of inflection to communicate meaning. Inflection (from the Latin *inflectere*, to change, warp) is the changing of a word's form by the addition of an affix. We often use inflection in English to indicate the difference between singular and plural:

ENGLISH:	sailor	sailors
LATIN:	nauta	nautae

Latin does the same. However, it also uses inflection to express the relationship between words in the same sentence.

Trōiam Graecia oppugnat.

Graecia Trōiam oppugnat.

Graecia oppugnat Trōiam.

Each of the above sentences means the same thing, “Greece attacks Troy,” even though the word order is different. It is the ending that indicates the subject, object, and verb, not the order of the words. English can further define the relationship between words by adding a number of function words:

Troops sail from Greece, and will attack the town of Troy.
Cōpiaē ā Graeciā nāvigant, et oppidum Trōiae oppugnābunt.

You can see clearly from this example that while Latin does use a few function words (et, ā), it relies mostly on inflection, i.e., the changing of endings to define the relationship between the words of this more complex sentence.

It would appear that on account of the simplicity of this ancient language, students learning Latin are already well ahead of Marcus and his English studies. So, now that we have completed our introduction to the Latin language, we will bid him farewell and begin the study of Latin grammar.

Exercise 3. Define the following terms using complete sentences.

1. Diphthong
2. Syllabication
3. Accent
4. Function words
5. Inflection

Nota Bene (Note Well):

Although we have given you some helpful rules regarding pronunciation, syllabification and accent, there will occasionally be some exceptions to these rules (as with English rules). These exceptions will be rare, however, and there is no need to list all possible exceptions for you now.

Derivative Detective

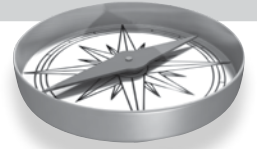
Once Marcus has completed the tedious process of learning all the rules for pronouncing and spelling English words, he will be delighted to find how similar many of them are to Latin. In fact, there are many Latin words that have been adopted into the English language without any change in spelling at all. The only challenge is that they are often pronounced differently in Latin.

Study the following list of Latin words. Divide them according to the rules of syllabication and accent them appropriately, then practice reading them aloud.

- | | | | | |
|-----------|--------------|---------------|------------|------------|
| 1. animal | 2. clāmor | 3. honor | 4. genus | 5. horror |
| 6. toga | 7. status | 8. paeninsula | 9. interim | 10. neuter |
| 11. poēta | 12. ulterior | 13. arēna | 14. herba | 15. firmus |



Culture Corner: Roman Names



Most people today have three names: first, middle, and last (or surname).

e.g. Michael Richard Moore

Have you ever thought about the purposes that each of your names serves? Your last name (Moore) signifies the family to which you belong. Often either your first or middle name is inherited from a parent or ancestor. In this example Richard is a name inherited from this boy's father and grandfather. The first name is often one chosen just for you. It sets you apart from the other members of your family. Your parents may have chosen this name based on how it sounds or what it means.

Generally your friends and family call you by your first name (Michael), unless you have a nickname or preference for your middle name. Your middle name is reduced to an initial on most documents (Michael R. Moore). Rarely does anyone call you by both your first and middle name (Michael Richard) or by all three names except in formal situations such as graduation, or when your mother catches you in some mischief.

Roman names are somewhat similar. Roman boys also had three names: praenōmen, nōmen, cognōmen.

e.g. Gaius Julius Caesar

The cognōmen (Caesar) was similar to our surname. It identified the family to which that person belongs. The nōmen (Julius) was usually inherited from the father. This was the case with both boys and girls. The son of Julius Caesar would also be called Julius, and his daughter would be called Julia. This was the name by which you were most often addressed publicly. Girls, would you like to inherit your father's name? The praenōmen was your own unique name. Only your family and closest friends would address you with this name. The praenōmen was the name often reduced to an abbreviation: G. Julius Caesar.

Our name usually does not change, except in the instance of marriage. The Romans, however, sometimes changed or added an agnōmen to recognize certain accomplishments in a man's life. For example, Publius Cornelius Scipio won the Second Punic War against Carthage (a country in North Africa), and was rewarded with the agnōmen "Africanus." He is known in history as Scipio Africanus.

You can Latinize your own name using some of the phonetic sounds you learned in this chapter. Girls' names usually end in *-a*, and boys' names usually end in *-us*. Michael Richard Moore, for example, would be *Michael Richardus Morus*. You can also read the "Colloquāmur" section to choose an authentic Roman name for yourself.

Colloquāmur (Let's talk)



Did you know that many of our modern names come from those used by the Romans? Use the list below to see if you can find the origin of your name or choose another Roman name for yourself. Then use the conversation guide to introduce yourself to your classmates. Don't forget to pronounce them correctly!

Boys:	
Albertus	Laurentius
Antōnius	Leō
Bernardus	Leonardus
Carolus	Ludovīcus
Christophorus	Mārcus
Cornēlius	Martīnus
Dominicus	Michael
Eduardus	Patricius
Ferdinandus	Paulus
Franciscus	Petrus
Frederīcus	Philippus
Gregōrius	Raymundus
Gulielmus	Robertus
Henricus	Rūfus
Iacobus	Silvester
Ioannes	Stephanos
Iōsēphus	Timotheus
Iūlius	Victor
Iūstinus	

GIRLS:	
Aemilia	Margarīta
Agatha	Marīa
Alma	Monica
Anastasia	Patricia
Angela	Paula
Anna	Paulīna
Barbara	Roberta
Caecilia	Rosa
Catharīna	Stella
Christīna	Teresia
Clāra	Ursula
Deana	Vēra
Dorothēa	Vēronica
Flōra	Victōria
Flōrentia	Viōla
Iūlia	Virginia
Iūliāna	Viviāna
Lūcia	

Salvē, nōmen mihi est _____. Hello, my name is _____.
 Quid nōmen tibi est? What is your name?





Annuit coeptis.

He has favored our undertakings.

-Reverse side of the seal of the United States

Chapter 2

- verbs
 - principal parts
 - 1st conjugation, present tense
 - tense, person, number

VOCABULARY

VERBS		
LATIN	ENGLISH	DERIVATIVES
amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum	to love, like	(amorous)
cantō, cantāre, cantāvī, cantātum	to sing	(chant, cantata)
labōrō, labōrāre, labōrāvī, labōrātum	to work	(labor)
nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvī, nāvigātum	to sail	(navigate, navigation)
oppugnō, oppugnāre, oppugnāvī, oppugnātum	to attack	
ADVERB		
nōn	not	

Exercise 1. Using the rules for syllabication and accent that you have learned, write out the syllables and accents for the vocabulary words above. Then practice pronouncing them aloud.

SECTION 6. Principal Parts

Verbs are the central part of any sentence. In English you cannot have a complete sentence without a verb. In Latin you can have a complete sentence that consists of nothing more than a single verb. In fact, when translating any Latin sentence, it is advisable to find and translate the verb first. So, it is very important that you begin your study of Latin by learning how to recognize and translate verbs.

Every Latin verb has with it a set of principal parts. Principal parts are the forms of the verb that are considered basic and from which you create all other forms of the verb. In English, the principal parts are as follows:

1. present infinitiveto *love*..... to *sing*
2. 3rd person present tense.....(*he*) *loves* (*he*) *sings*
3. preterit (simple past)*loved* *sang*
4. past participle.....*loved* *sung*

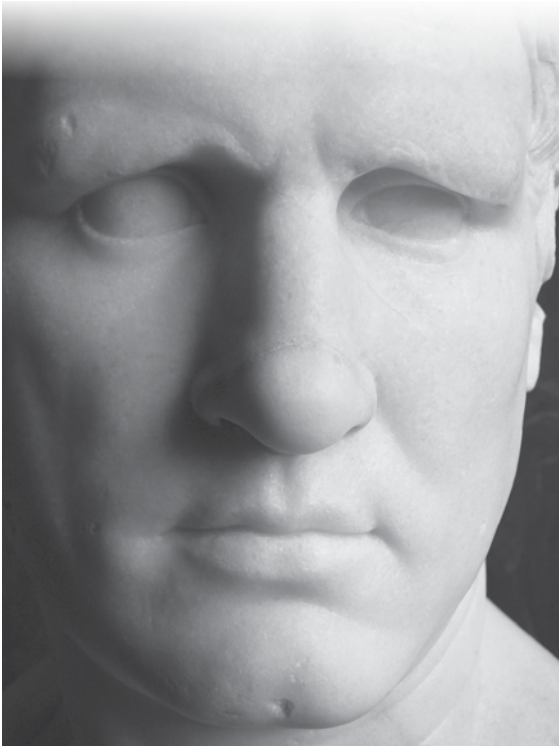
The principal parts of Latin verbs are categorically similar:

1. 1st person present*amō* – *I love* *cantō* – *I sing*
2. present infinitive.....*amāre* – *to love* *cantāre* – *to sing*
3. 1st person perfect (simple past).....*amāvī* – *I loved*..... *cantāvī* – *I sang*
4. past participle (supine).....*amātum* – *loved*..... *cantātum* – *sung*

It is worth noting that although both use the same basic forms to comprise their principal parts, Latin is much more consistent in the pattern these forms follow.

The first principal part is used to list and locate words in a Latin dictionary. The remaining three principal parts form various verb tenses. For now we will only use the first two principal parts. You should take care, however, to memorize all of them now as a complete verb set. Latin has its share of irregular verbs also, and some verbs alter their stem in the last few principal parts. You will save yourself a great deal of work later if you memorize them as part of your vocabulary list now.

SECTION 7. First Conjugation



A **conjugation** is a group of verbs that share similar patterns for their endings. Consider your family as an example. Each member in your family is a unique individual, and each one is different in his or her own way. However, your family also tends to share similar characteristics in appearance and personality. Each conjugation is a family of verbs. Each verb is a little different, but each verb within a conjugation tends to have the same set of endings and follow the same rules for changing those endings as the rest of its family members. There are four different conjugations, or groups of verbs. For now we will focus only on the first. You can always recognize the first conjugation by the second principal part which ends in *-āre*. It is from this form that a verb forms its stem:

2nd principal part – re = verb stem
amā/re = *amā*
cantā/re = *cantā*

Exercise 2. Following the examples of *amāre* and *cantāre* identify the stem for each of the verbs in the vocabulary list of this section.

SECTION 8. Present Tense and Personal Endings

Now that you know how to identify a verb's stem, it is time to learn how to apply a set of endings in order to create a sentence. To **conjugate** a verb is to list a verb with its endings. The verb *amāre* is conjugated below with its personal endings. The personal endings of a verb demonstrate two important characteristics: number and person.

PERSON	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1	<i>am-ō</i> I love	<i>amā-mus</i> we love
2	<i>amā-s</i> you love	<i>amā-tis</i> you (pl.) love
3	<i>ama-t</i> he/she/it loves	<i>ama-nt</i> they love

Number reveals *how many* are doing the action. There are two options for number: singular and plural.

Singular: I love. Plural: We love.

Person reveals *who* is doing the action. There are three options for person.

1st person, the speaker is doing the action:

I love. We love.

2nd person, the person spoken to is doing the action:

You love. You (pl.) love.

3rd person, another person is being spoken about:

He/She/It loves. They love.

Exercise 3. Following the example of *amāre*, conjugate the verbs *cantāre*, and *nāvigāre*. Take care to notice where the macra (long marks) appear.

A third characteristic of all verbs is tense. **Tense** tells the time of the action taking place. The present tense describes action that is happening right now. In English there are three different ways to indicate action in the present tense.

simple present: I love
 present progressive: I am loving
 present emphatic: I do love

Fortunately for us, Latin has only one present tense form—that shown in the chart you have just seen. As a result, one present tense Latin verb can be translated in three different ways.

amō = I love. I am loving..... I do love.
cantat = She sings. He is singing..... It does sing.

Nota Bene: To change a Latin verb from declarative (making a statement) to interrogative (asking a question) simply add the suffix *-ne*.

cantatne =... Does she sing?... Is he singing?... Does it sing?

Exercise 4. Identify the person and number of the following Latin sentences. Then, where possible, translate them into English in three different ways.

Example: *amās* 2nd person, singular: you love, you are loving, you do love

1. *Cantāmus.*
2. *Oppugnāsne?*
3. *Nāvigant.*
4. *Labōrātis.*

5. Nōn nāvigatne?
6. Nōn oppugnō.

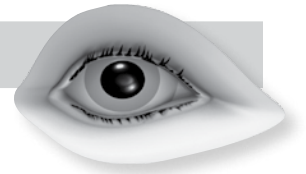
Exercise 5. Identify the person and number of these English sentences, then translate them into Latin.

Example: I am singing.

1st person, singular: cantō

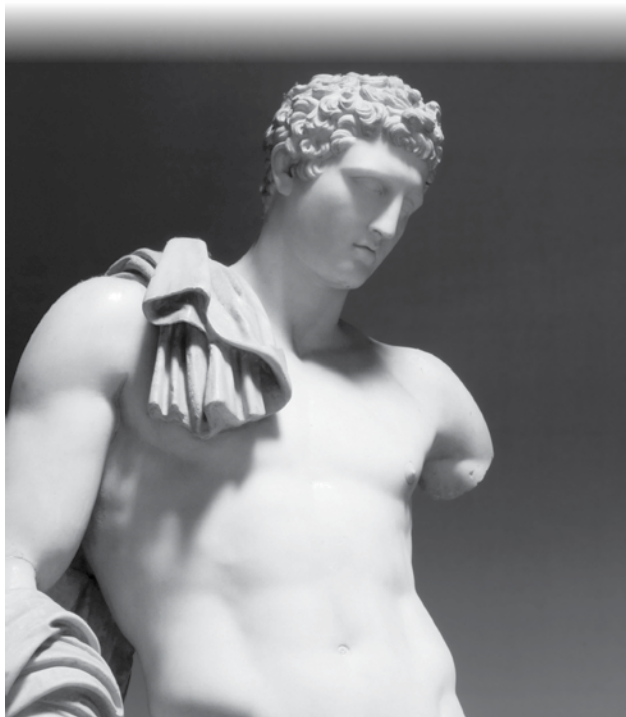
1. I sail.
2. You (s.) do not work.
3. Are they attacking?
4. She loves.
5. We do sing.
6. You (pl.) are not sailing.

“Eye” Latin



Some words look the same in Latin and in English. When you can tell the meaning of a Latin word because it looks just like or nearly like an English word, you are using “eye” Latin.

Using “eye” Latin, tell the meanings of *Trōia*, *circus*, *Rōma*, *maximum*, *māior*, and *plūs*.



Colloquāmur (Let's talk)

Use the following questions and responses to review the characteristics of some Latin verbs. Use some “eye” Latin to figure out what the responses mean.



interrogātiō: Cūius est numerī? What number is it?
respōnsum: Singulāriter est.
Plūrāliter est.

interrogātiō: Cūius est persōnae? What person is it?
respōnsum: Est prīmae persōnae.
Est secundae persōnae.
Est tertiāe persōnae.

The sentences above use the interrogative pronoun *cūius* to signify a question the same way English uses interrogative pronouns such as *who*, *whose*, *what*, etc. Another way to ask questions in Latin is to add the suffix *-ne* to the end of a verb just as we did in exercises 4 and 5. These types of questions expect the answer *yes (sīc est)* or *no (minimē)*. Try testing your knowledge of Latin verbs with some yes/no questions.

interrogātiō: Estne singulāriter? Estne plūrāliter?
respōnsum: Sīc est! Minimē!

interrogātiō: Estne prīmae persōnae?
Estne secundae persōnae?
Estne tertiāe persōnae?

respōnsum: Sīc est! Minimē!



Chapter 3

- present system
 - present
 - future
 - imperfect

VOCABULARY

VERBS

LATIN	ENGLISH	DERIVATIVES
ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī, ambulātum	to walk	(perambulator, ambulance)
arō, arāre, arāvī, arātum	to plow	(arable)
habitō, habitāre, habitāvī, habitātum	to live, dwell	(habitat)
portō, portāre, portāvī, portātum	to carry	(portable)
rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātum	to ask	(interrogation)
regnō, regnāre, regnāvī, regnātum	to rule	(reign, regnant)
vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātum	to call	(vocal, vocation)

CONJUNCTIONS

et	and	
aut	or	

Exercise 1. Using the rules for syllabication and accent that you have learned, write out the syllables and accents for the vocabulary words above. Then practice pronouncing them aloud.

SECTION 9. Tense

Another important characteristic that every verb has is tense. The verb's tense indicates at what time the action takes place. Latin has six verb tenses. This chapter will focus on the present, imperfect, and future tenses. These three tenses make up what we call the present system.

First, let us quickly review the present tense. The present tense describes action that is happening right now. In English there are three different ways to indicate action in the present tense.

simple present: She sings.

present progressive: She is singing.

present emphatic: She does sing.

The present tense is formed by simply finding the stem of a verb (2nd principal part minus *re*) and adding the personal endings.

PERSON	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1	-m/ \bar{o} ^s	-mus
2	-s	-tis
3	-t	-nt

Nota Bene (Note Well):

The first person singular ending is most often \bar{o} , however in some cases (such as the imperfect tense) an *-m* appears instead.

Exercise 2. Translate the following present tense verbs into Latin or English.

1. Vocat.
2. Habitās.
3. Ambulat aut nāvīgat.
4. Arātisne?
5. He does work.
6. We ask.
7. Are they calling?
8. I rule and they work.

In English we often indicate tense by the addition of a helping verb.

present: She is singing.

imperfect: She was singing.

future: She will sing.

Instead of adding a separate word as in English, Latin adds a tense marker between the stem and the personal endings, which you have already learned. A tense marker is a letter or letters that signal a change in tense. The formula for forming any verb tense is quite simple:

stem (2nd pp – re) + tense marker + personal endings

SECTION 10. Future Tense

The future tense uses the tense marker *-bi-*. The ‘i’ drops out before the vowel ending \bar{o} , and changes to a *-u-* before the consonant ending *-nt*. Notice that the stem vowel \bar{a} remains long throughout.

stem: **amā/re** + future tense marker: **bi** + personal endings

PERSON	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1	amā- b-ō I will love	amā- bi-mus we will love
2	amā- bi-s you will love	amā- bi-tis you (pl.) will love
3	amā- bi-t he/she/it will love	amā- bu-nt they will love

In Latin there is only one way to express future action. However, English has a couple of options. Either of these are acceptable when translating:

simple future: I will love
 progressive future: I will be loving

Exercise 3. Identify the person and number of the following future tense verbs. Then translate in two different ways.

1. rogābis
2. habitābimus
3. regnābit
4. vocābunt
5. arābitis
6. ambulābō

SECTION 11. Imperfect Tense

The imperfect tense uses the marker *-ba-*. Notice that the first person singular uses the ending *-m* instead of the more common vowel *-ō*. This is because the *-a-* from the tense marker and the *-ō* in the ending blend together and become indistinguishable. This linguistic change is the same reason that the *-ā-* drops out before the *-ō* in the first person singular of the present tense. Notice that just as with the future tense the stem vowel *-ā-* remains long throughout. The *-ba-* is long in the first person plural and in the second person, the same pattern seen in the present tense in the previous chapter.

stem: amā/re + imperfect tense marker: **ba** + personal endings

PERSON	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1	amā- ba-m I was loving	amā- bā-mus we were loving
2	amā- bā-s you were loving	amā- bā-tis you (pl.) were loving
3	amā- ba-t he/she/it was loving	amā- ba-nt they were loving

Nota Bene (Note Well):

Notice that the macra (long marks) on the endings are on the same positions as they were in the present tense: 1st person plural, 2nd person singular and plural.



Long ago the word perfect (derived from the Latin *perfectus*, finished) meant “complete, finished.” If an object or a task has been truly completed well, then you cannot improve upon it; it is perfect. If the same task is *imperfect*, then it is *not* completed. The imperfect tense, therefore, is used to describe past actions that are not known to be complete or were ongoing for a long period of time. The true English equivalent for the Latin imperfect tense is the past progressive. However, the simple past tense can also be used on some occasions.

past progressive: I was loving, I used to love, I kept on loving
 simple past: I loved

Exercise 4. Identify the person and number of the following imperfect tense verbs. Then translate in two different ways.

1. rogābās
2. habitābāmus
3. regnābat
4. vocābant
5. arābātis
6. ambulābam

Exercise 5. To parse (from the Latin *pars*, part) a verb is to identify all of its parts. Parse each of the following verbs identifying their tense, person, and number. Then translate them into English.

LATIN	TENSE	PERSON	NUMBER	TRANSLATION
habitābam	Imp.	1	Sing.	I was living
rogābis				
ambulant				
regnābāmus				
vocābō				
labōrātis				
portābat				

Exercise 6. Identify the person, number, and tense of the following English sentences. Then, translate into Latin.

1. We were singing.
2. I will walk and sing.
3. You (pl.) were not plowing.
4. It sails.
5. Will she rule?

Derivative Detective

Nōn came directly into English in such words as *nonsense*. Seeing that *sequence* comes from a Latin word meaning “follow,” what do you think a *non sequitur* is?

Nauta gives us such words as *astronaut* and *nautical*. Nautical miles are measured in knots, though *knot* does not come from *nauta*.

Use your language detective skills and your dictionaries to find some more English words that use *nōn* and *nauta*.



Colloquāmur (Let's talk)

Use the following questions and responses to review the parsing exercise above. Use some “eye” Latin to figure out what the responses mean.

interrogātiō: Cūius est numerī?
respōnsum: Singulārīter est.
Plūrālīter est.

What number is it?

interrogātiō: Cūius est persōnae?
respōnsum: Est prīmae persōnae.
Est secundaе persōnae.
Est tertiae persōnae.

What person is it?

interrogātiō: Cūius est temporis?
respōnsum: Est praesentis.
Est imperfectī.
Est futūrī.

What tense (time) is it?



Unit 1 Reading

Reading and Review for Chapters 1 - 6



ABOUT THE READINGS FOR THIS TEXTBOOK

So far, you have been reading sentences designed to reinforce vocabulary and grammatical structures and to serve as an introduction to the skill of reading Latin and as a preparation for reading stories in Latin. The purpose has not been to tell a story or illustrate any theme but rather to give you an easy start in reading in a language other than your own.

From this point on, though, you will be reading stories about early Roman history. These stories are fascinating! We have adapted the stories you will read from the early chapters of a book called *Ab Urbe Condita (From the Founding of the City)* by Titus Livius, usually known in English as Livy. Some scholars believe that Livy had no fixed goal in mind for his history but rather that he “toiled on till his strength failed him . . . giving his history to the public in parts as [he completed them].” (B. O. Foster. *Livy: History of Rome, Books 1 - 2*. Cambridge, Massachusetts. Harvard University Press. 2002. xv.)

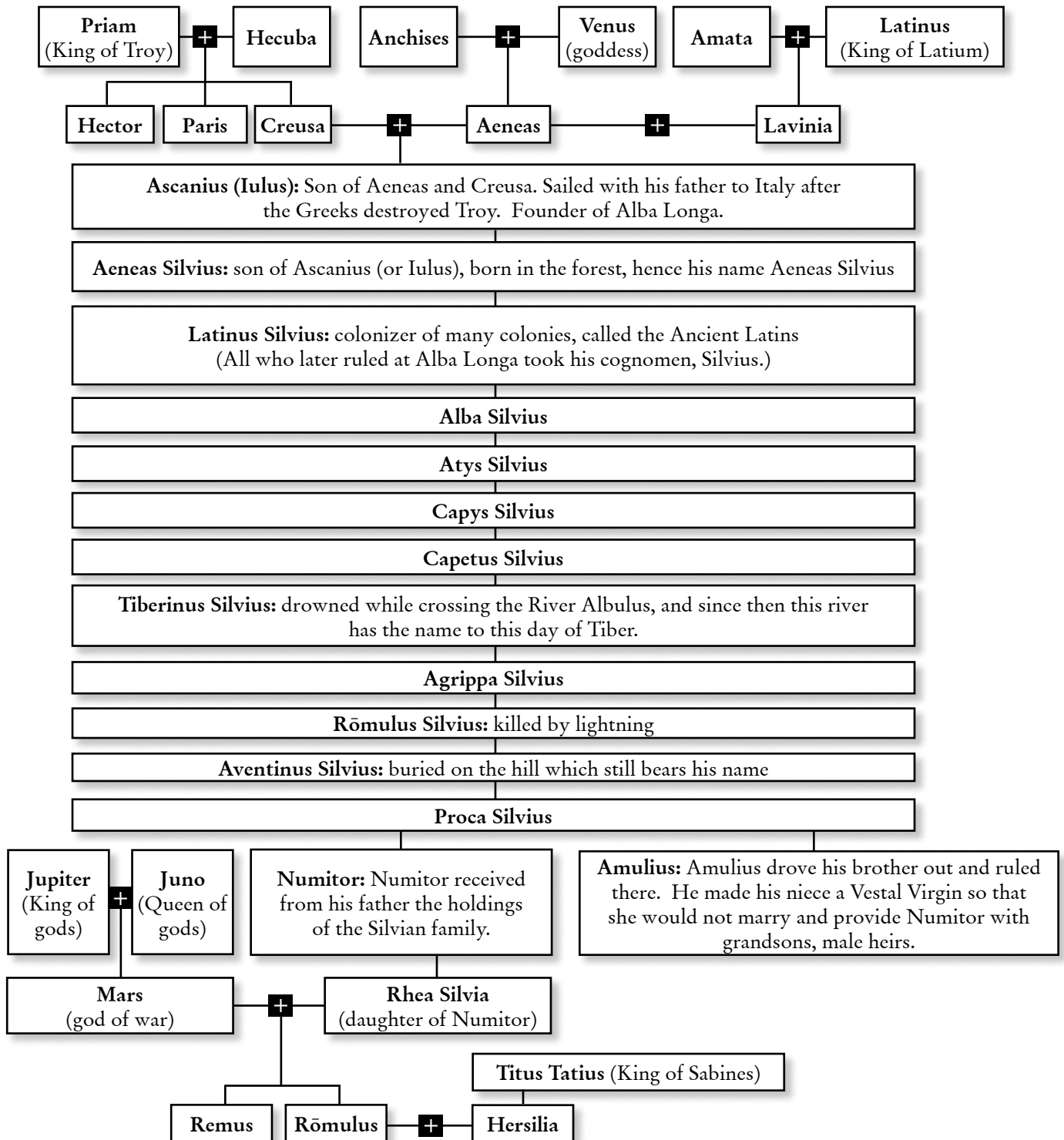
Livy’s work is complicated Latin reading, containing many different tenses and many examples of complex sentences and indirect discourse. We have simplified this work for you and have primarily used the historical present tense. The historical present tense makes historical writing vivid by writing about the past using the present tense. For example, we can write “Achilles raises his mighty sword” instead of “Achilles raised his mighty sword” even though we are describing a past action.

THE DESCENDANTS OF AENEAS

Gaylan DuBose

When Troy fell to the Greeks after ten years of fighting, Aeneas, along with his father and son, was among the very few Trojan leaders who escaped the burning city. He traveled over land and sea for years before finally arriving in Italy, the land of his destiny. Another Trojan, Antenor, had also settled in Italy. Aeneas eventually arrived in Latium, the area of Italy where Rome was later to stand. The area was Latium, the language was Latīna, and the king was Latīnus. This king had a daughter named Lavinia, who was to marry a prince of a neighboring tribe, a man called Turnus; however, Aeneas married Lavinia; and this marriage led to war. The son of Aeneas, Ascanius (also known as Iūlus), settled at what we call Alba Longa. Rōmulus and Remus, along with the Julian clan, whose most famous member was Gaius Julius Caesar, were descendants of this man. Our stories begin with Rōmulus and Remus.

FAMILY TREE OF RŌMULUS



(Tatius became a joint ruler with Rōmulus when the Sabine and Roman tribes intermarried. Upon the death of Titus Tatius, Rōmulus became sole king. Rōmulus, according to legend, was taken up in a chariot by his father, the god Mars. He was then deified as Rōmulus-Quirinus. Hersilia grieved for her missing husband so greatly that Juno deified her as well. The “mother” of the Romans was then worshipped as Hora.)

THE BIRTH AND EARLY LIFE OF RŌMULUS AND REMUS

CHARACTERS:

- Rhea Silvia*– daughter of King Numitor and mother of Rŏmulus and Remus
Vesta– goddess of the hearth
Mars– god of war
Rŏmulus– legendary founder and first king of Rome
Remus– Rŏmulus' twin brother

1. Rhea Silvia est filia rēgis. Quoque ancilla deae Vestae est. Mars Rheam Silviam
2. vīsitat, et mox fēmina puerōs geminōs paret. Patruus Rhea Silviae iubet servum
3. puerōs in rīvum pōnere. Rīvus altus est, et puerī in terram nāvigant. Lupa liberōs
4. servat. Tum servus puerōs spectat et ad casam puerōs portat. Servus et
5. marīta puerōs in casā cūrant.
6. Ubi puerī sunt virī, oppidum aedificāre volunt. Rŏmulus mūrūm aedificat.
7. Rŏmulus Remō mūrūm monstrat. Remus rīdet. Rŏmulus est irātus. Rŏmulus
8. Remum necat. Rŏmulus oppidum aedificat. Rŏmulus oppidum Rŏmam appellat.
9. Nunc Rŏmulus est rēx.

Nota Bene:

aedificāre volunt = they wish to build

GLOSSARY

<i>rēgis</i>	of a king
<i>quoque</i> , adv.	also
<i>vīsītō</i> , <i>vīsītāre</i>	to visit
<i>mox</i> , adv.	soon
<i>geminus</i> , <i>-ī</i> , m.	twin
<i>pareō</i> , <i>parere</i>	to give birth to
<i>patruus</i> , <i>patruī</i> , m.	paternal uncle (father's brother)
<i>Rhea Silviae</i>	of Rhea Silvia
<i>iubeō</i> , <i>iubere</i>	to order
<i>in</i>	into
<i>rīvus</i> , <i>-ī</i> , m.	river, stream
<i>pōnere</i>	to put, to place
<i>altus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , adj.	deep
<i>lupa</i> , <i>-ae</i> , f.	a female wolf
<i>ad</i> , preposition + accusative	to
<i>casa</i> , <i>-ae</i> , f.	house
<i>marīta</i> , <i>marītae</i> , f.	wife
<i>cūrō</i> , <i>cūrāre</i>	to care for
<i>ubi</i> , adv.	when
<i>mūrū</i> , <i>mūrī</i> , m.	wall
<i>rīdeō</i> , <i>rīdere</i>	to laugh
<i>irātus</i>	angry
<i>necō</i> , <i>necāre</i>	to kill
<i>nunc</i> , adv.	now
<i>appellō</i> , <i>appellāre</i>	to call, name
<i>rēx</i> , nominative, sing., m.	king



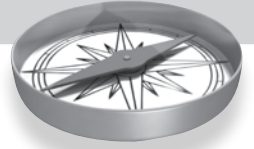
Question & Answer



1. According to this reading, besides being the daughter of a king, Rhea Silvia was _____.
 - a. the cousin of Aeneas
 - b. the mother of twin boys
 - c. a servant of Mars
 - d. a goddess of a river
2. *Geminōs* in line 2 _____.
 - a. means “twins”
 - b. is an appositive
 - c. is accusative
 - d. all of the above
3. The verb *nāvigant* in line 3 implies that _____.
 - a. there was a flood
 - b. the babies were in something like a boat
 - c. the river was nearly dry
 - d. the babies had been thrown into the sea
4. Which family member below is not mentioned in the reading?
 - a. uncle on the father’s side
 - b. husband
 - c. wife
 - d. grandfather
5. Which word or phrase below best characterizes the prevailing emotion between Rōmulus and Remus?
 - a. brotherly love
 - b. jealousy and anger
 - c. anger followed by total remorse and loss
 - d. sadness followed by joy
6. What is the case of *Vestae* in line 1?
 - a. nominative
 - b. dative
 - c. accusative
 - d. none of the above
7. Which of the following words serves as a direct object in line 6?
 - a. *casā*
 - b. *puerī*
 - c. *oppidum*
 - d. *Rōmulus*
8. What is the function of *Remō* in line 7?
 - a. subject
 - b. direct object
 - c. predicate nominative
 - d. indirect object

It is a great hope that someday you will take an Advanced Placement test in Latin. Preparation for AP tests must begin in the earliest stages of Latin and continue throughout your study of the language. These questions are of the type that you are likely to encounter on an AP test or the National Latin Exam at a higher level.

Culture Corner: Relatives



The Romans had more words for relatives than we do and also more exact words. This fact probably indicates that the Romans placed more value on the extended family than we do in America today. Remember that *familia* meant **everyone** who lived in the household, even slaves.

pater – father

māter – mother

avus – grandfather

avia – grandmother

nepōs – grandson

neptis – granddaughter

patruus – a father’s brother, a paternal uncle

amita – a father’s sister (Oddly, the Romans did not seem to use this term in the same way that we would use *unt*, but consider the use of *patruus* above. What may this tell you about Roman society?)

avunculus – a mother’s brother, a maternal uncle (This word means literally “little grandfather.”

How does this term signal a different relationship between a maternal and a paternal uncle?)

mātertera – a mother’s sister, a maternal aunt (This word literally means “ma-relative-relative; *māter* means just “ma-relative.” What might a Roman child, like one of us today, first call his mother?)

patruēlis – a cousin on the father’s side (a male or a female cousin)

consōbrīnus and *consōbrīna* – a male and female cousin, respectively, on the mother’s side



Samples of all our products are available at www.ClassicalAcademicPress.com



Latin!

Latin is a rich, ancient language, and is still very much alive in the modern languages that we speak today. It plays a vital role training students in grammar, in categorical thinking about how a language works, in logical reasoning, and greatly expands a student's English vocabulary. *Caveat emptor* (let the buyer beware), these programs have made Latin the favorite subject of many students around the nation!



Spanish!

After English, Spanish is arguably the most easily applied second language for North American students to learn and master. Classical Academic Press's Spanish curricula are a blend of immersion and grammar-based study. We start with songs and vocabulary and go on to teach Spanish grammar for conversation—from its parts to its whole—so that students will know how to make sentences as well as recognize them by ear.



Greek!

Greek is one of the mother tongues of the English language, with many English words having been derived from Greek. Greek is also a perfectly orderly language, ideal to help us understand the structure of any language. Koine Greek, which is the focus in our texts, is also the history-rich language of the New Testament.



Logic!

There are several branches of logic, and our three levels of curriculum focus on teaching informal and formal logic, as well as supplying students with the tools to create their own logical arguments. Each logic text recognizes that students are living in the 21st century and applies logical concepts to real-life, and often humorous, examples. Mastery of logic is a requisite skill for critical thinking in any discipline and for the classical learning education.



Bible!

If you would like to teach your students the narrative arc of the Bible and show them how God has been at work in His people since before creation, you will find God's Great Covenant to be a unique and excellent Bible curriculum. Taught from a covenantal and reformed theological perspective, and rooted in Scripture, you will find this series to be a blessing to your classroom, Sunday School, or family.



Poetry!

If you have ever felt mystified by poetry, this book will lead you step-by-step to an understanding and love of this branch of literature, guided by a gifted poet and teacher. This accessible curriculum demystifies the practice of reading a poem slowly and carefully, introduces students to the elements of poetry (such as imagery and metaphor), and highlights the historical forms that poems have taken (such as sonnet and open verse). Learn how absorbing the best words in the best order changes your relationship to ideas.



Resources – because we all could use a little help.



Here at Classical Academic Press we understand the need for thorough explanations, enjoyable practice materials, independent student activities, encouraging collaborations, and the means to ask questions of other teachers! We also understand that these needs will vary among teachers and students, as well as their teaching and learning styles, and that learning happens in community. Our goal is to provide for you the resources you need, so that our curriculum is easy to use and so that your student's studies are enjoyable, relevant, and complete. Here are just a sampling of the resources available to you:



HeadventureLand.com

Be sure to check out this [free practice](#) for your student! HeadventureLand.com offers games, videos, stories, and other resources to support students studying Latin, Spanish, and Greek, particularly for students using curricula from Classical Academic Press. Headventure Land will always be a safe and family-friendly website for students to enjoy and is appropriate and appealing to students of all ages. As teachers and parents, you will find the For Teachers page particularly useful.



ClassicalAcademicPress.com

The Free Resources page at ClassicalAcademicPress.com offers suggested schedules, extra worksheets, audio pronunciation files, coloring pages, handy grammar charts, flash cards, articles, and mp3s. Also available is the "Ask the *Magister* (Teacher)" page, where you can submit questions to our *magister* (teacher) about any of our texts, subjects, or even specific questions of a text's content.



Classical Academic Press on Facebook.com

Join us on Facebook for the most recent news, reviews, and discounts, and to give us your opinion on up-and-coming products! Also, preview texts and audio before they're available to purchase!



InsideClassicalEd.com

On the Inside Classical Education blog, Dr. Chris Perrin acquaints newcomers and veterans with the history of the Classical education movement. He reports on current developments, presents analysis and review, and interviews leaders in the movement through blog posts, articles, and podcasts.



ClassicalEducator.com

ClassicalEducator.com fosters collaboration among classical educators and administrators in the U.S. and abroad. Join this site to read blog posts from other classical educators, to enjoy helpful audio and video lectures, to read and ask advice in the forums, and to connect to other teachers.



ClassicalParent.com

Most of us have not received a classical education ourselves, making it a challenge to give it, or support teachers providing it to our children. Read about how other parents are fostering classical education in their homes. Find links to helpful articles, correspond with other classical parents, and hear how parents are learning classically alongside their students.



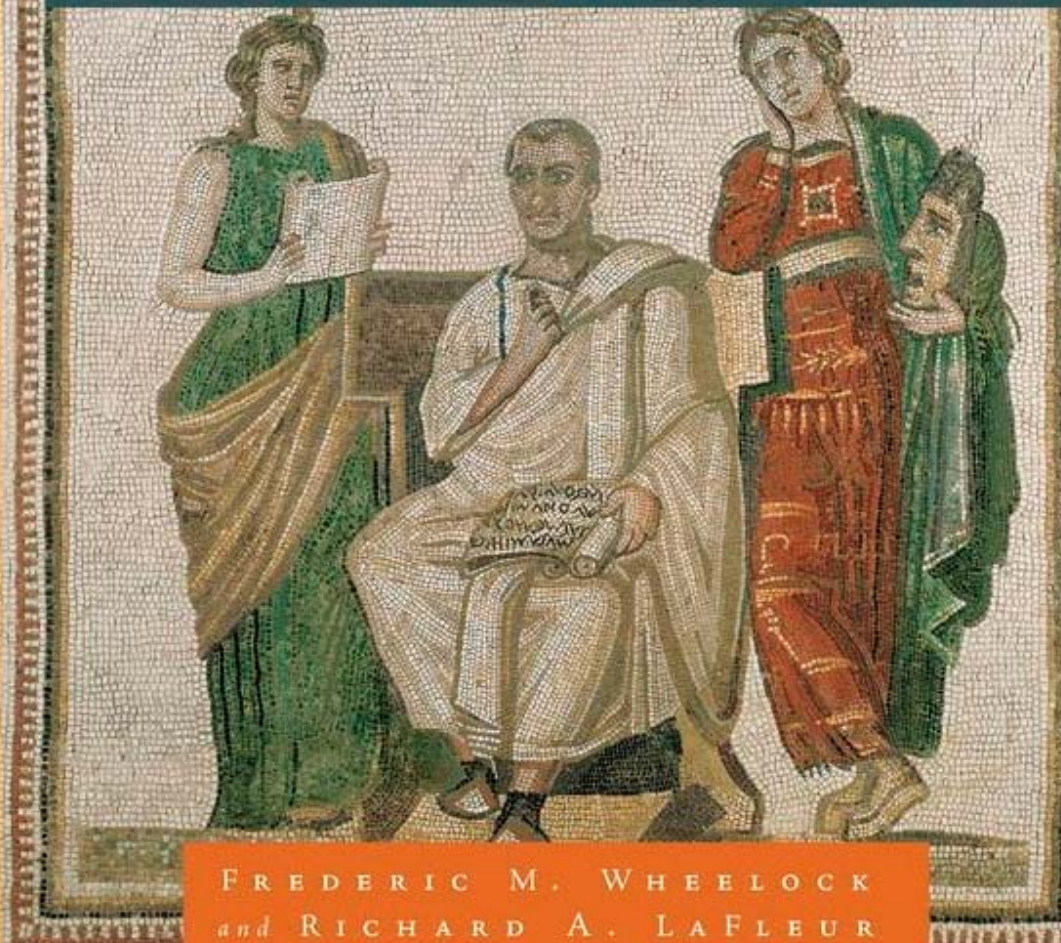
Monthly Newsletter

Be sure to sign up for our monthly newsletter where we always offer further resources, as well as occasional discounts on our curricula and other opportunities in the classical education movement.

WHEELOCK'S LATIN

7TH EDITION

THE CLASSIC INTRODUCTORY LATIN COURSE, BASED ON THE WRITINGS
OF CICERO, VERGIL, AND OTHER MAJOR ROMAN AUTHORS



FREDERIC M. WHEELOCK
and RICHARD A. LAFLEUR

HarperCollinsPublishers

Copyrighted Material

CONTENTS

Foreword	ix
Preface	xiii
The Revised Edition	xix
<i>Introductio</i>	xxv
The Position of the Latin Language in Linguistic History	xxv
A Brief Survey of Latin Literature	xxx
The Alphabet and Pronunciation	xxxv
Maps	xlii
I Verbs; First and Second Conjugations; Adverbs; Reading and Translating	1
II First Declension Nouns and Adjectives; Prepositions, Conjunctions, Interjections.	12
III Second Declension Masculine Nouns and Adjectives; Apposition; Word Order	23
IV Second Declension Neuters; Adjectives; Present of <i>Sum</i> ; Predicate Nominatives; Substantives	32
V First and Second Conjugations: Future and Imperfect; Adjectives in <i>-er</i>	40
VI <i>Sum</i> and <i>Possum</i> ; Complementary Infinitive	48
VII Third Declension Nouns	55
VIII Third Conjugation: Present System	63
IX Demonstratives <i>Hic, Ille, Iste</i> ; Special <i>-ius</i> Adjectives	71
X Fourth Conjugation and <i>-io</i> Verbs of the Third	80
XI Personal Pronouns <i>Ego, Tū, and Is</i> ; Demonstratives <i>Is</i> and <i>Idem</i> . . .	87
XII The Perfect Active System; Synopsis	96
XIII Reflexive Pronouns and Possessives; Intensive Pronoun	105

XIV	<i>I</i> -Stem Nouns of the Third Declension; Ablatives of Means, Accompaniment, and Manner	114
XV	Numerals; Genitive of the Whole; Ablative with Numerals and Ablative of Time	123
XVI	Third Declension Adjectives	131
XVII	The Relative Pronoun	139
XVIII	First and Second Conjugations: Present System Passive; Ablative of Agent	146
XIX	Perfect Passive System; Interrogative Pronouns and Adjectives	153
XX	Fourth Declension; Ablatives of Place from Which and Separation	162
XXI	Third and Fourth Conjugations: Present System Passive	169
XXII	Fifth Declension; Ablative of Place Where and Summary of Ablative Uses	176
XXIII	Participles	184
XXIV	Ablative Absolute; Passive Periphrastic; Dative of Agent	193
XXV	Infinitives; Indirect Statement	201
XXVI	Comparison of Adjectives; Ablative of Comparison	210
XXVII	Irregular Comparison of Adjectives	218
XXVIII	Subjunctive Mood; Present Subjunctive; Jussive and Purpose Clauses	227
XXIX	Imperfect Subjunctive; Present and Imperfect Subjunctive of <i>Sum</i> and <i>Possum</i> ; Result Clauses	236
XXX	Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive; Indirect Questions; Sequence of Tenses	245
XXXI	<i>Cum</i> Clauses; <i>Ferô</i>	255
XXXII	Formation and Comparison of Adverbs; <i>Volô</i> , <i>Mâlô</i> , <i>Nôlô</i> ; Proviso Clauses	264
XXXIII	Conditions	273
XXXIV	Deponent Verbs; Ablative with Special Deponents	282
XXXV	Dative with Adjectives, Special Verbs, and Compounds	294
XXXVI	Jussive Noun Clauses; <i>Fiô</i>	303
XXXVII	Conjugation of <i>Eô</i> ; Place and Time Constructions	312
XXXVIII	Relative Clauses of Characteristic; Dative of Reference; Supines	323
XXXIX	Gerund and Gerundive	332

XI. - <i>Ne</i> , <i>Num</i> , and <i>Nōnne</i> in Direct Questions; Fear Clauses; Genitive and Ablative of Description	341
<i>Locī Antīqvī</i>	351
<i>Locī Immv̄tātī</i>	363
Self-Tutorial Exercises	412
Key to Self-Tutorial Exercises	446
Appendix	484
Some Etymological Aids	484
Supplementary Syntax	491
<i>Symmārivm Fōrmārvm</i>	495
<i>Vocābvla</i> : English-Latin	510
<i>Vocābvla</i> : Latin-English	518
<i>Abbreviatiōnes</i>	537
Index	541
Location of the <i>Sententiae Antīqvae</i>	555
About the Authors	559
Credits	561

Grade	Topics Covered	Teacher Materials	Student Materials
K	<p>Core Knowledge:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Plants and Plant Growth • Animals and Their Needs • Human Body (Five Senses) • Introduction to Magnetism • Seasons and Weather • Taking Care of the Earth • Science Biographies of Carver, Goodall, Wright Brothers, Bentley 	<p>Teacher's Editions of Pearson/Prentice Hall Science Explorer series:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Animals</i> • <i>Electricity and Magnetism</i> • <i>Environmental Science</i> • <i>From Bacteria to Plants</i> • <i>Human Biology and Health</i> • <i>Integrated Lab Manual</i> • <i>The Nature of Science and Technology</i> • <i>Weather and Climate</i> 	None
<p>Various trade books and other read-aloud resources by authors such as Aliko, Gail Gibbons, and Seymour Simon</p>			
1	<p>Core Knowledge:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Living Things and Their Environments • Human Body (Body Systems) • Matter • Properties of Matter: Measurement • Introduction to Electricity • Astronomy • The Earth • Science Biographies of Edison, Jenner, Pasteur, Cousteau 	<p>Teacher's Editions of Pearson/Prentice Hall Science Explorer series:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Animals</i> • <i>Astronomy</i> • <i>Chemical Building Blocks</i> • <i>Earth's Changing Surface</i> • <i>Earth's Waters</i> • <i>Electricity and Magnetism</i> • <i>Environmental Science</i> • <i>Human Biology and Health</i> • <i>Integrated Lab Manual</i> • <i>The Nature of Science and Technology</i> 	<p><i>ScienceSaurus: A Student Handbook</i> (yellow softcover), Houghton Mifflin Harcourt</p>
<p>Various trade books and other read-aloud resources by authors such as Aliko, Gail Gibbons, and Millicent Selsam</p>			

<p>2</p>	<p>Core Knowledge:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cycles in Nature (Seasonal, Life, Water) • Insects • Human Body (Cells; Digestive and Excretory Systems) • Magnetism • Simple Machines • Science Biographies of van Leeuwenhoek, McCoy, Nightingale, Williams, Fabre 	<p>Teacher’s Editions of Pearson/Prentice Hall Science Explorer series:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Animals</i> • <i>Cells and Heredity</i> • <i>Earth’s Waters</i> • <i>Electricity and Magnetism</i> • <i>From Bacteria to Plants</i> • <i>Human Biology and Health</i> • <i>Integrated Lab Manual</i> • <i>Motion, Forces, and Energy</i> <p>Various trade books and other read-aloud resources by authors such as Gail Gibbons and Demi</p>	<p><i>ScienceSaurus: A Student Handbook</i> (red softcover), Houghton Mifflin Harcourt</p>
<p>3</p>	<p>Core Knowledge:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Introduction to Classification of Animals • Human Body (Muscular, Skeletal, and Nervous Systems; Vision and Hearing) • Light and Optics • Sound • Ecology • Astronomy • Science Biographies of Bell, Copernicus, Jemison, Muir, Halley 	<p>Teacher’s Editions of Pearson/Prentice Hall Science Explorer series:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Astronomy</i> • <i>Earth’s Waters</i> • <i>Environmental Science</i> • <i>Human Biology and Health</i> • <i>Integrated Lab Manual</i> • <i>Inside Earth</i> • <i>The Nature of Science and Technology</i> • <i>Sound and Light</i> <p>Teacher’s Editions of the DeltaScience ContentReaders series (purple editions) listed in the “Student Materials” column</p> <p>Various trade books and other resources to help deliver lessons on the science biographies</p>	<p>DeltaScience ContentReaders series (purple editions):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Changes in Ecosystems</i> • <i>Earth, Moon, and Sun System</i> • <i>Ecosystems</i> • <i>Heat and Light Energy</i> • <i>Human Body Systems</i> • <i>Our Solar System and Beyond</i> • <i>Sound Energy</i> <p><i>ScienceSaurus: A Student Handbook</i> (blue softcover), Houghton Mifflin Harcourt</p>

<p>4</p>	<p>Core Knowledge:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Human Body (Circulatory and Respiratory Systems) • Chemistry: Basic Terms and Concepts • Electricity • Geology: The Earth and Its Changes • Meteorology • Science Biographies of Baneker, Blackwell, Drew, Faraday, Hutton 	<p>Teacher's Editions of Pearson/Prentice Hall Science Explorer series:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Chemical Building Blocks</i> • <i>Chemical Interactions</i> • <i>Earth's Changing Surface</i> • <i>Electricity and Magnetism</i> • <i>Human Biology and Health</i> • <i>Inside Earth</i> • <i>Integrated Lab Manual</i> • <i>The Nature of Science and Technology</i> • <i>Weather and Climate</i> <p>Teacher's Editions of the DeltaScience ContentReaders series (purple editions) listed in the "Student Materials" column</p> <p>Various trade books and other resources to help deliver lessons on the science biographies</p>	<p>DeltaScience ContentReaders series (purple editions):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Air and Water</i> • <i>Electricity and Magnetism</i> • <i>Inside Earth</i> • <i>Human Body Systems</i> • <i>Properties of Matter</i> • <i>Soils</i> • <i>Weather and Climate</i> • <i>Weathering and Erosion</i> <p><i>ScienceSaurus: A Student Handbook</i> (green softcover), Houghton Mifflin Harcourt</p>
<p>5</p>	<p>Core Knowledge:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Classifying Living Things • Cells: Structures and Processes • Plant Structures and Processes • Life Cycles and Reproduction • Human Body (Endocrine and Reproductive Systems) • Chemistry: Matter and Change • Science Biographies of Julian, Just, Linnaeus, Dalton 	<p>Teacher's Editions of Pearson/Prentice Hall Science Explorer series:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Animals</i> • <i>Cells and Heredity</i> • <i>Chemical Building Blocks</i> • <i>From Bacteria to Plants</i> • <i>Human Biology and Health</i> • <i>Integrated Lab Manual</i> • <i>The Nature of Science and Technology</i> <p>Various trade books and other resources to help deliver lessons on the science biographies</p>	<p>Student Editions of Pearson/Prentice Hall Science Explorer series:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Chemical Building Blocks</i> • <i>From Bacteria to Plants</i> <p><i>ScienceSaurus: A Student Handbook</i> (green softcover), Houghton Mifflin Harcourt</p>

6	<p>Core Knowledge:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Plate Tectonics • Oceans • Astronomy: Gravity, Stars, and Galaxies • Energy, Heat, and Energy Transfer • Human Body: Lymphatic and Immune Systems • Science Biographies of Curie, Latimer, Newton, Wegener, Fleming, Joule 	<p>Teacher's Editions of Pearson/Prentice Hall Science Explorer series:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Astronomy</i> • <i>Chemical Building Blocks</i> • <i>Earth's Waters</i> • <i>Inside Earth</i> • <i>Integrated Lab Manual</i> • <i>Motion, Forces, and Energy</i> • <i>The Nature of Science and Technology</i> 	<p>Student Editions of Pearson/Prentice Hall Science Explorer series:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Earth's Waters</i> • <i>Inside Earth</i> • <i>Motion, Forces, and Energy</i>
		<p>Various trade books and other resources to help deliver lessons on the science biographies</p>	
7	<p>Core Knowledge:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Atomic Structure • Chemical Bonds and Reactions • Cell Division and Genetics • Chemistry of Food and Respiration (from 8th grade CK Sequence) • History of the Earth and Life Forms • Evolution • Science Biographies of Darwin, Lavoisier, Meitner, Mendeleev, Mendel, Bohr, Hodgkin 	<p>Teacher's Editions of Pearson/Prentice Hall Science Explorer series:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Cells and Heredity</i> • <i>Chemical Building Blocks</i> • <i>Chemical Interactions</i> • <i>Earth's Changing Surface</i> • <i>Human Biology and Health</i> • <i>Integrated Lab Manual</i> • <i>The Nature of Science and Technology</i> 	<p>Student Editions of Pearson/Prentice Hall Science Explorer series:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Cells and Heredity</i> • <i>Chemical Building Blocks</i> • <i>Chemical Interactions</i>
		<p>Various trade books and other resources to help deliver lessons on the science biographies</p>	
8	<p>Core Knowledge:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Physics • Electricity and Magnetism • Electromagnetic Radiation and Light • Sound Waves • Science Biographies of Einstein, Maxwell, Steinmetz, Franklin, Tesla 	<p>Teacher's Edition of <i>Conceptual Physics</i> by Paul Hewitt</p>	<p>Student Edition and Student Lab Manual of <i>Conceptual Physics</i> by Paul Hewitt</p>
		<p>Various trade books and other resources to help deliver lessons on the science biographies</p>	

Delta Science Content Readers: **Embedding Literacy in Science**

Executive Summary

Research has shown that scientific understanding must be built over multiple years through instruction that develops and deepens students' understanding of core science content. High-quality curriculum is the foundation for any such effort to meet the goals of science education. Teachers need high-quality materials that align with an effective curriculum and clear, reliable sources of information that they can share with their students.

Science learning requires students to read scientific explanations of the natural world. Reading proficiency, like scientific literacy, develops over a long period of time, involving a complex set of skills that students only master with extended instruction, support, and practice. The Delta Science Content Readers program meets current goals for science education by delivering an effective, standards-based curriculum. The program also accommodates the variations in reading proficiency that are one of the everyday challenges of real classrooms.

The Delta Science Content Readers were planned and written to deliver the same core science content in two editions at two reading levels: the Red Edition at a grade 3–4 reading level and the Purple Edition at a grade 4–5 reading level. Text in both editions is structured to conform to the principles of “considerate text” (Armbruster, 1984; Tyree, Fiore, and Cook, 1994). The Delta Science Content Readers also harness the instructional power of embedding literacy instruction in the exploration of engaging, real-world concepts. Comprehension skills and strategies are taught and applied as an integral part of learning compelling science content. In the student reader, a short lesson teaches a featured skill or strategy before each major section. Students then apply that skill or strategy as they read the section.

As students talk about science, they make the connections and discover the patterns that support their learning. Using language also leads students to think more critically and analytically about their ideas. The clear, “considerate” instructional design of the Delta Science Content Readers provides students with numerous opportunities for practice in recognizing text structures and using nonfiction text features.

Table of Contents

Introduction	1
Meeting Goals for Science Education	1
Teaching the <i>National Science Education Standards</i>	1
Supporting Reading Proficiency	2
<i>Delta Science Content Readers: Embedding Literacy in Science</i>	3
Developing Science Understanding	5
Brain Research and Science Learning	5
Developing Content-Area Literacy	8
Supporting Comprehension of Content-Area Texts	8
Teaching Content-Area Vocabulary	11
Reaching English Learners	13
Bibliography	14
Science Education	14
Content-Area Reading	16

Introduction

Meeting Goals for Science Education

There is widespread agreement about the value of science education. As the authors of the 2009 NAEP Framework write: “The nation’s future depends on scientifically literate citizens who can participate as informed members of society and a highly skilled scientific work force, well prepared to address challenging issues at the local, national, and global level” (WestEd and the Council of Chief State School Officers, 2008, p. v). In addition to the value science education holds to our nation’s future, it is also highly valuable to the future of individual students. Science helps students understand and appreciate the world they live in:

The eventual goal of science education is to produce individuals capable of understanding and evaluating information that is, or purports to be, scientific in nature and of making decisions that incorporate that information appropriately, and, furthermore, to produce a sufficient number and diversity of skilled and motivated future scientists, engineers, and other science-based professionals (Duschl, Schweingruber, and Shouse, 2006, p. 34).

Research has shown, however, that scientific understanding must be built over multiple years, with instruction that develops and deepens students’ understanding of core science content (Michaels, Shouse, and Schweingruber, 2008).

Teaching the *National Science Education Standards*

High-quality curriculum is the foundation for any effort to meet the goals of science education: “The program of study in science for all students should be developmentally appropriate, interesting, and relevant to students’ lives; emphasize student understanding through inquiry; and be connected with other school subjects” (National Research Council, 1996). The *National Science Education Standards* were written to guide the creation and revision of state science standards.

Teachers also need high-quality materials that align with an effective curriculum. These materials are necessary to support teachers’ own understanding. As the authors of *Ready, Set, Science!* write: “There is a growing

body of evidence that what a teacher knows about science influences the quality of instruction and has a powerful effect on the success and type of discussions that teachers can engage in and sustain with students” (Michaels, Shouse, and Schweingruber, 2008, p. 153). Most importantly, teachers need clear, reliable sources of information that they can share with their students.

Recent research has emphasized the effectiveness of a form of science instruction known as “science practice.” This approach, which includes scientific inquiry, integrates learning into four strands of scientific proficiency (Duschl, Schweingruber, and Shouse, 2006, p. 36).

Four Strands of Science Learning

1. Know, use, and interpret scientific explanations of the natural world
2. Generate and evaluate scientific evidence and explanations
3. Understand the nature and development of scientific knowledge
4. Participate productively in scientific practices and discourse

Acquiring these skills requires engagement; students must participate in science. They must ask questions and think critically while reading, talking, and writing about science. They must use evidence to construct arguments and defend theories. They must use scientific language, scientific representations, and scientific tools. “In addition to engaging in direct investigation of scientific phenomena, students make meaning by writing science, talking science, and reading science” (Douglas, Klentschy, Worth, and Binder, 2006, p. xi).

Supporting Reading Proficiency

Science learning requires students to read scientific explanations of the natural world. Reading proficiency, like scientific literacy, develops over a long period of time. It involves a complex set of skills that students only master with extended instruction, support, and practice. Research has shown that students often take the longest to master the skills they need for content-area reading (McGee, 1982; Armbruster, Anderson, and Meyer, 1992; Carlisle and Rice, 2002). As any classroom teacher knows, different students are able to process different levels of complex text (Chall, 1984; Fountas and Pinnell, 2001).

Thus, good reading instruction supports science instruction. Scientific explanations often involve difficult vocabulary and challenging concepts. They can pose acute problems to readers of all ages—but particularly to students reading at elementary school levels. The more students advance in reading proficiency, the more access they have to scientific explanations.

The inverse is also true. Good science instruction supports reading instruction. Reading researchers have identified the limitations of isolated skill instruction. Although this instruction remains important, researchers now emphasize the value of embedding literacy instruction in the exploration of engaging, real-world concepts (Snow, 2008). Researchers in science education have also recognized the reciprocal relationship between reading instruction and science instruction. The editors of *Linking Science and Literacy* write, “. . . students improve their skills in many areas of literacy when those skills are practiced in engaging contexts” (Douglas, Klentschy, Worth, and Binder, 2006, p. xi).

Delta Science Content Readers: Embedding Literacy in Science

The *Delta Science Content Readers* are designed to support teachers in their efforts to achieve the goals of the *National Science Education Standards*:

Understanding science requires that an individual integrate a complex structure of many types of knowledge, including the ideas of science, relationships between ideas, reasons for these relationships, ways to use the ideas to explain and predict other natural phenomena, and ways to apply them to many events (National Research Council, 1996).

Spanning physical science, life science, and earth science, the program covers all the *National Science Education Standards*. The *Delta Science Content Readers* also incorporate state standards and the following additional national standards and frameworks: *McREL Compendium of Standards and Benchmarks*, *Project 2061 Benchmarks*, and the *Science Framework for the 2009 National Assessment of Educational Progress*. Planned and written as small, modular books, the *Delta Science Content Readers* support these standards while allowing teachers and administrators to make decisions about the best use of available resources.

The *Delta Science Content Readers* meet current goals for science education by delivering an effective, standards-based curriculum. The

program also accommodates the variations in reading proficiency that are one of the everyday challenges of real classrooms. The *Delta Science Content Readers* were planned and written to deliver the same core science content at two reading levels. Each title is available in a Red Edition targeted at a grade 3–4 reading level and a Purple Edition targeted at a grade 4–5 reading level. Text in both editions is structured to conform to the principles of “considerate text” (Armbruster, 1984; Tyree, Fiore, and Cook, 1994).

Differentiating Reading Levels in <i>Delta Science Content Readers</i>	
Red Edition	Purple Edition
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reading level: grade 3–4 • One-column format • Fewer words per page than the Purple Edition • Shorter, simpler sentences • Fewer, but larger, photos than the Purple Edition 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reading level: grade 4–5 • Two-column format • More words per page than the Red Edition • Longer, more complex sentences • More, but smaller, photos than the Red Edition

The *Delta Science Content Readers* also harness the instructional power of embedding literacy instruction in the exploration of engaging, real-world concepts. Comprehension skills and strategies are taught and applied as an integral part of learning compelling science content. In the student reader, a short lesson teaches a featured skill or strategy before each major section. Students then apply that skill or strategy as they read the section. The teacher’s guide provides additional instruction for each skill or strategy, as well as prompts, discussion questions, and additional information designed to guide students’ comprehension of each section. Throughout each reader, students gain practice with standard nonfiction text features such as tables of contents, headings, captions, labels, diagrams, charts, and glossaries. Consumable student booklets called *Skillbuilders* provide additional practice in four key literacy areas—comprehension, writing, grammar, and vocabulary—aligned with the content of the corresponding student reader.

Developing Science Understanding

Brain Research and Science Learning

During the second half of the twentieth century, theories of stage development argued that there were sharp limits on the scientific knowledge that children could acquire. Based on the work of Jean Piaget, these theories maintained that children's development progresses in stages from concrete to abstract modes of thinking. Recent research into cognitive development has called these theories into question. Even young children are driven to investigate and explain the natural world, and they acquire more science knowledge and more reasoning skills than previously thought (Metz, 1995; Gelman and Kalish, 2005). The authors of *Taking Science to School* conclude: "In contrast to the commonly held and outmoded view that young children are concrete and simplistic thinkers, the research evidence now shows that their thinking is surprisingly sophisticated. Important building blocks for learning science are in place before they enter school" (Duschl, Schweingruber, and Shouse, 2006, p. 53).

Critical to children's conceptual development is how instruction builds on this prior knowledge (Donovan, Bransford, and Pellegrin, 2000). Some prior knowledge can involve misconceptions about science. Rather than being an obstacle to learning, these misconceptions can be a starting point for the development of more accurate knowledge: "It is thus critical that children's prior knowledge is taken into account in designing instruction that capitalizes on the leverage points and adequately addresses potential areas of misunderstanding" (Duschl, Schweingruber, and Shouse, 2006, p. 3).

Brain research has emphasized the power of patterning. Making connections engages students, and they are more likely to understand and remember new learning that they can connect to prior knowledge (Donovan, Bransford, and Pellegrin, 2000; Sousa, 2000; Erlauer, 2003; Caine and Caine, 2005; Tileston, 2006). Building on these patterns is part of the purposeful instructional development of prior knowledge: "To understand science, children . . . need to view facts in broader contexts of meaning. They need to reposition the ideas they bring with them to school within a larger network of ideas" (Michaels, Shouse, and Schweingruber, 2008, p. 41).

Another conclusion from brain research is the social component of effective learning. As Laura Erlauer writes, “The human brain is a social brain.” (2003). Our minds engage more quickly and deeply in the concepts that we explore as part of a group (Donovan, Bransford, and Pellegrin, 2000; Sousa, 2000; Caine and Caine, 2005; Tileston, 2006). Teaching children to work together within a community of learners not only supports their learning of science content but also helps them understand the social structure of the scientific enterprise in general (American Association for the Advancement of Science, 2008).

Language is a critical component of science learning. The authors of *Linking science and literacy in the K–8 classroom* write: “At the root of deep understanding of science concepts and scientific processes is the ability to use language to form ideas, theorize, reflect, share and debate with others, and ultimately, communicate clearly to different audiences” (Douglas, Klentschy, Worth, and Binder, 2006, p. xi). As students talk about science, they make the connections and discover the patterns that support their learning. Using language also leads students to think more critically and analytically about their ideas. Finally, using language supports the development of metacognition. Critical to science learning, metacognition is children’s ability to reflect on their own thinking (Donovan, Bransford, and Pellegrin, 2000). To scaffold the collaborative talking and thinking that promote deeper science understanding, researchers recommend that teachers foster open-ended discussion in their classrooms (Michaels, Shouse, and Schweingruber, 2008). Students also benefit when they explain their understanding of science concepts through writing. Science notebooks are an effective tool for encouraging students to write about science (Young, 2003).

The *Delta Science Content Readers* were planned and written so both teachers and students would benefit from the conclusions of cognitive research. The chart on the following page lists some of the research-based features in the student readers that support science learning.

How Delta Science Content Readers Support Science Learning

Program Feature	Aligned with Research
Science Statement	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Prompts open-ended discussion • Activates knowledge, interest, and experience • Connects existing knowledge and new learning
Make a Connection	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Prompts open-ended discussion • Allows teachers to start instruction with the knowledge students bring to school • Connects existing knowledge and new learning • Encourages collaborative learning
Checkpoint	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Supports self-assessments, as well as informal assessments, of science learning • Encourages collaborative discussions of science learning • Provides prompts for writing in science notebooks
Apply Science Concepts	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Applies scientific language and scientific representations • Asks students to generate and evaluate scientific explanations • Guides students to recognize patterns among concepts • Provides prompts for writing in science notebooks
Let's Review	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Applies scientific language and scientific representations • Asks students to generate and evaluate scientific explanations • Guides students to recognize patterns among concepts • Provides prompts for writing in science notebooks

Developing Content-Area Literacy

Supporting Comprehension of Content-Area Texts

Comprehension is a process through which a reader draws meaning out of a text (Carlisle and Rice, 2002). Researchers have identified three components in the process of comprehending content-area texts (Mayer 1984):

- **Selecting Information** Identifying the most important information and focusing on it
- **Organizing Information** Assembling the selected information into a coherent concept
- **Integrating Information** Making connections between this new concept and information the reader already knows

Research has shown that students in late elementary school and middle school (grades 4–9) have the most difficulty with these three subprocesses, and their difficulties are most acute when reading content-area texts (Armbruster, Anderson, and Meyer, 1992).

The way a text is structured supports a reader’s effort to select, organize, and integrate information, so understanding text structure is a critical component of comprehension. Most students are familiar with the narrative text structure used in fiction. Narrative features such as plot, setting, and character are typical of the oral stories students hear from friends and family; they are also an integral part of children’s movies and television shows. Nonfiction text structures vary more and involve logical structures that are often not immediately apparent to children. As a result, readers can fail to recognize the framework the author chose and thus fail to select, organize, and integrate the information in the text (Carlisle and Rice, 2002; Tyree, Fiore, and Cook, 1994).

In the words of *Put Reading First*, “text comprehension can be improved by instruction that helps readers use specific comprehension strategies” (Center for the Improvement of Early Reading Achievement, 2003, p. 49). In the *Delta Science Content Readers, Build Reading Skills* lessons provide explicit instruction in skills and strategies for comprehending the following text structures:

- Main Idea and Details
- Compare and Contrast
- Cause and Effect
- Sequence

Students also benefit from explicit instruction in skills and strategies for using nonfiction text features such as tables of contents, headings, captions, labels, diagrams, charts, and glossaries. In the *Delta Science Content Readers*, the following Build Reading Skills lessons support students' use of nonfiction text features:

- Preview the Book
- How to Read Diagrams
- How to Read Charts

The clear, “considerate” instructional design of the *Delta Science Content Readers* provides students with numerous opportunities for practice in recognizing text structures and using nonfiction text features (Armbruster, 1984; Tyree, Fiore, and Cook, 1994).

Teaching students to represent text visually can help them select, organize, and integrate information (Armbruster, Anderson, and Meyer, 1992; Hyerle, 2000; Marzano, 2003). *Put Reading First* identifies the following benefits of teaching students how to use graphic organizers (Center for the Improvement of Early Reading Achievement, 2003, p. 51):

Benefits of Teaching with Graphic Organizers

- Graphic organizers guide students to recognize and understand text structures.
- Graphic organizers clarify relationships between information in the text.
- Graphic organizers prepare students to summarize what they have read.

In the *Delta Science Content Readers*, students are consistently guided to use graphic organizers. Lessons in the student readers and in the teacher's guides model the use of graphic organizers, including K-W-L charts. Practice opportunities, including Reflect on Reading activities and the *Skillbuilders* booklets, are often structured around graphic organizers.

There is widespread agreement among reading researchers that effective comprehension instruction is direct and explicit (National Reading Panel, 2000). The steps of explicit instruction typically follow this sequence (Center for the Improvement of Early Reading Achievement, 2003):

- **Teach** Students hear or read a direct explanation of the skill or strategy.
- **Model** The teacher demonstrates how and when to apply the skill or strategy.
- **Guided Practice** The teacher guides students as they apply the skill or strategy.
- **Application** Students practice the skill or strategy independently.

Another popular way of phrasing how instruction should proceed, after a direct explanation is offered, is “I do it” (model), “We do it” (guided practice), and “You do it” (application). Many reading researchers recommend the use of Think Alouds for modeling reading skills and strategies (Wilhelm, 2001; Lipson, 2007). The following chart shows the structure of comprehension instruction in the *Delta Science Content Readers*:

Comprehension Instruction in <i>Delta Science Content Readers</i>	
Research-Based Step	Program Feature
Teach	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Build Reading Skills lessons in student reader • Instructional support in teacher’s guide for each Build Reading Skills lesson
Model (“I do it”)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Think Aloud in teacher’s guide for each Build Reading Skills lesson
Guided Practice (“We do it”)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Suggested in teacher’s guide support for each Build Reading Skills lesson
Apply (“You do it”)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reflect on Reading activities in student reader • Comprehension worksheets in <i>Skillbuilders</i>

Reading researchers also recommend that students receive support before, during, and after reading (National Reading Panel, 2000; Harvey, 2000; Vaughn and Linan-Thompson, 2004; Lipson, 2007). The chart on the following page shows how these recommendations have been incorporated in the *Delta Science Content Readers*.

Reading Support in *Delta Science Content Readers*

Research-Based Step	Program Feature
Before Reading	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make a Connection questions engage students and activate prior knowledge. • Find Out About statements set a purpose for reading. • Vocabulary box previews key science vocabulary. • Build Reading Skills lesson introduces a target comprehension skill or strategy.
During Reading	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Checkpoint questions allow teachers to assess comprehension. • Questions and prompts in the teacher’s guide provide additional support for guiding comprehension.
After Reading	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reflect on Reading activity guides students to apply target skill or strategy to science content. • Apply Science Concepts offers additional opportunities for student engagement with the content of each section. • Let’s Review questions guide students to respond to the content of the student reader.

Teaching Content-Area Vocabulary

Recent research has emphasized the important role that vocabulary plays in reading comprehension (Beck, McKeown, and Kucan, 2002; Marzano, 2004; Hiebert and Kamil, 2005; Stahl and Nagy, 2005; Graves, 2006). As researchers have explored how students understand and remember word meanings, they have rethought what constitutes the most effective approach to vocabulary instruction. Many researchers have stressed the importance of carefully choosing which words to teach (Biemiller, 1999; Biemiller and Slonim, 2001; Hiebert and Kamil, 2005; Beck, McKeown, and Kucan, 2002). However, the challenges of selecting words to teach and identifying the most effective methods of instruction are different in the content areas than they are in traditional reading lessons.

Science vocabulary is what Beck, McKeown, and Kucan (2002) have labeled “Tier 3 words.” These are words that don’t appear often in text outside a particular content area. The characteristics of content-area vocabulary are different from the more literary vocabulary found in fictional narratives. Armbruster and Nagy (1992) have offered a clear description of these different characteristics, which are summarized in the chart below.

Two Kinds of Vocabulary	
Vocabulary in Fictional Narratives	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Learning new vocabulary often involves learning a new label for a familiar concept (<i>miniscule</i> for “very small”). • Readers can often understand a fictional narrative if they don’t know or don’t fully understand a key vocabulary word. • Reading vocabulary is often discrete. Words are not related and not mutually reinforcing.
Vocabulary in Content-Area Texts	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • New vocabulary often represents new concepts that can be complex and difficult to understand. • Vocabulary often represents the very concepts that students are expected to learn. • Readers cannot understand a content-area lesson if they don’t know or don’t fully understand a key vocabulary word. • Vocabulary words in content-area lessons are often related in meaning. If a student doesn’t understand <i>temperature</i>, for example, it is hard to understand <i>thermal energy</i>.

In addition to these differences, in science “words are often given specific meanings that may be different from or more precise than their everyday meanings” (Michaels, Shouse, and Schweingruber, 2008, p. 4).

Because content-area vocabulary differs from vocabulary in fictional narratives, it requires a different instructional approach. Marzano (2004) emphasizes the importance of building background and developing conceptual understanding for this kind of vocabulary. While preteaching

vocabulary is a popular approach in reading lessons, Armbruster and Nagy recommend that teachers do not preteach key content-area vocabulary. Instead, they recommend that teachers embed instruction for content-area vocabulary into the work of understanding the rich and difficult concepts these words represent. These approaches are reflected in the teacher's guides for the *Delta Science Content Readers*:

- Students preview science vocabulary before reading. The teacher reads each word aloud so students have a phonological representation of the word.
- Teachers are prompted to display vocabulary words in a graphic organizer during reading. The graphic organizer supports class discussions of the relationship between vocabulary and the concept each word represents.
- Questions are provided during reading so teachers can reinforce and extend understanding of the relationships between concepts and vocabulary.
- After Reading activities deepen and extend understanding of vocabulary.

Reaching English Learners

Among English learners, there are significant differences in terms of the amount and degree of formal schooling, level of literacy in the native language, age of arrival in the United States, and age of enrollment in school (Francis, Rivera, Lesaux, Kieffer, and Rivera, 2006). Like native speakers of English, English learners experience a wide range of language proficiency. Levels of language proficiency generally proceed from Beginning to Advanced, building on preceding levels, and are distributed across the domains of listening, speaking, reading, and writing. Individual English learners may experience accelerated or slower growth, as well as reversals of progress or unparallel development within the separate domains.

Research supports the use of certain instructional approaches for both native English speakers and English learners. As with native speakers, English learners benefit from direct, explicit instruction in reading comprehension. Instruction in the use and application of comprehension strategies, combined with careful teacher modeling and scaffolded instruction, are important approaches (Gersten, Baker, Shanahan, Linan-Thomson, Collins,

and Scarcella, 2007). Similarly, the lack of proficiency in vocabulary impedes the acquisition of content in academic areas for English learners, as it does for native speakers. Effective vocabulary instruction for English learners must also be explicit, systematic, and intensive (Linan-Thompson and Vaughn, 2007).

Research also supports the use of certain distinct instructional strategies with English learners. Some of these distinct, research-based approaches are reflected in the *Delta Science Content Readers*. In the teacher's guide for each title, Supporting English Learners provides teachers with a specific strategy to help English learners access the content in that reader. These strategies include: Set Objectives, Activate Prior Knowledge, Use Photographs and Other Visuals, Teach Academic English, and Develop Vocabulary.

Bibliography

Science Education

- American Association for the Advancement of Science. (1993). *Benchmarks for science literacy*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- American Association for the Advancement of Science. (1994). *Science for all Americans* (Rev. Ed.). New York: Oxford University Press.
- American Association for the Advancement of Science. (2008). Project 2061 *Benchmarks*. www.project2061.org/publications/bsl/online/index.php
- American Association for the Advancement of Science's Project 2016. (1999). *Dialogue on early childhood science, mathematics, and technology education*. Washington, DC: American Association for the Advancement of Science.
- Beeth, M.E. (1998). Teaching science in fifth grade: Instruction goals that support conceptual change. *Journal of Research in Science Teaching*, 35, 1091–1101.
- Bybee, R.W. (1997). *Achieving scientific literacy: From purposes to practices*. Portsmouth, NH: Heinemann.
- Bybee, R.W. (2002). *Learning science and the science of learning*. Arlington, VA: NSTA Press.
- Caine, R.N., and Caine, G. (2005). *12 brain/mind learning principles in action: The fieldbook for making connections, teaching, and the human brain*. Thousand Oaks, CA: Corwin Press.
- Donovan, M.S., Bransford, J.D., and Pellegrin, J.W. (Eds.) (2000). *How people learn: Brain, mind, experience, and school* (Expanded Ed.). Washington, DC: National Academy Press.
- Douglas, R., Klentschy, M.P., Worth, K., and Binder, W. (Eds.) (2006). *Linking science and literacy in the K–8 classroom*. Arlington, VA: NSTA Press
- Duschl, R.A., Schweingruber, H.A, and Shouse, A.W. (Eds.). (2006). *Taking science to school: Learning and teaching science in grades K–8*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.
- Erlauer, L. (2003). *The brain-compatible classroom: Using what we know about learning to improve teaching*. Alexandria, VA: Association for Supervision and Curriculum Development.

- Gelman, S., and Kalish, C. (2005). Conceptual development. In R.S. Siegler, and D. Kuhn (Eds.), *Handbook of child psychology volume 2, cognition, perception, and language* (6th Ed.), 687–733. Hoboken, NJ: Wiley.
- Gonzales, P., Guzmán, J.C., Partelow, L., Pahlke, E., Jocelyn, L., Kastberg, D., and Williams, T. (2003). *Highlights from the Trends in International Mathematics and Science Study (TIMSS)*. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Education.
- Hollweg, K.S., and Hill, D. (Eds.) (2003). *Taking stock of the National Science Education Standards: The research*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.
- Kelly, A.E., and Lesh, R.A. (2000). *Handbook for research design in mathematics and science education*. Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.
- Kendall, J.S., and Marzano, R.J. (2004). *Content knowledge: A compendium of standards and benchmarks for K–12 education* (4th Ed.). www.mcrel.org/standards-benchmarks/
- Levitt, K. (2002). An analysis of elementary teachers' beliefs regarding the teaching and learning of science. *Science Education*, 86, 1–22.
- Longbottom, J., and Butler, P. (1999). Why teach science? Setting rational goals for science education. *Science Education*, 83, 473–492.
- Martin, M.O., Mullis, I.V.S., Beaton, A., Gonzalez, E., Smith, T., and Kelly, D. (1997). *Science achievement in the primary school years: IEA's Third International Mathematics and Science Study*. Chestnut Hill, MA: Center for the study of Testing, Evaluation, and Educational Policy, Boston College.
- Martin, M.O., Mullis, I.V.S., Gonzalez, E., Gregory, K., Smith, T., Chrostowski, S., Garden, R., and O'Connor, K. (2000). *TIMSS 1999 international science report: Findings from IEA's repeat of the Third International Mathematics and Science Study at the eighth grade*. Chestnut Hill, MA: Center for the study of Testing, Evaluation, and Educational Policy, Boston College.
- Metz, K.E. (1995). Reassessment of developmental constraints on children's science instruction. *Review of Educational Research*, 65, 93–127.
- Michaels, S., Shouse, A.W., and Schweingruber, H.A. (2008). *Ready, set, science! Putting research to work in K–8 science classrooms*. Washington, DC: The National Academy Press.
- Minstrell, J. (1989). Teaching science for understanding. In L.B. Resnick, and L.E. Klopfer (Eds.), *Toward the thinking curriculum: Current cognitive research*, 130–131. Alexandria, VA: Association for Supervision and Curriculum Development.
- National Research Council. (1996). *National Science Education Standards*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.
- National Research Council. (2000). *Inquiry and the National Science Education Standards: A guide for teaching and learning*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.
- Rivard, L.P., and Straw, S.B. (2000). The effect of talk and writing on learning science: An exploratory study. *Science Education*, 84, 566–593.
- Romance, N.R., and Vitale, M.R. (1992). A curriculum strategy that expands time for in-depth elementary science instruction by using science-based reading strategies: Effects of a year-long study in grade four. *Journal of Research in Science Teaching*, 29, 545–554.
- Rosebery, A., and Warren, B. (2008). *Teaching science to English language learners: Building on students' strengths*. Arlington, VA: NSTA Press.
- Shepardson, D.P., and Britsch, S.J. (2001). The role of children's journals in elementary school science activities. *Journal of Research in Science Teaching*, 38, 43–69.
- Sousa, D.A. (2000). *How the brain learns: A classroom teacher's guide*. Thousand Oaks, CA: Corwin Press.
- Tileston, D.W. (2006). *Ten best teaching practices: How brain research, learning styles, and standards define teaching competencies* (2nd Ed.). Thousand Oaks, CA: Corwin Press.

WestEd and the Council of Chief State School Officers. (2008). *Science NAEP 2009: Science framework for the 2009 National Assessment of Educational Progress* (Prepublication Ed.).

Young, J. (2003). Science interactive notebooks in the classroom. *Science Scope*, 26, 44–47.

Content-Area Reading

Anderson, R.C., Hiebert, E.H., Scott, J.A., and Wilkerson, I.A. (1985). *Becoming a nation of readers*. Washington, DC: National Institute of Education.

Armbruster, B.B. (1984). The problem of “inconsiderate text.” In G.G. Duffy, L.R. Roehler, and J. Mason (Eds.), *Comprehension instruction: Perspectives and suggestions*, 202–217. New York: Longman.

Armbruster, B., and Nagy, W.E. (1992). Vocabulary in content area lessons. *The Reading Teacher*, 45, 550–551.

Armbruster, B.B., Anderson, T.H., and Meyer, J.L. (1992). Improving content-area reading using instructional graphics. *Reading Research Quarterly*, 26, 393–416.

August, D. (2003). *Supporting the development of English literacy in English language learners: Key issues and promising practices*. Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University.

Beck, I.L., McKeown, M.G., and Kucan, L. (2002). *Bringing words to life: Robust vocabulary instruction*. New York: Guilford.

Biemiller, A. (1999). *Language and reading success*. Cambridge, MA: Brookline Books.

Biemiller, A., and Slonim, N. (2001). Estimating root word vocabulary growth in normative and advantaged populations: Evidence for a common sequence of vocabulary acquisition. *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 93, 498–520.

Carlisle, J.F., and Rice, M.S. (2002). *Improving reading comprehension: Research-based principles and practices*. Baltimore, MD: York Press.

Center for the Improvement of Early Reading Achievement (CIERA). (2003). *Put reading first: The research building blocks of reading instruction*. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Education.

Chall, J.S. (1984). Readability and prose comprehension: Continuities and discontinuities. In J. Flood (Ed.), *Understanding reading comprehension*. Newark, DE: International Reading Association.

Cunningham, A.E., and Stanovich, K.E. (1998). What reading does for the mind. *American Educator*, 22, 8–15.

Durkin, D. (1979). What classroom instruction has to say about reading comprehension instruction. *Reading Research Quarterly*, 14, 481–533.

Dutro, S., and Moran, C. (2003). Rethinking English language instruction: An architectural approach. In G.G. García (Ed.), *English learners: Reaching the highest level of English literacy*. Newark, DE: International Reading Association.

Fillmore, L.W., and Snow, C.E. (2000). *What teachers need to know about language*. Washington, DC: ERIC Clearinghouse on Languages and Linguistics.

Fountas, I.C., and Pinnell, G.S. (2001). *Guiding readers and writers: Teaching comprehension, genre, and content literacy*. Portsmouth, NH: Heinemann.

Francis, D., Rivera, M., Lesaux, N., Kieffer, M., and Rivera, H. (2006). *Practical guidelines for the education of English language learners: Research-based recommendations for serving adolescent newcomers*. Portsmouth, NH: RMC Research Corporation, Center on Instruction.

Gersten, R., Baker, S.K., Shanahan, T., Linan-Thompson, S., Collins, P., and Scarcella, R. (2007). *Effective literacy and English language instruction for English learners in the elementary grades: A practice guide*. Washington, DC: National Center for Education Evaluation and Regional Assistance, Institute of Education Sciences, U.S. Department of Education.

- Graves, M.F. (2006). *The vocabulary book: Learning and instruction*. New York: Teachers College Press.
- Harvey, S., and Goudvis, A. (2000). *Strategies that work: Teaching comprehension to enhance understanding*. Portland, ME: Stenhouse Publishers.
- Hiebert, E.H., and Kamil, M.L. (Eds.) (2005). *Teaching and learning vocabulary: Bringing research to practice*. Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.
- Hyerle, D. (2000). *A field guide to using visual tools*. Alexandria, VA: Association for Supervision and Curriculum Development.
- Linan-Thompson, S., and Vaughn, S. (2007). *Research-based methods of reading instruction for English language learners, grades K–4*. Alexandria, VA: Association for Supervision and Curriculum Development.
- Lipson, M.Y. (2007). *Teaching reading beyond the primary grades*. New York: Scholastic.
- Marzano, R.J., Pickering, D., and Pollock, J. (2001). *Classroom instruction that works: Research-based strategies for increasing student achievement*. Alexandria, VA: Association for Supervision and Curriculum Development.
- Marzano, R.J. (2003). *What works in schools: Translating research into action*. Alexandria, VA: Association for Supervision and Curriculum Development.
- Marzano, R.J. (2004). *Building background knowledge for academic achievement*. Alexandria, VA: Association for Supervision and Curriculum Development.
- Mayer, R.E. (1984). Aids to text comprehension. *Educational Psychologist*, 19, 30–42.
- McGee, L.M. (1982). Awareness of text structure: Effects on children's recall of expository text. *Reading Research Quarterly*, 17, 581–590.
- Nagy, W.E. (1988). *Teaching vocabulary to improve reading comprehension*. Urbana, IL: National Council of Teachers of English.
- National Reading Panel. (2000). *Teaching children to read: An evidence-based assessment of the scientific research literature on reading and its implications for reading instruction*. Reports of the subgroup. Bethesda, MD: National Institute of Child Health and Human Development, National Institutes of Health.
- Pinnell, G.S., and Fountas, I.C. (2002). *Leveled books for readers, grades 3–6: A companion volume to Guiding Readers and Writers*. Portsmouth, NH: Heinemann.
- Rand Reading Study Group. (2002). *Reading for understanding: Towards an R&D program in reading comprehension*. www.rand.org/multi/achievementforall
- Snow, C.E., Burns, M.S., and Griffin, P. (Eds.) (1998). *Preventing reading difficulties in young children*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.
- Snow, C.E. (2008). *Improving literacy outcomes: A time to act*. Keynote Address Delivered to International Reading Association Convention, Atlanta, GA.
- Stahl, S., and Nagy, W.E. (2005). *Teaching word meanings*. Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.
- Stephens, E.C., and Brown, J.E. (2005). *A handbook of content literacy strategies: 125 practical reading and writing ideas*. Norwood, MA: Christopher-Gordon Publishers.
- Thorndike, R.L. (1973–74). Reading as reasoning. *Reading Research Quarterly*, 9, 135–147.
- Tyree, R.B., Fiore, T.A., and Cook, R.A. (1994). Instructional materials for diverse learners: Features and considerations for textbook design. *Remedial and Special Education*, 15, 363–377.
- Vaughn, S., and Linan-Thompson, S. (2004). *Research-based methods of reading instruction, grades K–3*. Alexandria, VA: Association for Supervision and Curriculum Development.
- Wilhelm, J. (2001). *Improving comprehension with think-aloud strategies: Modeling what good readers do*. New York: Scholastic.

Skills Covered in Skillbuilders for Delta Science Content Readers, Red and Purple Editions

Physical Science	Reading Comprehension	Grammar	Writing	Vocabulary
<i>Properties of Matter</i>	Compare and Contrast	Parts of a Sentence	Paragraph Structure	Context Clues
<i>Changes in Matter</i>	Main Idea and Details	Plurals	Transitions	Word Families
<i>Energy</i>	Main Idea and Details	Subject-Verb Agreement	Brainstorming Ideas	Multiple-Meaning Words
<i>Heat and Light Energy</i>	Cause and Effect	Plurals	Topic Sentences	Prefixes and Suffixes
<i>Sound Energy</i>	Preview the Book	Prepositions	Paragraph Structure	Compound Words
<i>Electricity and Magnetism</i>	How to Read Charts	Punctuating Sentences	Persuasive Paragraph	Antonyms
<i>Forces and Motion</i>	Cause and Effect	Possessives	Audience and Purpose	Synonyms
<i>Work and Machines</i>	How to Read Diagrams	Types of Sentences	Organization Strategies	Multiple-Meaning Words
Life Science	Reading Comprehension	Grammar	Writing	Vocabulary
<i>Cells and Classification</i>	How to Read Charts	Punctuating Sentences	Organization Strategies	Antonyms
<i>Plant Needs</i>	Preview the Book	Plurals	Brainstorming Ideas	Prefixes
<i>Human Body Systems</i>	How to Read Diagrams	Punctuating Sentences	Paragraph Structure	Word Families
<i>Ecosystems</i>	How to Read Diagrams	Possessives	Paragraph Structure	Compound Words
<i>Heredity</i>	Sequence	Types of Sentences	Transitions	Synonyms
<i>Plant Life Cycles</i>	Compare and Contrast	Subject-Verb Agreement	Brainstorming Ideas	Multiple-Meaning Words
<i>Animal Needs and Life Cycles</i>	Main Idea and Details	Adjectives	Topic Sentences	Word Families
<i>Changes in Ecosystems</i>	Cause and Effect	Parts of a Sentence	Audience and Purpose	Suffixes
Earth Science	Reading Comprehension	Grammar	Writing	Vocabulary
<i>Earth, Moon, and Sun System</i>	Sequence	Commas	Organization Strategies	Suffixes
<i>Our Solar System and Beyond</i>	Main Idea and Details	Capitalizing Proper Nouns	Brainstorming Ideas	Context Clues
<i>Weathering and Erosion</i>	Cause and Effect	Plurals	Paragraph Structure	Compound Words
<i>Minerals, Rocks, and Fossils</i>	Compare and Contrast	Subject-Verb Agreement	Topic Sentences	Word Families
<i>Soils</i>	Main Idea and Details	Punctuating Sentences	Organization Strategies	Synonyms
<i>Inside Earth</i>	Cause and Effect	Types of Sentences	Research Report	Multiple-Meaning Words
<i>Air and Water</i>	How to Read Diagrams	Common and Proper Nouns	Audience and Purpose	Compound Words
<i>Weather and Climate</i>	Preview the Book	Parts of a Sentence	Descriptive Paragraph	Antonyms

School Name	City, State	City population as of (2010)	Year opened (grades)	Enrollment as of year opened	Grades offered 2016-	Enrollment 2016-2017	Waiting list as of
Estancia Valley Classical Academy	Moriarty, NM	5,645	2012 (K-10)	291	K-12	455	5
Founders Classical Academy of Lewisville	Lewisville, TX	95,290	2012 (K-10)	483	K-12	913	684
Savannah Classical Academy	Savannah, GA	136,286	2013 (K-6)	322	K-9	486	934
Northwest Arkansas Classical Academy	Bentonville, AR	35,301	2013 (K-8)	410	K-11	555	427
Mason Classical Academy	Naples, FL	19,539	2014 (K-6)	413	K-11	814	636
Atlanta Classical Academy	Atlanta, GA	420,003	2014 (K-8)	486	K-10	592	1,425
Founders Classical Academy of Leander	Leander, TX	26,521	2014 (K-10)	457	K-12	573	814
Founders Academy of Las Vegas	Las Vegas, NV	583,756	2014 (K-10)	440	K-12	570	200
Pineapple Cove Classical Academy	Palm Bay, FL	103,190	2015 (K-6)	422	K-7	540	402
Founders Classical Academy of Dallas	Dallas, TX	1,197,816	2015 (K-8)	260	K-8	300	117
Founders Classical Academy of Flower Mound	Flower Mound, TX	64,669	2015 (K-5)	317	K-6	374	278
Founders Classical Academy of Mesquite	Mesquite, TX	139,824	2015 (K-8)	338	K-9	436	184
Golden View Classical Academy	Golden, CO	18,867	2015 (K-10)	488	K-11	588	111
Livingston Classical Academy	Whitmore Lake, MI	6,423	2016 (K-9)	135	K-9	143	0
Seven Oaks Classical Academy	Ellettsville, IN	6,378	2016 (K-8)	160	K-8	160	0
Founders Classical Academy of Schertz	Schertz, TX	31,465	2016 (K-8)	348	K-8	330	81
St. Johns Classical Academy	Fleming Island, FL	27,126	2017 (K-8)	NA	NA	NA	NA

Total enrollment: 7829

Total number of students on waitlist: 6298

BARNEY CHARTER SCHOOL INITIATIVE

*School Performance Highlights**(December 2016)*

Barney Charter School Initiative schools educate students so that they might live a virtuous and full life—as spouses, parents, and citizens. These schools promote our nation’s heritage, the timeless ideas passed down by Western civilization. The richness of the schools’ curriculum and their vibrant, virtuous cultures produce students who excel in the nation’s contemporary standards of test scores and awards, as well as college acceptances and scholarship dollars.

STATE TESTING

Most Barney Charter School Initiative schools earn state test scores well above the state and district averages—ranging 9% to 30% higher on English exams and 1% to 31% higher in Mathematics. Affiliated Title 1 schools have not yet achieved these results, as they are ameliorating much larger deficits in educational gaps; still, they generally score higher than their community counterparts. Some schools achieved 100% proficient or advanced on end-of-course assessments for Grade 8 Reading and Math, English I, English II, Algebra II, Biology, Chemistry, World Geography, and U.S. History. Mason Classical Academy (Florida) ranked in the top 6% of charter schools in the state and in the top 11% of public schools. In Grades 3-8, Atlanta Classical Academy (Georgia) was in the top 8% for state testing. Northwest Arkansas Classical Academy scored in the top 5% of Arkansas schools in Grades K-8 for both student academic performance and student growth.

COLLEGE PREPARATION

After hearing reports about the schools’ strong academic program and culture, many college admission offices started courting BCSI’s very first seniors. Their interest has proven to be well founded. Baylor University Honors College, Fordham

University, Grove City College, Hillsdale College, New York University, Southern Methodist University Honors College, University of Dallas, Wheaton College, and other renowned colleges and universities have offered these students a home on their campuses as well as over \$4.4 million in college scholarships. As schools typically open with only Grades K-8, thus far only two schools have graduated 67 students, with two more schools graduating their first senior class in 2017. Civic virtue is an important part of their education, so it should come as little surprise that some graduates have chosen to enlist in the military or to serve in ROTC programs.

Juniors and seniors earn SAT and ACT scores averaging in the 76th percentile, with the more established schools achieving averages in the 97th percentile. Thus far, four students have been named National Merit Commended Scholars, and one is a National Merit Semifinalist. On the PSAT, 40% of the ninth-grade students at Atlanta Classical Academy scored in the top 10% and more than half scored in the top quarter of college-bound students.

IN THE COMMUNITY

While even the oldest BCSI schools are only in their fifth year, communities have already started to note their positive impact, and families are eager to have their children enrolled. The average number of children on a given school’s waiting list is over 70% of current enrollment, and some waitlists are nearly triple the school’s size. Thanks to community interest, Golden View Classical Academy was the largest first-year charter to open in the history of Jefferson County Schools, Colorado’s second largest school district.

CONTINUED



SCHOOL PERFORMANCE HIGHLIGHTS, CONTINUED

ACADEMIC AND EXTRACURRICULAR AWARDS

Barney Charter School Initiative schools foster excellence both in and outside the classroom. Their emphasis on music and art not only allows students to learn about beauty, but also to participate in it. Their opportunities in sports and extracurricular activities encourage the students to acquire skills and virtues that are not as easily developed in the classroom. Though these are schools with a strong academic focus, they intend to shape students into virtuous men and women who excel in all their endeavors.

ACADEMIC RECOGNITION

The academic program includes comprehensive studies in all major subjects, and this environment encourages student success in state and national contests. Students at both Founders Classical Academy of Leander (Texas) and Founders Classical Academy of Lewisville (Texas) earned perfect scores on the National Latin Exam. Many other students received the honors of Summa Cum Laude and Magna Cum Laude for their performance. Founders Classical Academy of Lewisville also sent a student to the National History Day competition.

ACCOMPLISHMENTS IN THE ARTS

The arts are key features of classical education. Music theory, history, and performance are taught in all grades, as are art history and studio art. The honor choir, band, and orchestra at Founders Classical Academy of Flower Mound (Texas) earned the highest possible score in all categories at the Sandy Lake Music Festival. Students at Mason Classical Academy vied for seats on Florida's All-State Orchestra, and two of their students earned these highly competitive placements. Founders Classical Academy of Lewisville had multiple students advance to the state art competition, with several entries winning first place in drawing and photography.

EXTRACURRICULAR ACHIEVEMENT

Clubs offer students the opportunity to pursue academic interests and talents beyond the classroom, to learn new skills, and to grow under the direction of a club's faculty advisors, which in turn lead to additional honors and possibilities. Mason Classical Academy's Scholar Bowl team placed first in the Collier County School District. They competed at Harvard University's 2016 Fall Tournament, which features some of the best teams in the nation, and won two matches. In a classical school chess tournament for Grades 4-8, students from Founders Classical Academy of Flower Mound took first place with an extraordinarily young team of one second-grade and two fifth-grade students.

ATHLETIC AWARDS

Often school cultures rooted in excellence translate into remarkable athletic achievements. Two young men at Founders Classical Academy of Dallas placed third and seventh in cross-country at the state meet. In the very first year of its tennis program, Northwest Arkansas Classical Academy took third in Tennis Doubles at State. The more mature schools have had even more opportunities to excel athletically. For the past three years, Founders Classical Academy of Lewisville has taken at least one first-place title at the state cross-country meet. Its middle school soccer and flag football teams are also state champions. Founders Classical Academy of Leander's students have many athletic distinctions: its middle school girls soccer and basketball teams and high school volleyball team are state runners-up, and its middle school girls track and field team won the state championship.



BARNEY CHARTER SCHOOL INITIATIVE

*Highlights**(December 2016)*

THE BARNEY CHARTER SCHOOL INITIATIVE ENHANCES THE LIVES OF STUDENTS, PARENTS, TEACHERS, SCHOOL ADMINISTRATORS, AND COMMUNITIES.

Some of the most important features of a school cannot be graded, compared, or quantified—school culture, cultivating virtue, dissuading vice, and shaping students' imaginations toward what is good and true. The details of school culture may vary significantly across geography and demographics, but all those associated with the Barney Charter School Initiative foster a culture that promotes moral virtue and prepares students to flourish as human beings. Most often schools are joining with parents in these endeavors; in a few cases, the schools are reaching students who lack much encouragement at home.

The Barney Charter School Initiative staff is privileged to visit, experience, and hear stories of the immeasurable impact of these schools. The effect is tangible from the moment they step on campus—different at each school, but bearing common characteristics. The feeling associated with each visit can hardly be shared, but the stories can.

IN THE SCHOOL COMMUNITY

One fifth-grade student made remarkable gains in his first year, both academically and socially. He began the year with daily visits to the office, academic struggles, and the likely possibility of being involved with law enforcement. At the end of the year, he would joke that “his nerd was showing” because he was answering questions in class and his grades were improving. This same student volunteered five weeks of his summer to

work with the school's custodial team. He cleaned classrooms, painted walls, and moved furniture because he made the choice to stay in an environment that was good for him. Besides learning the true and loving the beautiful, this student has learned that doing the good is just as important.

Phonics is given short shrift in most contemporary schools, many preferring the whole language approach which neglects the code of our phonemic written language. The predictable result is that students often fall increasingly behind in literacy. Barney Charter Schools use explicit phonics instruction that prevents and remediates these reading deficits. In one such case, a new student was assigned to an upper elementary classroom to repeat her previous grade. That October, her reading level was assessed to be more than two years behind her current grade level, and more than three years behind students her own age. The school provided her with additional support and phonics tutoring. Before the first semester had ended, her reading was at grade level.

Mr. Steve Barney, for whom the Barney Charter School Initiative was named, was observing a sixth-grade classroom. He watched as a student struggled to diagram a sentence at the front of the classroom, then joined with the class in cheering when the student corrected his mistakes and correctly diagrammed the sentence. Mr. Barney was impressed

CONTINUED

HIGHLIGHTS, CONTINUED

not only by the warmth of the classroom, but also by the advanced material being taught. The students were not simply diagramming sentences—they were diagramming sentences *in Latin*.

The curriculum, culture, and teaching methods of a classical school are good for both students and teachers. Teachers new to Barney-affiliated schools often arrive skeptical but come to find that they love the new environment. One Kindergarten teacher's experience during the first year of the Barney schools became the pattern for many others. Classical education was extremely different from anything she had ever taught and went against much of the education philosophy taught to her. The standards seemed too high and the expectations impossible. Despite her doubts and apprehensions, the success and joy in her new classroom altered her perception of what is possible. By the end of that first year, she said that her eyes were opened to students' true capabilities and the beauty of the knowledge they could acquire.

Principals who join the effort also effusively note the impact on their lives and those of their students. According to one administrator, "Before coming on board with Pineapple Cove Classical Academy (Florida) and the Barney Charter School Initiative, I worked as a first grade teacher and literacy coach for 15 years in public schools. My training and experiences with BCSI have been life changing. Having the opportunity to work in a school where everyone holds the same values and beliefs in high regard is essential in making changes in the lives of the children and families we serve. In addition to the personal stories of individual students, it has been rewarding to be part of a team that works so diligently to improve student achievement. Our weekly phone calls with the BCSI team, including Mr. Kilgore, have proven to be quite effective in keeping our school leadership true to its mission. The relationship with Hillsdale College has been instrumental in making our first years so successful."

BEYOND THE CLASSROOM AND CAMPUS

Parents often express their gratitude for these schools in their family's life, as a mother at Founders Classical Academy of Leander (Texas) articulated: "My child is receiving an excellent education delivered by talented teachers. She is surrounded by responsible, respectful students. I'm grateful for all the administration and faculty who dedicate themselves to educating and protecting my child while she's in their care. Founders is a blessing to our family and I'm thankful to have school choice!"

Within a few months of opening, the culture of virtue at a school leads to outreach in the local community. In addition to their numerous charitable efforts, many of these schools host public events to mark important days and honor members of their local communities, including events in honor of September 11, Constitution Day, and Veterans Day.

Through their quantitative and qualitative successes, the schools have attracted attention locally and nationally. Representatives of local and state government often tour classrooms in order to discover ways that they can extend these successes to other schools. Congressman Michael Burgess requested a school tour of Founders Classical Academy of Lewisville (Texas); he later spoke at their commencement. Florida Governor Rick Scott recently wrote to congratulate Mason Classical Academy in Naples on their achievements, and he requested a visit, as well.

Eric Metaxas, well-known author and historian, remarked on a 2013 visit to Founders Classical Academy of Lewisville, "To hear some young student say that virtue is necessary for self-government blows my mind.... When I realize that it is possible for young people to learn this at classical schools, it thrills me to death. It encourages me for the future.... Congrats to the people who created this school and who are running it right now. This is *very* important."



Hillsdale College Barney Charter School Initiative
School Performance Highlights
December 2015

Estancia Valley Classical Academy: Moriarty, New Mexico

In both 2013 and 2014, Estancia Valley Classical Academy (EVCA) earned an “A” on its School Grade Report Card. Only 10% of all schools earned an “A” rating within New Mexico’s A-F School Grading System for each of those years. Letter grades are determined using student assessment results in math and reading, growth of those scores, student attendance rates, and other data pointing to the classroom environment. While the 2015 School Grade Report Cards have not yet been released, EVCA’s student assessment results on the new New Mexico Partnership for Assessment of Readiness for College and Careers (NMPARCC) exams showed that the percentage of EVCA students scoring proficient or above was higher than that of state on every assessment. In addition, the Class of 2015 at EVCA outpaced the state and national performance rates on all four sections of the ACT.

EVCA’s first senior class graduated on May 29, 2015, and all graduates are currently engaged in post-secondary educational programs or military service training. The Valedictorian and Salutatorian were both awarded four-year, full tuition scholarship by the University of New Mexico. Additionally, one student was accepted and matriculated to Hillsdale College.

Founders Classical Academy: Lewisville, Texas

In 2013, 2014, and 2015, Founders Classical Academy of Lewisville (FCA-Lewisville) earned the highest accountability rating of “Met Standard” on its Texas Academic Performance Report. In addition, FCA-Lewisville earned several Distinction Designations, which are awarded for outstanding performance in specific areas: Academic Achievement in Math, Academic Achievement in Reading/ELA, Academic Achievement in Social Studies and Postsecondary Readiness.

FCA-Lewisville students have scored 100% proficient or advanced on the following high school end-of-course-assessments: English I, English II, Algebra II, Biology, Chemistry, World Geography, and U.S. History.

FCA-Lewisville’s first senior class graduated on May 30, 2015. The class garnered over \$800,000 in scholarships, and the Valedictorian was named a National Merit Commended Student. Both the Valedictorian and Salutatorian were accepted to Hillsdale College.

Northwest Arkansas Classical Academy: Bentonville, Arkansas

In 2014, Northwest Arkansas Classical Academy (NWACA) earned the accountability status of “Achieving” on its Accountability Report by meeting annual achievement and growth targets for student performance in literacy and mathematics. Only 69 schools in the state earned this accountability status. Eighth graders enrolled in Algebra I completed the high school end-of-course-exam for Algebra I, scoring 100% proficient or advanced.

NWACA received several Outstanding Education Performance Awards from the Office for Education Policy at the University of Arkansas in 2014. These awards highlight the top ten highest performing schools statewide, as well as the top three highest performing schools in each of five regions, based on the Benchmark and End-of-Course exams. NWACA was fifth in Grade Four Math Achievement statewide, third in Grade Four Math Achievement in the Northwest Region, second in Grade Six Literacy Achievement statewide, first in Grade Six Literacy Achievement in the Northwest Region, and fourth in Grade Eight Literacy Achievement statewide.

While the 2015 Accountability Reports have not yet been released, the percentage of NWACA students scoring proficient or above was higher than that of the state on all Augment Benchmark Science assessments (grade 5, grade 7, high school biology). In addition, NWACA’s student assessment results on the new PARCC exams (English Language Arts and math) showed that the percentage of NWACA students scoring proficient or above was higher than that of the state on all but one assessment.

Savannah Classical Academy: Savannah, Georgia

Savannah Classical Academy (SCA) is the only Title I charter school in Chatham County, meaning it has a disproportionate number of students who come from poverty. 70% qualify for free or reduced lunch.

In its first year (2013-2014), SCA's enrollment dropped by 30 students in its first seven weeks, as many students had trouble adjusting to the school's standards of decorum and discipline. In 2014, however, SCA lost only four students in its first seven weeks, and has a waiting list of over 90 students. In 2015, SCA is at full enrollment (440 students), and has 550 students on the waiting list.

After one year of explicit phonics instruction, students at SCA had above average growth in vocabulary acquisition on all grade levels. Similarly, nearly all students advanced through one full year of curriculum in Singapore Math.

In 2015, SCA was voted the 2nd Best Public School in the district by Savannah Magazine, and was one of just five schools in Chatham County to receive a Five-Star Climate Rating through the Georgia Department of Education for their school culture.

Mason Classical Academy: Naples, Florida

In 2015, Mason Classical Academy (MCA) earned an "A" on its School Grade Report from the Florida Department of Education, pending a Florida State Board of Education vote in January on the Florida Education Commissioner's simulation of baseline school grades. Letter grades are determined using student assessment results in English Language Arts (ELA), math, and science. Based on this simulation, only 36% of schools statewide and 37% of schools in Collier County received an "A" grade. MCA students scored at or above the state average on all Florida Standards Assessments in ELA and math, and on the 5th grade Statewide Science Assessment.

The Florida Department of Education pays particular attention to the bottom 20 percent of scorers on the 3rd grade Florida Standards Assessment in ELA. This group of students are identified as "at risk" for retention. In Collier County, 20 percent of students in the 3rd grade made this list of bottom 20 percent statewide scorers. When all schools in the Collier County School District are ranked according to this metric, MCA is at the top of the list. Only 2 percent (one student) scored in this bottom category.

Atlanta Classical Academy: Atlanta, Georgia

In 2015, the percentage of Atlanta Classical Academy (ACA) students scoring proficient or above was higher than that of both the district (Atlanta Public Schools) and the state on all Georgia Milestones assessments in ELA, math, and science. ACA also administered the Iowa Tests of Basic Skills (ITBS), a nationally recognized assessment that has not yet been affected by Common Core. ACA's percentile ranks of average scores were higher than national percentile ranks of average scores on all tests: ELA, science, math, and social studies.

Founders Classical Academy of Leander: Leander, Texas

In 2015, Founders Classical Academy of Leander (FCA-Leander) earned the highest accountability rating of "Met Standard" on its Texas Academic Performance Report. In addition, FCA-Leander earned several Distinction Designations, which are awarded for outstanding performance in specific areas: Academic Achievement in Math, Academic Achievement in Reading/ELA, Academic Achievement in Science and Top 25 Percent Closing Performance Gaps.

FCA-Leander students scored 100% proficient or advanced on the English II (tenth grade) and Biology (ninth grade) end-of-course-assessments.

Founders Academy of Las Vegas: Las Vegas, Nevada

In 2015, fifth and eighth grade students at Founders Academy of Las Vegas (FALV) performed well above the state average on the Science Criterion Referenced Tests (CRT). 90% of FALV fifth graders and 87% of FALV eighth graders were proficient on the Science CRT. Student results on assessments in other grade levels and subject areas are not yet available.